The minitoc package*

Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert, et al.

July 13, 2018

*This document corresponds to minitoc v62, dated 2018/07/12.

Summary

Table of contents

List of figures

List of tables

About this document

This document is rather thick, but please, be not afraid: you do not need to read every page.

- The most useful chapters are in the first part (“User’s Manual”, page 23):
  - the chapter “The minitoc package”, page 24, describes the essential commands to use the package;
  - the chapter “Frequently Asked Questions”, page 56, may help you to solve some specific problems;
  - the chapter “Memento”, page 80, is a set of tables to be used as a remainder of the commands of this package;
  - the chapter “Examples of documents”, page 90, gives the code of some documents showing the basic usage of the minitoc package and some interesting situations;
  - the chapter “Messages”, page 151, is certainly boring, but it should be searched if you get some warning or error messages from the minitoc package, because it explains them and also the informative messages (table 5.1 on page 152 will help you to find the meaning of a message);
  - the chapter “Jargon”, page 205, attemps to explain most of the technical terms used here;
  - the chapter “Installation”, page 242, describes all the files included in the distribution of the package;
  - the chapter “Postface”, page 248, gives an abbreviated history of the package.
- The second part, “Implementation”, page 261, is much more technical; you can read it if you are interested in the details of the coding of the package. The chapter “Language definition (`.mld`) and object (`.mlo`) files”, page 467, may be useful if you are interested by some language. This chapter contains many maps and illustrations.
- The third part, “Complements”, page 560, contains a bibliography, a detailed history of the package, a list of acknowlegments, and an index.

For this document, I have used:

- a short table of contents (summary), with the `\shorttoc` command from my shorttoc package [155], displaying only parts and chapters;

- a main table of contents (\tableofcontents), with a maximum depth (6);
- a main list of figures (\listoffigures) and a main list of tables (\listoftables);
- for each part, a table of contents displaying only the chapters (\parttoc with parttocdepth equal to 1);
- for each chapter, a complete table of contents (\minitoc with minitocdepth equal to 6);
- for each chapter, a list of figures (\minilof) and a list of tables (\minilot) when useful;
- customized parameters for the layout of the mini-tables; as the PDF version of the documentation uses hyperlinks (with the help of the hyperref package [390]), these mini-tables should help you to navigate within the document;
- some hyperlinks, placed in the right margin, contain a message identifier; the link points to the description of the message in the "Messages" chapter; try this one: ⟶ I0001
- some flags, with hyperlinks to articles (mainly in Wikipedia) about countries or languages;
- the calc package [441] to make some computations with comfort;
- the booktabs package [165] to format the tables;
- the doc [327] and docstrip [287] packages to document the code;
- many other packages to improve the presentation of the documentation.

Part I

User's Manual

Contents of the First Part

Chapter 1

The minitoc package

Contents

Figures

Tables

1.1 Introduction

The minitoc package, initially written by Nigel Ward and Dan Jurafsky, has been almost completely redesigned by Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert (ONERA/Centre de Toulouse). A summary of the evolution of this package is given in the chapter 8 on page 248. This package creates a mini-table of contents (a “minitoc” [1]) at the beginning of each chapter of a document. It is also possible to have a mini-list of figures (a “minilof”) and a mini-list of tables (a “minilot”). The document class should of course define chapters (classes like book or report [282]) or sections (classes like article [2]) [282]. Thus, this package should not be used with document classes without standard sectionning commands (like letter). When the document class defines a “part” sectionning level (i.e., classes like book, report and article), you can create a “partial” table of contents (a “parttoc”) at the beginning of each part of a document. It is also possible to have a partial list of figures (a “partlof”) and a partial list of tables (a “partlot”). When the document class has no \chapter command but has a \section command, you may use

[1] The minitoc package introduces its own jargon, explained in this document. It should not be too difficult, however, to learn and use; it will be used here, of course.

[2] As the standard proc class [281], and the ltxdoc [116] and ltnews [248] classes, load the standard article class, these classes will be just considered as variants of the article class.

section level tables of contents (“secttocs”) at the beginning of each section; and you can also have section level lists of figures (“sectlofs”) or of tables (“sectlots”).

All these tables (“minitocs”, “partlots”, “sectlofs”, etc.) are collectively referenced as “mini-tables” (or sometimes “mini-lists”).

1.1.1 Important restrictions

Note: you cannot use chapter level and section level mini-tables in the same document. This restriction is intented to avoid documents with full of local tables of contents, lists of figures and tables at every sectionning level.

Note: the commands relative to the part level are defined only if the document class defines `\part`. The commands relative to the section level are defined only if the document class defines `\section` but does not define `\chapter`.

1.1.2 Version

The current version of this package is #61. You will find a resumed history of the package in the “Postface” chapter (chapter 8 on page 248) and a more detailed history in “Changes History”, page 597.

1.2 License

This package must be distributed and/or may be modified under the conditions of the **LaTeX Project Public License**, either version 1.3 of this license or (as convenient) any later version. The latest version of this license is in

http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt

and version 1.3 or later is part of all distributions of LaTeX version 2003/12/01 or later.

But please don’t bother me about hacked versions; they will not be supported. However, suggestions for corrections and reasoned improvements are welcome.

1.3 Using the minitoc package

1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables

\usepackage
\minitoc
\chapter

To use the minitoc package, you must insert a command:

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
```

in the preamble of the document[3]. The mini-table of contents will be in the chapter, after the \chapter command, at the point of the \minitoc command. The \minitoc command may occur *almost anywhere*[4] inside a chapter.

Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the chapter, eventually after some introductory material. But you can also decide to put it at the end of the chapter. You should use the same conventions in all chapters. If you want to add the mini-table of contents for a chapter, you must use the sequence given in table 1.1 on the next page.

For each mini-table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document*.mtc⟨*N*⟩, where ⟨*N*⟩ is the absolute chapter number. "Absolute" means that this number is unique, and always increasing from the first chapter[5]. The suffix is .mlf⟨*N*⟩ for mini-lists of figures and is .mlt⟨*N*⟩ for mini-lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 54 and section 2.5 on page 58). There are similar commands for mini-tables at the part or section level, depending on the document class.

1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables

\dominitoc
\dominilof
\dominilot

The commands[6] \dominitoc, \dominilof, and \dominilot (for mini-tables at the chapter level), take respectively the *document*.toc, *document*.lof, and *document*.lot files, and cut slices from them to create the *document*.mtc⟨*N*⟩, *document*.mlf⟨*N*⟩, and *document*.mlt⟨*N*⟩ files.

[3] This command must be placed *after* any modification done on the sectionning commands; if you modify some sectionning commands after loading the minitoc package, this one might not work properly.

[4] "Almost anywhere" means "in a normal place", like between two paragraphs of normal text, or in a (wide enough) minipage, but not in a too strange position (like a marginal note or a footnote). Even a multicolumn or a floating environment can be used, but with care. But note that a minitoc can be rather long, if the chapter is complex and if you are asking for details with a high value for minitocdepth. As an example, I once used a \afterpage command (afterpage package [115]) to place the long minilof of chapter 13 on page 467 (so the minilof was forced to begin at the top of the next page).

[5] The concept of an "absolute" counter for the mini-tables has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like \firstpartis, \firstchapteris, and \firstsectionis.

[6] The code of these \do... commands is directly derived from that of the xr package [114], by David P. Carlisle, with his permission.

Table 1.1: Commands for a `minitoc`

```
\documentclass[...]{book}
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
...
\setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt}                 default
\renewcommand{\mtcoffset}{0pt}               default
\mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{0pt}                  default
\setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}   default
...
\setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}                 default
\renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}            default
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}           default
or:
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{2}                                             default
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}            default
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}      default
...
\begin{document}
...
\dominitoc
\dominilof
\dominilot
\tableofcontents                             or \faketableofcontents
\listoffigures                               or \fakelistoffigures
\listoftables                                or \fakelistoftables
...
\chapter{...}
\minitoc                                     if you want one
\mtcskip
\minilof                                     if you want one
\mtcskip
\minilot                                     if you want one
...
```

\dosecttoc
\dosectlof
\dosectlot
\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dopartlot
\mtcprepare
\tableofcontents
\listoffigures
\listoftables

The commands `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, and `\dosectlot` (for mini-tables at the section level) and `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, and `\dopartlot` (for mini-tables at the part level) are analog.

The `\mtcprepare` command invokes (and replaces) all these preparation commands when they are available with the document class and if the adequate contents file exists. This command accepts also an optional argument to set the default position of the title for *all* the mini-tables.

All the preparation commands are *ignored* if the `\nofiles` command is invoked in the preamble, to avoid to overwrite the mini-table auxiliary files.

W0098

To obtain a satisfactory result (i.e., non empty), please note that all these commands must *imperatively be put before* any command analog to the `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables` commands, or their `\fake...` siblings.

It is also *strongly* recommended to put these commands *before* any sectionning command producing an entry in the table of contents (for the `\do...toc` commands), and *before* any `\caption`-like command producing an entry in the list of figures (for the `\do...lof` commands) or in the list of tables (for the `\do...lot`) commands; else disorder in the mini-tables might result.

1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables

`\mtcskip` `\mtcskipamount` `\bigskipamount`

The `\mtcskip` command may be used to add a vertical skip between two mini-tables. Its height is `\mtcskipamount` (equal to `\bigskipamount` by default). `\mtcskip` eliminates any immediate previous vertical skip, to not accumulate vertical space when a mini-table is empty and skipped by the `checkfiles` option.

`\secttoc` `\section`

The section-level table of contents will be in the section, after the `\section` command, at the point of the `\secttoc` command. The `\secttoc` command may occur *almost anywhere* inside a section. It is often better to put it at the beginning of the section, or after some short introductory material. You should use the same conventions in all sections. If you want to add a section-level table of contents for a section, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.2 on the following page.

For each section-level table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document*`.stc`⟨*N*⟩, where ⟨*N*⟩ is the absolute section number. The suffix is `.slf`⟨*N*⟩ for section-level lists of figures and is `.slt`⟨*N*⟩ for section-level lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 54 and section 2.5 on page 58).

`\usepackage` `\FloatBarrier`

As floats (figures and tables) could drift[7] somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the sectlofs and sectlots can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` option in the `\usepackage` command:

W0056

```
\usepackage[insection]{minitoc}
```

if you want more consistent sectlofs and sectlots. The `insection` option loads the placeins package [15] with its `verbose` and `section` options. Sometimes, it might be necessary to use the `\FloatBarrier` command of this package to correctly place the figure or table and have a correct mini-table. The options `above` or `below` options should not be used, because they allow floats to drift above or below a `\FloatBarrier` (or a section limit): the barrier

[7] *A float is like a ship in harbor. There is a place in the text which is the anchor location. The figure or "ship" can float around to various places relative to the anchor, but always downstream or downwind. A float with bad placement parameters is like a ship that slips its anchor and eventually crashes on the rocks at the end of a chapter.*
Donald Arseneau

Table 1.2: Commands for a `secttoc`

```
\documentclass[...]{article}
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
...
\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt}     default
\renewcommand{\stcoffset}{0pt}   default
\mtcsetoffset{secttoc}{0pt}      default
...
\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}     default
\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}              default
\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}            default
or:
\mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{2}                                               default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}              default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{subsection}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}     default
...
\begin{document}
...
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof
\dosectlot
\tableofcontents                 or \faketableofcontents
\listoffigures                   or \fakelistoffigures
\listoftables                    or \fakelistoftables
...
\section{...}
\secttoc                         if you want one
\sectlof                         if you want one
\sectlot                         if you want one
...
```

becomes "porous" upwards[8] (↑) or downwards (↓), or both (↕). The `section` option makes a more "watertight" barrier (≡). This is illustrated by the figure 1.1 on the next page.

The placeins package, by Donald Arseneau, is available on CTAN archives; note that the file `placeins.sty` contains its own documentation, with a copy in `placeins.txt`. You need a version whose date is at least 2005/04/18.

Since version #45, this option also loads the flafter package (described in [288] and [330, page 286]) to force a float to appear *after* its reference. The `above` and `below` options of the placeins package are no more used, because they allowed the floats to move out of the section.

In all cases, it is *strongly* recommended to verify the position of the floats and, if necessary, to look at the messages of the placeins package in the *document*`.log` file. The placement of floats is a very complex problem, so some manual intervention may be necessary, like the use of the float package [302] or, better, of the floatrow package [285].

[8] But a float can not drift upwards beyond the top of the current page.

With the `section` option

Command	Action
	× × × × × × × × × × × × *Forbidden Area* × × × × × × × × × × × ×
`\section`	═══════════════════════
	Allowed Area
	Floats inserted here
	Allowed Area
`\section`	═══════════════════════
	× × × × × × × × × × × × *Forbidden Area* × × × × × × × × × × × ×

With the `above` option

Command	Action
	Allowed Area
`\section`	↑ ↑
	Allowed Area
	Floats inserted here
	Allowed Area
`\section`	═══════════════════════
	× × × × × × × × × × × × *Forbidden Area* × × × × × × × × × × × ×

With the `below` option

Command	Action
	× × × × × × × × × × × × *Forbidden Area* × × × × × × × × × × × ×
`\section`	═══════════════════════
	Allowed Area
	Floats inserted here
	Allowed Area
`\section`	↓ ↓
	Allowed Area

With the `above` and `below` options

Command	Action
	Allowed Area
`\section`	↕ ↕
	Allowed Area
	Floats inserted here
	Allowed Area
`\section`	↕ ↕
	Allowed Area

Figure 1.1: Float barriers

Table 1.3: Commands for a `parttoc`

```
\documentclass[...]{book}
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
...
\setlength{\ptcindent}{0pt}      default
\renewcommand{\ptcoffset}{0pt}   default
\mtcsetoffset{parttoc}{0pt}      default
...
\setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}     default
\renewcommand{\ptcfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}          default
\renewcommand{\ptcCfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}         default
\renewcommand{\ptcSfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}         default
or:
\mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}                                                default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}          default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}    default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{section}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}    default
...
\begin{document}
...
\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dopartlot
\tableofcontents                 or \faketableofcontents
\listoffigures                   or \fakelistoffigures
\listoftables                    or \fakelistoftables
...
\part{...}
\parttoc                         if you want one
\partlof                         if you want one
\partlot                         if you want one
...
```

If you want to add the partial table of contents for a part, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.3. For each partial table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document*`.ptc`⟨*N*⟩, where ⟨*N*⟩ is the absolute part number. The suffix is `.plf`⟨*N*⟩ for partial lists of figures and is `.plt`⟨*N*⟩ for partial lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 54 and section 2.5 on page 58).

Note: the user is responsible of asking or not asking a mini-table (mini-toc, -lof or -lot) for some chapter. Asking a minilof for a chapter without any figure would result in an empty and ugly mini-list of figures (i.e., the title and two horizontal rules). He is also responsible of requiring or not requiring a partial toc (lof or lot) for some part. Asking a partlof for a part without any figure would result in an empty and ugly part list of figures (i.e., the title alone on a page). Analogous remarks apply to section-level mini-tables (secttoc, sectlof, and sectlot) and to the part-level mini-tables (parttoc, partlof, and partlot).

But since version #35, empty mini-tables are just ignored and this problem should disappear in normal circumstances. Nevertheless, it is recommended to put no `\minitoc` command

in a chapter without sections and no \minilof or \minilot command in a chapter without figures or tables. The checkfiles (see section 1.3.3 on page 29) package option (default) skips empty mini-tables (with a note in the *document*.log file); the nocheckfiles package option restores the old behaviour (empty mini-tables are displayed).

By default, the mini-tables and partial tables of contents contain only references higher and to sections and subsections. The counters parttocdepth, minitocdepth and secttocdepth, similar to tocdepth, allow the user to modify this behaviour. Mini or partial lists of figures or tables are not affected by the value of these counters, but if there are depth counters for these lists (lofdepth and lotdepth), as done by the subfigure and subfig packages [130, 132] from Steven Douglas Cochran, new depth counters are created if necessary, with obvious names like partlofdepth, partlotdepth, minilofdepth, minilotdepth, sectlofdepth, and sectlotdepth.

1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections

\addcontentsline
\addstarredpart
\addstarredchapter
\addstarredsection

NOTE: if using \chapter* and a

```
\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
```

command to add something in the table of contents, the numbering of the minitoc auxiliary files would be altered. To avoid that problem, a first method is to say:

```
\addstarredpart{...}
\addstarredchapter{...}
\addstarredsection{...}
```

These commands apply only for the level of a part-, mini- or sect-toc; for lower levels, the usual command is sufficient:

\addcontentsline

```
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
```

So, to add a section-level entry in the global toc and in the minitoc of a starred chapter:

```
\chapter*{Title of chapter}
\addstarredchapter{Title of chapter}
\minitoc
\section*{First section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{First section}
\section*{Second section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{Second section}
```

\adjustptc
\adjustmtc
\adjuststc

There is sometimes a problem with mini-tables when you use \chapter* (or \section*): the minitocs appear in the wrong chapter. You can add a \adjustmtc (or \adjuststc or \adjustptc) command at the end of the starred chapter (or section or part) to increment the corresponding counter. Do not use commands like \stepcounter{mtc} or \addtocounter{mtc}{...} (which should work, but it is cheating), because the mtcoff package (see section 1.11 on page 55) knows what to do about \adjustmtc (and others), but can do nothing about \stepcounter or \addtocounter, as they are a standard basic commands of LaTeX, not minitoc specific commands. Syntax:

\adjustptc[*n*] \adjustmtc[*n*] \adjuststc[*n*]

where *n* is the increment (default: 1).

\decrementptc
\decrementmtc
\decrementstc
\incrementptc
\incrementmtc
\incrementstc

There are similar commands to *decrement* or *increment* by 1 these counters: \decrementptc, \decrementmtc, \decrementstc, \incrementptc, \incrementmtc, and \incrementstc; the same remarks as above apply. These commands have no argument. But a more clever way to solve this problem would be using commands similar to:

\mtcaddchapter[*title*]

\mtcaddpart
\mtcaddchapter
\mtcaddsection

This command adds an entry in the table of contents (and adjusts the counter, because it calls \adjustmtc). The table 1.4 summarizes these commands, that you put *after* \chapter*, etc. If the optional argument is omitted or empty or blank, no entry will be visible in the table of contents nor in the minitocs. If the optional argument is something invisible (like ~, \space or \quad), the result will be strange but still logically correct. See also section 2.30 on page 72 for the problems with \mtcaddpart.

Table 1.4: Adding an entry in the ToC for a starred part, chapter, or section

Level	With title
part	\mtcaddpart[*title*]
chapter	\mtcaddchapter[*title*]
section	\mtcaddsection[*title*]

1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables

The mini-tables are typeset in a verse-like environment, and can be split over several pages.

1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables

\mtcfont
\mtcSfont

The mini-table of contents is typeset in the \mtcfont font, which is \small\rmfamily by default. In fact, the font \mtcfont is selected at the beginning of a minitoc, minilof or minilot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Section entries are typeset in the \mtcSfont font, which is \small\bfseries by default.

\mtcSSfont
\mtcSSSfont
\mtcPfont
\mtcSPfont
\mlffont
\mltfont
\mlfSfont
\mltSfont

For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands \mtcSSfont, \mtcSSSfont, \mtcPfont and \mtcSPfont are available (by default, \small\rmfamily) to enable the use of various fonts. Mini lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts \mlffont and \mltfont, which are \small\rmfamily by default. There are also \mlfSfont and \mltSfont for sub-figures and sub-tables entries. See tables 1.5 to 1.6 on pages 36–37 [9].

Note that the default choice of fonts is certainly not perfect and hence it is not definitive. A symptom of this imperfection is the presence of poor alignments in the mini-tables, if bold and non-bold fonts are mixed [10] (the true length of 1em is not the same for the fonts). This can often be adjusted by changing some fonts.

1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables

\mtifont
\mtctitle
\mlftitle
\mlttitle
\mtcsettitle
\mtcselectlanguage

Titles are typeset in the \mtifont (\large\bfseries by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by \mtctitle, \mlftitle and \mlttitle, which are the strings "Contents", "Figures" and "Tables" by default. These title commands should be redefined by \renewcommand or \mtcsettitle for languages other than english.

The language definition files like french.mld and english.mld (the suffix .mld means "minitoc language definition (file)") (and many others, see the list in table 1.7 on page 38 and section 1.4.14 on page 44) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 70). You can change the language of these titles by using the \mtcselectlanguage{*language*} macro.

1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables

\ptcfont
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont

The partial table of contents is typeset in the \ptcfont font, which is defined as \normalsize\rmfamily by default. In fact, the font \ptcfont is selected at the beginning of a parttoc, partlof or partlot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Chapter entries are typeset in the \ptcCfont font, which is

[9] Thanks to Stefan Ulrich, who contributed these tables initially.

[10] This appears, e.g., if you are using the Computer Modern Roman (CMR) fonts [262]. The symptom disappears if you do not use bold CMR fonts or if you use the TX fonts (txfonts package [403]), for instance, like in this document. See also section 2.29 on page 71.

Table 1.5: Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands

Command	Font default setting	Title string default setting	Title font default setting
For the \part... commands:			
\parttoc	\ptcfont \normalsize\rmfamily* \small\rmfamily**	\ptctitle Table of Contents†	\ptifont \LARGE\bfseries* \Large\bfseries**
\partlof	\plffont \normalsize\rmfamily* \small\rmfamily** \plfSfont \normalsize\rmfamily* \small\rmfamily**	\plftitle List of Figures†	\ptifont \LARGE\bfseries* \Large\bfseries**
\partlot	\pltfont \normalsize\rmfamily* \small\rmfamily** \pltSfont \normalsize\rmfamily* \small\rmfamily**	\plttitle List of Tables†	\ptifont \LARGE\bfseries* \Large\bfseries**
For the \mini... commands:*			
\minitoc	\mtcfont \small\rmfamily	\mtctitle Contents†	\mtifont \large\bfseries
\minilof	\mlffont \small\rmfamily \mlfSfont \small\rmfamily	\mlftitle Figures†	\mtifont \large\bfseries
\minilot	\mltfont \small\rmfamily \mltSfont \small\rmfamily	\mlttitle Tables†	\mtifont \large\bfseries
For the \sect... commands:**			
\secttoc	\stcfont \small\rmfamily	\stctitle Contents†	\stifont \Large\bfseries
\sectlof	\slffont \small\rmfamily \slfSfont \small\rmfamily	\slftitle Figures†	\stifont \Large\bfseries
\sectlot	\sltfont \small\rmfamily \sltSfont \small\rmfamily	\slttitle Tables†	\stifont \Large\bfseries

*for document classes with \chapter level (e.g., book, report).
**for document classes with no \chapter level (e.g., article).
†default for english; changed by the language definition files or \renewcommand.
All these fonts use \rmfamily, \upshape, and \mdseries by default.

\normalsize\bfseries by default. Section entries are typeset in the \ptcSfont font, which is \normalsize\rmfamily by default.

\ptcSSfont
\ptcSSSfont
\ptcPfont
\ptcSPfont

For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands \ptcSSfont, \ptcSSSfont, \ptcPfont, and \ptcSPfont are available (by default, \normalsize\rmfamily) if you want to use various fonts.

Table 1.6: Fonts for the mini-table entries

Level	Font	Default setting
For the \parttoc entries:		
Chapter*	\ptcCfont*	\normalsize\bfseries*
Section	\ptcSfont	\normalsize\rmfamily* \small\bfseries**
Subsection	\ptcSSfont	*(like \ptcfont)*
Subsubsection	\ptcSSSfont	*(like \ptcfont)*
Paragraph	\ptcPfont	*(like \ptcfont)*
Subparagraph	\ptcSPfont	*(like \ptcfont)*
For the \minitoc entries:*		
Section	\mtcSfont	\small\bfseries
Subsection	\mtcSSfont	*(like \mtcfont)*
Subsubsection	\mtcSSSfont	*(like \mtcfont)*
Paragraph	\mtcPfont	*(like \mtcfont)*
Subparagraph	\mtcSPfont	*(like \mtcfont)*
For the \secttoc entries:**		
Subsection	\stcSSfont	\normalsize\bfseries
Subsubsection	\stcSSSfont	*(like \stcfont)*
Paragraph	\stcPfont	*(like \stcfont)*
Subparagraph	\stcSPfont	*(like \stcfont)*

*for document classes with \chapter level (e.g., book, report).
**for document classes with no \chapter level (e.g., article).

\plffont
\pltfont
\plfSfont
\pltSfont

Partial lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts \plffont and \pltfont, which are \normalsize\rmfamily by default. There are also \plfSfont and \pltSfont for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables

\ptifont
\ptctitle
\plftitle
\plttitle
\mtcsettitle
\mtcselectlanguage

Titles are typeset in the \ptifont (\LARGE\bfseries by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by \ptctitle, \plftitle and \plttitle, which are the strings "Table of Contents", "List of Figures" and "List of Tables" by default. These title commands should be redefined by \renewcommand or \mtcsettitle for languages other than english.

The language definition files like french.mld and english.mld (and many others; for a complete list, see table 1.7 on the next page) are available. Read also section 1.4.14 on page 44. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 70). You can change the language of these titles by using the \mtcselectlanguage{*language*} macro.

Table 1.7: Available languages

- afrikaan (afrikaans)
- albanian
- arab (arabic) [c]
- arab2 [a,c]
- arabi [c,j]
- armenian [c]
- bahasai (bahasa, indon, indonesian) [c]
- bahasam (malay, meyalu) [c]
- bangla (bengali) [c]
- basque
- bicig (uighur) [c,i]
- bicig2 (uighur2) [c,i]
- bicig3 (uighur3) [c,i]
- bithe (manju) [c]
- brazil (brazilian)
- breton
- bulgarian [c]
- bulgarianb [c]
- buryat [c]
- buryat2 [c]
- catalan
- chinese1 [c,g]
- chinese2 [c,g]
- croatian
- czech
- danish
- devanagari (hindi) [c]
- dutch
- english† (american, australian, british, canadian, newzealand, UKenglish, USenglish)
- english1
- english2
- esperant (esperanto)
- estonian
- ethiopia (ethiopian) [c]
- ethiopian2 [c,e,h]
- farsi1 [c,f,g]
- farsi2 [c,f,g]
- farsi3 [c,j]
- finnish
- finnish2
- french (frenchb, frenchle, frenchpro, francais, acadien, canadien)
- french1
- french2
- galician
- german (austrian)
- germanb
- germanb2
- greek [c]
- greek-mono [c,e]
- greek-polydemo [c,e]
- greek-polykatha [c,e]
- guarani [h]
- hangul1 [c,d,g]
- hangul2 [c,d,g]
- hangul3 [c,d,g]
- hangul4 [c,d,g]
- hangul-u8 [c,e,f,g,h]
- hanja1 [c,d,g]
- hanja2 [c,d,g]
- hanja-u8 [c,e,f,g,h]
- hebrew [c,h]
- hebrew2 [c,h]
- hindi-modern [c]
- icelandic [f]
- interlingua
- irish
- italian
- italian2
- japanese [c,d,g]
- japanese2 [c,d,g]
- japanese3 [c,d,g]
- japanese4 [c,d,g]
- japanese5 [c,d,g]
- japanese6 [c,d,g]
- kannada [c]
- latin
- latin2
- latinc
- latinc2
- latvian (letton) [e]
- latvian2 (letton2) [c]
- lithuanian
- lithuanian2 [c,h]
- lowersorbian (lsorbian)
- magyar (hungarian)
- magyar2
- magyar3
- malayalam-b [c]
- malayalam-keli [c]
- malayalam-keli2 [c]
- malayalam-mr [c]
- malayalam-omega [c,e,g,h]
- malayalam-rachana [c]
- malayalam-rachana2 [c]
- malayalam-rachana3 [c]
- mexican
- mongol [c]
- mongolb (mongolian) [c,f,h]
- ngermanb (ngerman, naustrian)
- ngermanb2
- norsk
- norsk2
- nynorsk
- nynorsk2
- occitan
- occitan2
- polish
- polish2 [c,e]
- polski [c]
- portuguese (portuges)
- romanian
- romanian2
- romanian3
- russian [b,c]
- russianb [b,c]
- russianc [b,c]
- russian2m [c,e]
- russian2o [c,e]
- russian-cca [c,g,h]
- russian-cca1 [c,g,h]
- russian-lh [c,g,h]
- russian-lhcyralt [c,g,h]
- russian-lhcyrkoi [c,g,h]
- russian-lhcyrwin [c,g,h]
- samin
- scottish
- serbian
- serbianc [c]
- slovak
- slovene
- spanish (castillan, castillian)
- spanish2
- spanish3 [e,f]
- spanish4
- swahili
- swedish
- swedish2
- thai [c,d,f,g]
- turkish
- ukrainian (ukraineb) [b,c]
- uppersorbian (usorbian)
- vietnam (vietnamese) [c,d]
- welsh
- xalx (khalkha) [c]
- xalx2 [c]
- xalx3 [c]

() The languages between parentheses are aliases of a main language and their `.mld` files will load the `.mld` file of that main language.

† The presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory.

[a] The `arab(ic)` and `arab2` languages require the use of the ArabTEX package [276, 277] (by Klaus Lagally).

[b] The `russian` language is not yet supported by the babel system [60, 61], but `russianb` [286] is supported if you use babel-3.6 or a higher version; `russianc` is an extra. Look also at other `.mld` files for russian.

[c] Some languages may require specific fonts.

[d] Requires the CJK package [127, 297, 298].

[e] Requires *Lambda* (**Λ**), the version of LaTeX for Omega (**Ω**).

[f] Requires a 8-bits input encoding.

[g] Uses also a `.mlo` file.

[h] Requires a specific input encoding.

[i] The `bicig` language is also known as `uighur`.

[j] The `arabi` and `farsi3` languages require the use of the Arabi package [243].

1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables

\stcfont
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont

The section-level table of contents is typeset in the \stcfont font, which is defined as \normalsize\rmfamily by default. In fact, the font \stcfont is selected at the beginning of a secttoc, sectlof or sectlot.

More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Subsection entries are typeset in the \stcSSfont font, which is \normalsize\bfseries by default. Subsubsection entries are typeset in the \stcSSSfont font, which is \normalsize\rmfamily by default.

\stcPfont
\stcSPfont
\slffont
\sltfont
\slfSfont
\sltSfont

For paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands \stcPfont and \stcSPfont are available (by default, \normalsize\rmfamily) if you want to use various fonts. Section-level lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts \slffont and \sltfont, which are defined as \normalsize\rmfamily by default. There are also \slfSfont and \sltSfont for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables

\stifont
\stctitle
\slftitle
\slttitle
\mtcsettitle
\mtcselectlanguage

Titles are typeset in the \stifont (\normalsize\bfseries by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by \stctitle, \slftitle and \slttitle, which are the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by \renewcommand or \mtcsettitle for languages other than english.

The language definition files like french.mld and english.mld (and also many others, as listed in table 1.7 on the preceding page and explained in section 1.4.14 on page 44) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for your preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 70). You can change the language of these titles by using the \mtcselectlanguage{*language*} macro.

1.4.7 Position of the titles

1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level

\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dopartlot
\parttoc
\partlof
\partlot

By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands \doparttoc, \dopartlof and \dopartlot accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for empty (no title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one parttoc (or partlof or partlof), just use such an optional argument with the command \parttoc (or \partlof or \partlot).

1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level

\dominitoc
\dominilof
\dominilot
\minitoc
\minilof
\minilot

By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands \dominitoc, \dominilof and \dominilot accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for "empty" ("no" title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one minitoc (or minilof or minilof), just use such an optional argument with the command \minitoc (or \minilof or \minilot).

1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level

\dosecttoc
\dosectlof
\dosectlot
\secttoc
\sectlof
\sectlot

By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands \dosecttoc, \dosectlof and \dosectlot accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for empty (no title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one secttoc (or sectlof or sectlof), just use such an optional argument with the command \secttoc (or \sectlof or \sectlot).

1.4.7.4 Summary of the positionning of titles

\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dopartlot
\dominitoc
\dominilof
\dominilot
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof
\dosectlot
\mtcprepare

To summarize: by default, all titles are on the left. However, each one of the following preparation commands:

\doparttoc, \dopartlof, \dopartlot,
\dominitoc, \dominilof, \dominilot,
\dosecttoc, \dosectlof, \dosectlot,
\mtcprepare

accepts an optional argument to change the positionning of the title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, [e] or [n] for empty (no title), for all the corresponding mini-tables (for all mini-tables in the case of \mtcprepare).

\parttoc
\partlof
\partlot
\minitoc
\minilof
\minilot
\secttoc
\sectlof
\sectlot

The following insertion commands:

\parttoc, \partlof, \partlot,
\minitoc, \minilof, \minilot,
\secttoc, \sectlof, \sectlot

accept the same optional arguments, but these options change the positionning only for the title of the current mini-table.

1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables

\iftightmtc
\tightmtctrue
\tightmtcfalse

With the commands \tightmtctrue (or the tight package option) and \tightmtcfalse (or the loose package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

\parskip
\parsep

But with the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399] (scrartcl, scrbook and scrreprt), it may sometimes be necessary to use the following options or commands, because we need to set \parskip to zero in place of \parsep to tighten the mini-table. The efficiency of the following options depends on the options given to these KOMA-Script classes (parindent option, parskip option and variants). I0043

\ifktightmtc
\ktightmtctrue
\ktightmtcfalse

For the KOMA-Script classes, with the commands \ktightmtctrue (or the k-tight package option) and \ktightmtcfalse (or the k-loose package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts

\mtcsetfont
\mtcsettitlefont

To simplify the redefinition of the fonts for mini-tables, there are two useful commands:

\mtcsetfont{*mini-table*}{*sectionning-level*}{*commands*}
\mtcsettitlefont{*mini-table*}{*commands*}

For instance,

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}%
           {\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

\mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}%
           {\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

will redefine \mtcSSfont and \mlfSfont with the given font commands.

Note that \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...} allows also to redefine \ptcfont, etc.

Moreover,

```
\mtcsettitlefont{parttoc}{\Large\rmfamily\itshape\mdseries}
```

will redefine \ptifont (for titles in the parttocs, partlofs and partlofs) with the given font commands.

1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles

\mtcsettitle To simplify the redefinition of the titles for mini-tables, the \mtcsettitle command is also available:

\mtcsettitle{*mini-table*}{*title string*}

For instance,

\mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Description of contents}

will redefine \mtctitle with the given string. This command checks that you redefine a title for a mini-table type available in your document class.

1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths

\mtcsetdepth To simplify the redefinition of the depths for mini-tables, the \mtcsetdepth command is also available:

\mtcsetdepth{*mini-table*}{*depth*}

For instance,

\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{4}

will set the counter minitocdepth with the given value. This command checks that you set a depth for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its depth).

1.4.12 Simplified command for mini-table offsets

\mtcsetoffset To simplify the redefinition of the offsets for mini-tables, the \mtcsetoffset command is also available:

\mtcsetoffset{*mini-table*}{*offset*}

For instance,

```
\mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-4em}
```

will set the macro \mtcoffset to the given value. This command checks that you set a offset for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its offset).

NOTE: the argument of \mtcsetoffset is *not* verified. It must be a length value, without shrink nor stretch part. A positive offset is towards the right, a negative one towards the left.

1.4.13 Polymorphic entries in the mini-tables

The title of a sectionning command can appear in several places: a) at the beginning of the section, of the chapter or of the part; b) in the page header; c) in the main TOC; d) in the minitoc of the chapter (for a section title or lower); e) in the parttoc of the part (for a chapter title or lower). A sectionning command has two arguments: an optionnal one, *OA*, and a mandatory one, *MA*, like in:

```
\section[OA]{MA}
```

OA is taken as *MA* if omitted. Normaly, *OA* is used in the TOC and in the minitables, as in the page headers when necessary. *MA* is used as title for the sectionning unit and is the default for *OA*. But, some times, you may need to have a different version (a variant) for a sectionning unit title in a minitable. So, it is now possible to define such variants by detecting if that title is used inside some minitable: the following flags are defined (when meaningful):

Level	Flag:	for tocs,	for lofs,	for lots.
Part		\ifinparttoc	\ifinpartlof	\ifinpartlot
Chapter		\ifinminitoc	\ifinminilof	\ifinminilot
Section		\ifinsecttoc	\ifinsectlof	\ifinsectlot

But these flags are used to build three new commands, to be called from inside the optionnal argument (*OA*) of a sectionning command or that of a caption:

From *OA* of:	Command	Arg. 1	Arg. 2	Arg. 3	Arg. 4
sect. command	\mtcpolymtoc	{→parttoc}	{→minitoc}	{→secttoc}	{→main toc}
figure caption	\mtcpolymlof	{→partlof}	{→minilof}	{→sectlof}	{→main lof}
table caption	\mtcpolymlot	{→partlot}	{→minilot}	{→sectlot}	{→main lot}

Such entries are “polymorphic”. See the example `mtc-vti.tex`, section 4.36 on page 148, for a short demonstration.

1.4.14 Languages for the titles

Most of the strings defined in the language definition files (`.mld`) were taken from the superb babel package [60, 61] of Johannes L. Braams, some were adapted, others were made available by gentle users or taken from specific packages, like ArabTeX [276, 277], Arabi [243], ArmTeX (armenian) [142], BangTeX (bangla, bengali) [362], CervanTeX (spanish) [47]. Devanāgarī for TeX [364], ethiop [44], guarani [45], malayalam [4] and omal [5], MonTeX (mongol) [137, 140], CJK (chinese, korean-hangûl/hanja, japanese, thai) [127, 297, 298], polski [357, 463] (polish), SLaTeX [318] (swedish), FarsiTeX [162] (farsi or iranian), or vietnam [299] — latvian (letton), `greek-mono`, `greek-polydemo`, `greek-polykatha`, `polish2`, `russian2m`, `russian2o` and `spanish3` need *Lambda* (**Λ**), i.e., the Omega (**Ω**) version of LaTeX, (see [272]), or even found by searching on the Web (`bulgarianb.mld` for upper cyrillic bulgarian, `japanese.mld` for japanese, `serbianc.mld` for cyrillic serbian). Other languages are welcome [11]. See table 1.7 on page 38.

But for some oriental languages [12], the sources of the titles use some exotic encodings which are difficult to manipulate in a `.dtx` file, hence the `.mld` file is then just a wrapper which loads a special file, nicknamed a `.mlo` file [13], not generated by the `.dtx` file in the current version of minitoc package, but via `filecontents` environments in the `minitoc.ins` file, and playing with the “catcode” of the “delete” character.

1.4.15 Altering the layout of the mini-tables

The layout of a mini-table is described in the figure 1.2 on the next page (this figure is adapted from [469]), which defines some internal commands (these are not *dimensions*, but LaTeX commands, created by `\newcommand`, modifiable via `\renewcommand`).

- `\@dotsep`, which is the separation between the dots in the dotted line. It is a pure number expressing *math units*; 18 math units make `1em` (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. As the real size of `1em` is font dependent, the separation between the dots may vary if you use different fonts for different types of entries in the mini-tables.
- `\@pnumwidth`, is the width of the space reserved for the page number. It is a LaTeX command containing the representation of a length (e.g., `1.55em`).
- `\@tocrmarg`, is the distance (margin) between the right border of the table and the end of the dotted line. It should be larger than `\@pnumwidth`, and can be a rubber length (i.e., contain some glue, like `2.55em plus 1fil`); if you specify the

[11] I am searching for the titles in corsican, in particular.
[12] Mainly for chinese, farsi, hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, `malayalam-omega`, thai and some variants of russian.
[13] The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*.

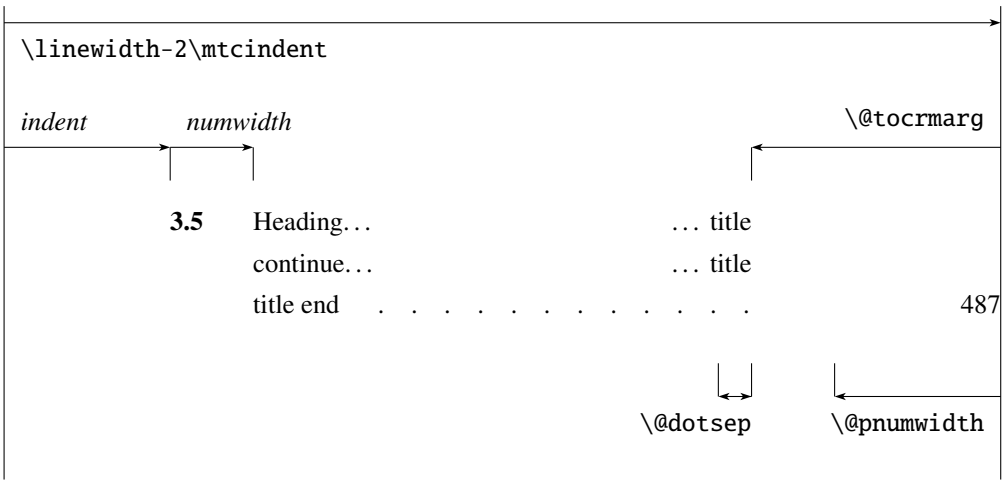


Figure 1.2: Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry

"`... plus 1fil`" portion, the text of the entry will be ragged on right; it is useful if you have long entries, and it can avoid most hyphenations.

`\mtcsetformat` As these commands are internal (their names contain the "@" character) and must have a local effect only on the specified kinds of mini-tables, you should alter them indirectly via the `\mtcsetformat` command:

`\mtcsetformat{`*mini-table*`}{`*parameter*`}{`*value*`}`

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot` keywords; *parameter* is one of the `dotinterval` (for `\@dotsep`), `pagenumwidth` (for `\@pnumwidth`), or `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) keywords; so:

```
\mtcsetformat{partlof}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
```

will set the right margin to `2.55em plus 1fil` in the lists of tables at the part level. The elasticity (`plus 1fil`) is useful if the table captions are long (it prevents most hyphenations).

Note that the `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) parameter should obviously be greater than the `pagenumwidth` parameter (this appears in the figure 1.2).

If the `dotinterval` parameter (for `\@dotsep`) is large enough (try 450, then increase or decrease), the dots of leaders will be so much spread out that they will disappear.

Table 1.8: Horizontal rules

	rules in		no rules in	defaults for book	report	article
\ptcrule	parttocs	\noptcrule	parttocs	**N**	**N**	**Y**
\plfrule	partlofs	\noplfrule	partlofs	**N**	**N**	**Y**
\pltrule	partlots	\nopltrule	partlots	**N**	**N**	**Y**
\mtcrule	minitocs	\nomtcrule	minitocs	**Y**	**Y**	**(NA)**
\mlfrule	minilofs	\nomlfrule	minilofs	**Y**	**Y**	**(NA)**
\mltrule	minilots	\nomltrule	minilots	**Y**	**Y**	**(NA)**
\stcrule	secttocs	\nostcrule	secttocs	**(NA)**	**(NA)**	**Y**
\slfrule	sectlofs	\noslfrule	sectlofs	**(NA)**	**(NA)**	**Y**
\sltrule	sectlots	\nosltrule	sectlots	**(NA)**	**(NA)**	**Y**

(NA) = not available.

Table 1.9: Page numbers

Type	Page numbers (Default)	No page numbers
parttoc	\ptcpagenumbers	\noptcpagenumbers
minitoc	\mtcpagenumbers	\nomtcpagenumbers
secttoc	\stcpagenumbers	\nostcpagenumbers
partlof	\plfpagenumbers	\noplfpagenumbers
minilof	\mlfpagenumbers	\nomlfpagenumbers
sectlof	\slfpagenumbers	\noslfpagenumbers
partlot	\pltpagenumbers	\nopltpagenumbers
minilot	\mltpagenumbers	\nomltpagenumbers
sectlot	\sltpagenumbers	\nosltpagenumbers

1.5 Special Features

1.5.1 Horizontal Rules

\mtcsetrules

By default, most of mini-tables have horizontal rules after their titles and at their ends. The exception is the "parttoc" in a book- or report-like document (i.e., when \chapter is defined). To activate or deactivate these rules, the commands of the table 1.8 are available. But you can also use the following command, which is simpler:

\mtcsetrules{*mini-table*|*}{on|off}

where *mini-table* is one of the parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof, or sectlot keywords; if the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected; the keywords on and off have the following synonyms [14]:

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

1.5.2 Page Numbers, Leaders

\mtcsetpagenumbers

By default, the page numbers are listed in each minitoc, minilof, etc. Some authors want only the section titles (with the section numbers), but without page numbers. Hence the obvious declarations of table 1.9 on the preceding page are available. But you can also use the following command:

\mtcsetpagenumbers{*mini-table*|*}{on|off}

where *mini-table* is one of the parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof, or sectlot keywords; the keywords on and off have the following synonyms [14]:

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

If the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected.

In the mini-tables, they are leaders of dots between the section titles and the page numbers. The undotted package option removes these dots. The dotted package option is the default. See also section 1.4.15 on page 44.

1.5.3 Features for parttocs and other mini-tables

By default, a parttoc (or a partlof or a partlot), in a book- or report-class document, is preceded and followed by a \cleardoublepage (which acts like \clearpage in a one-side document), and has a page style of empty. Since version #32, you can modify this behaviour by redefining the commands of table 1.10 on the following page, whose meaning is often obvious. A feature defined as \empty does nothing.

[14] O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

Table 1.10: Features for mini-tables

Type	Command	Default
parttoc	\beforeparttoc	\cleardoublepage
parttoc	\afterparttoc	\cleardoublepage
parttoc	\openparttoc	\empty
parttoc	\closeparttoc	\empty
parttoc	\thispageparttocstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
partlof	\beforepartlof	\cleardoublepage
partlof	\afterpartlof	\cleardoublepage
partlof	\openpartlof	\empty
partlof	\closepartlof	\empty
partlof	\thispagepartlofstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
partlot	\beforepartlot	\cleardoublepage
partlot	\afterpartlot	\cleardoublepage
partlot	\openpartlot	\empty
partlot	\closepartlot	\empty
partlot	\thispagepartlotstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
minitoc	\beforeminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\afterminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\openminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\closeminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\thispageminitocstyle	\empty
minilof	\beforeminilof	\empty
minilof	\afterminilof	\empty
minilof	\openminilof	\empty
minilof	\closeminilof	\empty
minilof	\thispageminilofstyle	\empty
minilot	\beforeminilot	\empty
minilot	\afterminilot	\empty
minilot	\openminilot	\empty
minilot	\closeminilot	\empty
minilot	\thispageminilotstyle	\empty
secttoc	\beforesecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\aftersecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\opensecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\closesecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\thispagesecttocstyle	\empty
sectlof	\beforesectlof	\empty
sectlof	\aftersectlof	\empty
sectlof	\opensectlof	\empty
sectlof	\closesectlof	\empty
sectlof	\thispagesectlofstyle	\empty
sectlot	\beforesectlot	\empty
sectlot	\aftersectlot	\empty
sectlot	\opensectlot	\empty
sectlot	\closesectlot	\empty
sectlot	\thispagesectlotstyle	\empty

\mtcsetfeature{*mini-table*}{before|after|open|close|pagestyle}{*command*}
Modifies the features for a mini-table.

\mtcsetfeature The command:

\mtcsetfeature{*mini-table*}{*keyword*}{*commands*}

allows you to redefine any of these commands. *mini-table* is one of the mini-table names: parttoc... sectlot. *keyword* is one of the followings: before, after, open, close or pagestyle. *commands* is either a sequence of commands like \clearpage, \cleardoublepage, \thispagestyle{...}, etc., either \empty (does nothing).

1.5.3.1 Remark about page styles [15]

\mtcsetfeature \thispagestyle \pagestyle \cleardoublepage

The default commands for part-level mini-tables page styles are defined as being simply a standard \thispagestyle{empty} command, because in document classes defining the \chapter command (like book or report), the part-level mini-tables are on their own pages. If the document is printed recto-verso, the first page is recto. Usually, these pages are not numbered and have no header and no footer. This behaviour is a consequence from the default definitions of the commands of table 1.10 on the page before. If you want an other behaviour, you can change these definitions. Note that, by default, only the *first* page of these mini-tables are in the empty page style. You can set the style of this first page by using \thispagestyle and set the style of the following pages by using \pagestyle, but you must not forget to reset the normal style after the mini-table. Look at this short theorical example [16]:

```
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{before}%
  {\cleardoublepage}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{pagestyle}%
  {\thispagestyle{empty}\pagestyle{myheadings}}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{after}%
  {\cleardoublepage\pagestyle{headings}}
```

where we add a \cleardoublepage before each parttoc, then we set the empty page style for the first page of the parttocs, the myheadings page style for the following pages of the parttocs, and set headings page style for the pages after the mini-table, after a \cleardoublepage.

1.5.4 The "Chapter 0" Problem (solved)

Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number).

[15] This remark is taken and adapted from a draft of the second edition of the JMPL [29], by Benjamin Bayart, where he comments the minitoc package.

[16] This example shows that the third argument can be a *sequence* of commands: we set the style of the current page and the style of the following pages.

\firstpartis
\addtocounter
\dominitoc
\firstchapteris
\firstsectionis

Before version #23 (1994/11/08) To make the minitoc package work with such documents, you must insert the command:

```
\firstchapteris{⟨N⟩}
```

before the \dominitoc and analogous commands. ⟨*N*⟩ is the number of the first chapter. This command *does not* modify the numbering of chapters, you must use a

```
\addtocounter{chapter}{-1}
```

command to get a first chapter numbered 0. The \firstpartis and \firstsectionis commands are similar for parts and sections with a non standard numbering.

Since version #23 (1994/11/08) These commands are now obsolete, as this problem has been solved (via the "absolute" numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files). Thus now they just produce harmless warnings.

W0003 W0004 W0005

1.5.5 Special Entries in the TOC

If you want to add entries in the Table of Contents for objects like the Table of Contents itself, the List of Figures, the List of Tables, the Bibliography or the Index, you should use the tocbibind package [472] by Peter R. Wilson (package available from the CTAN archives).

I0046

\dominitoc

But these entries are considered as chapters (or sections in an article class document) when the .toc file is scanned to prepare the minitocs (the \dominitoc phase).

Note that the same problems appear if you use one of the scrbook, scrreprt or scrartcl KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399] with some options (liststotoc, liststotocnumbered, bibtotoc, bibtotocnumbered, and idxtotoc). The solutions are the same ones.

I0043

\mtcaddchapter
\tableofcontents
\listoffigures
\listoftables

So you must add an \mtcaddchapter command, *without argument*, after each of the involved commands \tableofcontents, \listoffigures, and \listoftables.

\adjustmtc
\bibliography

For the bibliography, you should add a \adjustmtc command after the \bibliography command.

\printglossary
\addcontentsline
\mtcaddchapter
\mtcfixglossary

For the glossary, it is a bit more complicated, you should add the following commands just after the \printglossary command:

```
\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
\addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
\mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:


```
\mtcfixglossary[chapter|section|part]
```

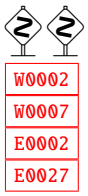
where the optional argument is the level for the glossary entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. You *must* check the result and, if necessary, adjust the optional argument.

`\printindex` `\addcontentsline` `\mtcaddchapter` `\mtcfixindex`

For the index, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the `\printindex` command:

```
\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
\addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
\mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:




```
\mtcfixindex[chapter|section|part]
```

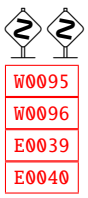
where the optional argument is the level for the index entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. You *must* check the result and, if necessary, adjust the optional argument.

`\printnomenclature` `\addcontentsline` `\mtcaddchapter` `\mtcfixnomenclature`

For the nomenclature [17], it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the `\printnomenclature` command:

```
\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
\addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
\mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:




```
\mtcfixnomenclature[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the nomenclature entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. You *must* check the result and, if necessary, adjust the optional argument.

[17] If you are using the nomencl package [456] or the nomentbl package [161] (nomentbl calls nomencl).

Of course, in documents were the TOC, LOF, LOT, bibliography and/or glossary (or index or nomenclature) are processed as starred sections, you must modify these additions to use section level commands.

And proceed *with extreme care*, tracking in the *document*`.log` file the insertion of `.mtc`⟨*N*⟩ files (and siblings). They are some examples in the `mtc-add.tex` (see section 4.4 on page 96), `mtc-ads.tex` (see section 4.5 on page 100), and `mtc-nom.tex` (see section 4.26 on page 136) files distributed with minitoc. The `mtc-ads.tex` example shows how much that problem is difficult.

1.6 The `notoccite` option

`\cite` This option loads the notoccite package [14] (by Donald Arseneau). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectionning commands or captions: if you then run BibTeX using the `unsrt` (unsorted) style, or a similar style, these citations get numbered starting from the page in the table of contents where is the parasite citation, not the number they should have in the main text. The notoccite package prevents this. As minitoc prints TOCs, it is subject to the same problem. See also http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=bibtocorder.

1.7 The `listfiles` and `nolistfiles` options

The `listfiles` package option creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files into the file *document*`.maf`[18]. This feature can help you to remove these auxiliary files which are no more necessary after the LaTeX run. Under Unix or Linux, you can try:

```
cat document.maf | xargs -i -t \rm {}
```

1.8 The `hints` option

This package option detects some actions and the loading of some packages and classes known as interacting with minitoc, and also some frequent misuses and errors. This list of interacting packages and classes is, of course, not closed. If a known package is loaded, this option writes some hints in the *document*`.log` file and emits a warning. The hints written in the *document*`.log` file may suggest you to consult the present document or the `minitoc.bug` file. *Your advice about this option will be welcome.* This option is activated by default, but you can inhibit it via the `nohints` option. The following (potential) problems are currently detected:

[18] This package option is now (since version #48) the default (list created).

\part
\@part
\spart
\@spart
\chapter
\@chapter
\schapter
\@schapter
\section
\@sect
\@ssect

- Alteration of some of the following commands [19]: \part, \@part, \@spart, \chapter, \@chapter, \@schapter, \section, \@sect, and \@ssect. Note that the hyperref (see section 2.17 on page 62) package alters these commands at \begin{document}, hence this problem might be reported if you use this package, but these alterations seem harmless. Note that the hyperref must be loaded *before* minitoc.
- Presence of the following packages or classes, which need some precautions: amsbook (class), memoir (class), appendix, placeins (beware to its options and its release date (2005/04/18 at least)), scrbook (class), scrreprt (class), scrartcl (class), tocbibind, and tocloft.

W0026 W0027 W0025 W0097 W0029 W0040 W0099

- Presence of the following packages or classes, which, unfortunately, are *incompatible* with the minitoc package: amsart (class), amsproc (class), alphanum, flowfram [20], jura (class), titlesec, and titletoc [21].

\parttoc
\doparttoc
\sectlot
\dosectlot

- Usage of \parttoc without calling \doparttoc, ... , usage of \sectlot without calling \dosectlot; or the reverse.

Usage of \parttoc without calling \[fake]tableofcontents, ... , of \sectlot without calling \[fake]listoftables.

\tableofcontents
\listoftables

Usage of \sectlof and/or \sectlot without using the insection package option of minitoc (or the placeins package without its section option).

W0056

\sectlof
\sectlot

- If you are using short extensions (because of your operating system or the shortext package option, see section 1.9 on the following page) and go beyond the limit of 99 parts, chapters or sections, the hints package option displays a warning.

W0053 W0054 W0055

\mtcaddchapter
\mtcaddsection

- If the abstract package [470] (by Peter R. Wilson), is used with its addtotoc option, a "Abstract" entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines \chapter, else as a starred section. This is detected and you should add a \mtcaddchapter[] or a \mtcaddsection[] command after your abstract environment.

I0040

- If the sectsty package [319] (by Rowland McDonnell) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. The interaction has been pointed out by Bil Kleb.

W0037

- If the varsects package [437] (by Daniel Taupin†) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package.

W0038

- If the fncychap package [301] (by Ulf A. Lindgren) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package.

W0086

- If the hangcaption package [250] (by David M. Jones) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package.

W0092

- If the quotchap package [442] (by Karsten Tinnefeld) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package.

W0087

[19] The commands containing the "@" character in their names are internal commands of LaTeX, of a package or of a class; they are sometimes altered by another packages; reconsider then the loading order of the packages.

[20] This package has its own system for minitocs.

[21] The titlesec package redefines the sectionning commands in a way completely alien to the standard LaTeX way; hence minitoc and titlesec-titletoc are fundamentaly *incompatible*, and it is very sad.

- If the romannum package [480] (by Peter R. Wilson) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0088
- If the sfheaders package [304] (by Maurizio Loreti) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0089
- If the alnumsec package [274] (by Frank Küster) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0090
- If the captcont package [131] (by Steven Douglas Cochran) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0091
- If one of the caption [421, 422, 424], caption2[22] [423], (both written by Axel Sommerfeldt), ccaption [474] (written by Peter R. Wilson), or mcaption [228] (written by Stephan Hennig), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0033 W0034 W0035 W0036
- If one of the float [302], floatrow [285], trivfloat [484], or rotfloat [420] packages is used, you must remember that *you can not use* the minitoc facilities for preparing mini-tables of floats of the new defined types. I0053
- If you try to insert empty mini-tables, the `hints` option gives a global warning (except if you used also the `nocheckfiles` option, see section 1.3.3 on page 29). I0006

`\firstpartis` `\firstchapteris` `\firstsectionis`

- If you use one of the obsolete commands (`\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, or `\firstsectionis`), a warning is issued for each use, of course, but also a global hint as reminder. W0003 W0004 W0005
- If you invoke a same preparation command more than once, an informative hint is issued for each spurious invocation.

1.9 Usage with MS-DOS

Under MS-DOS (and other PC oriented old operating systems), the filename extensions are limited to 3 characters. The minitoc package determines dynamically the type of extensions available and will use it. All other modifications will be done automatically. The `.mtc`⟨*N*⟩ extensions will become `.M`⟨*N*⟩, where ⟨*N*⟩ is the absolute chapter number. The extensions `.mlf`⟨*N*⟩ and `.mlt`⟨*N*⟩ become `.F`⟨*N*⟩ and `.T`⟨*N*⟩. The `.ptc`⟨*N*⟩ extensions become `.P`⟨*N*⟩, where ⟨*N*⟩ is the absolute part number. The extensions `.plf`⟨*N*⟩ and `.plt`⟨*N*⟩ become `.G`⟨*N*⟩ and `.U`⟨*N*⟩. The `.stc`⟨*N*⟩ extensions become `.S`⟨*N*⟩, where ⟨*N*⟩ is the absolute section number. The extensions `.slf`⟨*N*⟩ and `.slt`⟨*N*⟩ become `.H`⟨*N*⟩ and `.V`⟨*N*⟩. All these extensions are listed in table 1.11 on the following page. Of course, this implies a limit of 99 chapters in a document, but do you really need so many chapters (or sections in an article)? The limit of 99 parts does not seem too serious for most documents, but for sections, it could be tragical. The `hints` option (section 1.8 on page 52) will report such situations. See also section 2.5 on page 58. W0053 W0054 W0055

[22] This package is obsolete; now use the caption package.

Table 1.11: Extensions of the auxiliary files

mini-table	**long extensions** (UNIX, etc.)	**short extensions** (MS-DOS, etc,)
parttoc	`.ptc`⟨*N*⟩	`.P`⟨*N*⟩
partlof	`.plf`⟨*N*⟩	`.G`⟨*N*⟩
partlot	`.plt`⟨*N*⟩	`.U`⟨*N*⟩
minitoc	`.mtc`⟨*N*⟩	`.M`⟨*N*⟩
minilof	`.mlf`⟨*N*⟩	`.F`⟨*N*⟩
minilot	`.mlt`⟨*N*⟩	`.T`⟨*N*⟩
secttoc	`.stc`⟨*N*⟩	`.S`⟨*N*⟩
sectlof	`.slf`⟨*N*⟩	`.H`⟨*N*⟩
sectlot	`.slt`⟨*N*⟩	`.V`⟨*N*⟩

1.10 Why several LaTeX runs are required?

The mini-tables, at part, chapter and section levels, are using some space on the first pages on each chapter, part or section, thus the page numbers are altered. After the first LaTeX run, the mini-tables and lists, partial tables and lists and section-level tables and lists will be empty (in fact skipped since version #35); after the second run, they appear (if not empty), but because they modify the page numbering, page numbers are wrong; after the third LaTeX run, the mini, part- and section-level tables and lists should be correct (see figure 2.1 on page 59).

1.11 The mtcoff package

If a document has been prepared with the minitoc package, it contains many minitoc specific commands, most of them being `\dominitoc`, `\faketableofcontents`, and `\minitoc` commands (and their equivalents for lists of figures and tables). If you want to typeset this document without any mini-table, you have just to replace the minitoc package by the mtcoff package (without option), and all these commands will be ignored, eventually writing warning messages in the *document*`.log` file. At least two LaTeX runs will be necessary to get a correct page numbering and cross references. It also sanitizes the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files from minitoc specific commands which are now spurious.

Chapter 2

Frequently Asked Questions

Contents

Figures

Tables

2.0 Introduction

Here is a list of problems and frequently asked questions about the minitoc.sty package. If the version has a number less than 61, please upgrade to version #61. This list is also given in the `minitoc.bug` file, in pure text form. The numbering of this list is done by date of the first occurrence of the question.

If a problem arises, it is often wise to: a) use the `hints` option (see section 1.8 on page 52), which is activated by default, and b) read the *document*`.log` file, which may contain pertinent messages. If you do not find a solution, ask a question on an adequate news group, like `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) or `comp.text.tex` (in english) preferably, groups which I try to follow, or send me a mail in last ressort (please join a minimal but complete example [384, 432] [1] (or "MCE") reproducing the problem; this example should use the `hints` option).

[1] See also: http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=minxampl and http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=askquestion for good advices.

2.1 Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table

\enlargethispage

This problem seemed solved since version #8, but version #12 added better fixes. You may have to make some final tuning with `\enlargethispage`. See the LaTeX manual [279]. The needspace package [468] may also be useful.

2.2 Implementing others layouts for a mini-table

Suggestions are welcome, but look at the section 1.4.15 on page 44. There are yet some examples in chapter 4 on page 90, for some layouts, like mini-tables on two or three columns.

2.3 A "\\" command in a contents line makes an error

\\
\protect
\linebreak

Use `\protect\linebreak`. The `\\` command should be used only in tabular material (`tabular` environment and similar, or in the `tabbing` environment) and in math arrays and equations, or in the `quote`-like environments.

2.4 Reordering chapters makes havoc

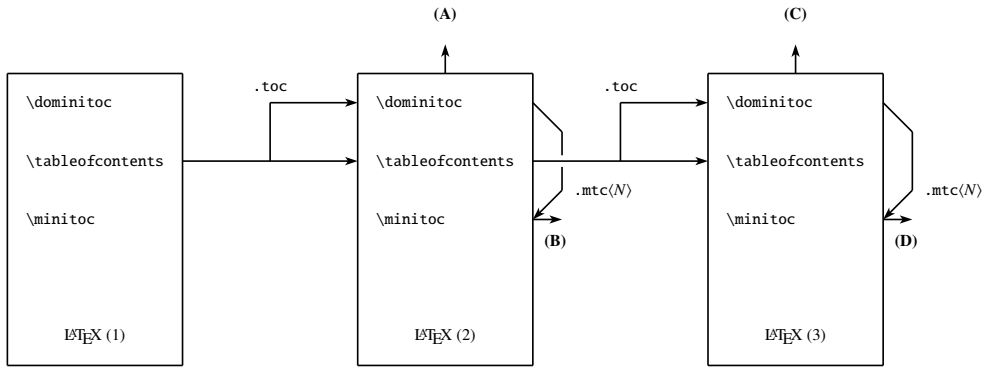
If you reorder chapters, havoc follows... mini-tables going in wrong chapters.

The best way seems to make one run with the mtcoff package replacing the minitoc package, then restore the minitoc package and re-execute LaTeX at least three times (yes, it is time consuming...). See figure 2.1 on the next page[2]. Running with the mtcoff package ensures that the standard auxiliary files are cleared from "spurious" commands introduced by minitoc. A more radical solution is to delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files relative to the document, then re-execute LaTeX at least three times.

2.5 Extensions for the names of auxiliary files

This package creates auxiliary files with extensions like `.mtc`⟨*N*⟩*. Some operating systems allow only 3 characters extensions. What to do?*

[2] I used the pict2e package [178], by Hubert Gässlein, Rolf Niepraschk and Josef Tkadlec, to prepare this figure.



(A) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is likely inaccurate.

(B) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are likely inaccurate.

(C) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is accurate.

(D) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are accurate.

Figure 2.1: Three compilations for minitoc

No modification is needed: all became automatic since version #28! If you insist to use 3 characters extensions, even on operating systems allowing more, just use the package option `shortext`. Then you will get first the autoconfiguration messages, then a message saying that you will use short extensions. But then be careful to not have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind (even empty)!

W0053
W0054
W0055

2.6 Playing with the chapter number

`\setcounter` `\chapter`

Do not cheat with the "`chapter`" counter, i.e., do not write ugly things like:

```
\setcounter{chapter}{6}
```

The mechanism would break. It is better to add `\chapter` commands, to create empty (but numbered in a legal way) chapters. Since version #10, the minitoc package works with appendices. Version #19 allows to begin with a chapter other that number 1. And look at "Special Entries in the TOC", section 1.5.5 on page 50.

Since version #23 (1994/11/08), the numbering of chapters and that of minitocs are independent, so that problem just vanished.

The same remarks apply to the `part` and `section` counters.

2.7 Supported document classes

The minitoc package is restricted to document classes which define chapters in the standard way, like "book" and "report", or sections in the standard way, like "article" [282]. There are "parttocs" if the document class defines the `\part` command. Note that classes like "letter" [283], which have not the classical sectionning structure, cannot be supported. Classes using sectionning commands with other names are not supported [3]. See also section 2.24 on page 66.

W0017

2.8 Compatibility with LaTeX versions

Some users have failed to make minitoc to work. They got a message like:

W0021

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0021
Undefined command ... \@inputcheck ...
Your version of latex.tex is obsolete. Trying to continue...
```

or:

W0022

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0022
Undefined command ... \reset@font ...
Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

The `\reset@font` command has been added to `latex.tex` on September 29th, 1991 and the `\@inputcheck` command on March 18th, 1992 and this version of `latex.tex` has been released on March 25th, 1992. If you get this message, you have an old version of `latex.tex`. Get a recent one from the archives (or a recent distribution) and regenerate a `latex.fmt` format via `initex` (or your configuration tool).

2.9 Other mini-tables

Some demanding users want to have minilof, minilot and minibbl (mini-bibliographies per part, chapter or section). First, "minibbl" is another problem, strongly related to the BibTeX's dealing with `.aux` files. Look at the chapterbib [19], bibunits [210], multibib [211], bibtopic [25], and splitbib [314] packages. Version #13 has implemented basic minilofs and minilots. Minibbls are not the aim of this package[4].

[3] This would be very difficult: any user can create new sectionning commands (often with the help from some packages) with standard or new names; this is only limited by the imagination. The minitoc package relies on the names of the standard sectionning commands and on the syntax of these commands.

[4] See http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=multbib

2.10 Why so many auxiliary files?

This package creates a lot of auxiliary files and some users have argued that it is too many. A deep redesign would be necessary to avoid that. Using only one big auxiliary file (or one for all minitocs, one for all minilofs, ...) would make the reading of such file very slow, as it would be read for each `\miniXXX` macro! Moreover, this would make the `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 29) package option impractical to implement. Note that the many files `*.mtc*`, etc., may be deleted after the LaTeX run. They are rebuilt by the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc` and siblings). But, since version #35, minitoc is able to detect and skip empty `*.mtc*` files (and siblings) to avoid ugly titles with just two thin rules. It would not be easy to do with only one big auxiliary file. Since version #44, the `listfiles` package option is available to create a list of these auxiliary files; see section 1.7 on page 52.

These files contain the mini-tables extracted from the `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files. They are no more useful after the LaTeX run. If you run LaTeX via a script or a "makefile", it may be useful to add to it a cleaning feature (which should be optional, to allow debugging). The table 1.11 on page 55 gives the list of the extensions for these files (note that a *document*`.mtc` auxiliary file is also created as a scratch file).

As an example, you can look at the rubber tool [34] (written in Python) provided by Emmanuel Beffara:

http://iml.univ-mrs.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/

2.11 Mini-tables at levels other than chapter

Here also, some redesign was needed. From version #15, there are parttocs, partlofs and partlots for the part level in book|report-like and article-like documents, secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots for the section level in article-like documents. Note that you can not have minitocs features at chapter and section level in the same document, because doing so would make an almost unreadable monster. The user must choose the main class of the document according to the size of it (e.g., do not write an article of more than 100 sections: this is a report, or even a book!).

	part	chapter	section
book	*	*	
report	*	*	
article	*		*

2.12 Incompatibility with LaTeX2.09

\protect
\contentsline

The more recent version of LaTeX 2$_\varepsilon$ adds `\protect` before `\contentsline` in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lof` files. The version #17 of minitoc attempts to be compatible with LaTeX 2$_\varepsilon$ and LaTeX2.09. This will be the *last* version usable with LaTeX2.09. Versions #18 and later are LaTeX 2$_\varepsilon$ specific, and no more compatible with LaTeX2.09, which is completely obsolete.

2.13 Documents resetting the chapter number at each part

Since version #23, minitoc works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (or chapter). This is possible because the auxiliary files for the mini-tables have now an *absolute* number.

2.14 The mini-tables have too much spaced lines

From version #29, you can have tight mini-tables with the `tight` option, and with the `k-tight` option for the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399] (since version #43).

2.15 The secttocs are wrong

Secttocs did not work: corrected (version #38).

2.16 Removing the lines of dots

The lines of dots (leaders) between section titles and page numbers are removed by the `undotted` option (#29). See also section 1.4.15 on page 44.

2.17 Using the hyperref package with minitoc

Since version #31, minitoc works correctly with the powerful hyperref package [390], thanks to Heiko Oberdiek, using the work of Bernd Jaehne, Didier Verna and A. J. "Tony" Roberts. *Hence the minitoc-hyper package [454] is now obsolete and should no more be used. It it still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.* If you add the loading of the hyperref package to a document yet using minitoc, you will get error message about spurious closing braces. Just let finish the LaTeX run, then re-LaTeX the document. There will

be no problem if you remove the loading of hyperref and add it again: the problem occurs only when upgrading from minitoc #30 to minitoc #31 (or higher) with a document already processed and adding hyperref at the same time! It seems better to process the document with minitoc #31 (or higher) without hyperref, then with hyperref, because some internal commands written into the auxiliary files have been modified. If used, the hyperref package must be loaded *before* minitoc. Note that the documents `minitoc.dtx` and `minitoc-fr.dtx` show (not so) basic examples of the use of the hyperref package with minitoc.

2.18 Problem while upgrading minitoc

If upgrading from version #30 or lower to version #31 or higher, you should delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof`, `.lot` files of the document, else the first LaTeX run with version #31 or higher will produce a lot of errors (the next run should be ok). See also the section 2.17 on the preceding page.

2.19 A local TOC for the set of appendices

\doparttoc
\tableofcontents
\appendix
\part
\parttoc
\addtocontents
\protect
\setcounter
\chapter
\partbegin

Some users need a table of contents for the appendices, but without putting the entries of it into the main table of contents. The solution is to put the appendices in a `\part` subdivision of the document and ask for a table of contents at the `\part` level:

```
\doparttoc           % after \begin{document}
. . .
\tableofcontents
. . .
\appendix
\part{Appendices}    % create a part level subdivision
\parttoc             % create a local table of contents
% To suppress the appendix part in the main toc
\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{-1}}
\chapter{First appendix}
. . .
% Add this at the end of appendices if there is something
% after the appendices (like an index or a bibliography)
% to put a bound to the contents of \parttoc
\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}
```

See also section 2.25 on page 67.

2.20 Use with the appendix package

\addcontentsline
\adjustmtc
\adjuststc
appendices

I0042

If you use the appendix package [471] (by Peter R. Wilson), you will observe a serious problem with minitocs in the appendices environment (and after it): they do not match with their respective appendices. In fact, the environnement opening \begin{appendices} hides a \addcontentsline command for a chapter or a section, putting trouble in the numbering of minitocs or secttocs. Several solutions are available. The first one is to add a \adjustmtc or \adjuststc command (depending on the level of the appendices, chapter or section) after *each* \begin{appendices} command. An other solution is to add the following commands in the preamble *after* the loading of the appendix package:

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjustmtc}
```

if appendices are at the chapter level, OR:

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjuststc}
```

if appendices are at the section level.

These two solutions may be modified by replacing \adjustmtc by the sequence:

```
\addtocontents{toc}{\chapterend}
OR
\addtocontents{toc}{\sectend}
```

when it is necessary to delimit the end of the preceding chapter or section [5].

A rather more elegant solution is to add an entry into the TOC via the \addappheadtotoc command offered by the appendix package. As this entry is a chapter-level (or section-level) entry, it delimits correctly the end of the preceding chapter or section.

See also the mtc-amm.tex example file (section 4.6 on page 105), which uses the memoir class [479, 481, 482], which includes itself the appendix package functionnality (these packages and this class are from the same author).

2.21 Use with the tocloft package

\mtcsetfont

I0047

(This answer is given in the documentation of the tocloft package [469].) The tocloft (by Peter R. Wilson) and minitoc packages have an unfortunate interaction [6], which fortunately

[5] In fact, the commands \partend, \chapterend and \sectend should not be used directly by the user, in normal circumstances.

[6] Discovered by Lyndon Dudding.

can be fixed. In the normal course of events, when minitoc is used in a chaptered document it will typeset section entries in the minitocs in bold font. If tocloft is used in conjunction with minitoc, then the minitoc section entries are typeset in the normal font, except for the page numbers which are in bold font, while the ToC section entries are all in normal font.

One cure, if you want the minitoc section entries to be all in normal small font, is to put:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\normalfont\small}
```

or:

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
```

in the preamble.

Otherwise, the cure is the following incantation:

```
\renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\bfseries}
\renewcommand{\cftsecleader}{\bfseries\cftdotfill{\cftdotsep}}
\renewcommand{\cftsecpagefont}{\bfseries}
```

To have the section entries in both the ToC and the minitocs in bold then put the incantation in the preamble. To have only the minitoc section entries in bold while the ToC entries are in the normal font, put the incantation between the `\tableofcontents` command and the first `\chapter` command.

As tocloft is a very powerful and useful package, these cures are worth to be added if you need the benefits of this package. See also section 2.22.

2.22 Use with the memoir class

E0028
I0020
I0027
I0030
I0032
I0044
M0001

The memoir class [479, 481, 482] offers basically the functionnalities of the appendix, tocbibind and tocloft packages (this class and these packages have the same author, Peter R. Wilson), hence it has the same problems; see above the available solutions (sections 2.20 on the preceding page, 1.5.5 on page 50, and 2.21 on the preceding page respectively). If your version of the memoir class is recent, the syntax of the `\chapter` command is different and the memoir class *could be no more compatible* with the minitoc package, but a patch is inserted to fix the problem. Hopefully, if your version of the memoir class is more recent than 2005/09/25, the patch is no more necessary.

If you are using the memoir class (or the tocloft package), the `\mtcsetfont` command has no effect (`\mtcsettitlefont` works); you should use the font commands which are specific of the memoir class (or of the tocloft package).

If you still want to use the \mtcsetfont commands while using the memoir class (or of the tocloft package), you must disable the memoir/tocloft font commands. This is done by the following commands:

```
\let\cftpartfont\relax
\let\cftchapterfont\relax
\let\cftsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftsubparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftfigurefont\relax
\let\cftsubfigurefont\relax
\let\cfttablefont\relax
\let\cftsubtablefont\relax
```

2.23 There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths

\mtcsetfont
\mtcsettitlefont

Since version #41, the \mtcsetfont and \mtcsettitlefont commands are available. You do not need anymore to know \mtcSSSfont, \ptifont, etc.

\mtcsettitle

Since version #42, the \mtcsettitle command is available. You do not need anymore to know \mtctitle, \slttitle, etc.

\mtcsetdepth

Since version #43, the \mtcsetdepth command is available. You do not need anymore to know the counters minitocdepth, sectlotdepth, etc.

2.24 Compatibility with the $\mathcal{AMS}$ document classes

This problem has been pointed out by Henri Massias.

\mtcaddchapter

Unfortunately, the amsart and amsproc document classes are *incompatible* with minitoc. The amsbook document class requires the insertion of commands if you want a list of figures and/or a list of tables:

W0026
W0027
I0041

```
\listoffigures
\mtcaddchapter % added
\listoftables
\mtcaddchapter % added
```

2.25 Hiding some entries from the main table of contents

mtchideinmaintoc

It is a problem similar to that of section 2.19 on page 63. An example is having a local table of contents for a chapter (\minitoc) whose entries should not appear in the main table of contents. Just use the mtchideinmaintoc environment:

```
\chapter{Title}
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[level]
\minitoc
\section{sub-title}
...
\end{mtchideinmaintoc}
```

This environment accepts an optional numeric argument, which is the depth of hiding in the main toc (default: -1, complete hiding). You can look at the mtc-apx.tex example file:

```
⟨*mtc-apx⟩
\documentclass[oneside]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-apx.tex}%
  [2007/03/22]%
\usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
\usepackage{tocbibind} % adds some entries in the main TOC.
\usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
\setcounter{minitocdepth}{3} \setcounter{parttocdepth}{3}
\begin{document}
\doparttoc \dominitoc % prepare the mini-tables
\tableofcontents
\mtcaddchapter % because tocbibind adds a chapter entry in the TOC
\chapter{First}
\minitoc
First chapter
\section{First section} \lipsum[1]
\section{Second section} \lipsum[2]
\chapter{Second}
\minitoc
Second
\section{First section of second chapter} \lipsum[3]
\section{Second section of second chapter} \lipsum[4]
\appendix      % begins the appendices
\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{Appendices} % adds a part entry in the TOC
\adjustptc     % fixes the parttoc counter ptc
\mtcsettitle{parttoc}{List of Appendices} % changes the parttoc title
\parttoc       % adds a partial toc for the appendices
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1] % hides the details of the appendices in the main TOC,
%              % but chapter-level entries would be still visible in the main TOC
%              % if you use 0 in place of -1 as optional argument.
\chapter{First appendix}
\minitoc
First appendix
\section{First section} \lipsum[5]
```

```
\section{Second section} \lipsum[6]
\chapter{Second appendix}
\minitoc
Second appendix
\section{First section of second appendix} \lipsum[7]
\section{Second section of second appendix} \lipsum[8]
\end{mtchideinmaintoc} % end of hiding
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-apx⟩
```

`mtchideinmainlof` `mtchideinmainlot`

Of course, the environments `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` are also available, to hide some entries in the main list of figures or of tables.

Note that the position of the end of these environments must be adjusted to include a page break (like the one done by a `\chapter` command), else the restore command might be inserted too early into the `.toc`, `.lof` or `.lot` file. There is an example file (`mtc-hi1.tex`):

```
⟨*mtc-hi1⟩
\documentclass{report}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-hi1.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]%
\usepackage%
  [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\dominilof \listoffigures
\dominilot \listoftables
\chapter{First}
\minilof \minilot
\begin{figure}
\caption{AAAA1}
\end{figure}
\begin{figure}
\caption{AAAA2}
\end{figure}
\begin{table}
\caption{TAAAA1}
\end{table}
\begin{table}
\caption{TAAAA2}
\end{table}
\chapter{Second}
\minilof \minilot
%%----------------------
```

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

```
\begin{mtchideinmainlof}
\begin{mtchideinmainlot}
\begin{figure}
\caption{BBBB1}
\end{figure}
\begin{figure}
\caption{BBBB2}
\end{figure}
\begin{table}
\caption{TBBBB1}
\end{table}
\begin{table}
\caption{TBBBB2}
\end{table}
\chapter{Third}
```

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

```
\end{mtchideinmainlot}
\end{mtchideinmainlof}
%%----------------------
\minilof \minilot
\begin{figure}
\caption{CCCC1}
```

```
\end{figure}
\begin{figure}
\caption{CCCC2}
\end{figure}
\begin{table}
\caption{TCCCC1}
\end{table}
\begin{table}
\caption{TCCCC2}
\end{table}
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-hi1⟩
```

\mtchideinmainlof
\mtchideinmainlot
\endmtchideinmainlof
\endmtchideinmainlot

But it is also possible to use *commands* in place of these environments: you place a \mtchideinmainlof (or \mtchideinmainlot) command in the first figure (or table) to hide, *before* its caption and a \endmtchideinmainlof (or \endmtchideinmainlot) command at the end of the last figure (or table) to hide, *after* its caption, like in this example file (mtc-hi2.tex):

```
⟨*mtc-hi2⟩
\documentclass{report}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-hi2.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage%
  [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\dominilof \listoffigures
\dominilot \listoftables
\chapter{First}
\minilof \minilot
\begin{figure}
\caption{AAAA1}
\end{figure}
\begin{figure}
\caption{AAAA2}
\end{figure}
\begin{table}
\caption{TAAAA1}
\end{table}
\begin{table}
\caption{TAAAA2}
\end{table}
\chapter{Second}
\minilof \minilot
```

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *before* the caption of the first "hidden" entry.

```
\begin{figure}
\mtchideinmainlof    % <--
\caption{BBBB1}
\end{figure}
\begin{figure}
\caption{BBBB2}
\endmtchideinmainlof % <--
\end{figure}
\begin{table}
\mtchideinmainlot    % <--
\caption{TBBBB1}
\end{table}
```

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *after* the caption of the *last* "hidden" entry.

```
\begin{table}
\caption{TBBBB2}
\endmtchideinmainlot % <--
\end{table}
\chapter{Third}
\minilof \minilot
\begin{figure}
\caption{CCCC1}
\end{figure}
\begin{figure}
\caption{CCCC2}
\end{figure}
```

```
\begin{table}
\caption{TCCCC1}
\end{table}
\begin{table}
\caption{TCCCC2}
\end{table}
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-hi2⟩
```

This method, recommended while more delicate to apply, is much more reliable in delimiting the hiding domain: it solves the problem of the asynchronism between the writing of floats and the writing of the normal text.

2.26 Defining your own `.mld` file

`\mtcsettitle` `\mtcselectlanguage`

First, you should not directly modify one of the distributed `.mld` and `.mlo` files. The simplest way to alter some title is to redefine the corresponding command via `\renewcommand` or better via `\mtcsettitle`. If you really want to have your own `.mld` file, you copy an existing `.mld` file into one with a new name (not the name of a distributed `.mld` file). Then you modify this new `.mld` file and you can use it via `\mtcselectlanguage`. You can always contact me to add this new `.mld` file to the distribution. These remarks apply also to the *language*`[.mld-.mlo]` pairs of language definition files.

2.27 Use with the abstract package

`\mtcaddchapter` `\mtcaddsection` `\chapter` `abstract`

If the abstract package [470] (by Peter R. Wilson), is used with its `addtotoc` option, a "Abstract" entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines `\chapter`, else as a starred section. This problem is detected by the `hints` option and you should add a `\mtcaddchapter[]` or a `\mtcaddsection[]` command after your `abstract` environment. I0040

2.28 Use with the sectsty package

If the sectsty package [319] (by Rowland McDonnell) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem. W0037

2.29 Strange alignment in the minitocs

In minitocs, subsections titles are not aligned with sections, as they are in the main table of contents.

\l@part
\l@chapter
\l@section
\l@subsection
\l@subsubsection
\l@paragraph
\l@subparagraph
\renewcommand
\@dottedtocline
\mtcsetfont
\mtcSfont
\mtcSSfont
\mtcSSSfont
\mtcPfont
\mtcSPfont

The entries of a table of contents are formatted via internal commands like `\l@part`, `\l@chapter`, `\l@section`, etc.

The "part" and "chapter" levels (and "section" for an article) use specific commands which are somewhat complex for a more elaborated formatting. For the "section" (in the report and book classes) and lower levels, these commands are (book class, `book.cls`) by default:

```
\renewcommand*\l@section{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
\renewcommand*\l@subsection{\@dottedtocline{2}{3.8em}{3.2em}}
\renewcommand*\l@subsubsection{\@dottedtocline{3}{7.0em}{4.1em}}
\renewcommand*\l@paragraph{\@dottedtocline{4}{10em}{5em}}
\renewcommand*\l@subparagraph{\@dottedtocline{5}{12em}{6em}}
```

which will be applied in the main table of contents and in the minitocs. The arguments of `\@dottedtocline` are

1) the logical depth (which will be compared to `tocdepth` or `minitocdepth`).
2) the indentation.
3) the width reserved for the section/subsection/... number.

In the standard book, report and article classes [282], the dimensions (second and third arguments) are given in "em" units, and this unit depends on the current font. In the main table of contents, the section and subsection entries are witten in the *same* font, hence usually the alignment is correct. But in the minitocs, the section entries are written in a bold font while the subsection entries are written in a non bold font (the default font choices are given in table 1.6 on page 37), hence one "em" has different sizes in these two fonts and the alignement is changed.

There are several solutions:

- Redefine the `\l@section` ... `\l@subparagraph` commands to use font independent units (pt, mm, pc, etc.). This redefinition must be performed in a package or via a command defined by a package or between `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`, because these commands have a `@` in their names; you must use `\renewcommand*` to redefine these commands.
- Use the tocloft package [469] to change the indentation, with font independent units. But then see *also* section 2.21 on page 64.

- Use the same font for the section and subsection entries in the minitocs, using the `\mtcsetfont` command (see section 1.4.9 on page 41) or redefining the `\mtcSfont`, `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` commands (see table 1.6 on page 37), or similar.

2.30 Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands

- The headers are not modified by `\part*`, `\chapter*` or `\section*`; it is *necessary* to use `\markboth` or `\markright` to get correct page headers for the current and following pages.

- If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\chapter*` or a `\section*` command, you must use `\mtcaddchapter[`*title*`]` or `\mtcaddsection[`*title*`]` *after* the starred sectionning command. If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\part*` command, the page number in the table of contents would be wrong, because `\part*` implies a `\clearpage` or a `\cleardoublepage` before the first page of the part. Use the sequence

```
\cleardoublepage      % \clearpage if openany option.
\mtcaddpart[title]
\part*[title]
```

2.31 Use with packages for captions

If one of the caption [421, 422, 424], caption2[7] [423], (both written by Axel Sommerfeldt), ccaption [474] (by Peter R. Wilson), or mcaption [228] (by Stephan Hennig), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because such packages alter (redefine) the commands listing figures and tables. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0033 W0034 W0035 W0036

2.32 Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir

When the minitoc and hyperref [390] packages are used in a document of class memoir [479, 481, 482], the chapter header "Chapter" does not appear on the first page of the chapter.

This problem is fixed in version #44 of minitoc.

[7] This package is obsolete; now use a recent version of the caption package.

2.33 Use with the varsects package

If the varsects package [437] (by Daniel Taupin†) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem. W0038

2.34 Initial font settings

The setting of the fonts in the mini-tables is a rather complex problem. If we take the parttocs as an example, there is a `\ptcfont` font-command which is used for two purposes[8]:

- First, to be used as default value for some other font-commands (like `\ptcSPfont`). As its default value is used in the initialization of the minitoc package, the value of these other commands is *not altered* if you modify `\ptcfont`. You must modify these commands one at a time.
- Second, it is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc, partlof or partlot to set an initial font command. Then each entry of the mini-table calls its own font command (like `\ptcSPfont`). Thus, if you modify `\ptcfont`, you can obtain a global effect on the fonts in the parttocs, partlofs, and partlots. So you can play with the various parameters of the fonts (family, shape, series, size), if you want fancy mini-tables; but it is rather difficult.

In the initialization of the minitoc package, we have a sequence of commands:

```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont       % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont       % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
```

to define some default fonts. But this sequence is executed only once. If you alter `\ptcfont`, the modification is not applied to these font commands. The command `\ptcfont` is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc. `\ptcCfont` is invoked for each chapter entry in a parttoc (`\ptcSfont` for each section entry, etc.). So `\ptcfont` can be used to define some global characteristics for the fonts in the parttocs, while `\ptcCfont` (etc.) can be used to customize the fonts for each level of entries.

[8] The same remarks apply to the other mini-tables.

Note that if you say:

```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont     % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont       % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont       % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont      % (subtables)
```

after loading the minitoc package, these font commands will be "associated" to `\ptcfont`, hence if you modify `\ptcfont` (by via `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` or `\renewcommand`), they will follow the modification. But if you modify one of these commands via `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{...}` (`subsection` is an example), the association is broken. But you could be more clever by saying something like

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{\ptcfont\itshape}
```

to preserve the association and modify only some parameters of a minitoc font command.

For levels above subsection (part, chapter and section), the fonts a more specific in general, but you can, of course, say something like `\def\ptcCfont{\ptcfont}` to make a similar association. You can even make other associations, like this:

```
% for high sectionning levels:
    \def\highlevelsfont{\rmfamily\bfseries\normalsize\upshape}
% for low sectionning levels:
    \def\lowlevelsfont{\rmfamily\mdseries\smallsize\upshape}
% then for each level:
    \def\ptcCfont{\highlevelsfont}
    \def\ptcSfont{\highlevelsfont}
    \def\ptcSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
    \def\ptcSSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
    \def\ptcPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
    \def\ptcSPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
```

Then you can redefine `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` to act on several fonts in one step, but you must use `\renewcommand`. You cannot act on `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` with `\mtcsetfont`.

Note that only the fonts for parttocs are used in the examples above; but, of course, the situation is the same for minitocs and secttocs. `\highlevelsfont` and `\lowlevelsfont` are macro names that you can choice, they are not part of the minitoc package.

2.35 Use with the KOMA-Script classes

If a KOMA-Script class [343, 344, 399], compatible with minitoc (scrbook, scrreprt or scrartcl), is used, some class options may cause problems with the minitoc package, because these options add chapter or section entries in the table of contents. See section 1.5.5 on page 50. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem. I0043

2.36 Use with the jura class or the alphanum package

The jura class loads the alphanum package, which redefines the sectionning structure in a non-standard way, after the loading of the report class. This class and this package are *incompatible* with minitoc.

W0029
W0025

2.37 The `.mld` files and the babel package

If you are using the babel package [60, 61], you can automatize the loading of the `.mld` file by adding some code in the preamble of your document, like this:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
  \addto\captions⟨language1⟩{\mtcselectlanguage{⟨language2⟩}}}
```

where *language1* is the language name for babel and *language2* the language name for minitoc; there are often identical, but there are exceptions (when you use a locally customized `.mld` file, for instance).

2.38 Use with the fncychap package

If the fncychap package [301] (by Ulf A. Lindgren) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem. W0086

2.39 Use with the quotchap package

If the quotchap package [442] (by Karsten Tinnefeld) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem. W0087

2.40 Use with the romannum package

If the romannum package [480] (by Peter R. Wilson) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem. W0088

2.41 Use with the sfheaders package

If the sfheaders package [304] (by Maurizio Loreti) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem. W0089

2.42 Use with the alnumsec package

If the alnumsec package [274] (by Frank Küster) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem. W0090

2.43 Use with the captcont package

If the captcont package [131] (by Steven Douglas Cochran) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the caption commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem. W0091

2.44 Vertical spaces (gaps) for parttocs, partlofs, and partlots titles

These vertical gaps were hard-coded like for the chapter heads in the book and report document classes. The values were 50pt and 40pt, but some users want to adjust them for the titles of the part-level mini-tables. Since version #45, these gaps are defined by `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads`, with these defaults values. These commands apply globally to parttocs, partlofs and partlots. They are *commands*, *not* dimensions, so they must be modified via `\renewcommand` (but *not* via `\setlength`). An example of use is given in the `mtc-gap.tex` document file:

```
⟨*mtc-gap⟩
\documentclass[a4paper,oneside,12pt]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-gap.tex}[2007/01/04]%
```

We use the vruler package (by Zhuhan JIANG) to display a vertical ruler showing the position of the titles:

```
\usepackage{txfonts,vruler} % vertical graduation to note positions (Zhuhan Jiang)
\usepackage[english2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\setvruler[1cm][0][10][3][0][0pt][0pt][0pt][] % with vruler package
\doparttoc \faketableofcontents
\part{First part}
```

A normal parttoc, with the normal gaps before and after it.

```
\parttoc
\chapter{First chapter of first part} \chapter{Second chapter of first part}
\part{Second part}
```

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` `\mtcgapafterheads` We set large gaps. Note the new position of the parttoc.

```
\renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{100pt}
\renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{80pt}
\parttoc
\chapter{First chapter of second part} \chapter{Second chapter of second part}
\part{Third part}
```

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` `\mtcgapafterheads` We set small gaps. Note the new position of the parttoc.

```
\renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{20pt}
\renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{10pt}
\parttoc
\chapter{First chapter of third part} \chapter{Second chapter of third part}
\end{document}
```

⟨/mtc-gap⟩

2.45 Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable

The little spacing between a minitable and its bottom rule is implemented as a vertical kern that should be sufficient to allow the descending parts of the letters of the last entry of the minitable. The values should depend on the line spacing and of the font size. They are defined as macros that you can adjust by redefining them via `\renewcommand`. The (empirical) default values are given in table 2.1 on the next page.

Table 2.1: Kernings before minitable bottom rules

Command	Default value
\kernafterparttoc	\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex
\kernafterpartlof	\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex
\kernafterpartlot	\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex
\kernafterminitoc	\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex
\kernafterminilof	\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex
\kernafterminilot	\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex
\kernaftersecttoc	\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex
\kernaftersectlof	\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex
\kernaftersectlot	\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex

2.46 Another interaction between the tocloft and minitoc packages

I encountered an interaction between tocloft *and* minitoc*. I want to force* minitoc *to not display the page numbers, but because of* tocloft *it doesn't. Here is an example code:*

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
\usepackage{tocloft}
\usepackage{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\frontmatter
\dominitoc\tableofcontents
\mainmatter
\chapter{Chapter}
\section{Section A} \section{Section B}
\chapter{Second Chapter}
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
\mtcsetpagenumbers{minitoc}{off}
\minitoc
\section{Section A} \section{Section B}
\end{document}
```

If I comment the line loading the tocloft *package, I will get a minitoc without page numbers as I wanted.*

When using together tocloft and minitoc, the tocloft package must be loaded first, and its commands take precedence to format the entries in the TOC (and in minitocs). To suppress the page numbers, you should try the `\cftpagenumbersoff{`*XXX*`}` command (from tocloft), which is described in the `tocloft.pdf` documentation [469, pages 45-56]; *XXX* is the level of entry (`chapter`, `sec`, `subsec`, etc.). There are similar remarks about font related commands.

The tocloft package is more specialized in that job than minitoc, so if it is loaded, minitoc uses the tocloft tools. There is the corrected example (`mtc-tlo.tex`):

```
⟨*mtc-tlo⟩
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-tlo.tex}[2007/06/13]%
```

We must load tocloft *before* minitoc:

```
\usepackage{tocloft}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
\begin{document}
```

`\mtcsetfont` We define the global font for the minitoc entries:

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\normalfont\small}
\frontmatter
\dominitoc \tableofcontents
```

`\cftpagenumbersoff` `\cftsecfont` For the section entries in the minitocs, we suppress the page numbers and change the font by using commands from the tocloft package:

```
\cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
\renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalfont\small}
\mainmatter
\chapter{First Chapter} \minitoc
\section{Section A} \section{Section B}
\chapter{Second Chapter} \minitoc
\section{Section A} \section{Section B}
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-tlo⟩
```

2.47 Use with the hangcaption package

If the hangcaption package [250] (by David M. Jones) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0092

2.48 Use with the flowfram package

The flowfram package [433, 434], which has its own system of minitocs, is hence *incompatible* with minitoc.

W0097

Chapter 3

Memento

Tables

Table 3.1: Package options

Options	Default	Meaning
`shortext`	`*NO*`	Short extensions for auxiliary files.
`loose`, `tight`	`loose`	Spacing of lines in mini-tables.
`k-loose`, `k-tight`	`k-loose`	Spacing of lines in mini-tables (KOMA-Script classes).
`dotted`, `undotted`	`dotted`	Presence of leaders (dotted lines).
`insection`	`*NO*`	Keeps floats (figures and tables) from drifting outside of their section. Useful if you use sectlofs/sectlots.
`notoccite`	`*NO*`	Useful if you have `\cite` commands in sectionning titles and use an unsorted bibliographic style.
`listfiles`, `nolistfiles`	`listfiles`	Lists the minitoc auxiliary files into *document*`.maf`.
`hints`, `nohints`	`hints`	Adds hints in the *document*`.log` file. Useful to detect some problems. Option `nohints` is inadvisable.

Language options are listed in table 1.7 on page 38. Default: `english`.

Table 3.2: General commands

Command	Meaning
\faketableofcontents	Replaces \tableofcontents if you want mini-tables of contents but no main table of contents.
\fakelistoffigures	Replaces \listoffigures if you want mini-lists of figures but no main list of figures.
\fakelistoftables	Replaces \listoftables if you want mini-lists of tables but no main list of tables.
\mtcselectlanguage{*language*}	Loads *language*.mld to select a language for mini-tables titles.
\mtcsetdepth{*mini-table*}{*depth*}	Changes the depth for some mini-tables.
\mtcsetoffset{*mini-table*}{*offset*}	Changes the offset for some mini-tables.
\mtcsetfeature{*mini-table*}{before|after|open|close|pagestyle}{*commands*}	Modifies the features for a mini-table.
\mtcsetfont{*mini-table*}{*sectionning-level*}{*font commands*}	Redefines a minitoc font command.
\mtcsetformat{*mini-table*}{dotinterval|pagenumwidth|tocrightmargin}{*value*}	Changes the layout of some mini-tables.
\mtcsetpagenumbers{*mini-table*|*}{on|off}	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.
\mtcsetrules{*mini-table*|*}{on|off}	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
\mtcsettitle{*mini-table*}{*title string*}	Changes the title for some mini-tables.
\mtcsettitlefont{*mini-table*}{*font commands*}	Changes the font of the title for some mini-tables.
\mtcskip	To add a vertical skip between the mini-tables.
\mtcskipamount	Length of \mtcskip. Default: \bigskipamount.
\tightmtcfalse	Loose mini-tables. Default.
\tightmtctrue	Tight mini-tables.
\ktightmtcfalse	Loose mini-tables. Default. (KOMA-Script classes).
\ktightmtctrue	Tight mini-tables. (KOMA-Script classes).
\undottedmtcfalse	Dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number). Default.
\undottedmtctrue	No dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number).

Table 3.3: Part level commands

Command	Meaning
\doparttoc[*x*]	Before \[fake]tableofcontents if you use \parttoc*.
\dopartlof[*x*]	Before \[fake]listoffigures if you use partlof*.
\dopartlot[*x*]	Before \[fake]listoftables if you use \partlot*.
\parttoc[*x*]	After each \part command for which a parttoc is needed*.
\partlof[*x*]	After each \part command for which a partlof is needed*.
\partlot[*x*]	After each \part command for which a partlot is needed*.
\setcounter{parttocdepth}{*depth*}	
	Depth of the following parttocs. Analog to tocdepth. Default: 2.
	Has no action on partlofs and partlots.
or:	
\mtcsetdepth{parttoc|partlof|partlot}{*depth*}	
	Idem, but can also act on partlofs and partlots.
\ptcindent	Left/right indentation of a partial table. Default: 24pt.
\ptcoffset	Horizontal offset for parttocs. Command. Default: 0pt.
\plfoffset	Horizontal offset for partlofs. Command. Default: 0pt.
\pltoffset	Horizontal offset for partlots. Command. Default: 0pt.
\mtcsetoffset{parttoc|partlof|partlot}{*offset*}	
	Idem, but can also act on partlofs and partlots.
\ptcfont	Font command for parttoc.
	Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries (article)
	or: \normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries (book, report).
\ptcCfont	Font command for parttoc, chapter entries.
	Default: \normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries.
\ptcSfont	Font command for parttoc, section entries.
	Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries (article)
	or: \small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries (book, report).
\ptcSSfont	Font command for parttoc, subsection entries**.
\ptcSSSfont	Font command for parttoc, subsubsection entries**.
\ptcPfont	Font command for parttoc, paragraph entries**.
\ptcSPfont	Font command for parttoc, subparagraph entries**.
\plffont	Font for partlof. Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\plfSfont	Font for partlof (subfigures). Default:
	\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\pltfont	Font for partlot. Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\pltSfont	Font for partlot (subtables). Default:
	\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\ptctitle	Title of parttocs. Default: Table of Contents.
\plftitle	Title of partlofs. Default: List of Figures.
\plttitle	Title of partlots. Default: List of Tables.
\ptifont	Font for partXXX titles.
	Default: \Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries (article)
	or: \LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries (book, report).
\mtcgapbeforeheads	Vertical gap before part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 50pt
\mtcgapafterheads	Vertical gap after part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 40pt

∗: [*x*] is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the \partXXX commands, global for the \dopartXXX commands. The values of *x* are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.
∗∗: defaults like \ptcfont.

Table 3.4: Chapter level commands

Command	Meaning
\dominitoc[*x*]	Before \[fake]tableofcontents if you use \minitoc*.
\dominilof[*x*]	Before \[fake]listoffigures if you use \minilof*.
\dominilot[*x*]	Before \[fake]listoftables if you use \minilot*.
\minitoc[*x*]	After each \chapter command for which a minitoc is needed*.
\minilof[*x*]	After each \chapter command for which a minilof is needed*.
\minilot[*x*]	After each \chapter command for which a minilot is needed*.
\setcounter{minitocdepth}{*depth*}	
	Depth of the following minitocs. Analog to tocdepth. Default: 2. Has no action on minilofs and minilots.
or:	
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc|minilof|minilot}{*depth*}	
	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
\mtcindent	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
\mtcoffset	Horizontal offset for minitocs. Command. Default: 0pt.
\mlfoffset	Horizontal offset for minilofs. Command. Default: 0pt.
\mltoffset	Horizontal offset for minilots. Command. Default: 0pt.
\mtcsetoffset{minitoc|minilof|minilot}{*offset*}	
	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
\mtcfont	Font command for minitoc.
	Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\mtcSfont	Font command for minitoc, section entries.
	Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries.
\mtcSSfont	Font command for minitoc, subsection entries**.
\mtcSSSfont	Font command for minitoc, subsubsection entries**.
\mtcPfont	Font command for minitoc, paragraph entries**.
\mtcSPfont	Font command for minitoc, subparagraph entries**.
\mlffont	Font for minilof. Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\mlfSfont	Font for minilof (subfigures). Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\mltfont	Font for minilot. Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\mltSfont	Font for minilot (subtables). Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\mtctitle	Title of minitocs. Default: Contents.
\mlftitle	Title of minilofs. Default: Figures.
\mlttitle	Title of minilots. Default: Tables.
\mtifont	Font for miniXXX titles.
	Default: \large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries.

∗: [*x*] is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the \miniXXX commands, global for the \dominiXXX commands. The values of *x* are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.
∗∗: defaults like \mtcfont.

Table 3.5: Section level commands

Command	Meaning
\dosecttoc[*x*]	Before \[fake]tableofcontents if you use \secttoc*.
\dosectlof[*x*]	Before \[fake]listoffigures if you use \sectlof*.
\dosectlot[*x*]	Before \[fake]listoftables if you use \sectlot*.
\secttoc[*x*]	After each \section command for which a secttoc is needed*.
\sectlof[*x*]	After each \section command for which a sectlof is needed*.
\sectlot[*x*]	After each \section command for which a sectlot is needed*.
\setcounter{secttocdepth}{*depth*}	Depth of the following secttocs. Analog to tocdepth. Default: 2. Has no action on sectlofs and sectlots.
or:	
\mtcsetdepth{secttoc|sectlof|sectlot}{*depth*}	Idem, but can also act on sectlofs and sectlots.
\stcindent	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
\stcoffset	Horizontal offset for secttocs. Command. Default: 0pt.
\slfoffset	Horizontal offset for sectlofs. Command. Default: 0pt.
\sltoffset	Horizontal offset for sectlots. Command. Default: 0pt.
\mtcsetoffset{secttoc|sectlof|sectlot}{*offset*}	Idem, but can also act on sectlofs and sectlots.
\stcfont	Font command for secttoc. Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\stcSSfont	Font command for secttoc, subsection entries**.
\stcSSSfont	Font command for secttoc, subsubsection entries**.
\stcPfont	Font command for secttoc, paragraph entries**.
\mtcSPfont	Font command for secttoc, subparagraph entries**.
\slffont	Font for sectlof. Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\slfSfont	Font for sectlof (subfigures). Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\sltfont	Font for sectlot. Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\sltSfont	Font for sectlot (subtables). Default: \small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries.
\stctitle	Title of secttocs. Default: Contents.
\slftitle	Title of sectlofs. Default: Figures.
\slttitle	Title of sectlots. Default: Tables.
\stifont	Font for sectXXX titles. Default: \large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries.

*: [*x*] is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the \sectXXX commands, global for the \dosectXXX commands. The values of *x* are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.
**: defaults like \stcfont.

Table 3.6: Commands for horizontal rules

Command	Meaning
\[no]ptcrule	Activates or inhibits rules in parttocs.
\[no]mtcrule	Activates or inhibits rules in minitocs.
\[no]stcrule	Activates or inhibits rules in secttocs.
\[no]plfrule	Activates or inhibits rules in partlofs.
\[no]mlfrule	Activates or inhibits rules in minilofs.
\[no]slfrule	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlofs.
\[no]pltrule	Activates or inhibits rules in partlots.
\[no]mltrule	Activates or inhibits rules in minilots.
\[no]sltrule	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlots.
\mtcsetrules{*mini-table*|*}{on|off}	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
\kernafterparttoc	Vertical kerning between a parttoc and its bottom rule.
\kernafterpartlof	Vertical kerning between a partlof and its bottom rule.
\kernafterpartlot	Vertical kerning between a partlot and its bottom rule.
\kernafterminitoc	Vertical kerning between a minitoc and its bottom rule.
\kernafterminilof	Vertical kerning between a minilof and its bottom rule.
\kernafterminilot	Vertical kerning between a minilot and its bottom rule.
\kernaftersecttoc	Vertical kerning between a secttoc and its bottom rule.
\kernaftersectlof	Vertical kerning between a sectlof and its bottom rule.
\kernaftersectlot	Vertical kerning between a sectlot and its bottom rule.

By default, parttocs have no rules; minitocs and secttocs have rules. In articles, parttocs have rules.

Table 3.7: Commands for page numbers

Command	Meaning
\[no]ptcpagenumbers	Activates or inhibits page numbers in parttocs.
\[no]plfpagenumbers	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlofs.
\[no]pltpagenumbers	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlots.
\[no]mtcpagenumbers	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minitocs.
\[no]mlfpagenumbers	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilofs.
\[no]mltpagenumbers	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilots.
\[no]stcpagenumbers	Activates or inhibits page numbers in secttocs.
\[no]slfpagenumbers	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlofs.
\[no]sltpagenumbers	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlots.
\mtcsetpagenumbers{*mini-table*|*}{on|off}	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.

By default, the page numbers are present.

Table 3.8: Commands for mini-tables features

Command	Default	Meaning
\beforeparttoc	\cleardoublepage	Action before a parttoc.
\beforepartlof	\cleardoublepage	Action before a partlof.
\beforepartlot	\cleardoublepage	Action before a partlot.
\afterparttoc	\cleardoublepage	Action after a parttoc.
\afterpartlof	\cleardoublepage	Action after a partlof.
\afterpartlot	\cleardoublepage	Action after a partlot.
\openparttoc	\cleardoublepage	Action before inserting a parttoc file.
\openpartlof	\cleardoublepage	Action before inserting a partlof file.
\openpartlot	\cleardoublepage	Action before inserting a partlot file.
\closeparttoc	\cleardoublepage	Action after inserting a parttoc file.
\closepartlof	\cleardoublepage	Action after inserting a partlof file.
\closepartlot	\cleardoublepage	Action after inserting a partlot file.
\thispageparttocstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}	Page style for a parttoc.
\thispagepartlofstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}	Page style for a partlof.
\thispagepartlotstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}	Page style for a partlot.
\beforeminitoc	\empty	Action before a minitoc.
\beforeminilof	\empty	Action before a minilof.
\beforeminilot	\empty	Action before a minilot.
\afterminitoc	\empty	Action after a minitoc.
\afterminilof	\empty	Action after a minilof.
\afterminilot	\empty	Action after a minilot.
\openminitoc	\cleardoublepage	Action before inserting a minitoc file.
\openminilof	\cleardoublepage	Action before inserting a minilof file.
\openminilot	\cleardoublepage	Action before inserting a minilot file.
\closeminitoc	\cleardoublepage	Action after inserting a minitoc file.
\closeminilof	\cleardoublepage	Action after inserting a minilof file.
\closeminilot	\cleardoublepage	Action after inserting a minilot file.
\thispageminitocstyle	\empty	Page style for a minitoc.
\thispageminilofstyle	\empty	Page style for a minilof.
\thispageminilotstyle	\empty	Page style for a minilot.
\beforesecttoc	\empty	Action before a secttoc.
\beforesectlof	\empty	Action before a sectlof.
\beforesectlot	\empty	Action before a sectlot.
\aftersecttoc	\empty	Action after a secttoc.
\aftersectlof	\empty	Action after a sectlof.
\aftersectlot	\empty	Action after a sectlot.
\opensecttoc	\cleardoublepage	Action before inserting a secttoc file.
\opensectlof	\cleardoublepage	Action before inserting a sectlof file.
\opensectlot	\cleardoublepage	Action before inserting a sectlot file.
\closesecttoc	\cleardoublepage	Action after inserting a secttoc file.
\closesectlof	\cleardoublepage	Action after inserting a sectlof file.
\closesectlot	\cleardoublepage	Action after inserting a sectlot file.
\thispagesecttocstyle	\empty	Page style for a secttoc.
\thispagesectlofstyle	\empty	Page style for a sectlof.
\thispagesectlotstyle	\empty	Page style for a sectlot.

\mtcsetfeature{*mini-table*}{before|after|open|close|pagestyle}{*commands*}
Modifies the features for a mini-table.

Table 3.9: Preparation and insertion commands

Type	Phase	Level		
		part	chapter	section
table of contents	preparation	\doparttoc[*p*]	\dominitoc[*p*]	\dosecttoc[*p*]
	insertion	\parttoc[*p*]	\minitoc[*p*]	\secttoc[*p*]
list of figures	preparation	\dopartlof[*p*]	\dominilof[*p*]	\dosectlof[*p*]
	insertion	\partlof[*p*]	\minilof[*p*]	\sectlof[*p*]
list of tables	preparation	\dopartlot[*p*]	\dominilot[*p*]	\dosectlot[*p*]
	insertion	\partlot[*p*]	\minilot[*p*]	\sectlot[*p*]
all	preparation	.....	\mtcprepare[*p*]	.....

Each of these commands accepts one optional argument *p*, which specifies the position of the title of the mini-table. This argument *p* has a global effect for the preparation commands, but local for the insertion commands. It is a letter: [l] for left aligned (default), [c] for centered, [r] for right aligned, [e] or [n] for empty (no title).

Table 3.10: Adjustment commands

Command	Meaning
\adjustptc[*n*]	Adjusts (increments) the parttoc counter ptc by *n*.
\adjustmtc[*n*]	Adjusts (increments) the minitoc counter mtc by *n*.
\adjuststc[*n*]	Adjusts (increments) the secttoc counter stc by *n*.
\decrementptc	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the parttoc counter ptc.
\decrementmtc	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the minitoc counter mtc.
\decrementstc	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the secttoc counter stc.
\incrementptc	Adjusts (increments by 1) the parttoc counter ptc.
\incrementmtc	Adjusts (increments by 1) the minitoc counter mtc.
\incrementstc	Adjusts (increments by 1) the secttoc counter stc.
\mtcaddpart[*title*]	Adds the title of a \part* in the ToC.
\mtcaddchapter[*title*]	Adds the title of a \chapter* in the ToC.
\mtcaddsection[*title*]	Adds the title of a \section* in the ToC.
\mtcfixglossary[chapter|section|part]	Adjusts the entry for the glossary in the ToC.
\mtcfixindex[chapter|section|part]	Adjusts the entry for the index in the ToC.
\mtcfixnomenclature[chapter|section|part]	Adjusts the entry for the nomenclature in the ToC.
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[*depth*] ... \end{mtchideinmaintoc}	Environment to hide entries in the main ToC.
\begin{mtchideinmainlof}[*depth*] ... \end{mtchideinmainlof}	Environment to hide entries in the main list of figures.
\mtchideinmainlof[*depth*] ... \endmtchideinmainlof	Pair of commands* to hide entries in the main list of figures.
\begin{mtchideinmainlot}[*depth*] ... \end{mtchideinmainlot}	Environment to hide entries in the main list of tables.
\mtchideinmainlot[*depth*] ... \endmtchideinmainlot	Pair of commands* to hide entries in the main list of tables.

∗: recommended form.

Table 3.11: Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc

P/C	Names	Author(s)	Page(s)	Reference(s)
P	abstract	Peter R. Wilson	53	[470]
P	alnumsec	Frank Küster	54	[274]
∗ **P**	alphanum	Felix Braun	75	[103]
∗ **C**	amsart	$\mathcal{AMS}$	66	[8]
C	amsbook	$\mathcal{AMS}$	66	[8]
∗ **C**	amsproc	$\mathcal{AMS}$	66	[8]
P	appendix	Peter R. Wilson	64	[471]
P	captcont	Steven Douglas Cochran	54	[131]
P	caption	Axel Sommerfeldt	54	[421, 422, 424]
P	caption2	Axel Sommerfeldt	54	[423]
P	ccaption	Peter R. Wilson	54	[474]
P	float	Anselm Lingnau	54	[302]
P	floatrow	Olga G. Lapko	54	[285]
∗ **P**	flowfram	Nicola L. C. Talbot	79	[433, 434]
P	fncychap	Ulf A. Lindgren	75	[301]
P	hangcaption	David M. Jones	79	[250]
P	hyperref	Sebastian Rahtz and Heiko Oberdiek	62	[348, 352–354, 387, 390, 391]
∗ **C**	jura	Felix Braun	75	[103]
P	mcaption	Stephan Hennig	54	[228]
C	memoir	Peter R. Wilson	65	[479, 481, 482]
P	notoccite	Donald Arseneau	52	[14]
P	placeins	Donald Arseneau	29	[15]
P	quotchap	Karsten Tinnefeld	53	[442]
P	romannum	Peter R. Wilson	54	[480]
P	rotfloat	Sebastian Rahtz and Leonor Barroca	54	[420]
C	scrartcl, scrbook and scrreprt	Frank Neukam, Markus Kohm, Axel Kielhorn, and Jens-Uwe Morawski	75	[343, 344, 399]
P	sectsty	Rowland McDonnell	70	[319]
P	sfheaders	Maurizio Loreti	76	[304]
P	subfig	Steven Douglas Cochran	33	[132]
P	subfigure	Steven Douglas Cochran	33	[130]
∗ **P**	titlesec	Javier Bezos	53	[46]
∗ **P**	titletoc	Javier Bezos	53	[46]
P	tocbibind	Peter R. Wilson	50	[472]
P	tocloft	Peter R. Wilson	64, 78	[469]
P	trivfloat	Joseph A. Wright	54	[484]
P	varsects	Daniel Taupin^{+}	53	[437]

∗: *Incompatible* with minitoc. **C**: **C**lass. **P**: **P**ackage.
Any class not defining the main standard sectionning commands is *incompatible* with minitoc.

Table 3.12: Checking if inside a minitable

Level	Flag	for tocs,	for lofs,	for lots.
Part		`\ifinparttoc`	`\ifinpartlof`	`\ifinpartlot`
Chapter		`\ifinminitoc`	`\ifinminilof`	`\ifinminilot`
Section		`\ifinsecttoc`	`\ifinsectlof`	`\ifinsectlot`

Table 3.13: Commands for polymorphic entries

From *OA* of:	Command	Arg. 1	Arg. 2	Arg. 3	Arg. 4
sect. command	`\mtcpolymtoc`	{→parttoc}	{→minitoc}	{→secttoc}	{→main toc}
figure caption	`\mtcpolymlof`	{→partlof}	{→minilof}	{→sectlof}	{→main lof}
table caption	`\mtcpolymlot`	{→partlot}	{→minilot}	{→sectlot}	{→main lot}

Table 3.14: Obsolete commands

Command	Meaning
`\firstpartis{`*N*`}`	*N* is the number of the first part.
`\firstchapteris{`*N*`}`	*N* is the number of the first chapter.
`\firstsectionis{`*N*`}`	*N* is the number of the first section.

These commands have no effect (except a harmless warning).

Chapter 4

Examples of documents

Contents

This chapter shows the code of some examples of documents. Some are extracted or derived from real documents, others are just demonstrations to illustrate problems or features. The code of some specific example files has been shown earlier: `mtc-apx.tex` on page 67, `mtc-hi1.tex` on page 68, `mtc-hi2.tex` on page 69, `mtc-gap.tex` on page 76, and `mtc-tlo.tex` on page 79,

Note that the lipsum package [212] is often used to provide filling text.

4.1 The mtc-2c.tex document file

\mtcindent This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document with a two columns layout. The layout uses the multicol standard package [325] and its multicols environment. We set \mtcindent to zero. We test several combinations. If a minitoc is long enough to be splitted on both columns, the result may be funny.

```
⟨*mtc-2c⟩
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]%
    {report}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-2c.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage{multicol}
\usepackage{lipsum}
\usepackage%
  [tight,latin,listfiles]{minitoc}
\usepackage[latin]{babel}
\setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
\begin{document}
\dominitoc \tableofcontents
```

multicols \minitoc Two first chapters with a standard chapter head, a minitoc on one full width column, then the body of the chapter on two columns:

```
\chapter{Primum capitulum}
\begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc]
\section{Prima sectio}
\lipsum[1-2]
\section{Secunda sectio}
\lipsum[3-4]
\end{multicols}
\chapter{Secundum capitulum}
\begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc]
\section{Prima sectio}
\lipsum[5-6]
\section{Secunda sectio}
\lipsum[7-8]
\section{Tertia sectio}
\lipsum[9-10]
\end{multicols}
```

multicols \minitoc A third chapter entirely on two columns, so the chapter head and the minitoc are in the first column:

```
\begin{multicols}{2}
\chapter{Tertium capitulum}
\minitoc
\section{Prima sectio}
\lipsum[11-12]
\section{Secunda sectio}
\lipsum[13-14]
\section{Tertia sectio}
\lipsum[15-16]
\end{multicols}
```

multicols \minitoc A fourth chapter, with the chapter head on one column, and the minitoc and the chapter body on two columns (the minitoc is in the first column):

```
\chapter{Quadrum capitulum}
\begin{multicols}{2}
\minitoc
\section{Prima sectio}
\lipsum[16-17]
\section{Secunda sectio}
\lipsum[18-19]
\section{Tertia sectio}
\lipsum[20-21]
\end{multicols}
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-2c⟩
```

4.2 The `mtc-2nd.tex` document file

This document tests the `french2.mld` minitoc language definition file (section 13.62 on page 498) and its supporting code in the minitoc package. First, the preamble of the document uses the `french2` minitoc package language option[1]:

```
⟨*mtc-2nd⟩
%% Test de french2.mld:
%% « seconde » ou « deuxième » partie?
%% compilez 3 fois.
\documentclass{report}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-2nd.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage[french2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
\usepackage[french]{babel}
\usepackage{franc,frnew}
\usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
\usepackage{mypatches}
\begin{document}
```

`\ifmtcsecondpart` We test if there is only two parts: if yes, we will use “seconde”. Else (three or more parts), we will use “deuxième”.

```
\ifmtcsecondpart
Il n'y a que 2 parties: seconde.
\else
Il y a une partie ou plus de deux parties: deuxième.
\fi
\clearpage
```

`\doparttoc` `\faketableofcontents` `\parttoc` The body of the document, with two parts:

```
\doparttoc
\faketableofcontents
\part{P1}
\parttoc
\chapter{P1C1}
\chapter{P1C2}
\part{P2}
\parttoc
\chapter{P2C1}
\chapter{P2C2}
```

[1] The franc, frnew and mypatches packages are local additions, provided with the minitoc package documentation sources.

If you want also a third part, comment out this line and recompile 3 times:

```
%% Commentez la ligne suivante puis recompilez 2 ou 3 fois.
\end{document}
\part{P3}
\parttoc
\chapter{P3C1}
\chapter{P3C2}
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-2nd⟩
```

Observe the titles of the parttocs when the document has two then three parts. Note the changes after each compilation. You can play by adding and removing parts. It would be interesting to add a starred part, with starred chapters, at the beginning of the document, this part and these chapters having their entries in the TOC. For instance, try to add the following lines after `\faketableofcontents`:

```
\part*{Partie étoilée}
\mtcaddpart[Partie étoilée]
\adjustptc[-2] % IMPORTANT <<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<
\parttoc
\chapter*{Premier chapitre étoilé}
\mtcaddchapter[Premier chapitre étoilé]
\chapter*{Second chapitre étoilé}
\mtcaddchapter[Second chapitre étoilé]
```

and you will see how the parttoc of the new starred part is titled.

4.3 The `mtc-3co.tex` document file

This document shows how to prepare a minitoc on three columns, with some modifications of the code the `mtc@verse` environment.

First, we will use a wide paper format (A3) to set the text on two columns and the main TOC on three columns, with the multitoc package [414] (by Martin Schröder).

```
⟨*mtc-3co⟩
\documentclass[oneside]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-3co.tex}%
  [2007/02/19]
\usepackage[a3paper]{geometry}
\usepackage{lipsum}
\usepackage{multicol}
\usepackage[toc]{multitoc}
\renewcommand{\multicolumntoc}{3}
```

\mtcindent
\mtcsetformat
\multicolumnmtc
\mtc@verse
\endmtc@verse
multicols

Then we load the minitoc package, set some parameters and define the number of columns for the minitocs. We alter the `mtc@verse` environment to add a `multicols` environment[2]:

```
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
\setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
\mtcsetformat{minitoc}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
\newcommand{\multicolumnmtc}{3}
\makeatletter
\let\SV@mtc@verse\mtc@verse
\let\SV@endmtc@verse\endmtc@verse
\def\mtc@verse#1{\SV@mtc@verse#1\removelastskip%
 \begin{multicols}{\multicolumnmtc}\raggedcolumns\leavevmode\unskip
 \vskip -1.5ex \vskip -1\baselineskip}
\def\endmtc@verse{\end{multicols}\SV@endmtc@verse}
\makeatother
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
```

We begin the document, preparing the minitocs and the main TOC. The (first) chapter begins with its minitoc, then the text on two columns. We use the lipsum package [212] to provide filling text; the section number is used to select a *lipsum* paragraph.

```
\begin{document}
\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\chapter{First chapter}
\minitoc
\begin{multicols}{2}
```

We use a lot of sections, to have a minitoc large enough to use the three columns. A subsection with a long title gives a good result (we have used `\mtcsetformat` to avoid hyphenations).

```
\section{First section}           \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Second section}          \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Third section}           \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fourth section}          \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fifth section}           \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Sixth section}           \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Seventh section}         \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Eighth section}          \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Ninth section}           \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Tenth section}           \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Eleventh section}        \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Twelfth section}         \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Thirteenth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fourteenth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fifteenth section}       \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Sixteenth section}       \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Seventeenth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Eighteenth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
```

[2] Some vertical adjustments are necessary.

```
\section{Nineteenth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Twentieth section}       \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Twenty-first section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Twenty-second section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Twenty-third section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Twenty-fourth section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\subsection{A very long subsection title, for the fun in
a multicolumn table of contents}  \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Twenty-fifth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Twenty-sixth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Twenty-seventh section}  \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Twenty-eighth section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Twenty-ninth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Thirtieth section}       \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Thirty-first section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Thirty-second section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Thirty-third section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Thirty-fourth section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Thirty-fifth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Thirty-sixth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Thirty-seventh section}  \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Thirty-eighth section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Thirty-ninth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fortieth section}        \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Forty-first section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Forty-second section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Forty-third section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Forty-fourth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Forty-fifth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Forty-sixth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Forty-seventh section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Forty-eighth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Forty-ninth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fiftieth section}        \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fifty-first section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fifty-second section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fifty-third section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fifty-fourth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fifty-fifth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fifty-sixth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fifty-seventh section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fifty-eighth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fifty-ninth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\end{multicols}
\clearpage
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-3co⟩
```

4.4 The `mtc-add.tex` document file

This document shows how to add special entries in the table of contents, and the interaction with the tocbibind package [472].

```
⟨*mtc-add⟩
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
%% \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-add.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage{url}
\usepackage{tocbibind}
\usepackage{makeidx}
\makeatletter
\newif\ifscan@allowed
\scan@allowedtrue
\makeatother
\def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
\def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
           \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%
```

Load the minitoc package, or mtcoff.

```
\usepackage[tight,hints,listfiles]{minitoc}
%% \usepackage{mtcoff}
```

```
\makeindex
\begin{document}
```

`\dominitoc` `\dominilof` `\dominilot`

We call the mini-table preparation commands:

```
\dominitoc \dominilof \dominilot
```

`\tableofcontents` `\mtcaddchapter` `\listoffigures` `\listoftables`

We are using the tocbibind package to add special entries in the table of contents, so we must take the precautions specified in section 1.5.5 on page 50:

```
\tableofcontents \mtcaddchapter
\listoffigures \mtcaddchapter
\listoftables \mtcaddchapter
```

`\chapter` `\minitoc` `\minilof` `\minilot` `\mtcskip`

For a chapter, we want a minitoc, a minilof and a minitoc:

```
\chapter{First chapter}\index{chapter!normal}
\minitoc \mtcskip
\minilof \mtcskip
\minilot
```

Then the text of the chapter, with sections, figures and tables:

```
\section{First section}

\begin{figure}[tp] \caption{First figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table}[tp] \caption{First table} \end{table}

\section{Second section}
A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\\
\index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}\index{a}%
\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}\index{cannot}%
\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}\index{I}%
\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}\index{land}%
\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}\index{to}\index{tree}%
\index{would}\index{yes}%
\textsf{A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
But I imagine that he would, yes.}\\
\hbox{}\hfill
Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks}~(1993),~\textsl{Against~a~dark~background.}%
\index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}

\begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Second figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table} \caption{Second table} \end{table}
```

\chapter* \mtcaddchapter

A starred chapter requires a special treatment; three solutions are possible. You can test variations on the \mtcaddchapter command. Just uncomment one (and only one) of the \mtcaddchapter commands after \chapter* in the source code of mtc-add.tex. For each case, look at the Table of Contents and the involved chapter.

```
\chapter*{Second chapter, starred}
\index{chapter!starred}
%% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 3 FOLLOWING LINES
\mtcaddchapter[Second chapter, starred] % OK
%% \mtcaddchapter[~]    % produces a (strange) correct result. OK
%% \addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
%% \mtcaddchapter[]     % BAD SOLUTION
%% \mtcaddchapter       % BAD SOLUTION
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\index{tests}

This is a starred chapter; you can test here variations on
the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| command. Just uncomment one (and
only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| commands after
\verb|\chapter*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
and at this chapter.
\index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
\index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{chapter}\index{code}%
\index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}\index{each}%
\index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}%
\index{index}\index{is}\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}%
```

```
\index{lot}\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
\index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
\index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
\index{variations}\index{you}%
I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.

\chapter{Third chapter}
\index{chapter!normal}
\minitoc \mtcskip
\minilof \mtcskip
\minilot
\section{Third section}

\begin{figure} \caption{Third figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table} \caption{Third table} \end{table}

\section{Fourth section}

\begin{figure} \caption{Fourth figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table} \caption{Fourth table} \end{table}
```

\bibliographystyle
\bibliography
\adjustmtc

As we want to add an entry for the bibliography in the table of contents, and we use the tocbibind package for that, we must add a correction with \adjustmtc:

```
\nocite*
\def\noopsort#1{\relax}
\bibliographystyle{plain}
\bibliography{mtc-add}
\adjustmtc
```

\printindex
\mtcfixindex

As we want to add an entry for the index in the table of contents, and we use the tocbibind package for that, we must add a correction; two solutions are available: use \mtcfixindex or the other given three lines:

```
\printindex
\mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
%% \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
%% \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
%% \mtcaddchapter
%%

\appendix
\chapter{App.~1}
\index{chapter!appendix}
\minitoc \mtcskip
\minilof \mtcskip
\minilot
\section{Fifth section}

\begin{figure} \caption{Fifth figure} \end{figure}
```

```
\begin{table} \caption{Fifth table} \end{table}

\section{Sixth section}

\begin{figure} \caption{Sixth figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table} \caption{Sixth table} \end{table}
```

The next chapter asks for a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot, but contains no tables; hence the minitoc package will give some warnings.

```
\chapter{App.~2}
\index{chapter!appendix}
%% contains no tables but asks for a minilot! No minilot printed.
\minitoc \mtcskip
\minilof \mtcskip
\minilot
\section{Seventh section}
\begin{figure} \caption{Seventh figure} \end{figure}
\begin{figure} \caption{Eighth figure} \end{figure}

\section{Eighth section}

\begin{figure} \caption{Ninth figure} \end{figure}
\begin{figure} \caption{Eleventh figure} \end{figure}

\end{document}
⟨/mtc-add⟩
```

And we need also its small bibliographic data base:

- the english documentation of the minitoc package [157]:

```
⟨*mtc-addbib⟩
@MISC{minitoc,
   TITLE="The {\textsf{minitoc}} package",
   AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
   NOTE="{\url{http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf}}",
   MONTH=jul,
   YEAR=2008}

```

- the french documentation of the minitoc package [156]:

```
@MISC{minitoc-fr,
   TITLE="Le paquetage {\textsf{minitoc}}",
   AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
   NOTE="{\url{http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc-fr.pdf}}",
   MONTH=jul,
   YEAR=2008}

```

- the documentation of the shorttoc package [155]:

```
@MISC{shorttoc,
   TITLE="The {\textsf{shorttoc}} package",
   AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
   NOTE="{\url{http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.pdf}}",
   MONTH=aug,
   YEAR=2002}

```

- a novel [24] from which a short citation is taken:

```
@BOOK{dark,
   TITLE="{Against a Dark Background}",
   AUTHOR="Banks, Iain Menzies",
   PUBLISHER="Bantam Books",
   ISBN="0553292240 (pb)",
   YEAR=1993}
⟨/mtc-addbib⟩
```

But the database created this way must be trimmed of some spurious lines; on Unix-like systems, do[3]:

```
cat mtc-add.bib | grep -v '^%%' > addbib;mv addbib mtc-add.bib
```

4.5 The `mtc-ads.tex` document file

This document uses the article class and shows some problems for adding special entries in the table of contents and some problems with floating objects. We need to use the tocbibind package [472] for the first ones and the minitoc `insection` package option to avoid the drift if floating objects outside of their section. That gives the following document preamble:

```
⟨*mtc-ads⟩
\documentclass[oneside,12pt,a4paper]{article}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-ads.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage{url,tocbibind,makeidx}
\makeatletter \newif\ifscan@allowed \scan@allowedtrue \makeatother
\def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
\def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
           \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%
\usepackage[tight,hints,insection]{minitoc}
%% \usepackage{mtcoff}
\makeindex
```

[3] Note that we should use no preamble for this file in `minitoc.ins`; nevertheless, some spurious lines are still generated. This problem is not yet corrected now, so we keep the solution.

\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dopartlot
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof
\dosectlot

The preparation commands:

```
\begin{document}
\doparttoc \dopartlof \dopartlot
\dosecttoc \dosectlof \dosectlot
```

\setcounter
\tableofcontents
\mtcaddsection
\listoffigures
\listoftables

The commands to prepare the table of contents, the list of figures and the list of tables. As we use the tocbibind package, we must add some \mtcaddsection commands:

```
\setcounter{tocdepth}{6}
\setcounter{parttocdepth}{6}
\setcounter{secttocdepth}{6}
\tableofcontents \mtcaddsection
\listoffigures   \mtcaddsection
\listoftables    \mtcaddsection
```

\parttoc
\partlof
\partlot
\secttoc
\sectlof
\sectlot
\mtcskip

The body of the document: a part with its part-level mini-tables, some sections with their section-level mini-tables. The document has an index and contains figures and tables.

```
\part{Part~1}
\parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot

\section{First section}
\index{section!normal}
\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
\subsection{First subsection}

\begin{figure}[tp] \caption{First figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table}[tp] \caption{First table} \end{table}

\subsection{Second subsection}
A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\\
\index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
\index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
\index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
\index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
\index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
\index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
But I imagine that he would, yes.\\
\hbox{}\hfill Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks} (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
\index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
\begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Second figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table} \caption{Second table} \end{table}
```

\section*
\mtcaddsection

Here, we try a starred section, with its entry in the table of contents. You can try several solutions (good or bad).

```
\section*{Second section, starred}
\index{section!starred}
```

```
%% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
\mtcaddsection[Second section, starred] % OK
%% \mtcaddsection[]     % BAD
%% \mtcaddsection[~]    % produces a (strange) correct result.
%% \mtcaddsection       % BAD
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\index{tests}

This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
\verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
and at this section.
\index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
\index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
\index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}%
\index{Contents}\index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}%
\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}\index{source}%
\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}\index{the}%
\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
\index{variations}\index{you}%
I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.

\section{Third section}
\index{section!normal}
\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
\subsection{Third subsection}

\begin{figure} \caption{Third figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table} \caption{Third table} \end{table}

\subsection{Fourth subsection}

\begin{figure} \caption{Fourth figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table} \caption{Fourth table} \end{table}

\subsubsection{Even a sub-sub-section!}
\subsubsection{And yet another one}

\part{Part~2}
\parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot

\section{Fourth section}
\index{section!normal}
\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
\subsection{Fifth subsection}

\begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Fifth figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table}[tp] \caption{Fifth table} \end{table}

\subsection{Sixth subsection}
```

```
A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\\
\index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
\index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
\index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
\index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
\index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
\index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
But I imagine that he would, yes.\\
\hbox{}\hfill
Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks} (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
\index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}

\begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Sixth figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table} \caption{Sixth table} \end{table}

\section*{Fifth section, starred}
\index{section!starred}
%% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
\mtcaddsection[Fifth section, starred] % OK
%% \mtcaddsection[]     % OK
%% \mtcaddsection[~]    % produces a (strange) correct result.
%% \mtcaddsection       % OK
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\index{tests}

This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
\verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
and at this section.\index{a}%
\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
\index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
\index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}%
\index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}%
\index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
\index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
\index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}%
\index{uncomment}\index{variations}\index{you}%
I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.

\section{Sixth section}
\index{section!normal}
\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
\subsection{Seventh subsection}

\begin{figure} \caption{Seventh figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table} \caption{Seventh table} \end{table}

\subsection{Eighth subsection}

```

```
\begin{figure} \caption{Eighth figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table} \caption{Eighth table} \end{table}
```

\bibliographystyle
\bibliography
\adjuststc

The bibliography: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the tocbibind package [472] and a correction with \adjuststc:

```
\nocite*
\def\noopsort#1{\relax}
\bibliographystyle{plain}
\bibliography{mtc-add}
\adjuststc
```

\printindex
\mtcfixindex

The index: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the tocbibind package [472] and a correction with \mtcfixindex:

```
\printindex
\mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
%% \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}
%% \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}
%% \mtcaddsection

\appendix
\section{App.~1}
\index{section!appendix}
\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
\subsection{Ninth subsection}

\begin{figure} \caption{Ninth figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table} \caption{Ninth table} \end{table}

\subsection{Tenth subsection}

\begin{figure} \caption{Tenth figure} \end{figure}
\begin{table} \caption{Tenth table} \end{table}

\section{App.~2}
\index{section!appendix}
%% contains no tables but asks for a sectlot! No sectlot printed.
\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
\subsection{Eleventh subsection}

\begin{figure} \caption{Eleventh figure} \end{figure}
\begin{figure} \caption{Twelfth figure} \end{figure}

\subsection{Twelfth subsection}

\begin{figure} \caption{Thirdteenth figure} \end{figure}
\begin{figure} \caption{Fourteenth figure} \end{figure}

\end{document}
```

⟨/mtc-ads⟩

4.6 The mtc-amm.tex document file

\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\adjustmtc
\minitoc

This example shows the use of the appendices environment in a memoir class document when the minitoc package is loaded. First, the preamble:

```
747 ⟨*mtc-amm⟩
748 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
749 \ProvidesFile{mtc-amm.tex}%
750   [2007/08/29]
751 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text
752 \usepackage{hyperref}
753 \usepackage{memhfixc}
754 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
755 \begin{document}
756 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
757 \adjustmtc
758 \chapter{First chapter}
759 \minitoc
760 \lipsum[1]
761 \section{First section}
762 \lipsum[2]
```

appendices
\addappheadtotoc
\chapter
\minitoc

The appendices are set in an appendices environment; we can add an entry in the TOC with \addappheadtotoc (a command from the memoir class):

```
763 \begin{appendices}
764 \addappheadtotoc
765 \adjustmtc %correction!
766 \chapter{Afterthoughts}
767 \minitoc
768 \lipsum[3]
769 Afterthoughts appendix
770 \section{Further remarks}
771 \lipsum[4]
772 \chapter{Last wills}
773 \minitoc
774 \section{Testament}
775 \lipsum[5]
776 \end{appendices}
777 \chapter{Conclusion}
778 \minitoc
779 \section{Bye}
780 \lipsum[6]
781 \chapter{Back from Hell}
782 \minitoc
783 \section{Not dead yet!}
784 \lipsum[7]
785 \section{I will survive}
786 \lipsum[8]
787 \end{document}
788 ⟨/mtc-amm⟩
```

4.7 The mtc-apx.tex document file

The mtc-apx.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 67.

4.8 The mtc-art.tex document file

\stcindent
\stcfont
\stcSSfont

This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains sections but no chapters, so it must use an article-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```
789 ⟨*mtc-art⟩
790 %% mtc-art.tex
```

```
%% This file contains a set of tests for minitoc
%% package. You can alter most of parameters to test.
%% article (\section must be defined)
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{article}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-art.tex}%
  [2007/06/06]
\usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
%% \usepackage{hyperref}      % If used, load it BEFORE minitoc
\usepackage[tight,insection]{minitoc}
\setcounter{secnumdepth}{5}   % depth of numbering of sectionning commands
\setcounter{tocdepth}{3}      % depth of table of contents
\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt}  % indentation of secttocs, default
%%                            % font for secttocs, default
\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}%
%%                            % font for secttocs, subsections
%% \renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\sf}%
%%                            % you can make experiments with
%%                            % \stcSSSfont, \stcPfont and \stcSPfont
%%                            % but it is ``fontomania''...
\raggedbottom                 % or \flushbottom, at your choice
```

If you want to use sections numbered in each part (the section number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the secttoc files is independent on the numbering of the sections (it is absolute).

```
%%% TEST: uncomment the next line to test
%%% resetting section number in each part
%%% \makeatletter \@addtoreset{section}{part} \makeatother
%%% END TEST
```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```
\begin{document}
```

\dosecttoc
\dosectlof
\dosectlot
\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dosectlot

The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:

```
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof[c]                 % center titles of the sectlofs
\dosectlot
\doparttoc                    % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
\dopartlof                    % added in version #15
\dopartlot                    % added in version #15
```

\faketableofcontents
\fakelistoffigures
\fakelistoftables

It is necessary to create the contents files; use the "fake" version to not print.

```
\faketableofcontents          % or \tableofcontents
\fakelistoffigures            % to check compatibility
\fakelistoftables             % to check compatibility
```

\part
\parttoc
\partlof
\partlot

There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands; we define a part, with a parttoc, a partlof (with the title on the right) and a parttoc:

```
\part{First Part} \parttoc \partlof[r] \partlot
```

\section
\secttoc
\sectlof
\mtcskip

A section, in two columns mode, with a secttoc (title on the right), and a sectlof; this section contains subsections to make a non-empty secttoc but no figures (to detect an empty sectlof).

```
\twocolumn\sloppy               % the secttoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
                                % but works. Ideas to make it better?
\section{AAAAA}                 % a section with a lot of sections
\secttoc[r]                     % secttoc title on the right
\mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
\lipsum[1]
\subsection{S1} \lipsum[2]
\subsection{S2} \lipsum[3]
\subsection{S3} \lipsum[4]
\subsection*{S4}
%% \addcontentsline{toc}{starsubsection}{*S4*}
\lipsum[5]
```

A lot of subsections:

```
\subsection{S5} \lipsum[6]
\subsection{S6} \lipsum[7]
\subsection{S7} \lipsum[8]
\subsection{S8} \lipsum[9]
\subsection{S9} \lipsum[10]
\subsection{S10} \lipsum[11]
\subsection{S11} \lipsum[12]
\subsection{S12} \lipsum[13]
\subsection{S13} \lipsum[14]
\subsection{S14} \lipsum[15]
\subsection{S15} \lipsum[16]
\subsection{S16} \lipsum[17]
\subsection{S17} \lipsum[18]
\subsection{S18} \lipsum[19]
\subsection{S19} \lipsum[20]
\subsection{S20} \lipsum[21]
\subsection{S21} \lipsum[22]
\subsection{S22} \lipsum[23]
\subsection{S23} \lipsum[24]
\subsection{S24} \lipsum[25]
\subsection{S25} \lipsum[26]
\subsection{S26} \lipsum[27]
\subsection{S27} \lipsum[28]
\subsection{S28} \lipsum[29]
\subsection{S29} \lipsum[30]
\subsection{S30} \lipsum[31]
```

\FloatBarrier
\section*
\mtcaddsection
\sectlof
\sectlot

We return to the one column mode. Then a section with a secttoc and a sectlof (there are subsections and figures). The `insection` package option should ensure that floating objects (like figures) do not drift outside their section.

```
\onecolumn\fussy         % back to one column
\section{BBBBB}
\secttoc
\mtcskip                 % put some skip here
\sectlof                 % a sectlof
\lipsum[32]
\subsection{T1} \lipsum[33]
\begin{figure}[t]        % tests compatibility with floating bodies
\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
```

```
\begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
\caption{F1}            % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
\end{figure}
\FloatBarrier
\subsubsection[tt1]{TT1} % tests optional arg. of a sectionning command
\lipsum[34]
\paragraph{TTT1} \lipsum[35]
\subparagraph{TTTT1} \lipsum[36]
\begin{figure}[t]
\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
\begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
\caption[f2]{F2}        % tests optional arg. of a caption
\end{figure}
\FloatBarrier
\subsection{T2} \lipsum[37]
\section*{CCCCC}        % tests a pseudo-section. should have no secttoc
%% \addstarredsection{CCCCC}
\mtcaddsection[CCCCC]
\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
\lipsum[38]
\subsection{U1} \lipsum[39]
\subsubsection{UU1} \lipsum[40]
\paragraph{UUU1} \lipsum[41]
\subparagraph{UUUU1} \lipsum[42]
\subsection{U2} \lipsum[43]
\part{Second Part}
\parttoc
\partlof[c]
\partlot
%%                      % the following section should have no secttoc,
\section{DDDDD}         % but if you uncomment \secttoc,
%% \secttoc
\mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
%                       % the secttoc appears
\lipsum[44]
\subsection{V1} \lipsum[45]
\subsubsection{VV1} \lipsum[46]
\paragraph{VVV1} \lipsum[47]
\subparagraph{VVVV1} \lipsum[48]
\begin{figure}[t]       % tests compatibility with floating bodies
\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
\begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
\caption{F3}            % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
\end{figure}
\FloatBarrier
\lipsum[49] \subsection{V2} \lipsum[50]
```

\mtcskip
\section
\chapter
\secttoc
\sectlof
\sectlot
\FloatBarrier
\part
\parttoc
\partlof
\partlot

We change the depth of the secttocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```
\section{EEEEE}                 % this section should have a secttoc
{%                              % left brace, see below
\setcounter{secttocdepth}{3}    % depth of sect table of contents;
                                % try with different values.
\secttoc
\mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
}                               % right brace
%% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change on secttocdepth.
\lipsum[51]
\subsection{W1}                 % with the given depth
\lipsum[52]
\subsubsection{WW1} \lipsum[53]
\paragraph{WWW1} \lipsum[54]
\begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
\begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
\caption{F4}                % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
\end{figure}
\FloatBarrier
bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
\subparagraph{WWWW1} \lipsum[55]
\subsection{W2} \lipsum[56]
% no chapter in article class \chapter*{}
\part{Appendices}
\parttoc \mtcskip
\partlof \mtcskip
\partlot
\FloatBarrier
\appendix
\section{Comments} \lipsum[57]
\secttoc
\mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
\subsection{C1} \lipsum[58]
\subsection{C2} \lipsum[59]
\subsection{C3} \lipsum[60]
\begin{figure}[hb]        % tests compatibility with floating bodies
\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
\begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
\caption{F5}              % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
\end{figure}
\FloatBarrier
\subsection{C4} \lipsum[61]
\FloatBarrier
\section{Evolution}
\secttoc
\sectlof % empty
\sectlot % empty
\lipsum[62]
\subsection{D1} \lipsum[63] \subsection{D2} \lipsum[64]
\subsection{D3} \lipsum[65] \subsection{D4} \lipsum[66]
\end{document}
```

⟨/mtc-art⟩

4.9 The `mtc-bk.tex` document file

\setcounter \mtcindent \mtcfont \mtcSfont \mtcSSfont

This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains chapters, so it must use a book-like or report-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```
⟨*mtc-bk⟩
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%% A example file (differs from previous versions)
%% mtc-bk.tex
%% This file contains a set of tests for minitoc package file.
%% You can alter most of parameters to test.
%% Class: book/report (\chapter must be defined).
%% You can use a copy of this file to play with minitoc commands and parameters.
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report} % the report class uses less pages
%% \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-bk.tex}%
  [2007/06/06]
\usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
%% \usepackage{hyperref} % if used, load it BEFORE minitoc
%% \usepackage{mtcoff}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc} % tight option make shorter mini-tables
\setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectionning commands
\setcounter{tocdepth}{3}               % depth of table of contents
\setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt}           % indentation of minitocs, default
\renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rm}     % font for minitocs, default
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\bf}    % font for minitocs, sections, default
%% \renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{\small\sf} % font for minitocs, subsections
%% you can make experiments with \mtcSSSfont, \mtcPfont and \mtcSPfont
%% but it is ''fontomania''...
\raggedbottom                  % or \flushbottom, at your choice
```

If you want to use chapters numbered in each part (the chapter number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the minitoc files is independent on the numbering of the chapters (it is absolute).

```
%%% TEST: uncomment the next line to test resetting chapter number in each part
%% \makeatletter \@addtoreset{chapter}{part} \makeatother
%%% END TEST
```

\mtcpagenumbers \noptcrule

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```
\begin{document}
\mtcpagenumbers
\noptcrule
%% \nomtcrule                  % suppresses minitoc rules
%% \nomtcpagenumbers           % suppresses minitoc page numbers
%% \nomlfpagenumbers           % ---------- minilof ---- -------
%% \nomltpagenumbers           % ---------- minilot ---- -------
```

\dominitoc
\dominilof
\dominilot
\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dopartlot

The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:

```
\dominitoc
\dominilof[c]                % centers title of minilof's
\dominilot
\doparttoc                   % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
\dopartlof                   % added in version #15
\dopartlot                   % added in version #15
```

\tableofcontents
\listoffigures
\fakelistoftables

It is necessary to create the contents files; use the "fake" version to not print.

```
\tableofcontents             % or \faketableofcontents
\listoffigures               % or \fakelistoffigures
\fakelistoftables            % or \listoftables
```

Uncomment the following line if the first chapter must be numbered "0":

```
%% \addtocounter{chapter}{-1} % to begin with Chapter 0
```

\part
\parttoc
\partlof
\partlot

There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands:

```
\part{First Part}
\parttoc \partlof[r] \partlot[r]
```

A chapter, in two column mode, with a minitoc (title on the right):

```
\twocolumn\sloppy            % the minitoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
\chapter{AAAAA}              % a chapter with a lot of sections
\minitoc[r]                  % minitoc title on the right
\lipsum[1]
\section{S1} \lipsum[2]
\section{S2} \lipsum[3]
\section{S3} \lipsum[4]
```

\section*
\addtocontentsline

A starred section; we want an entry in the TOC, so we add it the normal way:

```
\section*{S4}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\protect\numberline{}{S4}}
\lipsum[5]
```

A lot of subsections:

```
\section{S5} \lipsum[6]
\section{S6} \lipsum[6]
\section{S7} \lipsum[7]
\section{S8} \lipsum[9]
\section{S9} \lipsum[10]
\section{S10} \lipsum[11]
\section{S11} \lipsum[12]
\section{S12} \lipsum[13]
```

```
\section{S13} \lipsum[14]
\section{S14} \lipsum[15]
\section{S15} \lipsum[16]
\section{S16} \lipsum[17]
\section{S17} \lipsum[18]
\section{S18} \lipsum[19]
\section{S19} \lipsum[20]
\section{S20} \lipsum[21]
\section{S21} \lipsum[22]
\section{S22} \lipsum[23]
\section{S23} \lipsum[24]
\section{S24} \lipsum[25]
\section{S25} \lipsum[26]
\section{S26} \lipsum[27]
\section{S27} \lipsum[28]
\section{S28} \lipsum[29]
\section{S29} \lipsum[30]
\section{S30} \lipsum[31]
\subsection{SS1} \lipsum[32]
\section{S31} \lipsum[33]
```

\chapter
\minitoc
\minilof
\minilot
\mtcskip

We return to one column mode. A new chapter, with a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot:

```
\onecolumn\fussy        % back to one column
\chapter{BBBBB}
\minitoc
\mtcskip                % put some skip here
\minilof                % a minilof
\mtcskip                % put some skip here
\minilot                % a minilot
\lipsum[34]
\section{T1} \lipsum[35]
\begin{figure}[t]       % tests compatibility with floating bodies
\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
\begin{picture}(100,50)
\end{picture}
\caption{F1}            % (tables are similar)
\end{figure}
\begin{table}[b]        % tests compatibility with floating bodies
\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
\begin{picture}(100,50)
\end{picture}
\caption{T1}            % (tables are similar)
\end{table}
\clearpage
\subsection[tt1]{TT1}   % tests optional arg. of a sectionning command
\lipsum[36]
\subsubsection{TTT1} \lipsum[37]
\paragraph{TTTT1} \lipsum[38]
\begin{figure}
\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
\begin{picture}(100,50)
\end{picture}
\caption[f2]{F2}        % tests optional arg. of a caption
\end{figure}
\section{T2} \lipsum[39]
```

\chapter*
\addstarredchapter
\addcontentsline
\section*
\paragraph*
\part
\parttoc
\partlof

A starred chapter with an entry added in the TOC; all subordinate (lower) sectionning commands must also be starred.

```
\chapter*{CCCCC}        % tests a pseudo-chapter; could have a minitoc.
\addstarredchapter{CCCCC}
```

```
\lipsum[40]
\section*{U1}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U1}
\lipsum[41]
\subsection*{UU1}
\addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{UU1}
\lipsum[42]
\subsubsection*{UUU1}
\addcontentsline{toc}{subsubsection}{UUU1}
\lipsum[43]
\paragraph*{UUUU1}
\addcontentsline{toc}{paragraph}{UUUU1}
\lipsum[44]
\section*{U2}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U2}
\lipsum[45]
\part{Second Part}
\parttoc
\partlof[c]
```

This chapter has no minitoc, but if you uncomment \minitoc, the minitoc will appear.

```
%%                      % the following chapter should have no minitoc,
\chapter{DDDDD}         % but if you uncomment \minitoc,
%% \minitoc             % the minitoc appears
\lipsum[46]
\section{V1} \lipsum[47]
\subsection{VV1} \lipsum[48]
\subsubsection{VVV1} \lipsum[49]
\paragraph{VVVV1} \lipsum[50]
\begin{figure}[t]       % tests compatibility with floating bodies
\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
\begin{picture}(100,50)
\end{picture}
\caption{F3}            % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
\end{figure}
\lipsum[51]
\section{V2} \lipsum[52]
```

We change the depth of the minitocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```
\chapter{EEEEE}                % this chapter should have a minitoc
{%                             % left brace, see below
\setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}   % depth of mini table of contents;
                               % try with different values.
\minitoc
}                              % right brace
%% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
%% on minitocdepth.
\lipsum[53]
\section{W1}                   % with the given depth
\lipsum[54]
```

```
\subsection{WW1} \lipsum[55]
\subsubsection{WWW1} \lipsum[56]
\begin{figure}[t]        % tests compatibility with floating bodies
\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
\begin{picture}(100,50)
\end{picture}
\caption{F4}             % (I have not tested tables here, but it is similar)
\end{figure}
\lipsum[57]
\paragraph{WWWW1} \lipsum[58]
\subparagraph{WWWWW1} \lipsum[59]
\section{W2} \lipsum[60]
```

\appendix
\part
\parttoc

Here, we encounter a classical problem: to make a local table of contents for a set of appendices, while hiding these entries in the main table of contents. First, we create a part, with its parttoc:

```
\appendix
\part{Appendices}
\parttoc
```

mtchideinmaintoc
\chapter
\minitoc

Then, we begin a `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, with the hiding depth as optional argument:

```
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1]
\chapter{Comments}
\minitoc
\section{C1} \lipsum[61]
\section{C2} \lipsum[62]
\section{C3} \lipsum[63]
\begin{figure}[t]        % tests compatibility with floating bodies
\setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
\begin{picture}(100,50)
\end{picture}
\caption{F5}             % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
\end{figure}
\section{C4}
\chapter{Evolution}
\minitoc
\minilof %Empty => invisible
\minilot %Empty => invisible
\section{D1} \lipsum[64]
\section{D2} \lipsum[65]
\section{D3} \lipsum[66]
\section{D4} \lipsum[67]
```

mtchideinmaintoc
\addtocontents

We terminate the part by adding a marker in the TOC file, then we must close this `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```
%% this line closes the omitted part
```

```
\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}
%% this line restore the depth in the main TOC
\end{mtchideinmaintoc}
\lipsum[68]
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-bk⟩
```

4.10 The `mtc-bo.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a two column layout for some portions and the tocloft package [469]. The aim is to begin a chapter with a special head and a preliminary block containing a minitoc and some indications, on two columns. The preamble loads the geometry package [447], which defines the global page layout, the multicol package [325], the color package [120], because we want a colored background for the minitoc, the tocloft package [469], to change some parameters of the minitoc, and, at least, the minitoc package itself:

```
⟨*mtc-bo⟩
\documentclass[10pt]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-bo.tex}%
  [2007/04/17]
\usepackage[paperwidth=8.5in,paperheight=11in,%
      lmargin=1.25in,rmargin=1.25in,tmargin=1in,bmargin=1in]{geometry}
\usepackage{multicol}
\usepackage{color}
```

\setlength
\addtolength
\cftsecindent
\cftsecnumwidth
\cftsubsecindent
\cftsubsecnumwidth
\cftsubsubsecindent
\cftsubsubsecnumwidth

We use the tocloft package and its commands to set the indentations in the TOC and the minitoc:

```
\usepackage{tocloft}
\setlength{\cftsecindent}{0cm}
\setlength{\cftsecnumwidth}{15 pt}
\setlength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecindent}
\addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecnumwidth}
\setlength{\cftsubsecnumwidth}{20 pt}
\setlength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecindent}
\addtolength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecnumwidth}
```

\cftpagenumbersoff

Note that if we want to suppress the page numbers in the minitoc, we must use the commands from tocloft:

```
\cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
\cftpagenumbersoff{subsec}
```

\mtcindent
\nomtcrule
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mtctitle

We load the minitoc package and change the indentation, suppress the rules and change the minitoc title. The hyperref package [391] can also be loaded (*after* minitoc).

```
\usepackage[francais,tight]{minitoc}
\usepackage{hyperref}
\setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
\nomtcrule        % pas de filets en haut et en bas de la mini-tdm
\nomtcpagenumbers % pas de numéro de pages
%                   (non fonctionnel avec tocloft)
\renewcommand{\mtctitle}{Contenu de la rencontre}
```

We load also some packages for the french language (some are local):

```
\usepackage[francais]{babel}
\usepackage{franc,frnew}
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
\usepackage{mypatches}
```

This code redefines the format of the chapter head:

```
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
% MACRO POUR AVOIR LE MOT « RENCONTRE » AU LIEU DE « CHAPITRE »       %
% Sans saut de ligne (modification du code qui se trouve dans la FAQ) %
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\makeatletter
\def\@makechapterhead#1{%
  \vspace*{10\p@}%
  {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \normalfont
   \interlinepenalty\@M
   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
     \Huge\bfseries\sffamily Rencontre \thechapter\\% \quad
   \fi
   \Huge\bfseries\sffamily #1\par\nobreak
   \vskip 10\p@
}}
\def\@makeschapterhead#1{%
  \vspace*{10\p@}%
  {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \normalfont
   \interlinepenalty\@M
   \Huge \sffamily #1\par\nobreak
   \vskip 10\p@
}} \makeatother
```

We define an environment (pageUn) for the block placed at the beginning of a chapter. This block contains a minitoc, then a sequence of informations given by the 6 parameters of the environment. The block uses a multicols environment to typeset on two columns. Some decorations are added: rules, colored background for the minitoc.

```
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
%: ENVIRONNEMENT POUR LA PAGE 1 DES RENCONTRES %
```

```
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
% param1: date de la rencontre
% param2: nombre de périodes
% param3: liste des documents distribués
% param4: messages
% param5: lecture
% param6: exercices
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\newenvironment{pageUn}[6]{%
\parindent = 0.0in
\rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
\begin{multicols}{2}
        {\large \bfseries Math. pour médecine nucléaire\\
        \textit{(#2)}}
        \vfill\columnbreak
        \raggedleft\bfseries Automne 2003\\
        #1
\end{multicols}
\vspace{-18pt}
\rule{\linewidth}{1pt}

\setlength{\columnseprule}{.3pt} \setlength{\columnsep}{1cm}
\begin{multicols}{2}%

%: TABLE DES MATIÈRES (col. gauche)
\colorbox[cmyk]{.1,0,0,0}{%
        \parbox{\linewidth}{%
        \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}%
        \minitoc%
        }}
%\vfill \columnbreak ~ \vfill

\mtcskip

%: DOCUMENTS DISTRIBUÉS (début col. droite)

{\large \bfseries Documents distribués}
\begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #3 \end{itemize}

%: MESSAGES AUX ÉTUDIANTS

\vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Messages}
\begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$}#4\end{itemize}

%: LECTURE
\vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Lecture}\vspace{-6pt} \par#5 \par

% EXERCICES
\vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Exercices}\vspace{-6pt}\par#6\par

%\newpage
\end{multicols}%
}
%{\newpage}
```

```
{\hrule}

%\renewcommand{\baselinestretch}{1.2} %interligne

%\pagestyle{empty}  %pas de # de page
%\parindent = 0.0in
\parskip = 0.1in

%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
%: REDÉFINIR LES SECTIONS %
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\renewcommand{\thesection}{\Alph{section}}
%\renewcommand{\thesection}{\thechapter-\Alph{section}}
```

The body of the document:

```
%%%%%%%%%%
%: BEGIN %
%%%%%%%%%%
\begin{document}
\dominitoc \faketableofcontents
\chapter{Première étape (début)}
%\minitoc
\begin{pageUn}
        {%1     Date du cours
                lundi 25 août
                }
        {%2     Durée du cours
                2 périodes
                }
        {%3     Liste des documents à~distribuer
                \item Plan de cours
                \item Fiche d'identification
                \item Grille horaire
                \item Feuilles d'exercices supplémentaires
                }
        {%4     Ne pas oublier
                \item Acheter le livre de référence
                \item Apporter une disquette
                }
        {%5     Lecture
                Lire les pages ppp à~ppp et ppp à~ppp
                }
        {%6     Exercice
                Faire les exercices nnn de la page ppp
                }
\end{pageUn}

%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\section{Titre de la section} %
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
```

```
Texte dans la section

%%
\subsection{Une sous-section}
%%
Bla bla bla

%%
\subsection{Une autre sous-section}
%%
Bla bla bla


%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\section{Titre d'une autre section} %
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%

Texte dans la section

%%
\subsection{Une sous-section}
%%
Bla bla bla

%%
\subsection{Une autre sous-section}
%%
Bla bla bla

%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\section{Encore une autre section} %
%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%

Texte dans la section

\end{document}
⟨/mtc-bo⟩
```

4.11 The `mtc-ch0.tex` document file

`\dominitoc` `\tableofcontents`

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a starred first chapter, inducing the "Chapter Zero" problem.

```
⟨∗mtc-ch0⟩
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-ch0.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage[tight,english]{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\dominitoc \tableofcontents
```

\chapter* \mtcaddchapter \minitoc

The first chapter is starred, but contains real numbered sections. We add an entry in the TOC for this chapter and see that its sections are using “0” as chapter number:

```
\chapter*{Chapter One (starred)}
\mtcaddchapter[Fake chapter one]
\minitoc
\section{Chap 1, section 1}
That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
worldwide parties to celebrate.

Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
things by halves around here.

\subsection{Chap 1, section 1, subsection 1}
That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
worldwide parties to celebrate.

Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
things by halves around here.
```

\chapter \minitoc

The second chapter is normal:

```
\chapter{Chapter Two (numbered one)}
\minitoc
\section{Chapter 2, section 1}
That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
Thunderbird 1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
worldwide parties to celebrate.

Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
things by halves around here.
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-ch0⟩
```

4.12 The mtc-cri.tex document file

\mtcsetdepth
\doparttoc
\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\part*
\mtcaddpart
\adjustptc
\parttoc
\chapter*
\mtcaddchapter
\chapter
\minitoc
\section

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred part and starred chapters. Note the use of the adjustment commands. This example is not commented: just follow the insertion of the mini-tables in the mtc-cri.log file.

```
⟨*mtc-cri⟩
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]%
  {report}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-cri.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage[francais]{babel}
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
\usepackage%
  [french2,tight]%
  {minitoc}

\mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}

\begin{document}
\doparttoc \dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\part*{Présentation générale}
\mtcaddpart[Présentation générale]
\adjustptc[-2]
\parttoc

Texte de la
présentation générale\ldots

\chapter*{Les auteurs}
\mtcaddchapter[Les auteurs]
Présentation des auteurs\ldots

\chapter*{Les lecteurs}
\mtcaddchapter[Les lecteurs]
Présentation des lecteurs\ldots

\part{Première partie}
\parttoc
\chapter*{Introduction}
\mtcaddchapter[Introduction]
\chapter{Premier chapitre}
\minitoc
\section{Première section~A}
\section{Deuxième section~A}
\chapter{Deuxième chapitre}
\minitoc
\section{Première section~B}
\section{Deuxième section~B}

\part{Deuxième partie}
\parttoc
\chapter{Premier chapitre}
\minitoc
\section{Première section~C}
\section{Deuxième section~C}
\chapter{Deuxième chapitre}
\minitoc
\section{Première section~D}
\section{Deuxième section~D}
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-cri⟩
```

4.13 The mtc-fko.tex document file

This is a document using the scrbook class. Without any precaution, some entries in the minitocs are not in the right font (bold sans serif) like in the main table of contents; moreover, the language of the minitoc titles is not correct because the options of the babel package are not transferred to the minitoc package. To solve the language problem, we just set "german" as a *global* option in the \documentclass command (babel and minitoc will hence use this global option).

```
⟨*mtc-fko⟩
\documentclass[german,a4paper,oneside]{scrbook}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-fko.tex}%
  [2007/02/19]
```

\mtcindent Then we load the packages and set some parameters:

```
\usepackage[germanb]{babel}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
\setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt} % optional
```

\mtcsetfont \mtcsettitlefont \sectfont \mtcsettitle Then we set explicitly the fonts for the entries[4] and the font of the titles of the minitocs, knowing that the font command `\sectfont` is defined in `scrbook.cls`; we change also the title for the minitocs:

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\sectfont\small}
\mtcsettitlefont{minitoc}{\sectfont\large}
\mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Inhalt}
```

\dominitoc \tableofcontents \chapter \minitoc Then the body of the document, with a chapter (with a minitoc) containing a section. The section entry did not appear in bold sans serif in the original document (before the corrections).

```
\begin{document}
\dominitoc \tableofcontents
%
\chapter{Ein serifenloses Kapitel}
\minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
\section{Dieser Text ist in minitoc serifenlos}
Auch der Text \glqq Inhaltsangabe\grqq\ will
so wie koma es definiert.
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-fko⟩
```

4.14 The `mtc-fo1.tex` document file

\doparttoc \dominitoc \tableofcontents \part This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results.

```
⟨*mtc-fo1⟩
\documentclass{report}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-fo1.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage{lipsum}
```

[4] Here we only gave the commands for the section entries in the minitocs, but analog commands may be used for lower entries.

```
\usepackage{txfonts}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\doparttoc \dominitoc \tableofcontents
\part{Introduction} \clearpage
```

\parttoc A first copy, with default fonts:

```
\parttoc \clearpage
```

\mtcsetfont \parttoc A second copy, roman bold font for chapter entries:

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\parttoc \clearpage
```

\mtcsetfont \parttoc A third copy, typewriter bold font for chapter entries:

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\parttoc \clearpage
```

\mtcsetfont \parttoc \chapter \minitoc \section \subsection A fourth copy, not bold typewriter font for chapter entries:

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\parttoc \clearpage
\chapter{A very short chapter}
\minitoc
\lipsum[1]
\section{First section} \lipsum[2]
\subsection{Alpha} \lipsum[3]
\subsection{Beta} \lipsum[4]
\section{Second section} \lipsum[5]
\subsection{Gamma} \lipsum[6]
\subsection{Delta} \lipsum[7]
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-fo1⟩
```

4.15 The `mtc-fo2.tex` document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results. As the fonts are not declared the same way, compare the results with those of `mtc-fo1.tex` (see section 4.14 on the preceding page).

```
⟨*mtc-fo2⟩
\documentclass{report}
```

```
\ProvidesFile{mtc-fo2.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage{lipsum}
\usepackage{txfonts}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
```

\ptcfont
\ptcSSfont
\ptcSSSfont
\ptcPfont
\ptcSPfont
\plffont
\plfSfont
\pltfont
\pltSfont
\doparttoc
\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\part

We declare the fonts with the old method:

```
  \def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont}     % (subsections)
  \def\ptcSSSfont{\ptcfont}    % (subsubsections)
  \def\ptcPfont{\ptcfont}      % (paragraphs)
  \def\ptcSPfont{\ptcfont}     % (subparagraphs)
  \def\plffont{\ptcfont}       % (figures)
  \def\plfSfont{\ptcfont}      % (subfigures)
  \def\pltfont{\ptcfont}       % (tables)
  \def\pltSfont{\ptcfont}      % (subtables)
\begin{document}
\doparttoc \dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\part{Introduction}
\clearpage
```

\parttoc

A first version of the parttoc, with the fonts defined above:

```
\parttoc \clearpage
```

\mtcsetfont
\parttoc

A second version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a roman bold font:

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\parttoc \clearpage
```

\mtcsetfont
\parttoc

A third version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a typewriter bold font:

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\parttoc \clearpage
```

\mtcsetfont
\parttoc

A fourth version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a non bold typewriter font:

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\parttoc \clearpage
\chapter{A very short chapter}
\minitoc
\lipsum[1]
\section{First section} \lipsum[2]
\subsection{Alpha} \lipsum[3] \subsection{Beta} \lipsum[4]
\section{Second section} \lipsum[5]
\subsection{Gamma} \lipsum[6] \subsection{Delta} \lipsum[7]
```

```
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-fo2⟩
```

4.16 The mtc-gap.tex document file

The mtc-gap.tex document file is described in section 2.44 on page 76.

4.17 The mtc-hi1.tex document file

The mtc-hi1.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 68.

4.18 The mtc-hi2.tex document file

The mtc-hi2.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 69.

4.19 The mtc-hia.tex document file

\dosectlot
\listoftables
\section
\sectlot

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the article class.

```
⟨*mtc-hia⟩
\documentclass%
  [oneside,a4paper]{article}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-hia.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage{lipsum}
\usepackage%
  [tight,insection]%
          {minitoc}
\dosectlot
\begin{document}
\listoftables
\section{First section}
\sectlot
\lipsum[1]
\begin{table}[hb]
\caption{My first visible table}
\end{table}
\lipsum[2]
\begin{table}[ht]
\caption{A second visible table}
\end{table}
\lipsum[3]
```

\mtchideinmainlot
\section
\sectlot

For the *first* hidden table, we add \mtchideinmainlot *before* its caption:

```
\begin{table}[hb]
\mtchideinmainlot
\caption{My first hidden table}
\end{table}
\lipsum[4-6]
\begin{table}[ht]
\caption{A second hidden table}
\end{table}
\lipsum[7]
\section{Second section}
\sectlot
\lipsum[8]
```

\endmtchideinmainlot For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:

```
\begin{table}[hb]
\caption{My last hidden table}
\endmtchideinmainlot
\end{table}
\lipsum[9]
\begin{table}[ht]
\caption{A third visible table}
\end{table}
\lipsum[10]
\begin{table}[hb]
\caption{A fourth visible table}
\end{table}
\lipsum[11]
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-hia⟩
```

4.20 The `mtc-hir.tex` document file

\dominilot \listoftables \chapter \minilot This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the report class.

```
⟨*mtc-hir⟩
\documentclass[a4paper]{report}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-hir.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage{lipsum}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
\dominilot
\begin{document}
\listoftables
\chapter{First chapter}
\minilot
\lipsum[1]
\begin{table}[hb]
\caption{My first visible table}
\end{table}
\lipsum[2]
\begin{table}[ht]
\caption{A second visible table}
\end{table}
\lipsum[3]
```

\mtchideinmainlot \chapter \minilot For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

```
\begin{table}[hb]
\mtchideinmainlot     % <--
\caption{My first hidden table}
\end{table}
\lipsum[4-6]
\begin{table}[ht]
\caption{A second hidden table}
\end{table}
\lipsum[7]
\chapter{Second chapter}
\minilot
\lipsum[8]
```

\endmtchideinmainlot For the *last* hidden table, we add \endmtchideinmainlot *after* its caption:

```
\begin{table}[hb]
\caption{My last hidden table}
\endmtchideinmainlot  %  <--
\end{table}
\lipsum[9]
\begin{table}[ht]
\caption{A third visible table}
\end{table}
\lipsum[10]
\begin{table}[hb]
\caption{A fourth visible table}
\end{table}
\lipsum[11]
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-hir⟩
```

4.21 The mtc-hop.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of class scrbook.

```
⟨*mtc-hop⟩
\documentclass[oneside,12pt]{scrbook}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-hop.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage{lipsum}
\usepackage[hints]{minitoc}
\begin{document}
```

\dominitoc \dominilof \tableofcontents \listoffigures We prepare the minitocs and the minilofs, we print the TOC but not the LOF (while the LOF file is prepared):

```
\dominitoc \tableofcontents
\dominilof \fakelistoffigures
```

\part* \mtcaddpart A starred part with its entry in the TOC:

```
\part*{Part 1: Strategic Marketing}
\mtcaddpart[Part 1: Strategic Marketing]
```

\chapter \minitoc \minilof Then two chapters with their minitocs and minitocs:

```
\chapter{Chapter 1}
\minitoc \minilof
\section{Section one of first chapter} \lipsum[1]
\begin{figure}
    \centering Test
    \caption{Picture one of first chapter}
\end{figure}

\section{Section two of first chapter} \lipsum[2]
```

```
\begin{figure}
    \centering Test
    \caption{Picture two of first chapter}
\end{figure}

\chapter{Chapter 2}
\minitoc \minilof

\section{Section one of second chapter} \lipsum[3]
\begin{figure}
    \centering Test
    \caption{Picture one of second chapter}
\end{figure}
\cleardoublepage
\section{Section two of second chapter} \lipsum[4]
\begin{figure}
    \centering Test
    \caption{Picture two of second chapter}
\end{figure}
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-hop⟩
```

4.22 The `mtc-liv.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of book class, with customized TOC and minitocs.

```
⟨∗mtc-liv⟩
\documentclass[10pt,twoside,openright]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-liv.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
```

First, we want that empty pages be really empty, without page number nor headers, so we redefine `\cleardoublepage`:

```
\makeatletter
\def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
\def\cleardoublepage{\clearpage
 \if@twoside
  \ifodd\c@page\else
   \null\thispagestyle{chapterverso}\newpage
   \if@twocolumn\null\newpage\fi
   \fi
  \fi
 }%
\def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
\makeatother
```

We define the encodings, for input and output, because the document is in french and uses accented letters:

```
\usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
\usepackage[TS1,T1]{fontenc}
```

We load two packages, tocloft [469], to customize the TOC and the minitocs, and sectsty [319], to customize the sectionning commands:

```
\usepackage{tocloft}
\usepackage{sectsty}
```

We load the minitoc package then some complementary local packages for the french language:

```
\usepackage[french,undotted,tight]{minitoc}
\usepackage[english,francais]{babel}
\usepackage{franc,frnew,mypatches}
\providecommand{\fup}{\textsuperscript}
```

\addtolength
\cftsubsecindent
\cftsetrmarg
\setcounter
\chapterfont
\thesection
\sectionfont
\raggedright

We make some customizations: indentation for the subsection entries in the TOC and the minitocs, depth of the TOC, numerotation depth, depth of the minitocs, some fonts:

```
\addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{1em} % for tocloft
\cftsetrmarg{2.55em plus 1fil} % to avoid hyphenations in the ToC (tocloft).
\setcounter{tocdepth}{3}
\setcounter{secnumdepth}{1}
\setcounter{minitocdepth}{4}
\chapterfont{\huge\bfseries\sffamily} % for sectsty
\renewcommand{\thesection}{\arabic{section}}
\sectionfont{\Large\raggedright} % for sectsty (to avoid hyphenations in section titles)
```

Some informations for the title page:

```
\title{Systèmes d'occultation} \author{Laurent~\textsc{Bloch}}
```

\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\chapter
\minitoc
\section
\subsection
\subsection*
\subsubsection
\addcontentsline

And the document body[5]:

```
\begin{document}

\maketitle

\dominitoc \tableofcontents

\chapter{Définition et contrôle du travail à~faire}%
\label{chap+controle}
\minitoc
```

[5] The text has been shortened, so there is an undefined reference; do not worry.

```
1747
1748 \section{Le modèle de la grande industrie et le taylorisme}%
1749 \index{taylorisme}
1750 C'est au \textsc{xviii}\fup{e}~siècle que la vision du travail comme
1751 marchandise est vraiment devenue dominante, pour s'imposer au
1752 \textsc{xix}\fup{e}~siècle dans l'organisation type de la grande usine
1753 industrielle.
1754
1755 \subsection*{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}\index{centre d'appel}
1756 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}
1757 Aujourd'hui le taylorisme\index{taylorisme} au sens
1758 strict est en déclin parce qu'il n'est plus guère adapté aux
1759 besoins de la production industrielle contemporaine non plus qu'aux
1760 nouvelles normes de comportement individuel et collectif.
1761
1762 \section{Tout travail émet de la pensée}
1763 Le travail a vocation à~produire du sens, pour son auteur comme pour
1764 son destinataire.
1765
1766 \section{Théorie et pratique de la commande publique}
1767 En France, les prestations de service commandées par les
1768 services publics à~des entreprises font l'objet de contrôles
1769 de leur bonne réalisation selon des procédures et des règles
1770 qui sont des cas particuliers d'un ensemble plus vaste, la
1771 réglementation des marchés publics de l'État, dont nous
1772 allons donner ci-dessous une brève description.
1773
1774 \subsection{Réglementation des marchés publics}
1775 Le dispositif juridique, réglementaire et comptable qui encadre les
1776 actes contractuels de la puissance publique en France est très~[...]
1777
1778 \subsubsection{Premier principe: séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable}
1779 Le premier élément du dispositif est le principe de
1780 séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable. Il a été
1781 instauré en 1319 par l'ordonnance portant création de la~[...]
1782
1783 \subsubsection{Second principe: contrôle \emph{a~priori}}
1784 Le second élément du dispositif est le principe du contrôle
1785 \emph{a~priori}. Lorsque le directeur de l'organisme public
1786 de recherche pris ici comme exemple (l'ordonnateur) décide~[...]
1787
1788 \subsubsection{Le Code des Marchés Publics}
1789 Le troisième pilier de la commande publique est le Code des Marchés
1790 Publics (CMP), qui régit tous les contrats, conclus par des organismes
1791 publics ou des collectivités territoriales, dont le montant excède un~[...]
1792
1793 \subsection{La pratique des marchés publics}
1794 Lorsque l'administration française fait réaliser un système
1795 informatique par un prestataire, elle est en position de maître
1796 d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}.  Elle rédige (ou fait rédiger) un
1797 cahier des charges\index{cahier des charges} qui décrit les
1798 spécifications du système à~réaliser. Ce cahier des charges constitue~[...]
1799
1800 \subsection{Quels sont les services publics «~rentables~»?}
```

```
Pour parler comme les informaticiens, nous pouvons identifier un
« effet de bord », c'est-à-dire une conséquence non intentionnelle de
la réglementation des marchés publics: les administrations ne disposent
d'aucun moyen pour envisager la notion d'investissement. Le~[...]

\section{Projet et cahier des charges}\index{cahier des charges}
Jean-Pierre~\textsc{Boutinet} nous guidera ici pour ce qui concerne
l'histoire de la notion de~[...]

\subsection{La frontière entre conception et fabrication}
La vision classique de la conduite d'un projet informatique de gestion
est la suivante: le maître d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}~[...]

\subsection{Bâtiment, mécanique, programmation}
Nous y reviendrons au chapitre~\ref{chap+travail}, mais nous savons
déjà que la mise en {\oe}uvre de l'informatique s'est beaucoup
inspirée des procédures de travail les plus élaborées du
\textsc{xx}\fup{e}~siècle~[...]

\chapter{Le travail informatique}
\minitoc

\section{De la nature de l'informatique}

\subsection{Premières croyances}\label{sub+premcroyances}
Les premiers ordinateurs, qui entrèrent en fonction à~l'extrême fin
des années 1940 et durant les années 1950, étaient consacrés à~des
travaux militaires ou scientifiques puisque, à~cette époque,
on pensait~[...]

\subsection{Comment l'informatique diffère des mathématiques}
J'aimerai à~l'occasion de cette analyse attirer l'attention du
lecteur sur une question qui est une source constante de malentendus
au sujet de la programmation.

\subsubsection{Les preuves de programme}
L'écriture de programmes informatiques obéit à~de tout autres principes.
Il convient de préciser cette affirmation pour la préserver~[...]

\section{Programmation dans le monde réel}
\subsection{La vraie nature de la programmation des ordinateurs}

Alors, comment s'écrivent les programmes informatiques? Et
d'ailleurs, qu'est-ce qu'une erreur\index{erreur} de programmation?
Ces questions sont liées et elles sont, bien sûr, au c{\oe}ur de notre
préoccupation.

\subsection{Méthodes de programmation}
Un processeur quelconque est caractérisé par le jeu des actions
élémentaires qu'il est capable d'effectuer. Ces actions élémentaires
sont appelées les \emph{primitives} du processeur, ou, si le
processeur est une machine, les «~instructions machine~».  Un~[...]

\subsection{Méthodes de construction de programmes}
```

```
Nous avons décrit ci-dessus le processus élémentaire de la
programmation, celui qui consiste à~écrire les instructions ou les
expressions qui vont composer un programme.

\subsubsection{La programmation structurée}
Le premier courant de pensée qui associa la recherche d'une syntaxe
claire et expressive à~une organisation logique et commode des unités
de programme fut la \emph{programmation
structurée}\index{programmation!structurée} des années 1970, dont~[...]

\subsubsection{La programmation par objets}
Après la programmation structurée vint un autre courant significatif:
la programmation par objets\index{programmation!par objets}, inventée
en Norvège à~la fin des années 1960 par l'équipe de~[...]

\subsubsection{Excès dans la pensée}
Il y a eu beaucoup de verbiage autour de l'aptitude supposée du
modèle~[...]
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-liv⟩
```

4.23 The `mtc-mem.tex` document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document. First, the preamble:

```
⟨*mtc-mem⟩
\documentclass%
    [oneside]{memoir}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-mem.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage{lipsum}
%% \usepackage{hyperref}
%% \usepackage{memhfixc}
\usepackage%
  [tight]{minitoc}
%% \usepackage{mtcoff}
\begin{document}
```

`\dominitoc` `\tableofcontents*` `\chapter` `\minitoc` `\section`

We use the starred form `\tableofcontents*` specific of the memoir class. Note that the the `\chapter` command has *two* optional arguments in the memoir class.

```
\dominitoc
\tableofcontents*

\chapter[oneA][oneB]{oneC}
\minitoc
\lipsum[1] \newpage \lipsum[2]
\section{S-1-one} \lipsum[3]
\section{S-1-two} \lipsum[4]

\chapter[twoA][twoB]{twoC}
\minitoc
\lipsum[4] \newpage \lipsum[5]
\section{S-2-one} \lipsum[6]
\section{S-2-two} \lipsum[7]
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-mem⟩
```

4.24 The `mtc-mm1.tex` document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document and shows some of the necessary adaptations for fonts. First, the preamble:

```
⟨*mtc-mm1⟩
\documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-mm1.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage{lipsum} % filling text
```

\providecommand \cftsecfont \cftsubsecfont \empty

We inhibit some font commands of the memoir class:

```
\providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
\providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
```

\renewcommand \cftsecfont \cftsubsecfont

Then we redefine them:

```
\renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
\renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
```

\mtcsetfont

We load the minitoc package and try to use some minitoc font commands, but without any success:

```
%% hyperref before minitoc, optional
%% \usepackage[linktocpage=true]{hyperref}\usepackage{memhfixc}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalsize\scshape}   % <- no scshape
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}{\normalsize\scshape}% <- no scshape
```

\providecommand \cftsecfont \cftsubsecfont \empty \renewcommand

But if we use the font commands of the memoir class, it works!

```
\providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
\providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
\renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
\renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
```

\mtcsettitlefont \mtcsettitle

But for mini-table titles (font and text), we can use the minitoc commands:

```
\mtcsettitlefont{minitoc}{\Large\scshape}
%%  this is working beautifully ->
\mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Chapter Contents}
```

\dominitoc \tableofcontents* \chapter \minitoc \section

The document body:

```
\begin{document}
\dominitoc \tableofcontents*

\chapter[OneA][OneB]{OneC}
\minitoc
\section{This section} \lipsum[1]
\section{Second section} \lipsum[2]
\section{Third section} \lipsum[3]
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-mm1⟩
```

4.25 The `mtc-mu.tex` document file

`\mtcindent` `\dominitoc` `\tableofcontents`

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document, the minitoc being inserted in the text with the wrapfig package [18].

```
⟨*mtc-mu⟩
\documentclass[12pt]{report}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-mu.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
\setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
\usepackage{wrapfig}
\newcommand{\LangSig}[1]{\textsc{[#1]}} % smallcaps
\begin{document}
\dominitoc \tableofcontents
```

`wrapfigure` `minipage` `\chapter` `\linewidth` `\vspace` `\baselineskip` `\minitoc`

A chapter, with its minitoc set in a `minipage`, included in a `wrapfigure` environment on the half of the text width, with some vertical adjustements:

```
\chapter{Mulspren}\label{chapter+mulspren}
\begin{wrapfigure}{r}{0.5\linewidth}
\begin{minipage}{\linewidth}
\vspace{-2.\baselineskip}
\minitoc
\vspace{-1.\baselineskip}
\end{minipage}
\end{wrapfigure}
```

The remaining of the text:

```
The previous chapter examined many end-user programming environments
and found that most contain cognitive programming gulfs.
These gulfs were often created when programing environments used
multiple notations, and could manifest themselves in a variety of
usability problems, ranging from users being unable to understand
```

```
a program representation, to not wanting to execute their programs.
Conversely, the previous chapter also found circumstances where multiple
notations helped users understand programs.
It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
programming gulfs.
It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
programming gulfs.

This chapter introduces our programming environment, Mulspren.
Mulspren was designed to avoid these gulfs and gain the potential
benefits of multiple notations.
Users program using two notations, one similar to English and one
similar to conventional code.
Changes in one notation are immediately reflected in the other notation,
and users can move rapidly and seamlessly between the notations.
This is programming using dual notations.
When the program is executed, both notations are animated.
Mulspren's language signature is \LangSig{Re/Wr/Wa + Re/Wr/Wa + Wa}.

Papers describing Mulspren have been published in~\cite{Wright02-2}
and~\cite{Wright03-3}.

\section{section 1}
\section{section 2 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
\section{section 3}
\section{section 4}
\section{section 5 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
bla bla bla bla bla}
```

thebibliography
\bibitem

I tried to find some articles of the net to fill the citations:

```
\begin{thebibliography}{1}
\bibitem{Wright02-2}
Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
\newblock Mulspren: a multiple language simulation programming
  environment.
\newblock In {\em HCC '02: Proceedings of the IEEE 2002 Symposia
  on Human Centric Computing Languages and Environments (HCC'02)},
  page 101, Washington, DC, USA, 2002. IEEE Computer Society.

\bibitem{Wright03-3}
Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
\newblock Evaluation of two textual programming notations for children.
\newblock In {\em AUIC '05: Proceedings of the Sixth Australasian
  conference on User interface}, pages 55--62, Darlinghurst, Australia,
  Australia, 2005.
  Australian Computer Society, Inc.
\end{thebibliography}
\end{document}
```

⟨/mtc-mu⟩

4.26 The `mtc-nom.tex` document file

This document [6] shows the interaction of the minitoc package with the nomencl package [456], when this package uses its option `intoc`.

```
⟨*mtc-nom⟩
\documentclass[oneside]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-nom.tex}%
  [2007/04/02]
```

`\makenomenclature` We load the packages and prepare the nomenclature:

```
\usepackage[intoc]{nomencl}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
\makenomenclature
\begin{document}
```

`\dominitoc` `\tableofcontents` We prepare the minitocs and the table of contents:

```
\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
```

`\chapter` `\minitoc` `\section` `\nomenclature` A first chapter, with its minitoc, a section and some entries for the nomenclature:

```
\chapter{Angels}
\minitoc
\section{Main equations}
\begin{equation}
  a=\frac{N}{A}
\end{equation}%
\nomenclature{$a$}{The number of angels per unit area}%
\nomenclature{$N$}{The number of angels per needle point}%
\nomenclature{$A$}{The area of the needle point}%
The equation $\sigma = m a$%
\nomenclature{$\sigma$}{The total mass of angels per unit area}%
\nomenclature{$m$}{The mass of one angel}
follows easily.
```

`\printnomenclature` `\mtcfixnomenclature` We print the nomenclature; but that adds a chapter entry in the TOC because of the `intoc` option of the nomencl, hence we add a correction with `\mtcfixnomenclature` (try to remove the correction and look at the result: the next minitocs are wrong):

```
\printnomenclature \mtcfixnomenclature
```

[6] It is derived from the example given in the documentation of nomencl.

\chapter
\minitoc
\section
\nomenclature

A second chapter, with its minitoc, a section, and an entry in the nomenclature. This entry will be present in the nomenclature printed above.

```
\chapter{Demons}
\minitoc
\section{False equations}
\begin{equation} i=\sqrt{-1} \end{equation}
\nomenclature{$i$}{The imaginary unit}%
\end{document}
```
⟨/mtc-nom⟩

4.27 The `mtc-ocf.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the open and `close` features of the minitoc package to prepare a minitoc on three columns. The old package fullpage [144] is used to have a wide text area.

```
⟨*mtc-ocf⟩
\documentclass[oneside]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-ocf.tex}%
 [2007/04/02]
\usepackage{multicol} % to make multi-columns.
\usepackage[french]{babel}
\usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
\usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage{fullpage}
% to allow a page breaks before a section
\let\osection\section \def\section{\penalty-1\relax\osection}
%
\usepackage[french,tight]{minitoc}
```

\mtcsetfeature
multicols

The "open" feature for minitocs opens a `multicols` environment, with 3 columns:

```
\mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{open}{\vspace{-1ex}\begin{multicols}{3}}
```

\mtcsetfeature
multicols

The "`close`" feature for minitocs close the `multicols` environment:

```
\mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{close}{\end{multicols}\vspace{-1.5ex}}
```

As the `multicols` environment adds some vertical spacing before and after it, we added some corrections.

\mtcsetfeature
\raggedcolumns
\flushcolumns

As the number of sections is not a multiple of three (or some entries are long), we cannot always balance the columns nicely, so we use ragged columns, using the "`before`" and "`after`" features:

```
\mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{before}{\raggedcolumns}
\mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{after}{\flushcolumns}
```

\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\chapter
\minitoc
\section

And the body of the document, a chapter with many sections, listed in a minitoc:

```
\begin{document}
\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\chapter{Premier chapitre}
\minitoc
% A lot of sections
\section{Alfa}
\section{Bravo}
\section{Charlie}
\section{Delta}
\section{Echo}
\section{Fox-Trot}
\section{Golf}
\section{Hotel}
\section{India}
\section{Juliet}
\section{Kilo}
\section{Lima}
\section{Mike}
\section{November}
\section{Oscar}
\section{Papa}
\section{Quebec}
\section{Romeo}
\section{Sierra}
\section{Tango}
\section{Uniform}
\section{Victor}
\section{Whiskey}
\section{X-Ray}
\section{Yankee}
\section{Zulu}
\end{document}
```

⟨/mtc-ocf⟩

4.28 The `mtc-ofs.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `\mtcsetoffset` command to shift a minitoc to the left, trying to put it along the left margin of the text. The `open` and `close` features of the minitoc package are also used to prepare the minitoc on three columns. The old package fullpage [144] is used to have a wide text area.

⟨∗mtc-ofs⟩

```
\documentclass[a4paper]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-ofs.tex}%
  [2007/04/17]
\usepackage{lipsum}
\usepackage{multicol}
\usepackage{fullpage}
%\usepackage[a4paper]{geometry}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
```

\setlength
\mtcindent
\mtcsetfeature
\raggedcolumns
\flushcolumns
multicols

We remove the minitoc indentation and set up the `open` and `close` features:

```
\setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
\mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{open}{\kern1sp\vspace*{-.1ex}\begin{multicols}{4}[\kern-2.5ex]}
\mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{close}{\end{multicols}\kern-2.ex}
\mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{before}{\raggedcolumns}
\mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{after}{\flushcolumns}
```

\dominitoc
\faketableofcontents
\chapter
\minitoc

We begin the document with a chapter and its minitoc:

```
\begin{document}
\dominitoc \faketableofcontents
\chapter{Introduction}
\minitoc
```

\mtcsetoffset
\mtcskip
\minitoc

As the minitoc is not aligned on the left margin of the text, we set a negative offset and print again the minitoc:

```
\mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-1.75em}
\mtcskip \minitoc
```

\mtcsetoffset
\setlength
\mtcindent
\mtcskip
\minitoc

But then the minitoc does not use the full width of the text; it would be better to modify both the offset and the indentation, each by the half of the total correction:

```
\mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-0.875em}
\setlength{\mtcindent}{-0.875em}
\mtcskip \minitoc
```

\section

Then a lot of sections, with some text:

```
\section{Alfa}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Bravo}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Charlie}  \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Delta}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Echo}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Fox-Trot} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Golf}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Hotel}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{India}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Juliet}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Kilo}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Lima}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Mike}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{November} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Oscar}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Papa}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Quebec}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Romeo}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Sierra}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Tango}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Uniform}  \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Victor}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Whiskey}  \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{X-Ray}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Yankee}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\section{Zulu}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
\end{document}
```

⟨/mtc-ofs⟩

Note: if you add a sub-section in this example, the corresponding entry in the minitoc may stick out if it appears in the last column, and the offset and the indentation should then be corrected again.

4.29 The `mtc-sbf.tex` document file

\l@subfigure
\@dottedxxxline
\ext@subfigure

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures (here with the subfigure package [130]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their depth.

The preamble loads the subfigure package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```
⟨*mtc-sbf⟩
\documentclass[12pt]{report}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-sbf.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage{subfigure}
\makeatletter
\renewcommand{\l@subfigure}{\@dottedxxxline{\ext@subfigure}{2}{3.9em}{3.3em}}
\makeatother
```

We load the varioref [326] package (to have nice cross-references) and the minitoc package:

```
\usepackage{varioref}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
```

\newcommand
\goodap
\subfigtopskip
\subfigbottomskip
\setcounter

We define some features for the layout of the subfigures, then the depth of the list of figures:

```
\newcommand{\goodap}{%
  \hspace{\subfigtopskip}%
  \hspace{\subfigbottomskip}}
\setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
\begin{document}
```

\mtcsetdepth
\mtcsetfont

We define the depth of the mini-lists of figures, then some fonts:

```
\mtcsetdepth{minilof}{2}
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\mtcsetfont{partlof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
\mtcsetfont{partlof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
\mtcsetfont{minilof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
%% no tables in this document
%% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
%% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

```
%% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
%% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

\dominilof
\tableofcontents
\listoffigures

We prepare the minilofs, the table of contents and the list of figures:

```
\dominilof \listoffigures \tableofcontents
```

\chapter
\minilof
\mtcskip
\mtcsetdepth

A chapter, with is minilof, twice but with different depths:

```
\chapter{First Chapter}
\minilof \mtcskip
\mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1} \minilof
```

A figure containing three subfigures and their captions:

```
\begin{figure}
\centering
  \fbox{%
    \begin{minipage}{3.5in}%
      \raggedright
      \begin{center}
        \subfigure[First]{%
          \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 15mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
          \hspace{\subfigtopskip}\hspace{\subfigbottomskip}%
        \subfigure[Second Figure]{%
          \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}\\
        \subfigure[Third]{\label{3figs-c}%
          \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}\\
        \caption{Three subfigures.}\label{3figs}%
      \end{center}
      \vspace{4pt}%
      This figure contains two top ‘subfigures’ and
      Figure~\ref{3figs-c}.
      \end{minipage}}
\end{figure}
Figure~\vref{3figs} contains two top ‘‘subfigures’’ and
Figure~\vref{3figs-c}.
\end{document}
```

⟨/mtc-sbf⟩

4.30 The `mtc-scr.tex` document file

\setcounter

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script document class [343, 344, 399], scrreprt. Some precautions are needed, because these classes have specific interfaces with the TOC (class options and commands).

```
⟨*mtc-scr⟩
\documentclass[12pt,halfparskip,liststotoc,bibtotoc]{scrreprt}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-scr.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\setcounter{secnumdepth}{4}
\setcounter{tocdepth}{4}
\usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
\usepackage{longtable}
```

The hyperref package, if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc:

```
\usepackage{hyperref}
```

\pagenumbering \dominitoc \tableofcontents

With a KOMA-Script class [343, 344, 399], use the `k-tight` package option in place of `tight`; as it is a document in german, use also a language package option:

```
\usepackage[k-tight,germanb]{minitoc}
\usepackage[germanb]{babel}
\begin{document}
\pagenumbering{Roman} % page number in Roman, reset to 1 (I)
\dominitoc \tableofcontents
```

\listoftables \mtcaddchapter

In this document class, with the `liststotoc` class option, the `\listoftables` macro adds a chapter entry in the TOC, so we must add `\mtcaddchapter` after `\listoftables`:

```
\listoftables \mtcaddchapter
```

\pagenumbering \chapter \setcounter \appendix \minitoc \section

With the `bibtotoc` class option, it is necessary to add a `\adjustmtc` command after `\bibliography`. This problem is similar to the one of compatibility with the tocbibind package.

```
\clearpage
\pagenumbering{arabic} % page number in arabic digits
\setcounter{page}{1} % forced to 1

\chapter{Test 1}\label{cha:test-1}

Text.

\section{Tabelle}\label{sec:tabelle}

\begin{table}
  \centering
  \begin{longtable}[l]{ll}
  \underline{Ausbildungsbetrieb}  \hspace{10mm} & Kommanditgesellschaft
\\
  \underline{Ausbildender} & Hammer \\
  Ausbildungsstätte & XXXXX Ort
  \end{longtable}
```

```
  \caption{Ausbildungsbetrieb}
\end{table}

Text.

\appendix
\chapter{Dokumente}
\minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc

\section{Anhang}\label{sec:anhang}
Text.\\
Hier sollte nun der Anhang sein, davor das Verzeichnis dafür.
\end{document}
```
⟨/mtc-scr⟩

4.31 The `mtc-syn.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is not at the beginning of the document, but is preceded by some starred chapters.

`\dominitoc` We have the preamble, then we invoke `\dominitoc` to prepare the minitocs:

```
⟨*mtc-syn⟩
\documentclass[a4paper,twoside,12pt]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-syn.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
\usepackage{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\dominitoc
```

`\chapter*` `\mtcaddchapter` Some starred chapters, with calls to `\mtcaddchapter` to synchronize. The optional argument is used when an entry in the ToC is wanted:

```
\chapter*{ } % Dedication chapter, no title
\mtcaddchapter           % Added for a starred chapter
                         % without entry in the ToC
Dedication goes here

\chapter*{Abstract}
\mtcaddchapter[Abstract] % Added for a starred chapter
                         % with an entry in the ToC
Abstract goes here

\chapter*{Declaration}
\mtcaddchapter[Declaration] % Added for a starred chapter
                            % with an entry in the ToC
Declaration goes here
```

\tableofcontents \decrementmtc The table of contents comes here. Looking at the *document*`.log` file shows that the minitoc files inserted after here are from one chapter to far: we add a correction.

```
\tableofcontents \decrementmtc % Synchro added (look at the .log file)
```

\chapter \minitoc \section The following chapters are normal (unstarred):

```
\chapter{Chapter One}
\minitoc
\section{Section 1} Some text.
\section{Section 2} Some text.

\chapter{Chapter Two}
\minitoc
\section{Another Section 1}
Some more text.
\section{Another Section 2}
Some more text.
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-syn⟩
```

4.32 The `mtc-tbi.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document using the tocbibind package [472].

```
⟨*mtc-tbi⟩
\documentclass[a4paper]{report}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-tbi.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
```

\dominitoc \tableofcontents We dont want an entry for the TOC in the TOC: option `nottoc` for the tocbibind package:

```
\usepackage[nottoc]{tocbibind}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\dominitoc \tableofcontents
```

\mtcaddchapter As there is no entry for the TOC in the TOC, no correction is necessary; we comment out the usual correction [7]:

```
%% tocbibind compatibility
%% not used if nottoc option :
%% \mtcaddchapter[]
```

\chapter* \mtcaddchapter A starred chapter with an entry in the TOC; we add it;

```
\chapter*{Introduction}
\mtcaddchapter[Introduction]
```

[7] It is recommended to keep this comment; you could change your mind.

\chapter
\minitoc
\section

Some normal chapters:

```
\chapter{Title of chapter~1}
\minitoc
\section{as1} \section{as2}
\chapter{Title of chapter~2}
\minitoc
\section{bs1} \section{bs2}
```

```
\chapter{Title of chapter~3}
\minitoc
\section{cs1} \section{cs2}
\chapter{Title of chapter~4}
\minitoc
\section{ds1} \section{ds2}
```

\chapter*
\mtcaddchapter

Another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC:

```
\chapter*{Conclusion}
```

```
\mtcaddchapter[Conclusion]
```

\chapter*
\mtcaddchapter
\minitoc
\section*
\addcontentsline

Yet another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC, but with starred sections, also listed in the TOC:

```
\chapter*{Appendices}
\mtcaddchapter[Appendices]
\minitoc
\section*{first appendix}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}%
```

```
  {first appendix}
\section*{second appendix}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}%
  {second appendix}
```

\listoffigures
\mtcaddchapter

The list of figures has an entry in the TOC (via the tocbibind package), so a correction must be applied:

```
%% tocbibind compatibility
```

```
\listoffigures \mtcaddchapter
```

thebibliography
\bibitem
\adjustmtc

The tocbibind package adds an entry in the TOC for the bibliography, so we must add the recommended correction:

```
\begin{thebibliography}{3}
   \bibitem {s1}{title ...}
\end{thebibliography}
%% tocbibind compatibility
```

```
\adjustmtc
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-tbi⟩
```

4.33 The `mtc-tlc.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of the article class. It is the example of [330, page 58], modernized.

```
⟨*mtc-tlc⟩
\documentclass{article}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-tlc.tex}%
  [2007/01/04]
```

\setlength
\textwidth
\textheight

Dimensions of the text on the page:

```
\setlength{\textwidth}%
   {124.20126pt}
\setlength{\textheight}%
   {19\baselineskip}
```

\setlength
\stcindent
\mtcsetfont
\mtcsetdepth

We load the minitoc package and set some parameters (indentation, base font and depth) for the secttocs:

```
\usepackage{minitoc}
\setlength{\stcindent}{0pt}
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}%
   {\footnotesize}
\mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{3}
```

\dosecttoc
\faketableofcontents
\section
\secttoc
\subsection
\subsubsection

We prepare the secttocs, without title, and the table of contents which is not printed:

```
\begin{document}
\dosecttoc[e] \faketableofcontents

\section{Afghanistan} \secttoc
\subsection{Geography}
\subsubsection{Total area}
    647,500 km2
\subsubsection{Land area}
    647,500 km2
\subsection{History} \ldots

\section{Albania} \secttoc
\subsection{Geography}
\subsubsection{Total area}
    28,750 km2
\subsubsection{Land area}
    27,400 km2
\subsection{History} \ldots
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-tlc⟩
```

4.34 The `mtc-tlo.tex` document file

The `mtc-tlo.tex` document file is described in section 2.46 on page 79.

4.35 The `mtc-tsf.tex` document file

This document[8] shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures (here with the subfig package [132]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their depth. The old package fullpage [144] is used to have a wide text area.

[8] It is derived from one of the examples distributed with the subfig package [132].

The preamble loads the subfig package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```
⟨*mtc-tsf⟩
\documentclass{report}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-tsf.tex}[2008/04/03]%
\usepackage{fullpage}
\usepackage[config=altsf]{subfig}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
```

This is utility code to make graduated rules and a box around a figure.

```
\newdimen\testtemp
\newcommand{\ru}[1]{%
  \testtemp #1%
  \advance\testtemp .5pt \divide\testtemp 2%
  \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
    \vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}\hfil}%
  \hbox to 0pt{\hss\vrule height3mm depth0pt width.25pt\hss}%
  \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
    \hfil\vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt}\hfil}}
%%
\fboxsep=-\fboxrule
\newcommand{\figbox}[1]{%
  \fbox{\vbox to 1in{%
      \vfil\hbox to 2in{\parbox{2in}{\centering #1}}\vfil
      \vbox to 0pt{\vss\hbox to 2in{\hfil\ru{1.1in}\hfil}}}}}
```

\setcounter
\dominilof
\listoffigures

The body of the document. We set the depth of the list of figures and prepare the minilofs and the list of figures:

```
\begin{document}
\setcounter{lofdepth}{2} \dominilof \listoffigures
\newpage
```

\chapter
\minilof
\mtcskip
\mtcsetdepth

A chapter containing a figure with subfigures. We print its minilof twice, with different depths:

```
\chapter{Reference Test}
\minilof \mtcskip
\mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
\minilof

\begin{figure}[ht]%
  \centering
  \subfigure{%
    \label{fig+A}\figbox{SUBFIGURE ONE:\\(no opt)}}
  \quad
  \subfigure[]{%
    \label{fig+B}\figbox{SUBFIGURE TWO:\\(empty opt)}}\\

```

```
  \subfigure[Subfigure Three.]{%
    \label{fig+C}\figbox{SUBFIGURE THREE:\\(opt)}}
  \quad
  \subfigure[][Subfigure Four.]{%
    \label{fig+D}\figbox{SUBFIGURE FOUR:\\(empty opt and opt)}}
  \quad
  \subfigure[][]{%
    \label{fig+E}\figbox{SUBFIGURE FIVE:\\(both empty opt)}}\\

  \subfigure[The Sixth Subfigure.][Subfigure Six.]{%
    \label{fig+F}\figbox{SUBFIGURE SIX:\\(both opt)}}
  \quad
  \subfigure[The Seventh Subfigure][]{%
    \label{fig+G}\figbox{SUBFIGURE SEVEN:\\(opt and empty opt)}}

  \caption{Optional argument test.}%
  \label{fig+main}%
\end{figure}

The figure~\ref{fig+main} on page~\pageref{fig+main} is composed
of the seven subfigures~\subref{fig+A} (aka: \ref{fig+A}),
\subref{fig+B} (aka: \ref{fig+B}), \subref{fig+C} (aka: \ref{fig+C}),
\subref{fig+D} (aka: \ref{fig+D}), \subref{fig+E} (aka: \ref{fig+E}),
\subref{fig+F} (aka: \ref{fig+F}), and \subref{fig+G} (aka: \ref{fig+G}).

\section{Centering Test}
Note that figures~\ref{fig+B}, \ref{fig+E} and \ref{fig+G} are centered.
This means that \verb|\subfigcapskip| has been set to zero and is not
offsetting the simple label to the left.  Also the remaining captioned
subfigures (figures~\ref{fig+C}, \ref{fig+D}, and \ref{fig+F}) should
have centered labels.
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-tsf⟩
```

4.36 The `mtc-vti.tex` document file

The `mtc-vti.tex` example shows how to change the sectionnal titles when they appear in a mini-table: a section title (or a chapter title) can have variants in a parttoc or in a minitoc (similar effects are possible with figure ou table titles). Such entries are said “polymorphic” (section 1.4.13 on page 43). First, the preamble of the document, with utility packages:

```
⟨*mtc-vti⟩
\documentclass[10pt,a4paper,oneside]{book}
\ProvidesFile{mtc-vti.tex}[2008/06/26]%
\usepackage{lipsum}
\usepackage{txfonts}
\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
\begin{document}
```

\parttoc
\minitoc

For the demonstration, we will use a parttoc and a minitoc, so we must prepare them:

```
\dominitoc
\doparttoc
```

\ifinparttoc
\ifinminitoc

We will use a multi-form title for the first section: a form to appear in the parttoc (“Alfa in parttoc”), a form to appear in the minitoc of the chapter (“Alfa in minitoc”), a form to appear elsewhere (“Alfa out subtoc”), and a form as title at the beginning othe section (“Alfa the first section”). So we define a command \alfati using the flags \ifinparttoc and \ifinminitoc to select which title is used in each of its instances.

```
\newcommand\alfati{\ifinparttoc Alfa in parttoc
                   \else\ifinminitoc Alfa in minitoc
                        \else Alfa out subtoc
                        \fi
                   \fi}
```

\ifinparttoc
\ifinminitoc
\ifinsecttoc
\DeclareRobustCommand

But we can define a more general macro, \varsecti, with three arguments for the three variants of a section title [9]:

```
\DeclareRobustCommand{\varsecti}[3]%
          {\ifinparttoc{#1}\relax
           \else\ifinminitoc{#2}\relax
                \else{#3}\relax
                \fi
           \fi}
```

Then the document with a table of contents, a part with its parttoc and a chapter with its minitoc. And an other chapter. You can verify that the entry for the “Alfa” section varies in the main toc, the parttoc, the minitoc and the effective title of the section. Note that the variable title (here \alfati) should be defined *before* any use, like in the main toc or any minitable.

\protect

```
\tableofcontents
\part{Part~A}
\parttoc

\chapter{One}
\minitoc
\section[\protect\alfati]{Alfa the first section}
\lipsum[1]
```

We can use the more general macro \varsecti [10], with its three arguments given when the section begins; but that macro must be *protected* (or look at the makerobust [350] package by

[9] You will eventually need to define similar macros for other sectionning commands or for figures or table titles; proceed with care from this model.

[10] This macro is not part of the minitoc package, it is just an example.

Heiko Oberdiek), or declared “robust” by \DeclareRobustCommand as above:

```
\section[\varsecti{Bravo in parttoc}%
                          {Bravo in minitoc}%
                          {Bravo out of subtoc}]% % in maintoc and headers
        {Bravo the second section}   % local title
\lipsum[2]
```

\mtcpolymtoc But is is even easier to use a “polymorphic” entry in the optionnal argument [11]:

```
\chapter{Two}
\minitoc
\section[\mtcpolymtoc%
        {Charlie in parttoc}%
        {Charlie in minitoc}%
        {Charlie in secttoc}% % <- see/voir note
        {Charlie out subtoc}]%
        {Charlie}
\lipsum[3]
\end{document}
⟨/mtc-vti⟩
```

[11] They are no secttocs in a book-class document, but all the four arguments of \mtcpolymtoc must be specified, even empty!

Chapter 5

Messages

Contents

Tables

5.1 Introduction

This chapter lists and comments the messages given by the minitoc package, and is associates, mtcoff and mtcpatchmem[1]. The table 5.1 on the following page lists all messages; in this table, you can click on a message identifier to find quickly its meaning.

- The first line of each message contains usually the name of the package and an unique identifier (this identifier may be useful to search in this chapter of the documentation,

[1] The texts of the messages given in this chapter may slighty differ from the real text, because some messages contain variable elements and the layout may vary.

Table 5.1: Message identifiers (click on a message identifier to see its meaning).

E0001	E0002	E0003	E0004	E0005	E0006	E0007	E0008	E0009	E0010
E0011	E0012	E0013	E0014	E0015	E0016	E0017	E0018	E0019	E0020
E0021	E0022	E0023	E0024	E0025	E0026	E0027	E0028	E0029	E0030
E0031	E0032	E0033	E0034	E0035	E0036	E0037	E0038	E0039	E0040
E0041	E0042	E0043							
F0001	F0002	F0003	F0004	F0005	F0006	F0007	F0008	F0009	
I0000									
I0001	I0002	I0003	I0004	I0005	I0006	I0007	I0008	I0009	I0010
I0011	I0012	I0013	I0014	I0015	I0016	I0017	I0018	I0019	I0020
I0021	I0022	I0023	I0024	I0025	I0026	I0027	I0028	I0029	I0030
I0031	I0032	I0033	I0034	I0035	I0036	I0037	I0038	I0039	I0040
I0041	I0042	I0043	I0044	I0045	I0046	I0047	I0048	I0049	I0050
I0051	I0052	I0053							
M0001									
W0001	W0002	W0003	W0004	W0005	W0006	W0007	W0008	W0009	W0010
W0011	W0012	W0013	W0014	W0015	W0016	W0017	W0018	W0019	W0020
W0021	W0022	W0023	W0024	W0025	W0026	W0027	W0028	W0029	W0030
W0031	W0032	W0033	W0034	W0035	W0036	W0037	W0038	W0039	W0040
W0041	W0042	W0043	W0044	W0045	W0046	W0047	W0048	W0049	W0050
W0051	W0052	W0053	W0054	W0055	W0056	W0057	W0058	W0059	W0060
W0061	W0062	W0063	W0064	W0065	W0066	W0067	W0068	W0069	W0070
W0071	W0072	W0073	W0074	W0075	W0076	W0077	W0078	W0079	W0080
W0081	W0082	W0083	W0084	W0085	W0086	W0087	W0088	W0089	W0090
W0091	W0092	W0093	W0094	W0095	W0096	W0097	W0098	W0099	

but has no special meaning, except the leading letter: `I` for informative, `W` for warning, and `E` for error).

- Informative messages are written only in the *document*`.log` file; the prefix is `F` for the warning messages from the mtcoff package and `M` for the informative message from the mtcpatchmem package.
- Warning messages are shown on the screen (but often too quickly to be seen, because normally LaTeX does not stop for warnings) and written in the *document*`.log` file.
- Error messages are shown on the screen and written in the *document*`.log` file, but LaTeX stops, so you can ask for help by typing "h".
- In this chapter, some words in the messages are typeset in italic characters; they represent the variable parts of the message:
  - *ARG1* The first argument of the command.
  - *ARG2* The second argument of the command.

- *ARG3* The third argument of the command.
- *CLASS* The name of the class of your document.
- *COMMAND* The name of the command.
- *COUNTER* The name of a LaTeX counter.
- *document* The name of your document, without its `.tex` extension.
- *EXTENSION* The extension part of the name of a file.
- *FILE* The name of a file (often a minitoc auxiliary file, the *document*`.toc` file, the *document*`.lof` file, or the *document*`.lot` file).
- *INTERNAL_NAME* The name of an internal macro redefined by a `\mtcset...` command.
- *LANGUAGE* The name of the language (for `\mtcselectlanguage`).
- *LINE* The number of the line in the source file.
- *macro* The name of a minitoc font command redefined by `\mtcsetfont`.
- *NEW_TITLE* The new value of a title redefined by `\mtcsettitle`.
- *NUMBER* The number of mini-tables of the given type in your document (when you are using short extensions and that number is greater than 99).
- *OFFSET* The new value of an offset redefined by `\mtcsetoffset`.
- *PREPARATION* The name of a minitoc preparation command.
- *SEQUENCE* A sequence of commands used to redefine an internal macro via a `\mtcset...` command.
- *STRING* A string of characters, often part of a command name.
- *VALUE* The new value of a counter.

The messages are produced using macros from the mtcmess package, described in chapter 11 on page 464.

5.2 Messages from the minitoc package

5.2.1 Informative messages

I0000

```
Package: minitoc 2015/07/13 v61 Package minitoc (JPFD/et al.)
```

This is the announce message of the minitoc package, with its name, date and version. “JPFD” are my initials. This message has no real identifier because it is emitted by `\ProvidesPackage`, but, for indexing it, we use `I0000`.

I0001

```
Package minitoc Info: I0001
(minitoc)             *** minitoc package, version 61 ***.
```

Remember the version of the package.

I0002

```
Package minitoc Info: I0002
(minitoc)             Autoconfiguration of extensions.
```

The minitoc package tries to determine if short or long extensions for file names are used by the operating system.

I0003

```
Package minitoc Info: I0003
(minitoc)             chapter level macros available.
```

The \chapter sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but *not* the mini-table commands at the section level.

I0004

```
Package minitoc Info: I0004
(minitoc)             chapter level macros NOT available.
```

The \chapter sectionning command is *not* available, so you cannot use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but, if the \section sectionning command is available, you can use mini-table commands at the section level.

I0005

```
Package minitoc Info: I0005
(minitoc)       compatible with hyperref.
```

This version of minitoc is compatible with the hyperref package.

I0006

```
Package minitoc Info: I0006
(minitoc)             document.EXTENSION is empty on input line LINE.
```

The auxiliary file for a mini-table is found empty (or inexistent) when minitoc tries to insert it. If the `checkfiles` option is active, it is skipped.

I0007

```
Package minitoc Info: I0007
(minitoc)             Horizontal rules are activated
(minitoc)             for the ARG1s on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARG1*.

I0008

```
Package minitoc Info: I0008
(minitoc)             Horizontal rules are inhibited
(minitoc)             for the ARG1s on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARG1*.

I0009

```
Package minitoc Info: I0009
(minitoc)             Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
(minitoc)             Creating the document.maf file.
```

You have used the `listfiles` package option. A list of the minitoc auxiliary files is written in the *document*`.maf` file. It may be helpful to delete these files. See section 1.7 on page 52. This option is the default since version #48.

I0010

```
Package minitoc Info: I0010
Package minitoc Info: The LANGUAGE language is selected.
(minitoc)             on input line LINE.
```

The *LANGUAGE*`.mld` file has been successfully loaded for the *LANGUAGE* language[2] by the `\mtcselectlanguage` command at line *LINE*. The titles for the mini-tables are changed.

[2] The `english.mld` file is always loaded first, to have english as default language.

I0011

```
Package minitoc Info: I0011
(minitoc)             LANGUAGE language object selected.
(minitoc)              on input line LINE.
```

The \mtcselectlanguage macro has successfully (indirectly) loaded the *LANGUAGE*.mlo minitoc object file.

I0012

```
Package minitoc Info: I0012
(minitoc)             Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used.
```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating system is able to use long extensions; this will be the default.

I0013

```
Package minitoc Info: I0013
(minitoc)             \mtcsetdepth redefines the counter
(minitoc)             "COUNTER" as "VALUE" on input line LINE.
```

The \mtcsetdepth macro changes the value of the specified depth counter and forces it to *VALUE*.

I0014

```
Package minitoc Info: I0014
(minitoc)             \mtcsetfeature redefines the macro
(minitoc)             "\INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)             "\SEQUENCE" on input line LINE.
```

The \mtcsetfeature macro has redefined the internal macro *INTERNAL_NAME* with the given *SEQUENCE*.

I0015

```
Package minitoc Info: I0015
(minitoc)             \mtcsetfont redefines the macro
(minitoc)             "macro" as "SEQUENCE" on input line LINE.
```

The \mtcsetfont command redefines the (old style) *macro* by the given *SEQUENCE* of font commands.

I0016

```
Package minitoc Info: I0016
(minitoc)             \mtcsetformat redefines the macro
(minitoc)             "\INTERNAL_NAME" as "ARG3" on input line LINE.
```

The macro \mtcsetformat redefines an internal macro with the value given by its third argument.

I0017

```
Package minitoc Info: I0017
(minitoc)             \mtcsettitle redefines the macro
(minitoc)             "INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)             "NEW_TITLE" on input line LINE.
```

A mini-table title is redefined via the \mtcsettitle macro.

I0018

```
Package minitoc Info: I0018
(minitoc)             \mtcsettitlefont redefines the macro
(minitoc)             "\INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)             "SEQUENCE" on input line LINE.
```

The \mtcsettitlefont macro redefines the (old style) *INTERNAL_NAME* macro which the given sequence *SEQUENCE*.

I0019

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0019
(minitoc(hints))             No hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))             in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected no potential problem.

I0020

```
Package minitoc Info: I0020
(minitoc)             old version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is old. The minitoc package does not need to patch this class.

I0021

```
Package minitoc Info: I0021
(minitoc)             Page numbers are activated
(minitoc)             for the ARG1s on input line LINE.
```

The page numbers will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARG1*.

I0022

```
Package minitoc Info: I0022
(minitoc)             Page numbers are inhibited
(minitoc)             for the ARG1s on input line LINE.
```

The page numbers will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARG1*.

I0023

```
Package minitoc Info: I0023
(minitoc)             part level macros available.
```

The \part sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the part level.

I0024

```
Package minitoc Info: I0024
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINITOCS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A \dominitoc command prepares the minitoc auxiliary files for minitocs from *FILE*.

I0025

```
Package minitoc Info: I0025
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A \doparttoc command prepares the parttoc auxiliary files for parttocs from *FILE*.

I0026

```
Package minitoc Info: I0026
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A \dosecttoc command prepares the secttoc auxiliary files for secttocs from *FILE*.

I0027

```
Package minitoc Info: I0027
(minitoc)             recent version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is recent. The minitoc package will try to patch it.

I0028

```
Package minitoc Info: I0028
(minitoc)             section level macros available.
```

The \section sectionning command is available but the \chapter sectionning command is *not* available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the section level.

I0029

```
Package minitoc Info: I0029
(minitoc)             section level macros NOT available.
```

The \section sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the section level commands of the minitoc package are not available.

I0030

```
Package minitoc Info: I0030
(minitoc)             the memoir class is loaded:
(minitoc)             compatibility attempted.
```

The memoir document class is used. The minitoc package tries to ensure compatibility.

I0031

```
Package minitoc Info: I0031
(minitoc)             ==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
(minitoc)             (long extensions) file names.
```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating uses UNIX-like (long extensions) file names.

I0032

```
Package minitoc Info: I0032
(minitoc)             This version of the memoir class uses
(minitoc)             a version of \chapter which is
(minitoc)             incompatible with the minitoc package.
(minitoc)             We try to patch.
```

The memoir class uses a version of the `\chapter` command which needs to be corrected because its syntax has been changed. A patch is loaded.

I0033

```
Package minitoc Info: I0033
(minitoc)             Writing document.EXTENSION.
```

An auxiliary file for a mini-table is written by a minitoc preparation command (like `\dominitoc`).

I0034

```
Package minitoc Info: I0034
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dominilof` command prepares the minilof auxiliary files for minilofs from *FILE*.

I0035

```
Package minitoc Info: I0035
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dopartlof` command prepares the `partlof` auxiliary files for partlofs from *FILE*.

I0036

```
Package minitoc Info: I0036
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dosectlof` command prepares the `sectlof` auxiliary files for sectlofs from *FILE*.

I0037

```
Package minitoc Info: I0037
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A \dominilot command prepares the minilot auxiliary files for minilots from *FILE*.

I0038

```
Package minitoc Info: I0038
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A \dopartlot command prepares the partlot auxiliary files for partlots from *FILE*.

I0039

```
Package minitoc Info: I0039
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A \dosectlot command prepares the sectlot auxiliary files for sectlots from *FILE*.

5.2.1.1 Informative messages for hints

I0040

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0040
(minitoc(hints))             The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
(minitoc(hints))             loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
(minitoc(hints))             You need to look at the
(minitoc(hints))             documentation to adjust.
```

As you are using the abstract package with its addtotoc option, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.27 on page 70.

I0041

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0041
(minitoc(hints))             --- The amsbook class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))             See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))             for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the amsbook class, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.24 on page 66.

I0042

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0042
(minitoc(hints))             --- The appendix package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))             See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))             for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the appendix package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.20 on page 64.

I0043

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0043
(minitoc(hints))             --- The KOMAScript CLASS class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))             See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))             for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the *CLASS* class, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 50. The classes involved here are scrbook, scrreprt, and scrartcl, i.e., the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399] compatible with minitoc.

I0044

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0044
(minitoc(hints))             --- The memoir class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))             See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))             for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the memoir class, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.22 on page 65.

I0045

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0045
(minitoc(hints))             The \PREPARATION command
(minitoc(hints))             has been invoked more than once
(minitoc(hints))             on input line LINE.
```

A minitoc preparation command has been invoked more than once.

I0046

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0046
(minitoc(hints))             --- The tocbibind package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))             See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))             for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the tocbibind package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 50.

I0047

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0047
(minitoc(hints))             --- The tocloft package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))             See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))             for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the tocloft package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.21 on page 64.

I0048

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0048
(minitoc(hints))             Using \mtcprepare may induce some
(minitoc(hints))             hints about the preparation commands,
(minitoc(hints))             because it invokes ALL the preparation
(minitoc(hints))             commands allowed by the document class,
(minitoc(hints))             without any previous check.
```

The `\mtcprepare` command invoke all the possible preparation commands, depending only on the document class and the available contents files. It does not known exactly what you want, so it can prepare too many mini-tables files.

I0049

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0049
(minitoc(hints))             ==> You requested the hints option.
(minitoc(hints))             Some hints are eventually given below.
```

As you have requested the `hints` package option (which is set by default), some “hints” are eventually given in the *document*`.log` file. You can find them easily by searching for the string “`minitoc(hints)`” with a text editor.

I0050

```
Package minitoc Warning: I0050
(minitoc)                The required "LANGUAGE.mld" file is missing.
(minitoc)                The "LANGUAGE" language option will not be available.
(minitoc)                Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

The *LANGUAGE*.mld file has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

I0051

```
Package minitoc Warning: I0051
(minitoc)                The required "LANGUAGE.mlo" file is missing.
(minitoc)                The "LANGUAGE" language option will not be available.
(minitoc)                Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

The *LANGUAGE*.mlo file has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

I0052

```
Package minitoc Info: I0052
(minitoc)             \mtcsetoffset redefines the offset
(minitoc)             "OFFSET" as "VALUE" on input line LINE.
```

The \mtcsetoffset macro changes the value of the specified offset and forces it to *VALUE*.

I0053

```
Package minitoc Info: I0053
(minitoc)             You have loaded the PACK package;
(minitoc)             please be aware that the minitoc package
(minitoc)             facilities can not be used for new types
(minitoc)             of floats defined by the PACK package
```

The minitoc package does not manage new types of floats defined via the float [302], floatrow [285], trivfloat [484] and rotfloat [420] packages [3].

[3] As the trivfloat and rotfloat packages load the float package, this message will then appear twice!

5.2.2 Warning messages

W0001

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0001
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixglossary without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixglossary` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0002

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0002
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixindex without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixindex` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0003

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0003
(minitoc)                \firstchapteris is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

W0004

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0004
(minitoc)                \firstpartis is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

W0005

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0005
(minitoc)                \firstsectionis is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (\firstsectionis). You should remove it.

W0006

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0006
(minitoc)                \mtcfixglossary can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The \mtcfixglossary macro can only use [part] as optional argument (which becomes the default), because \chapter and \section are not defined.

W0007

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0007
(minitoc)                \mtcfixindex can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The \mtcfixindex macro can only use [part] as optional argument (which becomes the default), because \chapter and \section are not defined.

W0008

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0008
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINILOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a \dominilof command. Please check if you have called \dominilof in the correct sequence of commands.

W0009

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0009
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINILOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a \dominilot command. Please check if you have called \dominilot in the correct sequence of commands.

W0010

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0010
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINITOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a \dominitoc command. Please check if you have called \dominitoc in the correct sequence of commands.

W0011

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0011
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a \dopartlof command. Please check if you have called \dopartlof in the correct sequence of commands.

W0012

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0012
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a \dopartlot command. Please check if you have called \dopartlot in the correct sequence of commands.

W0013

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0013
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a \doparttoc command. Please check if you have called \doparttoc in the correct sequence of commands.

W0014

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0014
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a \dosectlof command. Please check if you have called \dosectlof in the correct sequence of commands.

W0015

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0015
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a \dosectlot command. Please check if you have called \dosectlot in the correct sequence of commands.

W0016

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0016
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a \dosecttoc command. Please check if you have called \dosecttoc in the correct sequence of commands.

W0017

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0017
(minitoc)                no section or chapter level macros available
(minitoc)                PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS.
```

The \chapter and \section sectionning commands are not defined. Your document class is likely without any sectionning command, so the minitoc package is pointless. *Verify your main document class.*

W0018

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0018
Package minitoc Warning: part level macros NOT available.
```

The \part sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the part level commands of the minitoc package are not available. It is a warning message because most classes with sectionning commands define the \part command, so you should verify which class you are using.

W0019

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0019
(minitoc)                Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used.
(minitoc)                ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
(minitoc)                    (8+3) file names.
```

The autofiguration has found that the operating system uses file names with short extensions (8+3 scheme).

W0020

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0020
(minitoc)                You have forced the use of short extensions.
```

You have used the `shortext` package option to force the use of short extensions (8+3 scheme). This action limits the number of usable mini-tables of each kind and may be problematic if you have more that 99 mini-tables of the same kind. If your operating system allows for long extensions, do not use the `shortext` package option, except for testing purposes.

W0021

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0021
(minitoc)                Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue...
```

You are using an obsolete version of LaTeX, but the minitoc package will still try to continue. It would be better to update your LaTeX installation.

W0022

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0022
Package minitoc Warning: Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

Your version of LaTeX is very obsolete, and almost unusable with the minitoc package. You can try to continue the compilation, but you are urged to update your LaTeX installation as soon as possible.

W0093

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0093
(minitoc)                Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
(minitoc)                in your installation.
(minitoc)                Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
(minitoc)                in the \jobname.log file.
(minitoc)                The full list of the missing language files
(minitoc)                is gigen in the W0094 warning message.
(minitoc)                Please install the missing files from
(minitoc)                a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages in the *document*.log file to find which files are missing. You can retrieve them from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else some language options will not be available. The full list of the missing language files is given in the W0094 warning message.

I0050 I0051 W0094

W0094

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0094
(minitoc)                Missing minitoc language file(s):
(minitoc)                ...
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. The list is given in the message.

W0095

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0095
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixnomenclature without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands \chapter and \section are not defined (by the document class), hence the \mtcfixnomenclature macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try \part). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0096

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0096
(minitoc)                \mtcfixnomenclature can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The \mtcfixnomenclature macro can only use [part] as optional argument (which becomes the default), because \chapter and \section are not defined.

W0098

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0098
(minitoc)                --- You have used the \nofiles command
(minitoc)                in your preamble; all preparation commands
(minitoc)                in the body of the document will be ignored.
```

You have used the \nofiles command in the preamble of your document; hence the preparation commands will be ignored in your document. Please verify that the mini-table auxiliary files are in their final state. See page 28.

5.2.2.1 Warning messages for hints

W0023

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0023
(minitoc(hints))                --- It may be the consequence
(minitoc(hints))                of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package.
```

Some sectionning commands have been altered *after* the loading of the minitoc package. The hyperref package does that, but it is harmless. For other packages or user-made alterations, it is recommended to alter the sectionning commands only *before* loading the minitoc package. See section 2.17 on page 62.

W0024

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0024
(minitoc(hints))                Some hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))                in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected some potential problems and written hints into the *document*.log file. You can search it for the “minitoc(hints)” string with a text editor.

W0025

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0025
(minitoc(hints))                --- The alphanum package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))                It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))                with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the alphanum package which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

W0026

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0026
(minitoc(hints))                --- The amsart class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))                It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))                with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the amsart document class which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

W0027

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0027
(minitoc(hints))                --- The amsproc class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))                It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))                with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the amsproc document class which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

W0028

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0028
(minitoc(hints))                --- The \chapter command is altered
                                after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\chapter`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the minitoc package. The hyperref package, even if it is loaded *before* the minitoc package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the hyperref package with minitoc, but then it is harmless.

W0029

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0029
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: --- The jura class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))                It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))                with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the jura document class which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

W0030

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0030
(minitoc(hints))                --- The \part command is altered
                                after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\part`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the minitoc package. The hyperref package, even if it is loaded *before* the minitoc package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the hyperref package with minitoc, but then it is harmless.

W0031

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0031
(minitoc(hints))                --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))                without the section option,
(minitoc(hints))                but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))                which implies it. Try to inverse the
(minitoc(hints))                loading order and use consistent options.
(minitoc(hints))                You may have got a message
(minitoc(hints))       ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins.
```

You are using the placeins package, but without its `section` option, while minitoc is called with its `insection` option which implies it. See page 29, near a "dangerous bend" symbol like the one shown in the margin.

W0032

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0032
(minitoc(hints))                --- The placeins package loaded is
(minitoc(hints))                too old. You should use a version
(minitoc(hints))                dated of 2005/04/18 at least.
```

You are using an obsolete version of the placeins package. Please update it from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

W0033

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0033
(minitoc(hints))                The caption package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The caption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 72.

W0034

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0034
(minitoc(hints))                The caption2 package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The caption2 package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 72. Note that the caption2 package is now obsolete; please use a recent version of the caption package.

W0035

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0035
(minitoc(hints))                The ccaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The ccaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 72.

W0036

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0036
(minitoc(hints))                The mcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The mcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 72.

W0037

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0037
(minitoc(hints))                The sectsty package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The sectsty package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.28 on page 70.

W0038

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0038
(minitoc(hints))                The varsects package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The varsects package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.33 on page 73.

W0039

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0039
(minitoc(hints))                --- The \section command is altered
                                after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like \section. Most of them should be loaded *before* the minitoc package. The hyperref package, even if it is loaded *before* the minitoc package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an \AtBeginDocument, so this message is always printed when you use the hyperref package with minitoc, but then it is harmless.

W0040

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0040
(minitoc(hints))                --- The titletoc package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))                It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))                with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the titletoc package, but it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. See note 21 on page 53.

W0041

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0041
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty minilofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilofs. If you have used the nocheckfiles package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (checkfiles package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0042

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0042
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty minilots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilots. If you have used the nocheckfiles package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (checkfiles package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0043

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0043
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty minitocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minitocs. If you have used the nocheckfiles package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (checkfiles package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0044

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0044
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty partlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlofs. If you have used the nocheckfiles package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (checkfiles package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0045

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0045
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty partlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlots. If you have used the nocheckfiles package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (checkfiles package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0046

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0046
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty parttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty parttocs. If you have used the nocheckfiles package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (checkfiles package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0047

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0047
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty sectlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlofs. If you have used the nocheckfiles package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (checkfiles package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0048

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0048
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty sectlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0049

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0049
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty secttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty secttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0050

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0050
(minitoc(hints))                You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                                command: \firstchapteris.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

W0051

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0051
(minitoc(hints))                You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                                command: \firstpartis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

W0052

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0052
(minitoc(hints))                You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                                command: \firstsectionis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

W0053

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0053
(minitoc(hints))                You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))                and more than 99 chapters (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 chapters, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective chapters in your document. See section 1.9 on page 54.

W0054

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0054
(minitoc(hints))                You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))                and more than 99 parts (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 parts, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective parts in your document. See section 1.9 on page 54.

W0055

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0055
(minitoc(hints))                You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))                and more than 99 sections (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 sections, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective sections in your document. See section 1.9 on page 54.

W0056

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0056
(minitoc(hints))                You are using \dosectlof and/or
(minitoc(hints))                \dosectlot, \sectlof and/or \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))                hence the ``insection'' package
(minitoc(hints))                option is recommended.
```

You are asking for mini-lists of figures or tables at the section level. But as floats (figures and tables) could drift somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the sectlofs and sectlots can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` package option. See page 29.

W0057

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0057
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dominilof.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilofs (via \minilof), but the minilofs have not been prepared (via \dominilof).

W0058

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0058
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \minilot,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dominilot.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilots (via \minilot), but the minilots have not been prepared (via \dominilot).

W0059

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0059
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \minitoc,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dominitoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some minitocs (via \minitoc), but the minitocs have not been prepared (via \dominitoc).

W0060

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0060
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \partlof,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dopartlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlofs (via \partlof), but the partlofs have not been prepared (via \dopartlof).

W0061

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0061
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \partlot,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dopartlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlots (via \partlot), but the partlots have not been prepared (via \dopartlot).

W0062

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0062
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \parttoc,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \doparttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some parttocs (via \parttoc), but the parttocs have not been prepared (via \doparttoc).

W0063

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0063
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \sectlof,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dosectlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlofs (via \sectlof), but the sectlofs have not been prepared (via \dosectlof).

W0064

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0064
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dosectlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlots (via \sectlot), but the sectlots have not been prepared (via \dosectlot).

W0065

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0065
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \secttoc,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dosecttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some secttocs (via \secttoc), but the secttocs have not been prepared (via \dosecttoc).

W0066

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0066
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \listoffigures nor
(minitoc(hints))                \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some minilofs (via \minilof), but the *document*.lof file is not available because you have not invoked \listoffigures nor \fakelistoffigures.

W0067

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0067
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \minilot but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoftables nor
(minitoc(hints))                \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some minilots (via \minilot), but the *document*.lot file is not available because you have not invoked \listoftables nor \fakelistoftables.

W0068

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0068
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \minitoc but not
(minitoc(hints))                \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))                nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some minitocs (via \minitoc), but the *document*.toc file is not available because you have not invoked \tableofcontents nor \faketableofcontents.

W0069

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0069
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \partlof but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some partlofs (via \partlof), but the *document*.lof file is not available because you have not invoked \listoffigures nor \fakelistoffigures.

W0070

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0070
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \partlot but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some partlots (via \partlot), but the *document*.lot file is not available because you have not invoked \listoftables nor \fakelistoftables.

W0071

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0071
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \parttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))                \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))                nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some parttocs (via \parttoc), but the *document*.toc file is not available because you have not invoked \tableofcontents nor \faketableofcontents.

W0072

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0072
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \sectlof but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlofs (via \sectlof), but the *document*.lof file is not available because you have not invoked \listoffigures nor \fakelistoffigures.

W0073

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0073
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \sectlot but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlots (via \sectlot), but the *document*.lot file is not available because you have not invoked \listoftables nor \fakelistoftables.

W0074

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0074
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \secttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))                \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))                nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some secttocs (via \secttoc), but the *document*.toc file is not available because you have not invoked \tableofcontents nor \faketableofcontents.

W0075

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0075
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \doparttoc
(minitoc(hints))                but not \parttoc.
```

You have prepared some parttocs (via \doparttoc), but you never used one of them.

W0076

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0076
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dopartlof
(minitoc(hints))                but not \partlof.
```

You have prepared some partlofs (via \dopartlof), but you never used one of them.

W0077

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0077
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dopartlot
(minitoc(hints))                but not \partlot.
```

You have prepared some partlots (via \dopartlot), but you never used one of them.

W0078

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0078
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dominitoc
(minitoc(hints))                but not \minitoc.
```

You have prepared some minitocs (via \dominitoc), but you never used one of them.

W0079

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0079
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dominilof
(minitoc(hints))                but not \minilof.
```

You have prepared some minilofs (via \dominilof), but you never used one of them.

W0080

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0080
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dominilot
(minitoc(hints))                but not \minilot.
```

You have prepared some minilots (via `\dominilot`), but you never used one of them.

W0081

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0081
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dosecttoc
(minitoc(hints))                but not \secttoc.
```

You have prepared some secttocs (via `\dosecttoc`), but you never used one of them.

W0082

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0082
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dosectlof
(minitoc(hints))                but not \sectlof.
```

You have prepared some sectlofs (via `\dosectlof`), but you never used one of them.

W0083

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0083
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dosectlot
(minitoc(hints))                but not \sectlot.
```

You have prepared some sectlots (via `\dosectlot`), but you never used one of them.

W0084

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0084
(minitoc(hints))                --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))                with the above option,
(minitoc(hints))                but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))                which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))                Try to remove the above option and
(minitoc(hints))                use consistent options.
```

You are using the placeins package, but with its `above` option, while minitoc is called with its `insection` option which is *incompatible* with it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol.

W0085

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0085
(minitoc(hints))                --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))                with the below option,
(minitoc(hints))                but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))                which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))                Try to remove the below option
(minitoc(hints))                and use consistent options.
```

You are using the placeins package, but with its `below` option, while minitoc is called with its `insection` option which is *incompatible* with it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol.

W0086

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0086
(minitoc(hints))                The fncychap package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The fncychap package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.38 on page 75.

W0087

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0087
(minitoc(hints))                The quotchap package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The quotchap package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.39 on page 75.

W0088

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0088
(minitoc(hints))                The romannum package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The romannum package alters the numbering of some sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.40 on page 76.

W0089

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0089
(minitoc(hints))                The sfheaders package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The sfheaders package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.41 on page 76.

W0090

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0090
(minitoc(hints))                The alnumsec package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The alnumsec package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.42 on page 76.

W0091

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0091
(minitoc(hints))                The captcont package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The captcont package alters the caption commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.43 on page 76.

W0092

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0092
(minitoc(hints))                The hangcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))                loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The hangcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.47 on page 79.

W0097

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0097
(minitoc(hints))                --- The flowfram package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))                It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))                with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the flowfram package which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package, because it has its own definitions for minitocs. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

W0099

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0099
(minitoc(hints))                --- The titlesec package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))                It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))                with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the titlesec package, but it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. See note 21 on page 53.

5.2.3 Error messages

E0001

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0001
(minitoc)               But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixglossary not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the \mtcfixglossary macro; even \part is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0002

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0002
(minitoc)               But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixindex not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the \mtcfixindex macro; even \part is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0003

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0003
(minitoc)               Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

Some mtchideinmainlof environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of figures will be strange.

E0004

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0004
(minitoc)               Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect
```

Some mtchideinmainlot environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of tables will be strange.

E0005

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0005
(minitoc)               Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

Some mtchideinmaintoc environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main table of contents will be strange.

E0006

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0006
(minitoc)               LANGUAGE is not a known language,
(minitoc)               LANGUAGE.mld not found.
(minitoc)               Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN
```

The \mtcselectlanguage macro has attempted to load the *LANGUAGE*.mld minitoc language definition file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed .mld files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local .mld file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

E0007

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0007
(minitoc)               LANGUAGE is not a known minitoc
(minitoc)               language object file (.mlo),
(minitoc)               LANGUAGE.mlo not found.
(minitoc)               Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN
```

The \mtcselectlanguage macro has attempted to load indirectly the *LANGUAGE*.mlo minitoc language object file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed .mlo files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local .mlo file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

E0008

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0008
(minitoc)               \mtcsetdepth attempts to use
(minitoc)               an undefined counter (ARG1depth).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You are trying to set the depth for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

E0009

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0009
(minitoc)               \mtcsetdepth has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)               (ARG1).
(minitoc)               It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)               (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the \mtcsetdepth macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (parttoc, ..., sectlot).

E0010

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0010
(minitoc)               \mtcsetdepth: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the \mtcsetdepth macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (parttoc, ..., sectlot).

E0011

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0011
(minitoc)               \mtcsetfeature has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)               (ARG1).
(minitoc)               It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)               (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the \mtcsetfeature macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (parttoc, ..., sectlot).

E0012

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0012
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)               (ARG2).
(minitoc)               It should be a feature param
(minitoc)               (before, after, open, close, pagestyle).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the \mtcsetfeature macro is incorrect. It should be before, after, open, close, or thispagestyle.

E0013

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0013
(minitoc)               \mtcsetfont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)               (arg1).
(minitoc)               It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)               (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of \mtcsetfont is incorrect; it should be the type of a mini-table (parttoc ..., sectlot).

E0014

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0014
(minitoc)               \mtcsetfont has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)               (ARG2).
(minitoc)               It should be a sectionning level
(minitoc)               (part...subparagraph) or * .
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of \mtcsetfont is incorrect; it should be a sectionning level (i.e., a sectionning command without its backslash), like part ..., subparagraph.

E0015

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0015
(minitoc)               \mtcsetformat has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)               (ARG1).
(minitoc)               It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)               (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a \mtcsetformat macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (parttoc, ..., sectlot).

E0016

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0016
(minitoc)               \mtcsetformat has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)               (ARG2).
(minitoc)               It should be a formatting param choosen from:
(minitoc)               pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the \mtcsetformat macro is wrong. It should be one of the following keywords: pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, or dotinterval.

E0017

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0017
(minitoc)               \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong first
(minitoc)               argument (ARG1)..
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)               (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the \mtcsetpagenumbers macro must be a type of minitable (parttoc, . . . , sectlot).

E0018

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0018
(minitoc)               \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong second
(minitoc)               argument (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the \mtcsetpagenumbers must be a keyword chosen in the following lists[4]:

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

E0019

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0019
(minitoc)                \mtcsetrules has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)                (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)                (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the \mtcsetrules is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (parttoc, ..., sectlot).

E0020

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0020
(minitoc)                \mtcsetrules has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)                (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the \mtcsetrules must be a keyword chosen in the following lists[4]:

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

[4] O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

E0021

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0021
(minitoc)               \mtcsettitle has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)               (ARG1).
(minitoc)               It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)               (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a `\mtcsettitle` macro is incorrect; it should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0022

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0022
(minitoc)               \mtcsettitlefont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)               (ARG1).
(minitoc)               It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)               (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsettitlefont` must be a mini-table type. You likely misspelt it.

E0023

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0023
(minitoc)               The macro \mtcsetfeature has incompatible
(minitoc)               first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first and second arguments of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro are *incompatible*. You should verify them.

E0024

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0024
(minitoc)               The macro \mtcsetfont has incompatible
(minitoc)               first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The \mtcsetfont macro takes a mini-table type as first argument, a sectionning level as second argument (or a star), and a sequence of font commands as third argument. The second argument must have a lower level than the first one (i.e., it is meaningless to specify the font for the chapter level entries for a minitoc or a secttoc).

E0025

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0025
(minitoc)               The macro \mtcsetformat has incompatible
(minitoc)               first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first and second arguments of a \mtcsetformat macro are *incompatible*. One is likely to be misspelt.

E0026

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0026
(minitoc)               The optional argument of \mtcfixglossary
(minitoc)               is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the \mtcfixglossary macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

E0027

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0027
(minitoc)               The optional argument of \mtcfixindex
(minitoc)               is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixindex` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to `chapter`) or be `part`, `chapter`, or `section`.

E0028

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0028
(minitoc)               Unable to patch the memoir class.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
So it remains incompatible. Sorry.
```

Your version of the memoir class is really *incompatible* with the minitoc package and cannot be automatically patched. Please update the memoir class and/or the minitoc package from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

E0029

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0029
(minitoc)               Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmainlof` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of figures could be incorrect.

E0030

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0030
(minitoc)               Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect
```

A mtchideinmainlot environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of tables could be incorrect.

E0031

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0031
(minitoc)                Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

A mtchideinmaintoc environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main table of contents could be incorrect.

E0032

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0032
(minitoc)                You are using the \mtcloadmlo command
(minitoc)                outside of a .mld file.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
It will be ignored
```

It is *forbidden* to use the \mtcloadmlo macro outside of a .mld file (which is loaded via \mtcselectlanguage). The command is ignored.

E0033

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0033
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsettitle uses
(minitoc)                an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof, or sectlot.

E0034

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0034
(minitoc)               The macro \mtcsettitlefont uses
(minitoc)               an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof, or sectlot.

E0035

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0035
(minitoc)               You have used the 'insection' option in
(minitoc)               a document where chapters are defined.
(minitoc)               This is not compatible: option ignored.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Remove this option.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The insection package option is intended for article-like document classes, to prevent floats from drifting out of their section. It is pointless for book-like or report-like document classes, where floats are contained in their chapter.

E0036

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0036
(minitoc)               Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)               The minitoc language object file (.mld),
(minitoc)               english.mld is not found.
(minitoc)               We will try to continue with default values.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue
```

The english.mld language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the missing english titles.

E0037

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0037
(minitoc)               The \COMMAND command is incompatible
(minitoc)               with the document class.

See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
 ...

l.39 \dominitoc[r]

? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You have used a preparation or insertion command (*COMMAND*) which is not available for the document class you are using. Please verify that the document class is compatible with minitoc and if the level of the mini-table is available in the document class (section-level mini-tables are not available in book- or report-like classes, chapter-level mini-tables are not available in article-like classes, mini-tables are not available in letter-like classes, etc.).

E0038

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0038
(minitoc)               Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)               A mandatory minitoc language object file,
(minitoc)               LANGUAGE.mld, is not found.
(minitoc)               We will try to continue with
(minitoc)               current/default values.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue
```

The mandatory *LANGUAGE*.mld language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the default english titles.

E0039

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0039
(minitoc)               But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixnomenclature not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0040

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0040
(minitoc)               The optional argument of \mtcfixnomenclature
(minitoc)               is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to `chapter`) or be `part`, `chapter`, or `section`.

E0041

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0041
(minitoc)               \mtcsetoffset attempts to use
(minitoc)               an undefined mini-table type (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You are trying to set the offset for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

E0042

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0042
(minitoc)                \mtcsetoffset has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)                (ARG1).
(minitoc)                It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)                (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetoffset` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0043

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0043
(minitoc)                \mtcsetoffset: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type  H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetoffset` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

5.3 Messages from the mtcoff package

The mtcoff package gives only warning messages; their numbers begin with `F`.

5.3.1 Warning messages

F0001

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0001
(mtcoff)                \addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                 on input line LINE.
```

The \addstarredchapter command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcoff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...} command.

F0002

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0002
(mtcoff)                \addstarredpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                 on input line LINE.
```

The \addstarredpart command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcoff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...} command.

F0003

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0003
(mtcoff)                \addstarredsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                 on input line LINE.
```

The \addstarredsection command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcoff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...} command.

F0004

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0004
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                 on input line LINE.
```

The \mtcaddchapter command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcoff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...} command.

F0005

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0005
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                 on input line LINE.
```

The \mtcaddpart command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcoff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...} command.

F0006

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0006
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                 on input line LINE.
```

The \mtcaddsection command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcoff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...} command.

F0007

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0007
(mtcoff)                You should scan (backwards) your .log
(mtcoff)                file to find some commands needing
(mtcoff)                to be replaced if you decide to
(mtcoff)                DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
(mtcoff)                document. It is more wise to keep the
(mtcoff)                \usepackage lines for minitoc and mtcoff
(mtcoff)                and to comment out only one of them.
```

You have replaced the use of the minitoc package by its substitute mtcoff. It is recommended to keep the \usepackage lines for both minitoc and mtcoff and to comment out only one of them. If you decide to *definitely* stop using minitoc for this document, it is wise to scan (backwards) the *document*.log file (after a compilation using mtcoff) to locate some commands needing to be replaced.

F0008

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0008
(mtcoff)                The macro \kernafterSTRING
(mtcoff)                should not be used out of context
(mtcoff)                on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the \kernafter*STRING* macros with the mtcoff package. The result may be impredictible. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the position of the bottom rule of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the minitoc package.

F0009

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0009
(mtcoff)                The macro \STRINGoffset
(mtcoff)                should not be used out of context
(mtcoff)                on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the *STRING*offset* macros with the mtcoff package. The result may be impredictible. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the horizontal position of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the minitoc package.

5.4 Message from the mtcpatchmem package

M0001

```
Package mtcpatchmem Info: M0001
Package mtcpatchmem Info: mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class.
```

You are using a version of the memoir class which needs a correction. This correction has been automatically loaded if necessary. Very recent versions should not need it anymore. See chapter 12 on page 465.

Chapter 6

Jargon

Contents

Tables

This chapter attempts to explain some terms used in this documentation, and describes some useful files and suffixes. Many data come from the documentations of various cited packages (often from the abstract), and from [4, 5, 137, 140, 266, 282, 289–291, 309, 310, 315, 330, 343, 344, 355, 356, 458].

.

.aux The suffix of the name for an *auxiliary* file of a LaTeX document. It carries some information from a LaTeX run to the next.

.cls The suffix for the name of a document class file, loaded via `\documentclass`.

.dtx The suffix of the name for a documented source file of a LaTeX package or class. This file is often associated with a `.ins` file to generate the package or class. Compiling a `.dtx` file with LaTeX generates the documentation.

.F The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.F`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilof.

.G The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.G`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlof.

.H The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.H`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlof.

.ins The suffix of the name for an installation file of a LaTeX package or class. When compiled with LaTeX, it extracts the files of the package or class from an `.dtx` file.

.lof The suffix of the name of the "list of figures" file.

.log The suffix of the name of the log file (compilation report).

.lot The suffix of the name of the "list of tables" file.

.M The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.M`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the minitoc.

.maf The suffix of the name of the file generated by the `listfiles` package option. This file contains the list of the minitoc auxiliary files.

.mld The suffix for the name of a minitoc language definition file. A minitoc language definition file contains the definitions for the mini-table titles in a given language.

.mlf The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.mlf`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilof.

.mlo The suffix for the name of a minitoc language object file. For some exotic languages, the encoding makes not easy to put direcly the titles in a `.mld` file; hence the `.mld` file must load a `.mlo` file.

.mlt The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.mlt`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilot.

.mtc The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.mtc`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the minitoc.

.P The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.P`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the parttoc.

.plf The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.plf`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlof.

.plt The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.plt`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlot.

.ptc The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.ptc`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the parttoc.

.S The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.S`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the secttoc.

.slf The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.slf`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlof.

.slt The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.slt`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlot.

.stc The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.stc`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the secttoc.

.sty The suffix for the name of a package file, loaded via `\usepackage`.

.T The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.T`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilot.

.tex The suffix of the name of a TEX or LATEX normal source file.

.toc The suffix of the name of the "table of contents" file.

.U The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.U`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlot.

.V The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.V`*nn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlot.

A

absolute numbering The auxiliary files for the mini-tables have a suffix containing an *absolute number*, i.e., the number is unique and always increasing from the first part, chapter or section; this has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`. The absolute numbering has been introduced in version #23.

abstract The abstract package [470] (by Peter R. Wilson) needs some precautions if used with its `addtotoc` option. I0040

adjustment Some minitoc commands and environments are known as "adjustment commands" because they are used in some circumstances to "adjust" a counter or to alter the displaying of contents files. These commands and environments are `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, `\adjuststc`, `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, `\incrementstc`,

\mtcaddpart, \mtcaddchapter, \mtcaddsection, \mtcfixglossary, \mtcfixindex, \mtcfixnomenclature, mtchideinmaintoc, mtchideinmainlof, and mtchideinmainlot. It is *strongly recommended* that the user verifies the result of such adjustments in the final document.

after A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *after* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the \mtcsetfeature command, in section 1.10 on page 48.

afterpage The afterpage [115] package is used to add code to be executed *after* the next page break.

alnumsec The alnumsec package [274] allows you to use alphanumeric section numbering, e.g. A. Introduction; III. International Law. It's output is similar to the alphanum package (part of the jura class [103]), but you can use the standard LaTeX sectionning commands. Thus it is possible to switch numbering schemes easily. Greek letters, double letters (bb) and different delimiters around them are supported. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.42 on page 76). W0090

alphanum The alphanum package, which is part of the specialized jura class [103], by Felix Braun, is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. W0025

$\mathcal{AMS}$ The American Mathematical Society [1]. This society has developped some document classes: unfortunately, amsart and amsproc are *incompatible* with the minitoc package; amsbook is compatible but needs precautions. W0026 W0027 I0041

amsart, amsart.cls A document class for articles [8], provided by the American Mathematical Society ($\mathcal{AMS}$). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. W0026

amsbook, amsbook.cls A document class for books [8], provided by the American Mathematical Society ($\mathcal{AMS}$). This class is compatible with the minitoc package, but needs some precautions. See section 2.24 on page 66. I0041

amsproc, amsproc.cls A document class for conference proceedings [8], provided by the American Mathematical Society ($\mathcal{AMS}$). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. W0027

Antomega Antomega [272] (by Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov) is a language support package for *Lambda* ($\mathbf{\Lambda}$), based on the original omega.sty file of the Omega project ($\mathbf{\Omega}$). However, it provides some additional useful functionalities. Some languages definition files (.mld) use titles taken from Antomega: greek-mono.mld, greek-polydemo.mld, greek-polykatha.mld, latvian.mld, polish2.mld, russian2m.mld, russian2o.mld, and spanish3.mld.

appendices See appendix below.

appendix The appendix package [471] (by Peter R. Wilson) provides various ways of formatting the titles of appendices. Also (sub)appendices environments are provided that can be used, for instance, for per chapter/section appendices. If this I0042

[1] http://www.ams.org

package is used with minitoc, some precautions are needed (see section 2.20 on page 64).

Arabi Arabi [243] is a system (by Youssef JABRI) to prepare LaTeX documents in the `arabic` or `farsi` languages. The titles in `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` come from the `arabic.ldf` and `farsi.ldf` files of this system.

ArabTeX ArabTeX [276, 277] is a package (by Klaus LAGALLY) to prepare LaTeX documents in the `arabic` or `hebrew` languages. The titles in `arab.mld` (or `arabic.mld`), `arab2.mld` and `hebrew.mld` come from ArabTeX, while those of `hebrew2.mld` come from babel [60, 61].

ArmTeX ArmTeX [142] is a package (prepared by Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN) to prepare LaTeX documents in the `armenian` language. The titles in `armenian.mld` come from ArmTeX.

article A standard LaTeX document class [282]. It has sectionning commands: `\part` and `\section` (and below), but not `\chapter`. It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and section levels (but, of course, not at the unavailable chapter level).

`\AtBeginDocument` This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the beginning of the document (if fact, at the very end of its preamble, but inside it, which implies some restrictions), at the point where `\begin{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

`\AtEndDocument` This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the end of the document, at the point where `\end{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

autoconfiguration Since version #28, minitoc detects automaticaly if the extensions (suffixes) of the file names are limited to 3 characters (like under MS-DOS) or not. This process is named autoconfiguration. The package option `shortext` forces the limitation to 3 characters.

auxiliary During the preparation of a document, the LaTeX system uses some **auxiliary** files to store information. The standard auxiliary files are *document*`.aux` (for cross-reference labels, counters, etc.), *document*`.toc` for the table of contents, *document*`.lof` for the list of figures, and *document*`.lot` for the list of tables. The minitoc package creates its own auxiliary files, to store the contents of each mini-table. These files are the *minitoc auxiliary files*, whose names are *document*`.`*extension*, the table 1.11 on page 55 lists the possible extensions. See also the `.maf` extension above.

B

babel The babel package [60, 61] (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and others) is a large package useful to write LaTeX documents in many languages, not only english. Many titles for mini-tables come directly from the babel package.

BangTEX A package for typesetting documents in the `bangla` (`bengali`) language using the TEX/LATEX systems; see [362].

before A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *before* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48.

BIBTEX A program by Oren PATASHNIK to make bibliographies in LATEX documents. Distributed with LATEX. See [315, 366, 367, 417].

bibtopic A LATEX package [25] for including several bibliographies in a document. These bibliographies might be considered to cover different topics (hence the name) or bibliographic material (e.g., primary and secondary literature) and the like.

bibunits The bibunits package [210] allows separate bibliographies for different units or parts of the text. The units can be chapters, sections or `bibunit` environments. This package is compatible with a wide variety of packages, including, but not limited to, natbib [145, 146], overcite [17] and KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399].

book A standard LATEX document class [282]. It has sectionning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

booktabs This nice package [165] helps to the preparation of better tables, *without* vertical rules nor double rules.

C

calc The calc [441] package makes easier the numeric computations (on counters and dimensions) when preparing a LATEX document.

cappuccino See "minutes" below.

captcont The captcont package [131] provides support for retaining a figure or caption number across several float environments — usually over several pages. It allows control over the contents of the List-of-Figures and the List-of-Tables pages. It should be compatible with all other packages that modify or extend the float environment and with the subfig package [132] in particular. W0091

caption The caption package [421, 422, 424] provides many ways to customize the captions in floating environments such `figure` and `table` and cooperates with many other packages. W0033

caption2 The[2] caption2 package [423] used to be an experimental side-version of the regular caption package [421, 422, 424] and has been superseed by the new release of the regular caption package version 3.0 in December 2003. caption2 is still W0034

[2] This text comes from the documentation of the caption package. The caption and caption2 packages have the same author, Axel SOMMERFELDT.

Table 6.1: Category codes

	Category	Meaning
0	Escape character	(\ usually)
1	Beginning of group	({ usually)
2	End of group	(} usually)
3	Math shift	($ usually)
4	Alignment tab	(& usually)
5	End of line	(*return* usually)
6	Parameter	(# usually)
7	Superscript	(^ usually)
8	Subscript	(_ usually)
9	Ignored character	(*null* usually)
10	Space	(␣ usually)
11	Letter	(A, . . . , Z and a, . . . , z)
12	Other character	(none of the above or below)
13	Active character	(~ usually)
14	Comment character	(% usually)
15	Invalid character	(*delete* usually)

some kind of supported, that means it will be part of future releases and bugs will still be fixed, so existing documents using this package will still compile. But Axel Sommerfeldt will *not* answer questions about this package anymore except questions on migrating to the regular version of the caption package. And it will *not* be adapted or enhanced in the future.

So please don't use this package for new documents. It's old, it's obsolete and it starts to begin smell bad!

Please ignore all hints in books or other documents which try to tell you that the caption2 package should be used instead of the caption package – these hints are outdated since December 2003.

catcode Short for "category code". In[3] the first place, it's wise to have a precise idea of what your keyboard sends to the machine. There are 256 characters that TEX might encounter at each step, in a file or in a line of text typed directly on your terminal. These 256 characters are classified into 16 categories numbered 0 to 15. See table 6.1. It's not necessary for you to learn these code numbers; the point is only that TEX responds to 16 different types of characters. At first, "*The TEXbook*" led you to believe that there were just two types — the escape character and the others — and then you were told about two more types, the grouping symbols { and }. The category code for any character can be changed at any time, but it is usually wise to stick to a particular scheme.

ccaption The ccaption package [474] provides commands for "continuation captions", unnumbered captions, and a legend heading for any environment. Methods are provided to define captions for use outside float environments, and to define new float environments and subfloats. Tools are provided for defining your own captioning styles. W0035

[3] This definition is taken from "*The TEXbook*" [263, 265].

Table 6.2: Encoding schemes implemented in CJK

Encoding	1 byte	2 bytes	3 bytes
GB	0xA1–0xF7	0xA1–0xFE	—
Big 5	0xA1–0xF9	0x40–0xFE	—
JIS	0xA1–0xF4	0xA1–0xFE	—
SJIS	0xA1–0xFE	0x40–0xFC	—
KS	0xA1–0xFD	0xA1–0xFE	—
UTF 8	0xC0–0xEF	0x80–0xBF	0x80–0xBF
CNS	0xA1–0xFE	0xA1–0xFE	—

chngpage The chngpage package (by Peter R. Wilson) provides commands to change the page layout in the middle of a document, and to robustly check for typesetting on odd or even pages.

Chapter 0 Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number). This caused a serious problem in old versions of the minitoc package: the minitocs appeared in the wrong chapters, and a first correction was the introduction of specific commands (`\firstchapteris` and co.). With the addition of the absolute numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files (see *absolute* above), the problem was solved in minitoc version #23, and these commands became obsolete. See section 1.5.4 on page 49.

chapterbib The chapterbib package [19] allows multiple bibliographies in a LaTeX document, including items `\cite`'d in more than one bibliography. Despite the name "chapterbib", *the bibliographies are for each included file*, not necessarily for each chapter.

checkfiles A package option of minitoc. It checks every mini-table to look if it is empty; then empty mini-tables are *not* printed. This is the default. The opposite package option (`nocheckfiles`) prints even the empty mini-tables, which look ugly. See section 9.77.2 on page 408.

CJK The CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner Lemberg and others), is a set of packages and fonts to prepare LaTeX documents in some oriental language, like chinese, japanese, korean (with Hangûl or Hanja fonts), and thai, plus some variants of russian. The titles of mini-tables for these languages come from some CJK files and were inserted in `.mld` files when possible, or in `.mlo` files when the encoding is incompatible with the `.ins/.dtx` mechanism; then the `.mld` file must input the corresponding `.mlo` file. CJK implements the GB, Big 5, JIS, SJIS, KS, UTF 8, and CNS encodings (on 16 bits, except UTF 8 on 24 bits). See table 6.2.

Some encoding schemes (Big 5, SJIS) have gaps in the range of the second byte. It is difficult to input Big 5 and SJIS encoding directly into TeX since some of the values used for the encodings' second bytes are reserved for control characters: '{', '}', and '\'. Redefining them breaks a lot of things in LaTeX; to avoid this, preprocessors are normally used which convert the second byte into a number followed by a delimiter character. For further details, please refer to [309, 310]; Ken Lunde discusses in great detail all CJK encodings which are or have been in use. Please note that the minitoc package uses the `.mlo` files as a workaround for this problem; see section 1.4.14 on page 44.

Table 6.3: Standard document classes

Class	Usage
article [282]	For articles in scientific journals, presentations, short reports, program documentation, invitations, ...
proc [281]	For preparing conference proceedings; analog to the article class.
ltxdoc [116]	For preparing the documentation of a package or of a class; analog to the article class.
ltnews [248]	For preparing the announcement of a LaTeX release; analog to the article class.
report [282]	For longer reports containing several chapters, small books, PhD theses, ...
book [282]	For real books.
letter [283]	For letters; as this class has no sectionning commands, do not use minitoc with this class.
slides [324]	For slides; the class uses big sans serif letters. You might want to consider using BeamerTeX[a] instead. Do not use minitoc with these classes.

[a] http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/beamer/doc/beameruserguide.pdf

class The **class**[4] is the first information LaTeX needs to know when processing an input file; it is the type of document the author wants to create. This is specified with the `\documentclass` command.

`\documentclass[`*options*`]{`*class*`}`

Here *class* specifies the type of document to be created. Table 6.3 lists the standard document classes [282]. The LaTeX 2_ε distribution provides additional classes for other documents, including letters and slides, but the minitoc package has not been tested with all these classes. The *options* parameters customize the behaviour of the document class. The options have to be separated by commas. The standard classes supported by the minitoc package are listed in section 2.7 on page 60.

close A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed immediately after (*close*) the insertion of the auxiliary file for a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48. See the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file, in section 4.27 on page 137.

cmk An example of shell script to prepare the documentation files in PostScript format from the ones in PDF format. This script should be adapted to your needs.

CMR For "Computer Modern Roman". The roman subset of the Computer Modern fonts. See "Computer Modern" below.

comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about TeX and LaTeX, in english.

Computer Modern A set of fonts [262] designed by Donald E. Knuth for TeX. Initially they were built with METAFONT [149, 264] (a program also created by Knuth), but PostScript type 1 (vector) versions exist today, with extensions (for accented characters, mainly): the EC-fonts (European Computer Modern), the cm-super fonts, etc.

[4] This note is extracted from [356], then adapted.

Table 6.4: Depths for sectionning commands

Class:	book	report	article
secnumdepth	2	2	3
\part	−1	−1	0
\chapter	0	0	×
\section	1	1	1
\subsection	2	2	2
\subsubsection	3	3	3
\paragraph	4	4	4
\subparagraph	5	5	5

counter A TEX register containing an integer value. There are 256 counters (from 0 to 255) in TEX, but LATEX uses some of them, and many packages need some counters for their own usage. An extended version derived from TEX, ε-TEX [105], allows more counters. Omega (**Ω**) also offers more counters.

CTAN The *Comprehensive TEX Archive Network*, a set of computer archives containing most of the TEX related resources (like fonts, sofware, documentations, packages). They are accessible via Internet. See http://ctan.org.

D

dblaccnt I needed to use the dblaccnt [328] package to typeset "The pdfTEX Program" entry [204] in the bibliography, because its author's first name contains a double accent (Thế Thành Hàn).

de.comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about TEX and LATEX, in german.

depth In the standard documents classes (and in most classes) with sectionning commands, we have a notion of **depth**. The depth of a sectionning command determines the numbering level in its title (from the value of the secnumdepth counter), and the entries for a given sectionning command appear in the main table of contents if the depth of this sectionning command is lower than or equal to the value of the tocdepth counter; see table 6.4 for the depths of the sectionning commands in the main document classes.

The mechanism is analog for the parttocs, minitocs, and secttocs, using the values of the parttocdepth, minitocdepth, and secttocdepth counters. If you use sub-figures or sub-tables, the corresponding mini-tables use counters like partlofdepth, partlotdepth, minilofdepth, minilotdepth, sectlofdepth, and sectlotdepth.

descriptor (file descriptor). A software entity describing the interface between a program and a file. For most programs and operating systems, the number of file descriptors is limited. For TEX (and LATEX), there are 16 file descriptors for writing and 16 file descriptors for reading.

devanagari.sty The *Devanāgarī for TEX* (Devanāgarī) package [364] provides a way to typeset high-quality Devanāgarī text with TEX. Devanāgarī is a script used for writing and printing Sanskrit and a number of languages in Northern and Central India such as Hindi and Marathi, as well as Nepali. The Devanāgarī package was originally developed in May 1991 by Frans Velthuis for the University of Groningen, The Netherlands, and it was the first system to provide support for the Devanāgarī script for TEX.

E

em A length unit equal (approximatively) to the width of a "m" letter in the current font.

emk An example of shell script to prepare the english documentation of the minitoc package. The script `imk` must have be run previously. See item 10 on page 245.

en-mtc.bst A bibliographic style derived from the `plain.bst` standard style, but modified with the urlbst tool [196] to add an URL field. Family names of authors and editors are in small caps, years are in old style digits.

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font (e.g., whether the 65th character is "A"). The most common value for TeX font encoding is OT1. The other predefined option is T1 (extended TEX). There's also US ASCII (7 bit), ISO Latin-1 (8 bit), Adobe Standard Encoding, UTF8 (Unicode [128, 151, 448]), etc. See table 6.5 on the following page and [292, 323].

environment An environment is a delimited domain in a document, where special rules apply. Such a domain is delimited by `\begin{`*env*`}` ... `\end{`*env*`}` and may take arguments, like this:

```
\begin{minipage}[t]{.5\textwidth}
\end{minipage}
```

ε-TEX ε-TEX [105] is an extented version of TEX, with much more registers and many new primitives; it supports also left-to-right and right-to-left writing.

ethiop A LATEX package [44] giving the `ethiopian` language support for the babel package [60, 61].

extension The name of a file is often made of 2 parts: a *base name* and an *entension*, separated by a dot. On some old operating systems, the base name is limited to 8 characters and the extension to 3 characters (the "8+3" scheme). See also sections 1.9 on page 54 and 2.5 on page 58. It is strongly recommended to not have more than one dot in a file name.

F

farsi.sty See FarsiTEX below.

Table 6.5: Various encodings

Encoding	Comment
ansinew	Windows 3.1 ANSI encoding, extension of Latin-1.
applemac	Macintosh encoding.
ascii	ASCII encoding for the range 32–127.
cp1250	Windows 1250 (Central and Eastern Europe) code page.
cp1251	Windows 1251 (Cyrillic) code page.
cp1252	Synonym for ansinew.
cp1257	Windows 1257 (Baltic) code page.
cp437	IBM 437 code page, which is the original American code page and contains letters, digits, mathematical symbols, and some characters useful in the construction of pseudographics.
cp437de	IBM 437 code page (German version).
cp850	IBM 850 code page, almost the same as ISO Latin 1, but character arrangement is not the same.
cp852	IBM 852 code page.
cp855	IBM 855 code page (Cyrillic).
cp865	IBM 865 code page.
cp866	IBM 866 code page (MS-DOS Cyrillic).
decmulti	DEC Multinational Character Set encoding.
latin1	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Western European languages, including Danish, Dutch, English, Faroese, Finnish, Flemish, French, German, Icelandic, Italian, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, and Swedish. Some non-European languages, such as Hawaiian and Indonesian, are also written in this character set.
latin2	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Central European languages, including Croatian, Czech, Hungarian, Polish, Romanian, Slovak, and Slovenian.
latin3	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for Esperanto, Maltese, Turkish, and Galicean. However, latin5 is the prefered character set for Turkish.
latin4	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for the Baltic languages (Latvian, Estonian, and Lithuanian), Greenlandic, and Lappish (Sámi).
latin5	Is essentially the same as latin1, except that some Turkish characters replace less commonly used Icelandic letters.
next	Next encoding.

FarsiTEX A package [162] to typeset a document in the farsi (iranian, persian) language. See http://www.farsitex.org. But this package is today available only for LaTeX2.09. See also sections 13.54 on page 494 and 13.55 on page 495.

features A feature (for the minitoc package) is a set of actions executed at each occurrence of a mini-table of a given type. Five features are associated to each mini-table type: a "before" feature (executed before the whole mini-table), an "after" feature (executed after the whole mini-table), a "open" feature, executed just before inserting the mini-table file, a "close" feature, executed just after inserting the mini-table file, and a "pagestyle" feature, which is executed with the mini-table to set its page style. Look at the documentation of the \mtcsetfeature command, in section 1.10 on page 48.

filecontents A special LaTeX environment. It allows to create a file (whose name is passed as an argument of the environment) by writing the contents of the environment into that file:

```
\begin{filecontents}{file}
...contents  ...
\end{filecontents}
```

This environment should be used *before* \documentclass. It is used in minitoc.ins to prepare the .mlo files (see section 1.4.14 on page 44) and some files used in the compilation of the documentation.

\firstchapteris An obsolete command, temporarily used as a workaround for the Chapter 0 problem; see **Chapter 0** and **absolute numbering** above, and section 1.5.4 on page 49.

\firstpartis Analog to \firstchapteris above.

\firstsectionis Analog to \firstchapteris above.

float This package [302] (by Anselm Lingnau) improves the interface for defining floating objects such as figures and tables in LaTeX. It adds the notion of a 'float style' that governs appearance of floats. New kinds of floats may be defined using a \newfloat command analogous to \newtheorem. This package also incorporates the functionality of David P. Carlisle's package here, giving floating environments a [H] option which means 'PUT IT HERE' (as opposed to the standard [h] option which means 'You may put it here if you like'). I0053

\FloatBarrier A macro from the placeins package [15]. It sets up a "barrier" against the drift of floats (like figures or tables).

floatrow This package [285] (by Olga G. Lapko) is an extension of the float package [302] (by Anselm Lingnau), reusing its code, with extensions from the rotfloat package [420] (by Axel Sommerfeldt). I0053

flowfram This package [433, 434] is designed to enable you to create text *frames* in a document such that the contents of the document environment flow from one frame to the next in the order that they were defined. This is useful for creating posters or magazines or any other form of document that does not conform to the standard one or two column layout. As this package defines its own system of minitocs, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. W0097

fmk An example of shell script to prepare the french documentation of the minitoc package. The script imk must have be run previously. See item 10 on page 245.

fncychap The fncychap package [301] provides a set of commands for changing the format used for some headings (chapters) in the standard LaTeX 2_ε document classes: book and report. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.38 on page 75). W0086

fr.comp.text.tex The Usenet newsgroup about TeX and LaTeX, in french.

franc.sty A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.

frbib.sty A small package file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fr-mtc.bst A bibliographic style file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It has been updated from the standard `plain.bst` for french by Ronan KERYELL, then I added some adaptations for french (like last names in small caps for authors and editors, years in old style digits), then modified with the urlbst [196] tool to add an URL field.

frnew.sty A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

G

geometry The geometry package [447] provides a flexible and complete user interface to page dimensions. You can specify them by using intuitive parameters to get your desired page layout. For instance, if you want to set margins (the left, right, top and bottom margins) to 2cm from each edge of the paper, what you need is just:

```
\usepackage[margin=2cm]{geometry}
```

This powerful (and recommended) package is used in some example documents and in this documentation.

guarani A LaTeX package to compose text in Guaraní, the main language spoken in Paraguay. The file `guarani.ldf`, included in this package, defines the titles. See [45] and section 13.74 on page 504.

H

hangcaption The hangcaption package [250] defines a variant of the `\caption` command to produce captions with hanging indentation. This package is likely obsolete (1992, LaTeX2.09). W0092

Hindi For the Hindi language, see the Devanāgarī package [364] above. The minitoc package accepts the `devanagari` and `hindi` language options, which are synonyms. A `hindi-modern` language option is also available. See also [148] about the Hindi language.

hint An indication, a clue to detect a problem. It is also a message written (into the *document*`.log` file) by the `hints` option (see below).

hints An option of the minitoc package. It verifies the loading order of some packages, the invocation order of some minitoc commands, the consistency between main minitoc commands, etc., and gaves warnings and other useful hints (mainly in the *document*`.log` file). This is a default option (use the `nohints` option to skip these checks).

HLaTeX A system to write documents in the Korean language, using *Lambda* (**Λ**) (see below). Written by Un Koaunghi [266, in korean]. It uses special Hangûl or Hanja fonts and the UTF-8 input encoding.

hyperlink In a document, a reference to another object which is dynamicaly found (via a click with the mouse). This requires a special type of document (PDF, PostScript with hypertext features) and a suitable viewer (PDF viewer, recent PS viewer). This is useful to navigate in a document or in many documents, which can be remote documents.

hyperref The hyperref package [390] is used to emend cross-referencing commands in LaTeX to produce some sort of `\special` commands; there are backends for the `\special` set defined for HyperTeX `dvi` processors, for embedded pdfmark commands for processing by Acrobat Distiller (dvips and dvipsone), for dviwindo, for **pdfTeX**, for **TeX4ht**, and for VTEX's pdf and HTML backends. W0023 W0028 W0030 W0039

This package derives from, and builds on, the work of the HyperTeX project, described in [371]. It extends the functionality of all the LaTeX cross-referencing commands (including the table of contents, bibliographies, etc.) to produce `\special` commands which a driver can turn into hypertext links; it also provides new commands to allow the user to write *ad hoc* hypertext links (hyperlinks), including those to external documents and URLs.

I

ifmtarg The ifmtarg package [483] provides an if-then-else command for testing if a macro argument is empty ("empty" meaning zero or more spaces only).

ifthen The ifthen package [118] implements an `\ifthenelse` command for LaTeX 2_ε.

imk An example of shell script, which prepares the minitoc package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`. See item 10 on page 245.

insection The `insection` package option loads the placeins package [15] with adequate options to avoid the floats (like figures and tables) to drift outside of their sections. This package option is recommended if you use sectlofs or sectlots in your document. See section 1.2 on page 30. W0056

insertion The insertion commands of the minitoc package insert a mini-table in the document. A corresponding *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before. The insertion commands are (see table 3.9 on page 87):

`\parttoc`, `\partlof`, `\partlot`,
`\minitoc`, `\minilof`, `\minilot`,
`\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, `\sectlot`,
`\mtcprepare`

INSTALL A text file describing the installation of the minitoc package. See chapter 7 on page 242.

J

\jobname A TEX primitive containing the name of the document in preparation, i.e., the name of the file read first by TEX (or LATEX), without its extension. Very useful to build the names of other files.

jura The jura class [103], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. It is used for german judicial documents. W0029

K

KannadaTEX A project [485] to use LATEX for typesetting in the Kannada language. See section 13.101 on page 517.

k-loose A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399]. This option tries to set a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the `loose` package option for standard classes.

k-tight A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399]. This option tries to set a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the `tight` package option for standard classes.

KOMA-Script KOMA-Script [343, 344, 399] is a very complex bundle. You may see this, because it is not only one class or one package but a bundle of many classes and packages. The classes (scrartcl, scrbook, scrlettr, scrlttr2, and scrreprt) are counterparts to the standard classes but never they come with only the same commands, environments, options and optional possibilities like the standard classes nor they result in the same look-a-like. I0043

The scrbook, scrreprt, and scrartcl classes are compatible with the minitoc package, with some precautions (see section 1.5.5 on page 50). The scrlettr and scrlttr2 have no sectionning commands, so the minitoc package is pointless with them.

KOMA-Script comes with a lot of classes, packages, commands, environments and possibilities. Some of these you may find also at the standard classes, many of them you wouldn't. Some are even supplements to the LATEX kernel.

The main classes of the KOMA-Script bundle are designed as counterparts to the standard LATEX classes. This means that the KOMA-Script bundle contains replacements for the three standard classes book, report, and article. There is also a replacement for the standard class letter.

L

Lambda The LATEX format (in the TEX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega (**Ω**) is called "*Lambda*" (**Λ**).

Lamed The LaTeX format (in the TeX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Aleph (א) is called "*Lamed*" (ל).

LaTeX LaTeX [279] is a typesetting system that is very suitable for producing scientific and mathematical documents of high typographical quality. It is also suitable for producing all sorts of other documents, from simple letters to complete books. LaTeX uses TeX [263, 265] as its formatting engine (from [356]).

In fact, LaTeX is a macro package that enables authors to typeset and print their work at the highest typographical quality, using a predefined, professional layout. LaTeX was originally written by Leslie Lamport [279]. It uses the TeX formatter as its typesetting engine. These days LaTeX is maintained by Frank Mittelbach and his team.

In 1994 the LaTeX package was (deeply) updated by the LaTeX3 team, led by Frank Mittelbach, to include some long-requested improvements, and to reunify all the patched versions which had cropped up since the release of LaTeX2.09 some years earlier. To distinguish the new version from the old, it is called LaTeX 2_ε.

LaTeX is pronounced "Lay-tech" or "Lah-tech." If you refer to LaTeX in an `ASCII` environment, you type `LaTeX`. LaTeX 2_ε is pronounced "Lay-tech two e" and typed `LaTeX2e`.

LaTeX2.09 An obsolete version of the LaTeX program, before 1994; it is no more supported. Do not use it[5]. Use the current version of LaTeX 2_ε, which is supported and much more efficient.

LaTeX 2_ε The current version of the LaTeX program, after 1994; it is supported.

LaTeX3 The future version of LaTeX, whose development is still in progress.

leaders A repetitive sequence of dots (or of one another small character), regulary spaced, used to link two objects on the same line (leading from a title to a page number in a table of contents or the like).

letter A standard document class [283] to prepare letters for postal mail (mail on paper). As such documents have no sectionning commands nor structure, the minitoc package is pointless (hence *incompatible*) with them.

lipsum The lipsum package [212] allows to easily insert sentences in a test file with a minimum of typing. The sentences are in latin but are modified and made nearly senseless. I have used this package in some of the examples of documents. See also http://lipsum.com for the origin of this text (pieces of *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum* by Marcus Tullius Cicero).

`listfiles` An option of the minitoc package. It creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files (these files contains the mini-tables and may be removed after the LaTeX run) in the *document*`.maf` file. Default. See section 1.7 on page 52.

LOF, LoF An acronym for "list of figures".

`lofdepth` This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of figures.

[5] Except in the case of a very old document; if possible, try to convert it.

loose An option of the minitoc package. It gives a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. It is the default. The opposite option is `tight`.

LOT, LoT An acronym for "list of tables".

lotdepth This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of tables.

LPPL The *LaTeX Project Public License*, available at

http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt

Its current version is 1.3 (2003-12-01). The minitoc package is distributed under this license.

ltxdoc A standard LaTeX document class [116], for preparing the documentation of a package or of a class. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the article document class; see above.

ltnews A standard LaTeX document class [248], for preparing the announcement of a LaTeX release. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the article document class; see above.

M

\makeatletter and \makeatother Many[6] internal commands of LaTeX, of packages and classes contain the @ character in their names. This effectively prevents such names from being used in documents for user-defined commands. However, it also means that they cannot appear in a document, even in the preamble, without taking special precautions. As it is sometimes necessary to have such bits of "internal code" in the preamble, the commands `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` make it easy to do: the difficult bit is to remember to add them, failure to do so can result in some strange errors. And these two commands *should never be used in a package or class file*.

makefile A special text file containing instructions describing the creation and the installation of a piece of software, using the "**make**" utility; **make** is a nice tool coming from the Unix operating system, but variants exists.

mcaption The mcaption package [228] provides a `margincap` environment for putting captions in the outer document margin with either a top or bottom alignment. W0036

MCE A minimal [complete] example is the smallest possible complete document that illustrates a problem. A minimal example file should not include any packages or code that do not contribute to the problem, but must include a document class and the `document` environment (from [432]). See also [384], http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=minxampl and http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=askquestion for good advices.

[6] Informations from [330, page 843].

E0028
I0020
I0027
I0030
I0032
I0044
M0001

memoir, `memoir.cls` A very general and powerful document class (by Peter R. Wilson, described in [479, 481, 482]); this class is compatible with the minitoc package (with some precautions) if you use a recent version. See section 2.22 on page 65.

mini-bibliography See **minibbl** below.

mini-list Synonym for "mini-table" below.

mini-lof See "minilof" below.

mini-lot See "minilot" below.

mini-table This term refers to a local table of contents (like a table of contents, a list of figures or a list of tables) for a sectionning unit (part, chapter or section), by opposition to a global table (the table of contents, the list of figures or the list of tables for the whole document). The main aim of the minitoc package is the creation of such mini-tables. But the term "minitoc" is also used to refer to such mini-table, as a generic term, because the first versions of the package allowed only tables of contents for chapters.

mini-toc See "minitoc" below.

minibbl Short for "mini-bibliography", i.e., to have a bibliography per part, chapter or section, or even by theme or subject. This is out of the domain of the minitoc package. See section 2.9 on page 60.

minilof A list of figures for a chapter.

`minilofdepth` This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilofs.

minilot A list of tables for a chapter.

`minilotdepth` This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilots.

minitoc A table of contents for a chapter. Also used as a generic term for any mini-table (see "mini-table" above).

`minitoc-fr.bib` A bibliographic data base for the french documentation of the minitoc package.

`minitoc-fr.dtx` The source file for the french documentation of the minitoc package. In fact, it just sets `\jobname` then loads `minitoc.dtx`, which itself loads `\jobname.lan` to select the language used in `minitoc.dtx`; `minitoc.dtx` contains both english and french documentation fragments, selected by `\ifcase` constructs with the `\LANG` variable, set to 0 by `minitoc.lan` or to 1 by `minitoc-fr.lan` (i.e., by `\jobname.lan`). `minitoc-fr.dtx` is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

`minitoc-fr.ist` This file contains a style for formating the index in the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

`minitoc-fr.lan` A file used to force the french language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

`minitoc-fr.pdf` The french documentation in PDF format.

minitoc-fr.ps The french documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the cmk script).

minitoc.bib A bibliographic data base for the english documentation of the minitoc package.

minitoc.bug A plain text file containing a list of problems and questions about the minitoc package. See chapter 2 on page 56.

minitocdepth This counter contains the depth of the minitocs.

minitoc.dtx The file containing the documentation and the commented code of the minitoc package.

minitoc-hyper.sty A special version [454] of the minitoc package which has been prepared by Bernd Jaehne, Didier Verna and A. J. "Tony" Roberts to work with the powerful hyperref package [390]; Heiko Oberdiek has integrated their work so since version #31, minitoc is compatible with hyperref. *Hence the minitoc-hyper package [454] is now obsolete and should no more be used. It it still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.*

minitoc.ins The installation file for the minitoc package. Compiling it with LaTeX produces most of the files of the minitoc package.

minitoc.ist This file contains a style for formating the index in the english documentation. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.

minitoc.l A text file containing the list of all the files being included in the minitoc package. Files not listed in minitoc.l are files used only to install the package or to produce its documentation.

minitoc.lan A file used to force the english language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.

minitoc.pdf The english documentation in PDF format.

minitoc.pre This file contains a LaTeX preamble for the documentation. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.

minitoc.ps The english documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the cmk scripts).

minitoc.sty This file contains the main part of the minitoc package, with comments removed. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.

minitoc.sum A plain text file containing a commented list of the minitoc commands and environments. See chapter 3 on page 80.

minitoc.tds.zip A ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy containing all files in the minitoc package.

minutes The minutes package [300] (by Knut Lickert) is used to prepare conference proceedings. The minitoc package allows to add "coffee breaks" in the table of contents via commands like \addcoffeeline and \coffeeline (and internal commands) whose names contain the string "coffee", hence the footnote about "cappuccino" ☕ in the installation chapter! [7]

[7] The little cups ☕ come from the marvosym package [227].

MonTEX MonTEX [137, 140] is a large package to prepare documents in various dialects of the Mongol language (Bicig and Bicig2, Mongol, Bithe and Manju, Buryat, Xalx and Khalkha) and in a dialect of Russian used in Mongolia (Russianc). Bicig is another name for Uighur. You can find many things about Mongolia and Mongolian at the web site [139]. See also:

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian_writing_systems
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian_language
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian_script
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Clear_script
http://www.indiana.edu/~mongsoc/mong/language.htm
http://www.viahistoria.com/SilverHorde/main.html?research/MongolScripts.html
http://www.krysstal.com/writing_evolution.html
http://mongolxel.webz.cz/qaguchin/index.htm

The following description is extracted from [140].

MonTEX is a package which offers support for writing documents in Mongolian, Manju, Buryat and Russian.

Mongolian can be represented in traditional Uighur script (also known as Classical or Traditional Script) and Cyrillic. Manju resembles the Traditional Mongolian script (from which it is derived) but uses a rich choice of diacritics in order to eliminate numerous ambiguities of the Mongolian script ancestor. Modern Buryat, like Mongolian in its present form, is written with a Cyrillic alphabet, but both Mongolian (35 letters) and Buryat (36 letters) use more letters than Russian (33 letters).

Mongolian The word *Mongolian* is actually an umbrella term for several languages rather than the precise name of a single language. Things become more complicated when names of ethnic groups, languages and writing systems are mixed.

Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. Throughout this text, *Modern Mongolian* is used as a synonym.

Buryat is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Buryatia, north of Mongolia, east of Lake Baikal, being a part of the Russian Federation. The Buryat call themselves *Buryaad* while Xalx Mongolians call them *Buriad*. The English name follows the Russian orthography. Linguistically, Xalx and Buryat Mongol are fairly close languages; Buryat has a slightly different sound system in which the phoneme /s/ partially shifted to /h/; the modern Buryat Cyrillic alphabet (virtually identical with the Cyrillic alphabet used for writing Modern Mongolian) has one additional letter (H/h, `\xalx{H/h}`) for marking the difference to /s/.

Bicig (literally *script* in Mongolian) denotes text written in the traditional Mongolian script which is also referred to as Uighur. Throughout this document, the term *Bicig* will be used on an equal footing with *Classical* and *Traditional* Mongolian. The latter term is used in the names of the Unicode/ISO10646 character plane U1800 which contains Mongolian, Manju, Sibe and sets of special characters called Ali Gali or Galig. In order to identify Mongolian script related commands distinct for Mon-

golian and Manju, the Mongolian commands have the name root `bicig` whereas the Manju commands have the name root `bithe`.

Xalx Mongolian, or Modern Colloquial Mongolian, is about as different from the form written in Classical script as modern English in phonetical spelling (assume it be written in Shavian letters) from the highly historical orthography of Standard English. Beyond these differences, Mongolian written in Classical Script usually preserves a substantial amount of historical grammatical features which make it look a bit like Elizabethan English.

Manju Manju is a Tungusic language closely related to Mongolian. Though Manju is virtually not spoken anymore, it has been the official language during 300 years of Manju government in Qing Dynasty China. Vast amounts of official documents survive, as well as some of the finest multilingual dictionaries ever compiled, e. g. the Pentaglot, or Mirror in Five Languages, a dictionary with 18671 entries in five languages (Manju, Tibetan, Mongolian, Uighur and Chinese). See [138] for more details. Manju writing is derived from Uighur Mongolian by adding diacritics in the form of dots and circles (*tongki fuka sindaha hergen*, script with dots and circles).

MS-DOS (Microsoft® Disk Operating System) An old operating system for personnal computers (PCs). From the minitoc point of view, its main drawback is the use of filenames with short extensions (the "8+3" scheme), which limits to 99 the number of mini-tables for each kind.

`mtc-2c.tex` An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout. See section 4.1 on page 91.

`mtc-2nd.tex` An example of document using the minitoc package and its `french2` language option. See section 4.2 on page 92.

`mtc-add.bib` A small bibliographic data base for the `mtc-add.tex` and `mtc-ads.tex` example documents. See section 4.4 on page 96.

`mtc-3co.tex` An example of document using the minitoc package to prepare a minitoc on three columns. See section 4.3 on page 93.

`mtc-add.tex` An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddchapter` and the tocbibind package [472] with minitoc. See section 4.4 on page 96.

`mtc-ads.tex` An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddsection` and the tocbibind package [472] with minitoc. See section 4.5 on page 100. It also shows how it is challenging to manage the mini-lists of floats at the section level.

`mtc-amm.tex` An example file showing the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document with the minitoc package. See section 4.6 on page 105.

`mtc-apx.tex` An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment to hide the entries of the appendices in the main TOC and to create a part-level TOC for the appendices. See section 2.25 on page 67.

`mtc-art.tex` An example of document (article class) using the minitoc package. See section 4.8 on page 105.

mtc-bk.tex An example of document (book or report class) using the minitoc package. See section 4.9 on page 110.

mtc-bo.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout and using the tocloft package [469]. See section 4.10 on page 115.

mtc-ch0.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred first chapter. See section 4.11 on page 119.

mtc-cri.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with starred parts and chapters. See section 4.12 on page 121.

mtc-fko.tex An example file showing the problem of fonts in minitocs when using the scrbook class. See section 4.13 on page 121.

mtc-fo1.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with changing some fonts. See section 4.14 on page 122.

mtc-fo2.tex Another example file showing the use of the minitoc package with changing some fonts. See section 4.15 on page 123.

mtc-gap.tex An example file showing the use of the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands. See section 2.44 on page 76.

mtc-hi1.tex An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` specialized environments. See section 2.25 on page 68.

mtc-hi2.tex An example file showing the use of the following pairs of commands:

- `\mtchideinmainlof` and `\endmtchideinmainlof`,
- `\mtchideinmainlot` and `\endmtchideinmainlot`.

See section 2.25 on page 69.

mtc-hia.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of an article class document. See section 4.19 on page 125.

mtc-hir.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of a report class document. See section 4.20 on page 126.

mtc-hop.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the scrbook document class. See section 4.21 on page 127.

mtc-liv.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a book with customized table of contents and minitocs. See section 4.22 on page 128.

mtc-mem.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the memoir class. See section 4.23 on page 132.

mtc-mm1.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the memoir class, if you want to change some fonts. See section 4.24 on page 133.

mtc-mu.tex A document using a minitoc set in a `wrapfigure` environment with the wrapfig package [18]. See section 4.25 on page 134.

mtc-nom.tex A document swowing an interaction betwen the minitoc package and the nomencl package [456]. See section 4.26 on page 136.

mtc-ocf.tex A document using the `open` and `close` features to prepare a minitoc on three columns. See section 4.27 on page 137.

mtc-ofs.tex A document using the `open` and `close` features to prepare a minitoc on three columns and `\mtcsetoffset` to shift the minitoc to align it on the left. See section 4.28 on page 138.

mtc-sbf.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfigure package [130]. See section 4.29 on page 140.

mtc-scr.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script class [343, 344, 399], scrreprt. See section 4.30 on page 141.

mtc-syn.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is prededed by some starred chapters. See section 4.31 on page 143.

mtc-tbi.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocbibind package [472]. See section 4.32 on page 144.

mtc-tlc.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document of article class. It is the example of [330, page 58], modernized. See section 4.33 on page 145.

mtc-tlo.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocloft package [469] and their interaction about the page numbers in the mini-tables. See section 2.46 on page 79.

mtc-tsf.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfig package [132]. See section 4.35 on page 146.

mtc-vti.tex An example file showing the use of the `\mtcpolymtoc` command and explaining “polymorphic entries”. See section 4.36 on page 148.

mtcmess A package used to provide variants of the standard commands `\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, `\PackageWarningNoLine`, and `\PackageError` by adding an optional argument for an unique message identifier.

mtcoff A package which is used in place of the minitoc package to ignore all the commands and environments of the minitoc package. In fact, it defines them to do nothing. Useful if you want a version of your document without any mini-table.

mtcpatchmem A small package which is automatically loaded if necessary when you use the memoir document class with a version *incompatible* with the minitoc package, but correctible. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

mu A length unit normaly used in math mode (`mu` means “math unit”); 18 math units make `1em` (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. So the size of `1mu` is font dependent. The separation between dots in the dotted lines in the mini-tables is expressed in math units.

multibib The multibib package [211] allows to create references to multiple bibliographies within one document. It thus provides a complementary functionality to packages like bibunits [210] or chapterbib [19], which allow to create one bibliography for multiple, but different parts of the document.

multicol The multicol package [325] defines the `multicols` environment (with a "**s**") to typeset text on several columns. Used in some example documents.

multitoc This package [414] allows setting only the table of contents, list of figures and/or list of tables in two or more columns (using the multicol package [325], of course). The number of columns can be configured via commands; the multicolumn toc(s) can be selected via package options. The `mtc-3co.tex` example document uses this package; see section 4.3 on page 93.

N

natbib It is a LaTeX 2ε (but with some support for LaTeX2.09) package [145, 146] to act as generalized interface for standard and non-standard bibliographic style files (BibTeX).

needspace The needspace package [468] provides commands to reserve space at the bottom of a page. If there is not enough space on the current page (column) a new page (column) is started.

NFSS The *New Font Selection Scheme*. The LaTeX 2ε font selection system [291] was first released as the "New Font Selection Scheme" (NFSS) in 1989, and then in release 2 in 1993. LaTeX 2ε includes NFSS release 2 as standard.

Every text font in LaTeX has five *attributes*:

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font. The two most common text encodings used in LaTeX are Knuth's "TeX text" encoding (OT1), and the "TeX text extended" encoding (T1) developed by the TeX Users Group members during a TeX Conference at Cork in 1990 (hence its informal name "Cork encoding"). See [292, 323].

family The name for a collection of fonts, usually grouped under a common name by the font foundry. For instance, "Adobe Times", "ITC Garamond", and Knuth's "Computer Modern Roman" are all font families.

series How heavy or expanded a font is. For instance, "medium weight", "narrow" and "bold extended" are all series.

shape The form of the letters within a font family. For instance, "italic", "oblique" and "upright" (sometimes called "roman") are all font shapes.

size The design size of the font, for instance "10pt".

The possible values for these attributes are given short acronyms by LaTeX. The most common values for the font encoding are given in table 6.6 on the next page.

The "local" encodings are intended for font encodings which are only locally available, for instance a font containing an organisation's logo in various sizes.

Table 6.6: Most common font encodings

Encoding	Description
T1	LaTeX extended text ("Cork encoding")
TS1	LaTeX symbols (Latin)
T2A, T2B, T2C	LaTeX text (Cyrillic)
T3	LaTeX phonetic alphabet
TS3	LaTeX phonetic alphabet (extra symbols)
T4	LaTeX text (African languages)
T5	LaTeX text (Vietnamese)
T7	LaTeX text (reserved for Greek)
OT1	TeX text (as defined by Donald E. Knuth)
OT2	TeX text for Cyrillic languages (obsolete)
OT3	International phonetic alphabet (obsolete)
OT4	TeX text with extensions for the Polish language
OT6	TeX text with extensions for the Armenian language
OML	TeX math italic (Donald E. Knuth)
OMS	TeX math symbols (Donald E. Knuth)
OMX	TeX math large symbols (Donald E. Knuth)
X2	LaTeX extended text (Cyrillic)
U	Unknown
L⟨*xx*⟩	A local encoding
L7x	Encoding used for the Lithuanian language
LTH	Encoding used for the Thai language
LV1	Encoding used with some VTeX fonts
LY1	Alternative to T1 encoding, for Y&Y software
PD1	Implements the PDFDocEncoding for use with LaTeX 2_ε's NFSS.
PU	Implements the Unicode encoding for use with LaTeX's NFSS.

Table 6.7: Most common font families

Family	Description
cmr	Computer Modern Roman
cmss	Computer Modern Sans
cmtt	Computer Modern Typewriter
cmm	Computer Modern Math Italic
cmsy	Computer Modern Math Symbols
cmex	Computer Modern Math Extensions
ptm	Adobe Times
phv	Adobe Helvetica
pcr	Adobe Courier
lazy	Additional LaTeX symbols

Table 6.8: Most common font series

Series	Description
ul	Ultra light
el	Extra light
l	Light
sl	Semi light
m	Medium
sb	Semi bold
b	Bold
eb	Extra bold
bx	Bold extended
ub	Ultra bold
c	Condensed

Table 6.9: Most common font shapes

Shape	Description
n	Normal (that is “upright” or “roman”)
it	Italic
sl	Slanted (or “oblique”)
sc	Caps and small caps
u	Unslanted (upright italic)

Table 6.10: Most common font widths

Width	%	Description
uc	50.0	Ultra condensed
ec	50.0	Extra condensed
c	50.0	Condensed
sc	50.0	Semi condensed
m	50.0	Medium
sc	50.0	Semi extended
c	50.0	Extended
ec	50.0	Extra extended
uc	50.0	Ultra extended

Table 6.11: The five font parameters of some fonts

LaTeX specification					Font	TeX name
OT1	cmr	m	n	10	Computer Modern Roman 10 point	cmr10
OT1	cmss	m	sl	1pc	Computer Modern Sans Oblique 1 pica	cmssi12
OML	cmm	m	it	10pt	Computer Modern Math Italic 10 point	cmmi10
T1	ptm	b	it	1in	Adobe Times Bold Italic 1 inch	ptmb8t at 1in

There are far too many font families to list them all, but some common ones are listed in table 6.7 on the preceding page. The most common values for the font series are listed in table 6.8 on the page before. The most common values for the font shape are listed in table 6.9. The most common values for the font width are listed in table 6.10.

The font size is specified as a dimension, for instance `10pt` or `1.5in` or `3mm`; if no unit is specified, `pt` is assumed. These five parameters specify every LaTeX font, see table 6.11, for instance.

These five parameters are displayed whenever LaTeX gives an overfull box warning, for instance:

```
Overfull \hbox (3.80855pt too wide) in paragraph at lines
   314--318
[]\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 Normally [] and [] will be iden-ti-cal,
```

The table 6.12 on the next page lists the author commands for fonts which set these five attributes[8].

`nocheckfiles` A package option of minitoc. The opposite of the `checkfiles` package option (see above).

`nohints` A package option of minitoc. The opposite of the `hints` package option (see above).

`nolistfiles` An option of the minitoc package. It is the opposite of the `listfiles` above. See section 1.7 on page 52.

[8] The values used by these commands are determined by the document class.

Table 6.12: Author commands for fonts

Author command	Attribute	Value in article class
\textrm... or \rmfamily	family	cmr
\textsf... or \sffamily	family	cmss
\texttt... or \ttfamily	family	cmtt
\textmd... or \mdseries	series	m
\textbf... or \bfseries	series	bx
\textup... or \upshape	shape	n
\textit... or \itshape	shape	it
\textsl... or \slshape	shape	sl
\textsc... or \scshape	shape	sc
\tiny	size	5pt
\scriptsize	size	7pt
\footnotesize	size	8pt
\small	size	9pt
\normalsize	size	10pt
\large	size	12pt
\Large	size	14.4pt
\LARGE	size	17.28pt
\huge	size	20.74pt
\Huge	size	24.88pt
\textnormal	normal	normal text

notoccite This option of the minitoc package loads the notoccite package [14] (by Donald Arseneau). It avoids problems with \cite commands in sectionning commands or captions. See section 1.6 on page 52.

O

Omega The Omega typesetting system[9] (**Ω**) (by Yannis Haralambous and John Plaice) is an extension of TEX that is aimed primarily at improving TEX's multilingual abilities.

When the TEX program was originally developed in the mid seventies [*circa* 1975] by Professor Donald E. Knuth it was mainly aimed at typesetting mathematical texts in the english language. Since then TEX has made inroads in broader and broader areas of scientific, literary and other scholarly activities in many countries all over the world. In 1991, Knuth froze TEX, mainly in the interest of stability. However, he allows the TEX code to be used as the basis for further developments, so long as the resulting system is distributed under a different name.

In Omega all characters and pointers into data-structures are 31-bit wide, instead of 8-bit, thereby eliminating many of the trivial limitations of TEX. Omega also allows multiple input and output character sets, and uses programmable filters

[9] Most but not all of this note is taken in the Omega documentation [217, 218, 221, 378, 379]. See http://omega.enstb.org/ for more information.

Table 6.13: Some systems derived from TEX and LATEX

TEX	⟶	Ω	+	LATEX	⟶	Λ
		+				+
TEX	⟶	ε-TEX	+	LATEX	⟶	ε-LATEX
		———		———		———
		א	+	LATEX	⟶	ל

to translate from one encoding to another, to perform contextual analysis, etc. Internally, Omega uses the universal Unicode/ISO-10646 character set. Omega also includes support for multiple writing directions.

These improvements not only make it a lot easier for TEX users to cope with multiple or complex languages, like Arabic, Indic, Khmer, Chinese, Japanese or Korean, in one document, but also form the basis for future developments in other areas, such as native color support and hypertext features.

The LATEX format (in the TEX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega is called "*Lambda*" (**Λ**). Extending Omega with the ε-TEX [105] extensions is a separate project, known as "Aleph" (**א**) [49, 201] and led by Giuseppe Bilotta. The LATEX for Aleph is known as "*Lamed*" (**ל**). There is an experimental system, named LuaTEX [230, 231], which will regroup pdfTEX, Aleph, ε-TEX and other developments. A promising development is XETEX [256] by Jonathan Kew, with XELATEX.

open A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed immediately before (*open*) the insertion of the auxiliary file for a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48. See the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file, in section 4.27 on page 137.

P

package Packages[10] are a very important feature of LATEX. These are extensions to the basic LATEX commands that are written to files with names that end with `.sty` and are loaded with the command `\usepackage` in the preamble. Packages can be classified by they origin.

- **Core** packages (in fact, **base** and **required** packages) are an integral part of the LATEX basic installation and are therefore fully standard.
- **Tools** packages are a set written by members of the LATEX3 Team and should always be in the installation.
- **Graphics** packages are a standardized set for including pictures generated by other programs and for handling colors; they are at the same level as the tools packages.

[10] This info is taken from [270, page 12–13] and adapted.

- $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$-LaTeX packages, published by the American Mathematical Society[11], should be in any installation[12].
- **Contributed** packages have been submitted by actual users; certain of these have established themselves as "essential" to standard LaTeX usage, but all are useful.

pagestyle A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed at each occurrence of a given type of mini-table, to force the page style to use for the current page. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48.

partlof A list of figures for a part.

partlofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlofs.

partlot A list of tables for a part.

partlotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlots.

parttoc A table of contents for a part.

parttocdepth This counter contains the depth of the parttocs.

PDF Portable Document Format [183]. A descendant of the PostScript language from Adobe, optimized for navigation on the Internet. It adds hypertext, font substitution, and compression features.

placeins The placeins package [15] keeps floats "in their place", preventing them from floating past a `\FloatBarrier` command into another section. To use it, declare `\usepackage{placeins}` in the preamble and insert `\FloatBarrier` commands at places that floats should not move past, perhaps at every `\section`. The `insection` package option of the minitoc package does that with adequate options, and loads also the flafter package (described in [288] and [330, page 286]); see section 1.3.3 on page 29.

W0031 W0032 W0084 W0085

placeins.txt A plain text file containing the documentation of the placeins package [15].

PLaTeX A version of LaTeX customized for the polish (`polski`) language. It has been replaced by the polski package. See [357, 463]. But the *same* name was referring also to a version of LaTeX customized for the japanese language, PLaTeX 2ε [239, 254].

pmk An example of shell script to prepare the minitoc package and its documentation; you should adapt it to your needs. See item 10 on page 245.

polymorphic entry An entry in the TOC, LOF or LOT which changes its aspect depending on the place where it appears (main TOC, minitable, etc.); see section 1.4.13 on page 43.

PostScript A page description language, by Adobe. It describes the appearance of a page, including elements such as text, graphics, and scanned images, to a printer or visualization device. Introduced by Adobe in 1985, it has become the language of choice in high quality printing.

[11] http://www.ams.org

[12] They are indispensable if you use a lot of mathematics.

preamble In the main file of a LaTeX source document, the part of it between the commands `\documentclass[...]{...}` and `\begin{document}`. In the preamble, you can insert global declarations and the loading of packages via `\usepackage` commands.

preparation The preparation commands of the minitoc package prepare the auxiliary files for the mini-tables of a given type. A *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before any insertion command for the mini-table type. The preparation commands are (see table 3.9 on page 87):

`\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, `\dopartlot`,	(part level)
`\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, `\dominilot`,	(chapter level)
`\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, `\dosectlot`,	(section level)
`\mtcprepare`	(all levels)

proc A standard LaTeX document class, for preparing conference proceedings. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the article document class; see above.

pseudo-chapter Or starred chapter. A chapter introduced by a `\chapter*` command. By default, it has no entry in the table of contents. `\chapter*` needs some precautions with the minitoc package. See section 1.3.4 on page 33.

Q

quotchap The quotchap package [442] provides a set of commands for adding quotations to some headings (chapters) in the standard LaTeX 2_ε document classes: book, and report. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.39 on page 75). W0087

R

README is a plain text file (english) describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.

report A standard LaTeX document class [282]. It has sectionning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

rmk An example of shell script, which sorts the files of the minitoc package into classes (one directory for each class). It should be run after the scripts `imk` (mandatory) and `emk` and/or `fmk`, in that sequence. See item 10 on page 245.

romannum The romannum package [480] changes the numbers (for sectionning commands) generated by LaTeX from arabic digits to roman numerals. This package uses the stdclsdv package [466]. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.40 on page 76). W0088

rotating The rotating [389] package performs all the different sorts of rotation one might like, including complete figures.

rotfloat The packrotfloat [420] package provides commands to define new floats of various styles (`plain`, `boxed`, `ruled`, and userdefined ones); the rotating package [389] provides new environments (`sidewaysfigure` and `sidewaystable`) which are rotated by 90° or 270°. But what about new rotated floats, e.g. a rotated ruled one? This package makes this possible; it builds a bridge between both packages and extend the commands from the float package to define rotated versions of the new floats, too. I0053

rubber rubber [34] is a wrapper for LaTeX and companion programs. Its purpose is, given a LaTeX source to process, to compile it enough times to resolve all references, possibly running satellite programs such as **BibTeX**, **makeindex**, **Metapost**, etc., to produce appropriate data files. It has facilities to make some post-processing cleanup actions, like deleting the auxiliary files created by minitoc.

S

scrartcl See KOMA-Script above.

scrbook See KOMA-Script above.

scrreprt See KOMA-Script above.

sectionning commands These are the LaTeX commands which specify the logical structure of your document. The main sectionning commands are `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, or `\subparagraph`. Some standard document classes have not the `\chapter` command (like the article and proc classes), some have no sectionning commands (like the letter class). In the later case, the minitoc package is pointless. If some of the `\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section` commands are not defined, the minitoc commands for that level are unavailable. If `\chapter` is defined, the minitoc commands at the section level are not defined in the current and older versions of the minitoc package, but if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` is defined, then the minitoc commands at the section level are defined. See section 1.1.1 on page 26. In non-standard document classes, sectionning commands with non-standard names cannot be recognized by the minitoc package.

sectlof A list of figures for a section.

`sectlofdepth` This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the sectlofs.

sectlot A list of tables for a section.

`sectlotdepth` This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the sectlots.

sectsty The sectsty package [319] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard LaTeX 2_ε document classes: article, book, and report. This package also works with the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399] scrartcl, scrbook, and scrreprt. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.28 on page 70). W0037

secttoc A table of contents for a section.

secttocdepth This counter contains the depth of the secttocs.

sfheaders The sfheaders package [304] (for LaTeX 2ε) borrows some definitions from the standard article/report/book classes and modifies them in order to print the part, chapter, section, subsection... headers with the Sans-Serif variant of the current font. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.41 on page 76). W0089

shell In the Unix, Unix-like and Linux operating systems, the **shell** is a program used as an interface between the operating system and the user. It can also be used as a scripting language to write programs or scripts to prepare routinely used sequences of tasks. The main shells are the Bourne shell (**sh**), the C shell (**csh**), the Korn shell (**ksh**), and their many successors (like **bash**, **tcsh**, etc.).

shortext An option of the minitoc package. It forces the use of short extensions (3 characters) in the names of the minitoc auxiliary files. This option is inactive by default, but is automatically activated if your operating system needs short extensions. See **autoconfiguration** above and the section 2.5 on page 58. W0020

shorttoc The shorttoc package [155] allows to create an other table of contents in a document, with an other title and an other depth than the main table of contents.

SJIS The SJIS character encoding (for the japanese language), also known as MS-Kanji (Kanji for Microsoft®), consists of two overlaid character sets: the so-called halfwidth Katakana (JIS X0201-1976, 1-byte characters encoded in the range `0xA1` to `0xDF`) and the (fullwidth) JIS character set (JIS X0208-1990, mapped to the remaining code points). This information is taken from [127, 297, 298].

SLaTeX A version of LaTeX customized for the swedish language. See [318].

splitbib A LaTeX package [314] which allows for sorting a bibliography into categories and subcategories; this is interesting for lists of publications, for grouping references by subject, by year, ...

stdclsdv The stdclsdv package [466] is intended to be used by the authors of LaTeX packages that need to know about the sectional divisions provided by the document class.

strut A vertical invisible rule used to force a minimal separation between two lines of text.

subfig The subfig package [132] provides support for the inclusion of small, "sub-figures" and "sub-tables". It simplifies the positioning, captioning and labeling of them within a single `figure` or `table` environment. In addition, this package allows such sub-captions to be written to the List of Figures or List of Tables if desired.

subfigure The subfigure package [130] is an obsolete version (by the same author) of the subfig package [132].

suffix See "extension" above.

T

TDS The TEX Directory Structure [445, 446]; a directory structure highly recommended to store macros, fonts, and the other implementation-independent TEX system files; it also suggests how to incorporate the rest of the TEX files in a single structure; the TDS has been designed to work on all modern systems.

TEX TEX is a computer program created by Donald E. KNUTH [263, 265]. It is aimed at typesetting text and mathematical formulae. KNUTH started writing the TEX typesetting engine in 1977 to explore the potential of the digital printing equipment that was beginning to infiltrate the publishing industry at that time, especially in the hope that he could reverse the trend of deteriorating typographical quality that he saw affecting his own books and articles. TEX as we use it today was released in 1982, with some slight enhancements added in 1989 to better support 8-bit characters and multiple languages. TEX is renowned for being extremely stable, for running on many different kinds of computers, and for being virtually bug free. The version number of TEX is converging to π and is now at 3.141592.

TEX is pronounced "Tech," with a "ch" as in the German word "Ach" or in the Scottish "Loch." In an ASCII environment, TEX becomes `TeX`.

thailatex The thailatex package [320] allows to typeset documents in the Thai language. You can also use the CJK system [127, 297, 298].

`tight` An option of the minitoc package. It gives a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. The opposite option is `loose`.

titlesec The titlesec package [46] allows to change the sectioning titles. Amongst its many features it provides margin titles, different format in left and right pages, rules above and below the title, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.


W0099

titletoc The titletoc package is useful for toc entries formatting, providing the possibility of changing the format in the middle of a document, grouping the entries in a single paragraph, pretty free-forms entries, partial tocs, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.


W0040

The `titletoc.sty` file is not part of the titlesec package; it's an independent package, but it's described in the titlesec package documentation [46].

`tmk` A script file which creates a TDS-compliant hierarchy [445, 446] (to be ajusted to your system).

TOC, ToC Acronym for "table of contents".

tocbibind The tocbibind package [472] can be used to add the ToC and/or bibliography and/or the index etc., to the Table of Contents listing. But it needs some precautions when used with the minitoc package. See section 1.5.5 on page 50.

I0046

`tocdepth` This counter contains the depth of the table of contents.

tocloft The tocloft package [469] provides means of controlling the typographic design of the Table of Contents, List of Figures and List of Tables. New kinds of "List of ...' can be defined. If you use the tocloft package and the minitoc package, see section 2.21 on page 64 about fixing some minor compatibility issues.

I0047

TODO is a plain text file (english) which lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.

token A token[13] is either (a) a single character with an attached category code (see "catcode" above), or (b) a control sequence. You *should* remember two chief things about TEX's tokens: (1) A control sequence is considered to be a single object that is no longer composed of a sequence of symbols. Therefore long control sequence names are no harder for TEX to deal with than short ones, after they have been replaced by tokens. Furthermore, spaces are not ignored after control sequences inside a token list; the ignore-space rule applies only in an input file, during the time that strings of characters are being tokenized. (2) Once a category code has been attached to a character token, the attachment is permanent. For instance, if character '{' were suddenly declared to be of category 12 instead of category 1, the characters '$\{_1$' already inside token lists of TEX would still remain of category 1; only newly made lists would contain '$\{_{12}$' tokens. In other words, individual characters receive a fixed interpretation as soon as they have been read from a file, based on the category they have at the time of reading. Control sequences are different, since they can change their interpretation at any time. TEX's digestive processes always know exactly what a character token signifies, because the category code appears in the token itself; but when the digestive processes encounter a control sequence token, they must look up the current definition of that control sequence in order to figure out what it means.

trivfloat The trivfloat package [484] (by Joseph A. Wright) provides a quick method for defining new float types in LATEX. A single command sets up a new float in the same style as the LATEX kernel `figure` and `table` float types. I0053

txfonts The txfonts package [403] provides the `TX` fonts, which consist of

1. virtual text roman fonts using Adobe Times (or URW NimbusRomNo9L) with some modified and additional text symbols in OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
2. virtual text sans serif fonts using Adobe Helvetica (or URW NimbusSanL) with additional text symbols in OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
3. `monospaced typewriter fonts in the OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings`;
4. math alphabets using Adobe Times (or URW NimbusRomNo9L) with modified metrics;
5. math fonts of all symbols corresponding to those of Computer Modern math fonts (CMSY, CMMI, CMEX, and Greek letters of CMR);
6. math fonts of all symbols corresponding to those of AmS fonts (MSAM and MSBM);
7. additional math fonts of various symbols.

All fonts are in the Type 1 format (in `.afm` and `.pfb` files). Necessary `.tfm` and `.vf` files together with LATEX 2_ε package files and font map files (`.map`) for dvips are provided.

[13] This definition is taken from "*The TEXbook*" [263, 265].

U

UNIX A modern operating system, available on many computers and in various flavors. From the minitoc point of view, it has the advantage of using filenames with long extensions (the length limit is too high to be a problem with the number of mini-tables).

UNIX-like Operating systems analog to Unix, with the same advantages. Linux is a good example, but others exist.

urlbst A PERL script, by Norman Gray [196], to add a `webpage` BibTeX entry type, and add support for general `url` and `lastchecked` fields, to (most) BibTeX `.bst` files. Optionally adds basic support for `eprint` and `doi` fields, and HyperTeX/hyperref support, too. See [371, 390].

UTF 8 UTF 8 (Unicode Transformation Format 8), also called UTF 2 or FSS-UTF, is a special representation of Unicode (resp. ISO 10 646). It uses multibyte sequences of various lengths, but only 2-byte and 3-byte sequences are implemented in CJK. ASCII characters will be used as-is — without this property it would be impossible to use UTF 8 with TeX. See table 6.2 on page 212.

V

varsects The varsects package [437] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard LaTeX 2_ε document classes: article, book, and report. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.33 on page 73). W0038

W

Wikipedia The Wikipedia is a free, multilingual, open content (neutral, verifiable, modifiable and improvable by anyone) encyclopedia project operated by the non-profit Wikimedia Foundation. Its name is a portemanteau of the words *wiki* (a type of collaborative website) and *encyclopedia*. Launched in 2001 by Jimmy Wales and Larry Sanger, it is the largest, fastest growing and most popular general reference work currently available on the Internet.

wrapfig The wrapfig package [18] provides the `wrapfigure` and `wraptable` environments to place a figure or table at the side of the page and wrap text around it.

X

xmk An example of shell script, which typesets the example document files into PDF documents.

xr The xr package [114] implements a system for eXternal References. I wrote the first version of this package, but it had severe problems. David P. Carlisle rewrote it in a much better and more robust way. With his permission, I used some of his code in the minitoc package to implement the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc`). If you use also the hyperref package [390], use xr-hyper [117] in place of the xr package.

Chapter 7

Installation

Tables

This chapter describes the installation of the minitoc package (version #61).

This package contains a lot of files. The list of all files is given in `minitoc.l`. See tables 7.1 to 7.2 on pages 243–244. The files are sorted into "classes" below (a file can appear in more than one class). Each class specifies the function and the placement of its files.

(0) The files `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx` are the basic source files of this package. The file `minitoc-fr.dtx` loads `minitoc.dtx` but selects the french documentation. The language selection is done by using `\ifcase` ... `\or` ... `\fi` constructs.

(1) The files `minitoc.sty`, `mtcoff.sty`, `mtcmess.sty`, and *all* `*.mld` and `*.mlo` files are the package itself [1].

I0050
I0051
E0036
E0038
W0094

The table 1.7 on page 38 lists the available languages; for each of these languages, a *language*`.mld` file is available; the languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their `.mld` files will load the `.mld` file of that main language.

`mtcpatchmem.sty` is a temporary fix for compatibility with the memoir class.

The files of this class must be *all* installed in a directory where LaTeX 2$_\varepsilon$ finds the `.sty` files.

[1] The large number of `*.mld` files is (partially) a consequence of the fact that some languages have aliases (or dialects) and hence one `*.mld` file for each name (a `*.mld` file may load another one) and, if necessary, a `.mlo` file; the english and french languages are evident examples. For some languages, the multiplicity of the `*.mld` files corresponds to a multiplicity of fonts and/or encodings (chinese, greek, japanese, korean, malayalam, polish, russian, serbian), or even for spelling reforms (german, greek, norsk). *Note that the presence of the* `english.mld` *file is mandatory.* Since version #50, the minitoc package signals the missing `.mld` or `.mlo` files and gives their list in a warning message.

Table 7.1: List of files (`minitoc.l`), first part

class (0) :

- minitoc.ins
- minitoc.dtx
- minitoc-fr.dtx

class (1) :

- minitoc.sty
- mtcoff.sty
- mtcmess.sty
- mtcpatchmem.sty
- acadian.mld
- acadien.mld
- afrikaan.mld
- afrikaans.mld
- albanian.mld
- american.mld
- arab.mld
- arab2.mld
- arabi.mld
- arabic.mld
- armenian.mld
- australian.mld
- austrian.mld
- bahasa.mld
- bahasai.mld
- bahasam.mld
- bangla.mld
- basque.mld
- bengali.mld
- bicig.mld
- bicig2.mld
- bicig3.mld
- bithe.mld
- brazil.mld
- brazilian.mld
- breton.mld
- british.mld
- bulgarian.mld
- bulgarianb.mld
- buryat.mld
- buryat2.mld
- canadian.mld
- canadien.mld
- castillan.mld
- castillian.mld
- catalan.mld
- chinese1.ml[d|o]
- chinese2.ml[d|o]
- croatian.mld
- czech.mld
- danish.mld
- devanagari.mld
- dutch.mld
- english.mld
- english1.mld
- english2.mld
- esperant.mld
- esperanto.mld
- estonian.mld
- ethiopia.mld
- ethiopian.mld
- ethiopian2.mld
- farsi1.ml[d|o]
- farsi2.ml[d|o]
- farsi3.mld
- finnish.mld
- finnish2.mld
- francais.mld
- french.mld
- french1.mld
- french2.mld
- frenchb.mld
- frenchle.mld
- frenchpro.mld
- galician.mld
- german.mld
- germanb.mld
- germanb2.mld
- greek.mld
- greek-mono.mld
- greek-polydemo.mld
- greek-polykatha.mld
- guarani.mld
- hangul1.ml[d|o]
- hangul2.ml[d|o]
- hangul3.ml[d|o]
- hangul4.ml[d|o]
- hangul-u8.ml[d|o]
- hanja1.ml[d|o]
- hanja2.ml[d|o]
- hanja-u8.ml[d|o]
- hebrew.mld
- hebrew2.mld
- hindi.mld
- hindi-modern.mld
- hungarian.mld
- icelandic.mld
- indon.mld
- indonesian.mld
- interlingua.mld
- irish.mld
- italian.mld
- italian2.mld
- japanese.ml[d|o]
- japanese2.ml[d|o]
- japanese3.ml[d|o]
- japanese4.ml[d|o]
- japanese5.ml[d|o]
- japanese6.ml[d|o]
- kannada.mld
- khalkha.mld
- latin.mld
- latin2.mld
- latinc.mld
- latinc2.mld
- latvian.mld
- latvian2.mld
- letton.mld
- letton2.mld
- lithuanian.mld
- lithuanian2.mld
- lowersorbian.mld
- lsorbian.mld
- magyar.mld
- magyar2.mld
- magyar3.mld
- malay.mld
- malayalam-b.mld
- malayalam-keli.mld
- malayalam-keli2.mld
- malayalam-mr.mld
- malayalam-omega.ml[d|o]
- malayalam-rachana.mld
- malayalam-rachana2.mld
- malayalam-rachana3.mld
- manju.mld
- mexican.mld
- meyalu.mld
- mongol.mld
- mongolb.mld
- mongolian.mld
- naustrian.mld
- newzealand.mld
- ngerman.mld
- ngermanb.mld
- ngermanb2.mld
- norsk.mld
- norsk2.mld
- nynorsk.mld
- nynorsk2.mld
- occitan.mld
- occitan2.mld
- polish.mld
- polish2.mld
- polski.mld
- portuges.mld
- portuguese.mld
- romanian.mld
- romanian2.mld
- romanian3.mld
- russian.mld
- russianb.mld
- russianc.mld
- russian2m.mld
- russian2o.mld
- russian-cca.ml[d|o]
- russian-cca1.ml[d|o]
- russian-lh.ml[d|o]
- russian-lhcyralt.ml[d|o]
- russian-lhcyrkoi.ml[d|o]
- russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d|o]
- samin.mld
- scottish.mld
- serbian.mld
- serbianc.mld
- slovak.mld
- slovene.mld
- spanish.mld
- spanish2.mld
- spanish3.mld
- spanish4.mld
- swahili.mld
- swedish.mld
- swedish2.mld
- thai.ml[d|o]
- turkish.mld
- uighur.mld
- uighur2.mld
- uighur3.mld
- UKenglish.mld
- ukraineb.mld
- ukrainian.mld
- uppersorbian.mld
- USenglish.mld
- usorbian.mld
- vietnam.mld
- vietnamese.mld
- welsh.mld
- xalx.mld
- xalx2.mld
- xalx3.mld

class (2) :

- INSTALL, README, TODO,
- minitoc.l

class (3) :

- mtc-2c.tex,
- mtc-2nd.tex,
- mtc-3co.tex,
- mtc-add.bib,
- mtc-add.tex,
- mtc-ads.tex,
- mtc-amm.tex,
- mtc-apx.tex,
- mtc-art.tex,
- mtc-bo.tex,
- mtc-bk.tex,
- mtc-ch0.tex,
- mtc-cri.tex,
- mtc-fko.tex,
- mtc-fo1.tex,
- mtc-fo2.tex,
- mtc-gap.tex,
- mtc-hi1.tex,
- mtc-hi2.tex,
- mtc-hia.tex,
- mtc-hir.tex,
- mtc-hop.tex,
- mtc-liv.tex,
- mtc-mem.tex,
- mtc-mm1.tex,
- mtc-mu.tex,
- mtc-nom.tex,
- mtc-ocf.tex,
- mtc-ofs.tex,
- mtc-sbf.tex,
- mtc-scr.tex,
- mtc-syn.tex,
- mtc-tbi.tex,
- mtc-tlc.tex,
- mtc-tlo.tex,
- mtc-tsf.tex,
- mtc-vti.tex

See continuation in table 7.2 on the following page.

Table 7.2: List of files (`minitoc.l`), second part

class (4) :

–minitoc.bug
–minitoc.sum

class (5) :

–minitoc.ins
–minitoc.dtx
–minitoc.bib
–minitoc.ist
–minitoc.lan
–minitoc.pre
–en-mtc.bst

class (6) :

The list of the graphic and flag files is given in tables 7.3 to 7.4 on this page.

class (7) :

–minitoc.dtx
–minitoc-fr.dtx
–minitoc-fr.bib
–minitoc-fr.ist
–minitoc-fr.lan
–minitoc.pre
–franc.sty,
frbib.sty,
frnew.sty
–fr-mtc.bst

class (8) :

–minitoc.pdf

class (9) :

–minitoc-fr.pdf

class (10) :

–cmk, emk, fmk,
imk, pmk, rmk,
tmk, xmk

class (11) :

–minitoc.tds.zip

Table 7.3: List of the graphic files (class 6)

lamed3.png,	

Table 7.4: List of the flag files (class 6)

(2) Informative text files:

- `INSTALL` is a file describing the installation of the package. You are (almost) reading it (but it is shorter).
- `minitoc.l` contains the list of all files of the minitoc distribution. See tables 7.1 to 7.2 on pages 243–244.
- `README` is a file describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.
- `TODO` lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.

(3) Examples of documents: `mtc-2c.tex`, `mtc-2nd.tex`, `mtc-3co.tex`, `mtc-add.bib`, `mtc-add.tex`, `mtc-ads.tex`, `mtc-amm.tex`, `mtc-apx.tex`, `mtc-art.tex`, `mtc-bk.tex`, `mtc-bo.tex`, `mtc-ch0.tex`, `mtc-cri.tex`, `mtc-fko.tex`, `mtc-fo1.tex`, `mtc-fo2.tex`, `mtc-gap.tex`, `mtc-hi1.tex`, `mtc-hi2.tex`, `mtc-hia.tex`, `mtc-hir.tex`, `mtc-hop.tex`, `mtc-liv.tex`, `mtc-mem.tex`, `mtc-mm1.tex`, `mtc-mu.tex`, `mtc-nom.tex`, `mtc-ocf.tex`, `mtc-ofs.tex`, `mtc-sbf.tex`, `mtc-scr.tex`, `mtc-syn.tex`, `mtc-tbi.tex`, `mtc-tlc.tex`, `mtc-tlo.tex`, `mtc-tsf.tex`, `mtc-vti.tex`, are example files, to play with. The associated `.pdf` files are provided. Another (*short*) examples are welcome.

(4) `minitoc.bug`, `minitoc.sum` are plain text documentation: list of problems (faq, see chapter 2 on page 56) and summary of commands (see chapter 3 on page 80).

(5) `minitoc.ins`, `minitoc.ist`, `minitoc.pre`, `minitoc.lan`, `en-mtc.bst`, `minitoc.dtx`, and `minitoc.bib` are the source of the documentation in (non perfect) english. `minitoc.pre` is the common preamble code for the documentation.

(6) *The list of the graphic and flag files is given in tables 7.3 to 7.4 on the page before; they are images to include.*

(7) `minitoc.dtx`, `minitoc-fr.dtx`, `minitoc-fr.bib`, `minitoc-fr.ist`, `minitoc-fr.lan`, `minitoc.pre`, franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty, `fr-mtc.bst` are the source (and tools) of the documentation in french [2].

(8) `minitoc.pdf`, is the documentation in (non perfect) english, in PDF format.

(9) `minitoc-fr.pdf` is the documentation in french, in PDF format. The french documentation and its source files must not be left out.

(10) `pmk` is a shell script [3] to prepare the package and its documentation; the `pmk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami‘.imk` and `/tmp/‘whoami‘.tmk` directories to not waste disk space under your home directory; there are also six partial scripts[4] and a supplementary one, `cmk` (all to be adapted):

- `imk`, which prepares the package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`; it creates also some `.sty` files necessary to prepare the documentation but that are to be installed with it; the `imk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami‘.imk` directory to not waste disk space under your home directory;
- `emk`, which prepares the english documentation from `minitoc.dtx`;
- `fmk`, which prepares the french documentation from `minitoc-fr.dtx` and `minitoc.dtx`;
- `xmk`, which typesets the example files (in PDF format);
- `rmk`, which sorts the files into classes (one directory for each class);
- `tmk`, which creates a TDS-compliant hierarchy [445, 446] (to be tailored to your system); see table 7.5 on page 247; this hierarchy is saved in `minitoc.tds.zip`;
- `cmk`, which converts the PDF documentation files into PostScript files.

These scripts are currently written in C-shell, but they are very simple, and should be easy to convert in another classic shell. The documentation in PostScript format is no more distributed on the CTAN archives, but the `cmk` script can prepare it from the documentation in PDF format (recto-verso printing).

(11) `minitoc.tds.zip` is a ZIP-archive file containing a TDS-compliant hierarchy with all the files of the minitoc package.

---

[2] This seems rather strange. In fact, the english and french documentations are both contained in the `minitoc.dtx` file. `minitoc-fr.dtx` sets a flag then loads `minitoc.dtx`; hence the file `minitoc-fr.dtx` is much smaller than `minitoc.dtx`. Thus, `minitoc.ins` contains also some utilitary files which are automatically created (some `.sty` files, `minitoc.ist`, `minitoc-fr.ist`, `minitoc.lan`, `minitoc-fr.lan`). The english and french versions are not word-by-word translations, but they are in parallel in the `minitoc.dtx` file, and this helps the maintenance.

[3] You can sip a big cappuccino ☕ while this script is running! Be patient.

[4] In fact, `pmk` assembles the scripts `imk`, `emk`, `fmk`, `xmk`, `rmk`, and `tmk` (but *not* `cmk`).

Some remarks about the rmk, tmk and pmk scripts (which you should tailor to your needs):

- **with rmk:**
  1. the hierarchy is *not* TDS-compliant;
  2. the files of (0) must be installed in a directory where LaTeX 2_ε finds .dtx and .ins files;
  3. the files of (1) must be installed in a directory where LaTeX 2_ε finds .sty files;
  4. the files of (2), (3), (4), (5), (6), (7) and (10) must be installed in a separate directory, but must not be left out;
  5. the files of (8) and (9) must be installed as on-line documentation;
  6. the directories created by the rmk script are under /tmp/‘whoami‘.rmk to not waste disk space under your home directory.
- **with tmk:**
  1. the hierarchy is TDS-compliant;
  2. each file appears only once in the hierarchy;
  3. the installation is much easier: you only need a .zip or a .tar (or .tgz) dump file[5] of the hierarchy to be deployed into the installed TDS hierarchy; you should examine *very carefully* (by comparison with your TDS installation) and tailor the tmk script before using it;
  4. the directories created by the tmk script are under /tmp/‘whoami‘.tmk to not waste disk space under your home directory;
  5. the file minitoc.tds.zip (11) should not be installed; it is just a method to help making a TDS-compliant installation.
- **with pmk:**
  1. the pmk script performs the actions of imk (preparation of the basic files), emk and fmk (preparation of the english and french documentation), xmk (preparation of the examples of documents), rmk and tmk (repartition of files into classes and in a TDS-compliant hierarchy);
  2. the directories created by the pmk script are under /tmp/‘whoami‘.rmk and /tmp/‘whoami‘.tmk to not waste disk space under your home directory;
  3. the *same precautions* as for tmk are needed.

The file minitoc.tds.zip contains a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the minitoc package. It has been prepared by the pmk or tmk scripts.

Note that minitoc.dtx and hence minitoc-fr.dtx are (not so trivial) examples of using minitoc with hyperref. They show how the combinaison of these two packages may be useful.

[5] The tmk script creates the minitoc.tds.zip file.

Table 7.5: A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the minitoc files

TDS Root Directory

bibtex/		doc/	makeindex/	scripts/	source/	tex/
bib/	bst/	latex/	minitoc/	minitoc/	latex/	latex/
minitoc/	minitoc/	minitoc/	**(D)**	**(E)**	minitoc/	minitoc/
(A)	**(B)**	**(C)**			**(F)**	**(G)**
		examples/	images/			
		(H)	**(I)**			

(A) minitoc-fr.bib, minitoc.bib;

(B) en-mtc.bst, fr-mtc.bst;

(C) INSTALL, README, TODO, minitoc-fr.lan, minitoc-fr.pdf, minitoc.bug, minitoc.l, minitoc.lan, minitoc.pdf, minitoc.pre, minitoc.sum, franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty;

(D) minitoc-fr.ist, minitoc.ist;

(E) cmk, emk, fmk, imk, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk;

(F) minitoc-fr.dtx, minitoc.dtx, minitoc.ins;

(G) minitoc.sty, mtcoff.sty, mtcmess.sty, mtcpatchmem.sty, *.mld, *.mlo;

(H) mtc-2c.pdf, mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.pdf, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.pdf, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.pdf, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.pdf, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.pdf, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.pdf, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.pdf, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bk.pdf, mtc-bk.tex, mtc-bo.pdf, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-ch0.pdf, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.pdf, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fko.pdf, mtc-fko.tex, mtc-fo1.pdf, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.pdf, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.pdf, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.pdf, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.pdf, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.pdf, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.pdf, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.pdf, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.pdf, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.pdf, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mm1.pdf, mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.pdf, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-nom.pdf, mtc-nom.tex, mtc-ocf.pdf, mtc-ocf.tex, mtc-ofs.pdf, mtc-ofs.tex, mtc-sbf.pdf, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.pdf, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.pdf, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.pdf, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.pdf, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.pdf, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsf.pdf, mtc-tsf.tex, mtc-vti.pdf, mtc-vti.tex;

(I) *The list of the graphic and flag files is given in tables 7.3 to 7.4 on page 244.*

Chapter 8

Postface

Contents

This chapter summarizes the evolution of the minitoc package, year by year. A more detailed history is available in "Changes History", page 597. Many minor changes are skipped here.

In fact, this chapter is for the average user of the package, who wants to have an overview ot its evolution; the chapter "Changes History" is more oriented towards peoples interested in the code of the package and the problems encountered during its development.

8.1 The origins

The minitoc package was initially written by Nigel Ward in 1990 and 1991, with major contributions by Dan Jurafsky. But minitoc suffered of a major weakness: when the number of chapters exceeded 9 or 10, you got a rather mysterious error message:

```
No room for a new \write.
```

As I needed the basic fonctionnality of this package (printing mini-tables of contents for each chapter), I looked further in its code and finally found the culprit: minitoc used a `\newwrite`

command to create a new file for the contents table of each chapter, allocating a new file descriptor each time. But the number of file descriptors for writing is limited to 16 under LaTeX (in fact, by the underlying TeX program itself). As some descriptors are already used by LaTeX, writing more than 9 or 10 chapters was too much. Such errors are difficult to find when testing on too small documents: with few chapters, everything goes fine. But on a real document, with many chapters, the mysterious error happens.

8.2 New design in 1993

So I decided (June 1993, when I took the maintenance of the package) to change the allocation method to always use the same file descriptor for all the mini-table of contents files. Some major improvements happened in 1993: the addition of the mtcoff (minitocoff at this time) package and a rewrite of minitoc to extract the data from the *document*`.toc` file, with a selection mechanism. Then a first solution for the short extension problem was added (still manual). An elementary system for the fonts in the mini-tables was added. In December 1993, the minilofs and minilots were added.

8.3 Developments in 1994

The first improvements in 1994 were about the formating of the mini-tables: spacing was improved and the position of the title became ajustable (with the optional parameter of `\minitoc` or `\dominitoc`). But a major addition was done: part-level mini-tables (parttocs, partlofs, partlots) and, for articles, section-level mini-tables (secttocs, sectlofs, sectlots).

With the emergence of LaTeX 2_ε, replacing the ageing LaTeX2.09, some work was necessary to support the compatibility with this new version. This was not easy, but Denis B. Roegel and Frank Mittelbach gave me many helpful hints.

Another major addition is the language option feature, with the concept of the *minitoc language definition file* (or `.mld` file), coming from the babel package [60, 61], by Johannes L. Braams. But at this time, these files were still named as `.sty` files.

An important simplification is introduced by the notion of “absolute numbering”, with avoids many problems when the chapters are not numbered the standard way (consecutively, starting from 1, with arabic digits).

8.4 No developments in 1995

Sorry, I was busy with an other project.

8.5 Developments in 1996

The very annoying problem with the starred sectionning commands received some (rather primitive) solutions, but it is very complex, so manual interventions are often required.

The names of the minitoc language definition files take now the extension `.mld`, more specific, and english is the default language. Some new languages are added.

The work on the starred sectionning commands continues.

The minitocoff companion package is renamed mtcoff to keep its name short.

8.6 Developments in 1997

The problem of short extensions for files names under some operating systems is addressed via the new `shortext` package option and by the new autoconfiguration feature.

For the starred sectionning commands, the `\addstarredchapter` command is added (with analog commands for starred parts and sections).

8.7 Developments in 1998

The `tight` and `loose` package options are added to improve the line spacing in the mini-tables.

8.8 Developments in 1999

The `dotted` and `undotted` package options are added to add or suppress some lines of dots (leaders) in the mini-tables.

8.9 Developments in 2000

A major addition is the compatibility with the hyperref package [390], and I ought to thank loudly Heiko Oberdiek, Didier Verna, Bernd Jaehne and A. J. "Tony" Roberts [454].

Some corrections about the starred sectionning commands are added by Heiko Oberdiek.

The mini-tables features (`\beforeparttoc` and co.) commands are added.

Some adjustment commands, like \mtcaddchapter, are added, again about the problem with the starred sectionning commands.

The compatibility with the tocbibind package [472] is documented. I0046

Aliases for some languages are added.

8.10 Developments in 2001

Added the checkfiles and nocheckfiles package options, to avoid the insertion of (ugly) empty mini-tables.

Added the \mtcselectlanguage command to change more easily the language of the mini-tables titles.

8.11 Developments in 2002

Correction of an interaction between \tableofcontents (creating a hidden \chapter* or \section* command) and the numbering of the mini-table files.

Added the \mtcskip and \mtcskipamount commands.

8.12 Developments in 2003

Added the insection package option (which was temporarily done by the flsection and flsectionb package options) to deal with floats drifting out of their section. The placeins package [15] (by Donald Arseneau) is used.

The font commands are made compatible with the memoir class [479, 481, 482].

Added compatibility with the notoccite package [14].

8.13 Developments in 2004

Added comments in the .mld files needing special fonts. Better documentation about languages.

Added an explanation about making a local table of contents for an appendix, eventually masking it in the main table of contents. Compatibility with the appendix package [471]. I0042

A major addition is the `hints` package option, to detect some programming and compatibility problems.

8.14 Developments in 2005

All messages are now written via the standard interface commands (`\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, and `\PackageError`), so the minitoc package is less verbose on the terminal.

Added the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands (from a suggestion by Benjamin Bayart) to replace many font commands by only one command with a better user interface.

Comments about the $\mathcal{AMS}$ classes (some ones are incompatible with minitoc).

Added the `\mtcsetformat` and `\mtcsettitle` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added various hints (`insection` package option, order of minitoc basic commands, short extensions).

Added the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, to hide a group of entries in the main table of contents; added also the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.

Added the `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcsettitle` commands.

Added the description of the installation of the package (a new chapter and the file `INSTALL`).

Improved and added hints about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and co.

Added the `\mtcsetfeature` command (very complex).

Added a hint about the abstract package [470]. I0040

The minitoc package is now written using the `.dtx-.ins` system. Some cleanup is done in the code.

Added the `\mtcfixglossary` command, like `\mtcfixindex`.

Some improvements are made to print the documentation.

Some new hints are added (sectsty package [319], empty mini-tables, obsolete commands). I0043

Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables. Added the `\mtcsetdepth` command.

The `hints` package option is now the default.

Added a method for making a bilingual documentation in one file (the `minitoc.dtx` file). This method could be used for more languages.

Added or improved some adjustement commands (`\adjustptc`, `\incrementptc`, `\decrementptc`, etc.).

Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options, for the KOMA-Script [343, 344, 399] document classes.

Added a patch for the recent version of the memoir class [479, 481, 482].

Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in "secondary" `.mld` files.

Added the `\mtcloadmlo` command to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file. The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*; such files contains characters not easily manipulated in a `.dtx` file.

The history of changes is now displayed in a much simpler way (using a glossary was too cumbersome).

Added the `listfiles` package option, to create a list of the minitoc auxiliary files, which can be removed after the LaTeX compilation of the document. It is the *document*`.maf` file.

Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectionning commands.

Added hints about the caption, caption2, ccaption, and mcaption packages (they must be loaded *before* minitoc).

A "Jargon" chapter is added. It will grow slowly.

Added a note about a problem with minitoc, hyperref and memoir used together.

Some bugs in the `\mtcset...` commands are fixed.

Added a hint about the varsects package [437]. W0038

Added a hint on the number of mini-tables when short extensions are used.

Added a chapter with all the (explained) messages.

8.15 Developments in 2006

Added the "*" keyword as first argument of the \mtcsetpagenumbers and \mtcsetrules command, to get an action on all kinds of mini-tables.

Corrections in the \mtcaddsection, \mtcfixglossary, and \mtcfixindex commands.

In the PDF documentation, the panel of bookmarks shows initialy only the bookmarks for parts and chapters, but you can open them to show deeper entries.

Added a comment about the initialization of fonts in the FAQ (point 34). It is still an open domain and I am working on it.

Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in minitoc.bug). I0043

Added the "Postface" chapter.

Added the \mtcprepare command.

Added an URL field in the bibliography (the styles are modified with the urlbst tool [196]).

Added the mtcmess package to add unique identifiers to the messages.

Suppressed the PostScript documentation files from the distribution (no more accepted on CTAN archives), but the scripts still creates them.

Corrections in the insection package option.

Reordering of the chapters in the user's manual (part I).

8.16 Developments in 2007

Removed the preparation of documentation in PostScript format.

Added the cmk script to convert the documentation from PDF format to PostScript format.

Added hints about the fncychap [301], quotchap [442], romannum [480], sfheaders [304], alnumsec [274], and captcont [131] packages. W0086 W0087 W0088

Added FAQ 44 and the \mtcgapbeforeheads and \mtcgapafterheads formatting commands. W0089 W0090

Added the chapter 4, "Examples of documents", page 90.

Added FAQ 45 and the \kernafterparttoc and co. commands for the vertical space between a minitable and its bottom rule.

Increased the text width and adjusted the format of the entries in the TOC in the documentation.

Correction of the preamble in the generated files (spurious lines have been eliminated, at least).

Added devanagari.mld and hindi.mld. Added hindi-modern.mld.

The bibliographic styles plainurl.bst and frplain1.bst are renamed en-mtc.bst and fr-mtc.bst.

All example documents are renamed with names beginning with "mtc-".

The "listfiles" package option is active by default.

Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.

Added japanese6.mld and japanese6.mlo.

Added a hint about the hangcaption package [250]. W0092

Added (in the memento) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with minitoc.

Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the .mld and .mlo files.

Added the tmk script and a table describing a TDS-compliant structure for minitoc.

Updated the INSTALL file and the "Installation" chapter.

Added the file minitoc.tds.zip (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

Improving the index (entries for: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, option, language options).

The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.

Indexing the environments and the files.

Indexing the counters and depth counters.

The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS-compliant hierarchy.

Indexing referenced commands (begin).

Added mongolb.mld and mongolb.mlo.

Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new T2 and X2 cyrillic encodings in `mongolb.mld`).

Added the `mtc-3co.tex` example file.

Added `mongolian.mld` (loads `mongolb.mld`).

Improved the layout of the index.

Indexing the names of authors.

Added the `mtc-fko.tex` example file.

Bibliographic references for packages and classes in the index.

Features in the index.

Added the "`open`" and "`close`" features.

Added the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file.

Added the "`\mtcfixnomenclature`" command.

Added the `mtc-nom.tex` example file.

Corrected the last argument of `\mtcsetfeature` and siblings, using `\mtc@toks`.

Indexing the messages. Messages noted in the right margin.

Added `latinc.mld` and `latinc2.mld` for classical latin.

Added internal hyperlinks for messages.

Added `\mtcoffset` and co. for an horizontal offset of a mini-table.

Added `\mtcsetoffset` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table type.

Added the `mtc-ofs.tex` example file.

Added flagging of macros in example files.

Added a clickable table of all messages.

Added a local minitoc in the "Jargon" chapter.

Added `lithuanian2.mld`.

Added `latvian2.mld` and `letton2.mld`.

Added a hint (warning `W0097`) about the flowfram [433, 434] package (incompatible). W0097

Added a *hint* (I0053) about the float [302], floatrow [285], trivfloat [484], and rotfloat [420] packages. I0053

Regrouping some marginal notes about messages; improving their positions.

Corrected a bug about minitocs in appendices for the memoir class.

Changed the color of hyperlinks.

Revised the format of headers.

Corrected some \mtcset... commands to use \edef to correctly evaluate \mtc@toks.

Added swahili.mld.

Added stuff (files) for maps of areas of some languages.

Added the bengali language synonym of bangla.

Split the list of files into two tables (tables 7.1 to 7.2 on pages 243–244).

Replaced the .mtc1 extension by .mtc0 in the auto-configuration test (to avoid erasing (\jobname.mtc1 file).

Corrected a problem with \nofiles (Andreas Deininger).

The acknowledgements are moved to the "Complements" part.

Added a hint (warning W0099) about the titlesec [46] package. W0099

Complete indexing of the messages.

Updated lithuanian2.mld.

Using the chngpage package [467] to make increase the width of the pages of the bibliography.

Renamed \if@longextensions@ as \if@mtc@longext@.

Updated czech.mld.

Removed \l@xsection.

Graphic files are indexed separately.

Added a specific directory for image files in the TDS hierarchy.

Updated galician.mld, lsorbian.mld, ukraineb.mld, and usorbian.mld.

Added malayalam-b.mld, malayalam-keli2.mld, malayalam-mr.mld, and malayalam-rachana3.mld.

Updated `malayalam-omega.mlo`.

Suppressed parasite entries from the index.

Added `occitan.mld`.

Updated `croatian.mld`, `danish.mld`, `dutch.mld`, `galician.mld`, `germanb2.mld`, `greek.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `interlingua.mld`, `polish.mld`, `scottish.mld`, and `turkish.mld`.

8.17 Developments in 2008

Corrected `polski.mld`.

Added table 6.10 on page 231.

Added many maps about languages and dialects, etc.

Better captions for maps.

Added an entry for the Wikipedia in the jargon.

Splitted the TDS hierarchy into three tables 7.3 to 7.5 on pages 244–247.

The page numbers in the index are now hyperlinks (thanks to François Pétiard).

Colors added in figure 1.1 on page 31.

Corrected an error of message number.

Updated from the babel package version v3.8j of 2008/03/16.

Used `\vrefrange` to compress ranges of internal cross-references.

Added flags for many countries.

Added a figure about lusophonia.

Added a figure about germanophonia.

Added a figure about hispanophonia.

Added a figure about italophonia.

Added a minitoc in the index to make it easier to consult (not trivial).

Added figures about francophones countries.

Added a figure about swahili-speaking countries.

Added a figure about arabic-speaking countries.

Added a figure about russian-speaking countries.

Added a figure about english-speaking countries.

Added flags `\ifinparttoc`, `\ifinpartlof`, `\ifinpartlot`, `\ifinminitoc`, `\ifinminilof`, `\ifinminilot`, `\ifinsecttoc`, `\ifinsectlof`, and `\ifinsectlot`.

Added example document `mtc-vti.tex`, section 4.36 on page 148.

Added commands for polymorphic entries: `\mtcpolymtoc`, `\mtcpolymlof`, and `\mtcpolymlot`.

Added a figure about dutch-speaking countries.

Renamed `fminitoc.dtx` and consorts as `minitoc-fr.dtx` and consorts.

Added missing flag files (thanks to Morten HØGHOLM).

Replaced many `.pdf` image files (most of them are flag files) by the original `.png` file because they were corrupted during the conversion by ImageMagick (xpdf didnt see the problem but Acrobat Reader refuses to show the file); many thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK and Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ.

Back to standard colors and default hyperref color options.

Part II

Implementation

Contents of the Second Part

Chapter 9

Commented code of the minitoc package

Contents

9.1 Introduction

This very long chapter presents the code of the minitoc package and attempts to explain it. Some comments of the original source file [1] are skipped, like the history, because they do not need further examination (they will be put in the change history).

The code is split in sections to make the reading easier, and the sections are sometimes reordered to make the reading easier.

Most of the minitoc external commands have `mtc`, `ptc`, `stc`, or one of the mini-table names (`parttoc`,..., `sectlot`) in their names. Most of the minitoc internal commands have `@mtc`, `@ptc`, `@stc`, or `parttoc@`,..., `sectlot@` in their names, or a similar convention. The few exceptions should be explicit enough to not conflict with other packages.

9.2 Identification code

The code of `minitoc.sty` starts here:

2468 ⟨∗minitoc⟩

`\NeedsTeXFormat` `\ProvidesPackage` `\mtcPackageInfo` `\RequirePackage`

This code section identifies the package with its name, version number and date. A trace is written in the *document*`.log` file. This package will not work with LaTeX2.09.

I0000 I0001

```
2469 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/02]%
2470 \ProvidesPackage{minitoc}%
2471    [2018/07/12 v62 Package minitoc] % message I0000
2472 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
2473 \mtcPackageInfo[I0001]{minitoc}%
2474    {*** minitoc package, version 62 ***\@gobble}
```

9.3 A file descriptor to write

`\tf@mtc` `\newwrite`

A file descriptor is needed to write the files containing the mini-tables, it is `\tf@mtc`. The minitoc package uses only one file descriptor for writing. See section 9.23 on page 286.

2475 `\newwrite\tf@mtc`

[1] The source file of version #42. Version #43 includes the conversion of the package to `.dtx-.ins` format. Version #42 has not been distributed because of that.

9.4 Indentation and skip

\mtcindent
\mtcskip
\mtcskipamount
\parskip
\addvspace

We define the indentation \mtcindent (both sides) of the mini-tables and the command \mtcskip to make a vertical skip before a mini-table, its value is \mtcskipamount (default: \bigskipamount).

```
\newlength\mtcindent
\newskip\mtcskipamount
\setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}
\def\mtcskip{{\parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}}
```

Note that \mtcskip uses a local group to avoid the influence of \parskip.

\mtcgapbeforeheads
\mtcgapafterheads

We define the default values for the vertical gaps before and after titles part level mini-tables.

```
\def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}
\def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}
```

\@ifundefined
\kernafterparttoc
\kernafterpartlof
\kernafterpartlot
\kernaftersecttoc
\kernaftersectlof
\kernaftersectlot
\kernafterminitoc
\kernafterminilof
\kernafterminilot

We define the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before the bottom rule. The names of these macros is rather explicit. The values are empirical and can be changed via \renewcommand.

```
    \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
       \def\kernafterparttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
       \def\kernafterpartlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
       \def\kernafterpartlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
                            }%
    \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
       \@ifundefined{section}{}%
                             {%
          \def\kernaftersecttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
          \def\kernaftersectlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
          \def\kernaftersectlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
                             }%
                           }%
                           {%
          \def\kernafterminitoc{\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
          \def\kernafterminilof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
          \def\kernafterminilot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
                           }%
```

\@ifundefined
\ptcoffset
\pfloffset
\pltoffset
\mtcoffset
\mlfoffset
\mltoffset
\sltoffset
\sfloffset
\sltoffset

We defines horizontal offets by which the margins in the mini-tables are corrected (added to the right margin and substracted from the left margin). These are *commands*, *not* lengths [2], to be redefined by \renewcommand.

```
\@ifundefined{part}{}{%
   \def\ptcoffset{0pt}%
   \def\plfoffset{0pt}%
   \def\pltoffset{0pt}%
                        }%
\@ifundefined{chapter}{%
   \@ifundefined{section}{}%
                              {%
       \def\stcoffset{0pt}%
       \def\slfoffset{0pt}%
       \def\sltoffset{0pt}%
                              }%
                         }%
                         {%
       \def\mtcoffset{0pt}%
       \def\mlfoffset{0pt}%
       \def\mltoffset{0pt}%
                         }%
```

\ifinparttoc
\ifinpartlof
\ifinpartlot
\ifinminitoc
\ifinminilof
\ifinminilot
\ifinsecttoc
\ifinsectlof
\ifinsectlot

We defines flags which will be true when inside a mini-table of the matching type, false outside.

```
\newif\ifinparttoc\inparttocfalse%
\newif\ifinpartlof\inpartloffalse%
\newif\ifinpartlot\inpartlotfalse%
\newif\ifinsecttoc\insecttocfalse%
\newif\ifinsectlof\insectloffalse%
\newif\ifinsectlot\insectlotfalse%
\newif\ifinminitoc\inminitocfalse%
\newif\ifinminilof\inminiloffalse%
\newif\ifinminilot\inminilotfalse%
```

9.5 Tests and flags

We need to declare some flags [3] (via \newif) to detect the loading of some packages or classes and the availability of some commands (this will be used by the hints option (section 9.81 on page 414) or to allow the definition of some minitoc commands).

[2] We avoid to allocate a precious length register.

[3] Not so many years ago, some authors had a preference for using counters rather than flags, because a flag costs 3 control sequences (\iffoo, \foofalse and \footrue), which use memory. But the number of count registers is limited to 256 in the native TEX engine (much more with ε-TEX [105], but still limited in number), while memory has become rather cheap today. And a code programmed with flags (\iffoo ... \else ... \fi) is easier to structure and debug than a code programmed with counters, IMHO.

9.5.1 Flags for the hints option

\if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@giben@

But first, we define some flags for the hints option:

- The flag \if@mtc@hints@ is true if the hints option is required (default).
- The flag \if@mtc@hints@w@ is set true if we detect that some sectionning commands have been altered since the loading of the document class.
- The flag \if@mtc@hints@given@ is set true if the hints option detects something curious and writes messages in the *document*.log file. It will be used at the end of the document to signal that you should look for hints in the *document*.log file.

```
\newif\if@mtc@hints@ \@mtc@hints@true
\newif\if@mtc@hints@w@ \@mtc@hints@w@false
\newif\if@mtc@hints@given@ \@mtc@hints@given@false
```

9.5.2 Use of section-level mini-lists of floats

\if@mtc@sect@floats@
\dosectlof
\dosectlot

We will check if the commands \dosectlof and \dosectlot are used:

```
\newif\if@mtc@sect@floats@ \@mtc@sect@floats@false
```

9.5.3 Presence of some packages and classes

\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
\if@mtc@memoirnew@
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@

We will check if the placeins package is loaded, then if the memoir is loaded (and if it is a recent enough version), then if the sectsty package is loaded (before or after minitoc).

```
\newif\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@memoirnew@ \@mtc@memoirnew@false
\newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false
```

\if@mtc@captionLoaded@
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@

We do the same for some caption-related packages:

```
\newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false
\newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false
\newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false
\newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false
```

```
\newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false
\newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false
```

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@

And the varsects package and other packages altering the sectionning commands:

```
\newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false
\newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false
\newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false
\newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false
```

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@

And yet other packages altering the sectionning commands:

```
\newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false
\newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false
\newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false
```

9.5.4 Flags for packages dealing with floats

\if@mtc@floatLoaded@
\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@
\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@
\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@

We must warn about a limitation with the float [302], floatrow [285], trivfloat [484], and rotfloat [420] packages.

```
\newif\if@mtc@floatLoaded@ \@mtc@floatLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ \@mtc@floatrowLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@ \@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ \@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@false
```

9.5.5 Insertion of empty mini-tables

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@
\if@mtc@empty@partlof@
\if@mtc@empty@partlot@
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@

We will check if you have attempted to insert some empty mini-tables:

```
\newif\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false
\newif\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ \@mtc@empty@partlof@false
\newif\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ \@mtc@empty@partlot@false
\newif\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false
\newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\newif\if@mtc@empty@minilot@ \@mtc@empty@minilot@false
\newif\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false
\newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false
\newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false
```

9.5.6 Presence or absence of some sectionning commands

We define and set flags about the presence of the sectionning commands (in fact, the counters associated with these commands).

\if@mtc@part@def@

The `part` counter:

```
\newif\if@mtc@part@def@ \@mtc@part@def@false
  \@ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@def@false}{\@mtc@part@def@true}
```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@

The `chapter` counter:

```
\newif\if@mtc@chapter@def@ \@mtc@chapter@def@false
  \@ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@def@false}{\@mtc@chapter@def@true}
```

\if@mtc@section@def@

The `section` counter:

```
\newif\if@mtc@section@def@ \@mtc@section@def@false
  \@ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@def@false}{\@mtc@section@def@true}
```

We define and set flags about the absence of the sectionning commands.

\if@mtc@part@undef@

The `part` counter:

```
\newif\if@mtc@part@undef@ \@mtc@part@undef@true
  \@ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@undef@true}{\@mtc@part@undef@false}
```

\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ The chapter counter:

```
\newif\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \@mtc@chapter@undef@true
  \@ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@true}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@false}
```

\if@mtc@section@undef@ The section counter:

```
\newif\if@mtc@section@undef@ \@mtc@section@undef@true
  \@ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@undef@true}{\@mtc@section@undef@false}
```

9.5.7 Flags to check if some commands are used

We define a pair of flags for each mini-table type: one for the command itself and one for the preparation command (\do...). These flags will be used by the hints package option (section 9.81 on page 414).

\if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@
\if@partlot@used@
\if@doparttoc@used@
\if@dopartlof@used@
\if@dopartlot@used@

For the part level:

```
\newif\if@parttoc@used@ \global\@parttoc@used@false
\newif\if@partlof@used@ \global\@partlof@used@false
\newif\if@partlot@used@ \global\@partlot@used@false
\newif\if@doparttoc@used@ \global\@doparttoc@used@false
\newif\if@dopartlof@used@ \global\@dopartlof@used@false
\newif\if@dopartlot@used@ \global\@dopartlot@used@false
```

\if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@
\if@minilot@used@
\if@dominitoc@used@
\if@dominilof@used@
\if@dominilot@used@

For the chapter level:

```
\newif\if@minitoc@used@ \global\@minitoc@used@false
\newif\if@minilof@used@ \global\@minilof@used@false
\newif\if@minilot@used@ \global\@minilot@used@false
\newif\if@dominitoc@used@ \global\@dominitoc@used@false
\newif\if@dominilof@used@ \global\@dominilof@used@false
\newif\if@dominilot@used@ \global\@dominilot@used@false
```

\if@secttoc@used@
\if@sectlof@used@
\if@sectlot@used@
\if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@dosectlof@used@
\if@dosectlot@used@

For the section level:

```
\newif\if@secttoc@used@ \global\@secttoc@used@false
\newif\if@sectlof@used@ \global\@sectlof@used@false
\newif\if@sectlot@used@ \global\@sectlot@used@false
\newif\if@dosecttoc@used@ \global\@dosecttoc@used@false
\newif\if@dosectlof@used@ \global\@dosectlof@used@false
\newif\if@dosectlot@used@ \global\@dosectlot@used@false
```

\if@firstpartis@used@
\if@firstchapteris@used@
\if@firstsectionis@used@

We also detect the use of some obsolete commands:

```
\newif\if@firstpartis@used@ \global\@firstpartis@used@false
\newif\if@firstchapteris@used@ \global\@firstchapteris@used@false
\newif\if@firstsectionis@used@ \global\@firstsectionis@used@false
```

9.5.8 Check if the document has exactly 2 parts

\ifmtcsecondpart

In french, the ordinal adjective is “deuxième” if the second object is not the last object, but “second” (masculine) or “seconde” (feminine) when it is also the last one (see [251, page 204]). So we define a specific flag:

```
\newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
```

\AtBeginDocument
\ifmtcsecondpart

At the beginning of the document, we test this flag and make it global:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
  \ifmtcsecondpart
    \global\mtcsecondparttrue
  \else
    \global\mtcsecondpartfalse
  \fi}
```

\AtEndDocument
\ifmtcsecondpart
\@mainaux

At the end of the document, we set and memorize the value of the flag in the `.aux` file:

```
\AtEndDocument{%
\ifnum\value{part}=2\relax
  \mtcsecondparttrue
\else
  \mtcsecondpartfalse
\fi
\if@filesw
  \ifmtcsecondpart
    \immediate\write\@mainaux
      {\string\global\string\mtcsecondparttrue}%
  \else
    \immediate\write\@mainaux
      {\string\global\string\mtcsecondpartfalse}%
  \fi
\fi}
```

So we need two LaTeX runs to get a correct result. The `french2.mld` language definition file (see section 13.62 on page 498) uses this trick to form the titles of part level mini-tables. See the `mtc-2nd.tex` example file in section 4.2 on page 92.

9.6 Preparation for the notoccite option

\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\if@mtc@notoccite@

We declare a flag for the presence of this option and the new internal "hook" command (redefinable command) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile, used by this option (this has been requested by Donald Arseneau for his notoccite package [14]). See section 1.6 on page 52.

```
\newif\if@mtc@notoccite@ \@mtc@notoccite@false
\@ifundefined{mtc@hook@beforeinputfile}%
   {\let\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile\relax}{}
```

9.7 Preparation for the tight and k-tight options

\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc

We just declare a flag for each of these options; they are set false by default (loose and k-loose options):

```
\newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
\newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
```

9.8 Preparation to work with hyperref

\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@hyper@used@
\@ifpackageloaded

This code prepares the interface with the hyperref package [390]. A flag is defined, then this preparation is performed in an \AtBeginDocument block if this package is loaded. This action defines some commands for the hyperref package. I0005

```
\mtcPackageInfo[I0005]{minitoc}{compatible with hyperref\@gobble}
\newif\if@mtc@hyper@used@ \global\@mtc@hyper@used@false
\AtBeginDocument{%
  \@ifpackageloaded{hyperref}{%
    \global\@mtc@hyper@used@true
    \def\toclevel@xpart{1000}%
    \def\toclevel@xchapter{1000}%
    \def\toclevel@xsect{1000}%
    \let\toclevel@starpart\toclevel@part
    \let\toclevel@starchapter\toclevel@chapter
    \let\toclevel@starsection\toclevel@section
    \let\toclevel@starsubsection\toclevel@subsection
    \let\toclevel@starsubsubsection\toclevel@subsubsection
    \let\toclevel@starparagraph\toclevel@paragraph
    \let\toclevel@starsubparagraph\toclevel@subparagraph
  }{}}%
```

9.9 Checking the presence of some packages

9.9.1 Check if the sectsty package is loaded, and when

\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
\@ifpackageloaded

We must test if the sectsty package [319] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.6 on page 431.

```
2649 \@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true}{}%
2650 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.2 Check if the varsects package is loaded, and when

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@

We must test if the varsects package [437] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.7 on page 431.

```
2651 \@ifpackageloaded{varsects}%{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true}{}
2652 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.3 Check if the fncychap package is loaded, and when

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@

We must test if the fncychap package [301] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.8 on page 432.

```
2653 \@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true}{}%
2654 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.4 Check if the hangcaption package is loaded, and when

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@

We must test if the hangcaption package [250] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.9 on page 432.

```
2655 \@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@true}{}%
2656 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.5 Check if the quotchap package is loaded, and when

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@

We must test if the quotchap package [442] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.10 on page 433.

```
\@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true}{}%
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.6 Check if the romannum package is loaded, and when

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@

We must test if the romannum package [480] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.11 on page 433.

```
\@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true}{}%
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.7 Check if the sfheaders package is loaded, and when

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@

We must test if the sfheaders package [304] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.12 on page 433.

```
\@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true}{}%
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.8 Check if the alnumsec package is loaded, and when

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@

We must test if the alnumsec package [274] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.13 on page 434.

```
\@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true}{}%
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.9 Check if the captcont package is loaded, and when

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@

We must test if the captcont package [131] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.14 on page 434.

```
\@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@true}{}%
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.10 Check if the caption package is loaded, and when

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@

We must test if the caption package [421, 422, 424] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.15 on page 434.

```
\@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@true}{}%
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.11 Check if the caption2 package is loaded, and when

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@

We must test if the caption2 package [423] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.16 on page 435.

```
\@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@true}{}%
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.12 Check if the ccaption package is loaded, and when

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@

We must test if the ccaption package [474] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.17 on page 435.

```
\@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true}{}%
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.13 Check if the mcaption package is loaded, and when

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@

We must test if the mcaption package [228] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.18 on page 435.

```
\@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true}{}%
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true}{}}%
```

9.9.14 Check if the float package is loaded

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@floatLoaded@

We must test if the float package [302] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.81.2.19 on page 436.

```
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{float}{\@mtc@floatLoaded@true}{}}%
```

9.9.15 Check if the floatrow package is loaded

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@

We must test if the floatrow package [285] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.81.2.20 on page 436.

```
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{floatrow}{\@mtc@floatrowLoaded@true}{}}%
```

9.9.16 Check if the trivfloat package is loaded

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@

We must test if the trivfloat package [484] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.81.2.21 on page 436.

```
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{trivfloat}{\@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@true}{}}%
```

9.9.17 Check if the rotfloat package is loaded

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@

We must test if the rotfloat package [420] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.81.2.22 on page 437.

```
\AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{rotfloat}{\@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@true}{}}%
```

9.10 Is the memoir class loaded?

\@ifclassloaded
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
\if@mtc@memoirnew@
\if@mtcpatchmemoir@

We test if the memoir [479, 481, 482] class is loaded. This class needs some compatibility adjustments or may be *incompatible* if too recent. In the later case, a patch is inserted (see chapter 12 on page 465). This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.cls. I0030 I0020 I0027 I0032

```
\newif\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ \@mtcpatchmemoir@false
\@ifclassloaded{memoir}{\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true\relax%
                        \mtcPackageInfo[I0030]{minitoc}%
                        {the memoir class is loaded:
                         \MessageBreak
                         compatibility attempted\@gobble}}%
                       {\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false}
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
 \@ifundefined{@m@mchapter}%
   {\@mtc@memoirnew@false\mtcPackageInfo[I0020]{minitoc}%
      {old version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
   {\@mtc@memoirnew@true\mtcPackageInfo[I0027]{minitoc}%
      {recent version of the memoir class\@gobble}
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0032]{minitoc}%
         {This version of the memoir class uses
          \MessageBreak
          a version of \string\chapter\space which is
          \MessageBreak
          incompatible with the minitoc package.
          \MessageBreak
          We try to patch\@gobble}%
   \@mtcpatchmemoir@true}
\fi
```

\if@mtcpatchmemoir@

And now the patch: E0028

```
\if@mtcpatchmemoir@
\IfFileExists{mtcpatchmem.sty}{%
   \@ifclasslater{memoir}{2005/09/25}{}{\RequirePackage{mtcpatchmem}}}{%
   \mtcPackageError[E0028]{minitoc}%
     {Unable to patch the memoir class}%
     {So it remains incompatible. Sorry.}}
\fi
```

9.11 Testing the emptiness of a file

\mtc@ifmtarg
\mtc@xifmtarg
\mtc@EndWhile
\mtc@WhilePreCondition
\mtc@WhileCondition
\mtc@WhileBody
\mtc@While
\mtc@WhileNext

Some macros for testing if an argument of a macro is empty (taken from the package ifmtarg [483], by Peter R. Wilson and Donald Arseneau, and from while.tip, by

Stephan P. von Bechtolsheim [460, Vol III, page 408]). The group is necessary to keep local the catcode change of "Q", hence a \gdef is needed for \mtc@ifmtarg.

```
\begingroup
\catcode`\Q=3
\long\gdef\mtc@ifmtarg#1{%
\mtc@xifmtarg#1QQ\@secondoftwo\@firstoftwo\@nil}
\long\gdef\mtc@xifmtarg#1#2Q#3#4#5\@nil{#4}
\endgroup
\let\mtc@EndWhile = \fi
\def\mtc@While #1#2#3\mtc@EndWhile{%
   \def\mtc@WhilePreCondition{#1}%
   \def\mtc@WhileCondition{#2}%
   \def\mtc@WhileBody{#3}%
   \mtc@@While
}
\def\mtc@@While{%
   \mtc@WhilePreCondition
   \mtc@WhileCondition
      \def\mtc@WhileNext{%
          \mtc@WhileBody
          \mtc@@While
      }%
   \else
      \def\mtc@WhileNext{}%
   \fi
   \mtc@WhileNext
}
```

\if@mtc@checkfiles
\if@mtc@FE
\if@mtc@LI
\mtc@While
\mtc@Body
\mtc@EndWhile
\mtc@CkFile
\mtc@CkStr
\mtc@Rline
\tf@mtc
\@inputcheck

Some macros to test if a file is empty or not: \mtc@CkFile{*file*} returns \@mtc@FEtrue if the file is empty, \@mtc@FEfalse if the is file not empty. An inexistent file is empty. A file full of white space (space, tabulation, newline) is empty. Comments are empty.

Note: on a big empty file, the \mtc@While loop may be time consuming, but not an eternity (33 s for 10^6 lines on my computer), and the first non-empty line stops the loop. \jobname.mtc is used as scratch file. Its contents is erased after use.

```
\newif\if@mtc@LI\@mtc@LItrue
\newif\if@mtc@FE\@mtc@FEtrue
\newif\if@mtc@checkfiles\@mtc@checkfilestrue
\def\mtc@Body{\immediate\read\@inputcheck to \mtc@Rline\relax
  \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
  \expandafter\ifx\mtc@Rline\par\relax
     \def\mtc@Rline{}
  \else
     \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\global\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
     \mtc@ifmtarg{\mtc@Rline}{\relax}{\@mtc@FEfalse\@mtc@LIfalse}
  \fi}
\def\mtc@CkFile#1{%
  \@mtc@LItrue\@mtc@FEtrue
  \if@mtc@checkfiles
```

```
  \IfFileExists{#1}{%
    \immediate\openin\@inputcheck #1\relax
    \mtc@While{}{\if@mtc@LI\relax}{\mtc@Body}\mtc@EndWhile}%
   {\@mtc@FEtrue}%
  \else
   \@mtc@FEfalse%
  \fi}
\closein\@inputcheck\relax
\def\mtc@CkStr#1{%
  \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
  \immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}%
  \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.mtc}%
  \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
  \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
```

9.12 Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters

\mtc@onebackpart
\mtc@onebackchapter
\mtc@onebacksection
\addtocounter

It is sometimes necessary to decrement a minitoc counter (ptc, mtc or stc) by one. These macros are:

```
\def\mtc@onebackpart{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
\def\mtc@onebackchap{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
\def\mtc@onebacksect{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}
```

9.13 Patching the \part command

\part
\mtc@svspart
\mtc@svpart
\@spart
\@part
\stepcounter

If the \part command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and a warning is displayed[4]. Else, we patch its two branches, \@part (for the unstarred version) or \@spart (for the starred version, \part*): we add \stepcounter{ptc} to increment the parttoc counter ptc. See also section 9.51 on page 338.

The code of the next section (section 9.14 on the following page) is also skipped if \part is not defined.

W0018
I0023

```
\@ifundefined{part}{%
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0018]{minitoc}%
     {part level macros NOT available}
}{%% else undefined part (\part defined)
  \mtcPackageInfo[I0023]{minitoc}%
     {part level macros available\@gobble}
  \let\mtc@svspart\@spart
```

[4] Document classes with sectionning commands but no \part command are likely non standard, hence the warning displayed on the terminal.

```
\def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svspart}
\let\mtc@svpart\@part
\def\@part{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svpart}
```

9.14 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part

\mtcaddpart
\mtc@ifmtarg
\contentsline
\addcontentsline
\adjustptc
\l@xpart
\l@part

To add an entry in the TOC for a starred part, we need the \mtcaddpart macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the part as if should appear in the TOC.

By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via \mtc@ifmtarg) or omitted, we add a \contentsline{xpart}{}... line in the .toc file. If it is not empty, we add a \contentsline{part}{title...}... line in the .toc file. We always add a \contentsline{xpart}{}... line in the .lof and .lot files. Then we increment the ptc counter, via \adjustptc (defined in section 9.45 on page 325). Using xpart as first argument of \contentsline means that \l@xpart will be invoked in place of \l@part to print the entry in the TOC, but \l@xpart uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```
\newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][]{%
    \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{}}%
                    {\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}%
    \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{}%
    \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{}%
    \adjustptc}
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the part level commands.

```
}%
```

9.15 Section level macros

\chapter
\section

The section level macros are defined if \chapter is not defined and \section defined, i.e., in document classes like article, but not in document classes like book or report. So we test if \chapter is defined and if \section is defined, with adequate warnings. If neither are defined, you are in big trouble to use the minitoc package with the class of your document.

I0004
I0029
W0017
I0028

```
\@ifundefined{chapter}{\mtcPackageInfo[I0004]{minitoc}%
          {chapter level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
 \@ifundefined{section}{\mtcPackageInfo[I0029]{minitoc}%
          {section level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0017]{minitoc}%
      {no section or chapter level macros available
       \MessageBreak
```

```
2790        PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS}}%
2791  {\mtcPackageInfo[I0028]{minitoc}%
2792       {section level macros available\@gobble}%
```

9.16 Corrections for numbering

\mtc@onebacksect
\tableofcontents
\listoffigures
\listoftables
\mtcsv@tableofcontents
\mtcsv@listoffigures
\mtcsv@listoftables

As the TOC, the LOF and the LOT are considered as (starred) sections, we must decrement the secttoc counter (`stc`) via `\mtc@onebacksect` when the corresponding commands are executed. Hence we patch these commands.

```
2793    \let\mtcsv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
2794    \let\mtcsv@listoffigures\listoffigures
2795    \let\mtcsv@listoftables\listoftables
2796    \def\tableofcontents{\mtcsv@tableofcontents\mtc@onebacksect}
2797    \def\listoffigures{\mtcsv@listoffigures\mtc@onebacksect}
2798    \def\listoftables{\mtcsv@listoftables\mtc@onebacksect}
```

9.17 Patching the `\section` command

\mtc@svsection
\mtc@svss
\@ssect
\@sect
\section
\stepcounter

If the `\section` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and a warning is displayed. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@sect` (for the unstarred version) or `\@ssect` (for the starred version, `\section*`): we add `\stepcounter{stc}` to increment the secttoc counter `stc`, only in the unstarred case[5].

```
2799    \let\mtc@svsection\section
2800    \def\section{\stepcounter{stc}\mtc@svsection}
2801    \let\mtc@svss\@ssect
```

9.18 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section

\mtcaddsection
\mtc@ifmtarg
\contentsline
\adjuststc
\l@xsect
\l@section

To add an entry in the TOC for a starred section, we need the `\mtcaddsection` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the section as it should appear in the TOC. By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, we add a `\contentsline{xsect}{}...` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{section}{title...}...` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\contentsline{xsect}{}...` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `stc` counter, via `\adjuststc` (this command is defined in section 9.54 on page 349). Using `xsect` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xsect` will be invoked in place

[5] Version #25 has removed a spurious decrementation of this counter.

of \l@section to print the entry in the TOC, but \l@xsect uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```
\newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][]{%
    \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xsect}{}}%
                    {\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}%
    \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}%
    \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}%
    \adjuststc}
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the section level commands, and we continue with chapter level macros.

```
}}{%
```

9.19 Chapter level macros

\chapter

The chapter level macros are defined if \chapter is defined, i.e., in document classes like book or report. So we test if \chapter is defined, with adequate warnings. The test is already done above, we are in the "else" branch of \@ifundefined{chapter}.

I0003

```
\mtcPackageInfo[I0003]{minitoc}{chapter level macros available\@gobble}
```

9.20 Patching the \chapter command

\chapter
\@chapter
\mtc@svchapter
\stepcounter

The \chapter command is defined (by the document class, usually). We patch its two branches, \@chapter (for the unstarred version) or \@schapter (for the starred version, \chapter*): we add call to \stepcounter{mtc} to increment the minitoc counter mtc. Only the unstarred branch (\@chapter) is patched here. The other branch is patched later (section 9.36 on page 308).

```
\let\mtc@svchapter\@chapter \def\@chapter{\stepcounter{mtc}\mtc@svchapter}
```

9.21 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter

\mtcaddchapter
\mtc@ifmtarg
\contentsline
\adjustmtc
\l@xchapter
\l@chapter

To add an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter, we need the \mtcaddchapter macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the chapter as if should appear in the TOC. By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via \mtc@ifmtarg) or omitted, we add a \contentsline{xchapter}{}... line in the .toc file. If it is not empty, we

add a \contentsline{chapter}{title...}... line in the .toc file. We always add a \contentsline{xchapter}{}... line in the .lof and .lot files. Then we increment the mtc counter, via \adjustmtc (defined in section 9.31 on page 295). Using xchapter as first argument of \contentsline means that \l@xchapter will be invoked in place of \l@chapter to print the entry in the TOC, but \l@xchapter uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```
\newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][]{%
    \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}}%
                    {\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}%
    \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}%
    \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}%
    \adjustmtc}%
}%
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the chapter level commands, i.e., terminates the \@ifundefined{chapter} at the beginning of section 9.15 on page 282.

9.22 Miscellaneous declarations

\newread
\newtoks
\mtc@toks
\mtc@string
\mtc@strut
\mtc@strutbox
\mtc@hstrut
\mtc@hstrutbox
\mtc@v
\mtc@zrule
\mtc@BBR

The \newread command must be redeclared as being \outer (as Donald Arseneau told me). We need a token register (\mtc@toks), a temporary string (\mtc@string), struts (two kinds, each one using a box containing an invisible vertical rule), a rule with all dimensions equal to zero (\mtc@zrule) and a command discouraging page breaks (\mtc@BBR, for "bad break"). For the struts, which are boxes containing an invisible vertical rule, we use "ex" units, to follow the current font.

```
\def\newread{\alloc@6\read\chardef\sixt@@n}
\newtoks\mtc@toks
\def\mtc@string{\relax}
\newbox\mtc@strutbox
\setbox\mtc@strutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.8ex]{\z@}{2.5ex}}
\def\mtc@strut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@strutbox
                      \else\unhcopy\mtc@strutbox\fi}
\newbox\mtc@hstrutbox
\setbox\mtc@hstrutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.ex]{\z@}{1.ex}}
\def\mtc@hstrut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@hstrutbox
                       \else\unhcopy\mtc@hstrutbox\fi}
\def\mtc@v{\leavevmode\mtc@strut}
\def\mtc@zrule{\rule[\z@]{\z@}{\z@}}
\def\mtc@BBR{\unpenalty\nopagebreak[4]}
```

Table 9.1: Trick to detect the limitation to short extensions

Phase (time runs from left to right):		1	2	3
OS with long extensions	`\jobname.mtc0` `\jobname.mtc`	TRUE	TRUE FALSE	*
OS with short extensions	`\jobname.mtc(0)`	TRUE	FALSE	*

9.23 Autoconfiguration of extensions

`\tf@mtc` This code is a trick to determine if the operating system is able or unable to use long extensions (> 3 characters) in file names. We define a file descriptor (`\tf@mtc`) to write files[6]. This code is verbose if long extensions cannot be used, else the messages are only written in the *document*`.log` file. The sequencing of these operations is vital. The table 9.1 shows this sequence. A star (∗) denotes which file is read in phase 3.

`\newif` `\if@mtc@longext@` `\tf@mtc` `\immediate` `\openout` `\write` `\closeout` `\input` `\jobname`

(0) First, a message and a new flag: I0002

```
\mtcPackageInfo[I0002]{minitoc}%
   {Autoconfiguration of extensions\@gobble}
\newif\if@mtc@longext@\@mtc@longext@false
```

(1) We write "`\@mtc@longext@true`" in `\jobname.mtc0`. But if the OS has short extensions, the real name of the file will be truncated to `\jobname.mtc`.

```
\immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc0
\immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@mtc@longext@true}
\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
```

(2) We write "`\@mtc@longext@false`" in `\jobname.mtc`.

```
\immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
\immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@mtc@longext@false}
\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
```

(3) We read `\jobname.mtc0`. But if the OS has short extensions, the real name of the file will be truncated to `\jobname.mtc`.

```
\input{\jobname.mtc0}
```

(4) Hence, the flag is true if we read really from `\jobname.mtc0`, but false if we read from I0012 I0031 W0019

[6] It is the *only* new file descriptor created by the minitoc package. All files written by minitoc use this descriptor, or one of the standard descriptors, e.g., for the *document*`.log` file. In fact, minitoc writes also in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files, but via file descriptors already used by standard commands like `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables`. We can conclude that minitoc itself uses only one file descriptor (or write stream). Some other attempts to make per chapter TOCs have failed by quickly leading to exhaustion of file descriptors (TEX offers only 16 file descriptors for writing), because they called the standard internal `\@starttoc` macro, which invokes `\newwrite`, for each mini-table. As minitoc writes into only one file at a time (and in the *document*`.log` file, and in the standard contents files, of course), we can reuse the same file descriptor and avoid this serious problem (which was present in the original version of the package). The minitoc package writes in the contents files when it encounters a major sectionning command (`\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section`), if necessary. It writes into the mini-table auxiliary files only via the mini-table preparing commands (`\doparttoc`, . . . , `\dosectlot`), once at a time. You do not need a new hammer for each nail.

\jobname.mtc. The text and the severity of the messages are different.

```
2842  \if@mtc@longext@
2843   \mtcPackageInfo[I0012]{minitoc}%
2844     {Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used\@gobble}
2845   \mtcPackageInfo[I0031]{minitoc}%
2846   {==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
2847    \MessageBreak
2848    \space\space\space\space(long extensions) file names\@gobble}%
2849  \else
2850   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0019]{minitoc}%
2851     {Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used
2852      \MessageBreak
2853      ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
2854      \MessageBreak
2855      \space\space\space\space(8+3) file names}
2856  \fi
```

(5) We erase the contents of the two files (because \jobname.mtc is also used later as a scratch file, see section 9.11 on page 279).

```
2857  \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2858  \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2859  \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc0
2860  \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
```

9.24 Detecting obsolete versions of LaTeX

\@inputcheck
\reset@font

This code detects old versions of the LaTeX kernel that are no more supported and with which the minitoc package can hardly work. The trick is to detect the absence of some internal LaTeX commands, \@inputcheck and \reset@font. If you get one of these messages, your are in bad luck and should *urgently* update your LaTeX installation, which is just rusting since... a lot of years!


```
2861 \@ifundefined{@inputcheck}%
2862   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0021]{minitoc}%
2863      {Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
2864       \MessageBreak
2865       Trying to continue..}\newread\@inputcheck\relax}{}
2866 \@ifundefined{reset@font}%
2867   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0022]{minitoc}%
2868      {Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
2869       \MessageBreak
2870       Trying to continue... crossing fingers}%
2871   \let\reset@font\relax}{}
```

9.25 Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers

\@undottedtocline
\ifundottedmtc
\undottedmtcfalse

The (internal) macro \@undottedtocline is a modified version of the standard command \@dottedtocline. It will be used in customization macros.

```
\newif\ifundottedmtc\undottedmtcfalse
\def\@undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
  \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
  \vskip \z@ plus.2\p@
  {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
   \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
   \interlinepenalty\@M
   \leavevmode
   \@tempdima #3\relax \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \hbox{}%
   \hskip -\leftskip
    #4\nobreak\hfill \nobreak
           \null\par}%
  \fi}
```

9.26 Default values for the page-number customizations

\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@

This section defines some customization macros for the presence or absence of page numbers in the mini-tables. But if the memoir class [479, 481, 482] is loaded, it does the job. So, we test first \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ to use the commands of memoir when they are available.

```
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
```

\mtcpagenumbers
\nomtcpagenumbers

For entries in minitocs:

```
\def\mtcpagenumbers{%
  \cftpagenumberson{section}
  \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
  \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
  \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
  \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
\def\nomtcpagenumbers{%
  \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
  \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
  \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
  \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
  \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}
```

\stcpagenumbers
\nostcpagenumbers

For entries in secttocs:

```
\def\stcpagenumbers{%
  \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
  \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
  \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
  \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
\def\nostcpagenumbers{%
  \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
  \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
  \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
  \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}
```

\ptcpagenumbers
\noptcpagenumbers

For entries in parttocs:

```
\def\ptcpagenumbers{%
  \cftpagenumberson{chapter}
  \cftpagenumberson{section}
  \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
  \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
  \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
  \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
\def\noptcpagenumbers{%
  \cftpagenumbersoff{chapter}
  \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
  \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
  \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
  \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
  \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}
```

\mlfpagenumbers
\nomlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers
\noslfpagenumbers
\plfpagenumbers
\noplfpagenumbers

For entries in minilofs, sectlofs, and partlofs:

```
  \def\mlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
  \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
  \def\slfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
  \def\noslfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
  \def\plfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
  \def\noplfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
```

\mltpagenumbers
\nomltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers
\nosltpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers
\nopltpagenumbers

For entries in minilots, sectlots, and partlots:

```
  \def\mltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
  \def\nomltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
  \def\sltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
  \def\nosltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
  \def\pltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
  \def\nopltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
```

Else, minitoc will use its own commands.

```
\else
```

\mtcpagenumbers
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers
\nomlfpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers
\nomltpagenumbers

First, for minitocs, secttocs and parttocs:

```
\def\mtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\null}
\def\nomtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\def\stcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\null}
\def\nostcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
\def\ptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\null}
\def\noptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}
```

\mlfpagenumbers
\nomlfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers
\nomlfpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers
\nomltpagenumbers

Then, for minilofs, sectlofs and partlofs:

```
\def\mlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\null}
\def\nomlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\def\slfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\null}
\def\noslfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
\def\plfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\null}
\def\noplfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}
```

\mltpagenumbers
\nomltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers
\nomltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers
\nomltpagenumbers

Then, for minilots, sectlots and partlots:

```
\def\mltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\null}
\def\nomltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\def\sltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\null}
\def\nosltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
\def\pltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\null}
\def\nopltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
\fi
```

\ptcpagenumbers
\plfpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers
\stcpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers

Then the default values are set; page numbers are present:

```
\ptcpagenumbers
\plfpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers
\stcpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers
```

9.27 “Features” for the mini-tables

Each kind of mini-table has five “features”: a “before” feature, an “after” feature, an “open” feature, an “close” feature, and a “pagestyle” feature.

A “before” feature is defined by a macro like \beforeparttoc which contains code to be executed before any mini-table of a given type: \beforeparttoc is executed before each parttoc. Usually such features contain only trivial commands like \clear[double]page, or \empty.

An “after” feature is analog but its code is executed after each mini-table of a given type.

An “open” feature contains code to be executed just before the insertion of the file containing the mini-table. Usally such features either do nothing, either prepare some basic formatting (like multi-column). It does not concern the title of the mini-table or the decorative rules.

An “close” feature contains code to be executed just after the insertion of the file containing the mini-table. Usally such features either do nothing, either finish some basic formatting (like multi-column). It does not concern the title of the mini-table or the decorative rules.

A “pagestyle” feature is defined by a macro like \thispageparttocstyle which contains code to define the page style implied by mini-tables of a given type: the command \thispageparttocstyle can be defined as \thispagestyle{...}. Usually, the “pagestyle” feature is only defined for part-level mini-tables, which use page breaks in their before and after features. For chapter- and section-level mini-tables, the “pagestyle” feature is usually defined as \empty.

We set the default values for the part-level features depending on the presence of the \chapter command, as article-like documents are different from the book- or report-like documents for the layout of part-level mini-tables.

\chapter
\beforeparttoc
\beforepartlof
\beforepartlot

If \chapter is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

```
\@ifundefined{chapter}{%
   \let\beforeparttoc\empty
   \let\beforepartlof\empty
   \let\beforepartlot\empty}%
```

\cleardoublepage

But if \chapter is defined, they have a \cleardoublepage as default “before” feature:

```
   {\let\beforeparttoc\cleardoublepage
    \let\beforepartlof\cleardoublepage
    \let\beforepartlot\cleardoublepage}
```

\beforeminitoc
\beforeminilof
\beforeminilot

Chapter level mini-tables have no "before" feature (by default):

```
\let\beforeminitoc\empty
\let\beforeminilof\empty
\let\beforeminilot\empty
```

\beforesecttoc
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot

Section level mini-tables have no "before" feature (by default):

```
\let\beforesecttoc\empty
\let\beforesectlof\empty
\let\beforesectlot\empty
```

\chapter
\afterparttoc
\afterpartlof
\afterpartlot

If \chapter is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no "after" feature (by default):

```
\@ifundefined{chapter}{%
   \let\afterparttoc\empty
   \let\afterpartlof\empty
   \let\afterpartlot\empty}%
```

\cleardoublepage

But if \chapter is defined, they have a \cleardoublepage as default "after" feature:

```
   {\let\afterparttoc\cleardoublepage
    \let\afterpartlof\cleardoublepage
    \let\afterpartlot\cleardoublepage}
```

\afterminitoc
\afterminilof
\afterminilot

Chapter level mini-tables have no "after" feature (by default):

```
\let\afterminitoc\empty
\let\afterminilof\empty
\let\afterminilot\empty
```

\aftersecttoc
\aftersectlof
\aftersectlot

Section level mini-tables have no "after" feature (by default):

```
\let\aftersecttoc\empty
\let\aftersectlof\empty
\let\aftersectlot\empty
```

\openparttoc
\openpartlof
\openpartlot
\openminitoc
\openminilof
\openminilot
\opensecttoc
\opensectlof
\opensectlot

By default, the "open" features do nothing:

```
\let\openparttoc\empty
\let\openpartlof\empty
\let\openpartlot\empty
\let\openminitoc\empty
\let\openminilof\empty
\let\openminilot\empty
\let\opensecttoc\empty
\let\opensectlof\empty
\let\opensectlot\empty
```

\closeparttoc
\closepartlof
\closepartlot
\closeminitoc
\closeminilof
\closeminilot
\closesecttoc
\closesectlof
\closesectlot

By default, "close" features do nothing:

```
\let\closeparttoc\empty
\let\closepartlof\empty
\let\closepartlot\empty
\let\closeminitoc\empty
\let\closeminilof\empty
\let\closeminilot\empty
\let\closesecttoc\empty
\let\closesectlof\empty
\let\closesectlot\empty
```

\thispagestyle
\thispageparttocstyle
\thispagepartlofstyle
\thispagepartlotstyle
\thispageminitocstyle
\thispageminilofstyle
\thispageminilotstyle
\thispagesecttocstyle
\thispagesectlofstyle
\thispagesectlotstyle

By default, all the "pagestyle" features (at part level) use the empty page style. It affects only the first page of the mini-table. If \chapter is not defined, there is no default "pagestyle" features at the part level.

```
\@ifundefined{chapter}{%
 \def\thispageparttocstyle{\empty}
 \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\empty}
 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\empty}}%
{\def\thispageparttocstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}
 \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}
 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}}
\def\thispageminitocstyle{\empty}
\def\thispageminilofstyle{\empty}
\def\thispageminilotstyle{\empty}
\def\thispagesecttocstyle{\empty}
\def\thispagesectlofstyle{\empty}
\def\thispagesectlotstyle{\empty}
```

\mtcsetfeature

In section 9.67.8 on page 393, we will define the \mtcsetfeature macro which is a much easier user interface to set the mini-tables "features".

9.28 Fake tables of contents

\faketableofcontents
\fakelistoffigures
\fakelistoftables
\fake@starttoc
\if@filesw
\newwrite
\immediate
\openout

If you don't want a table of contents, but want minitocs, you need to create the `.toc` file, without inserting it into your document. This `\faketableofcontents` command is a stripped off version of the standard command `\tableofcontents`. We define in the same way the analog commands `\fakelistoffigures` and `\fakelistoftables`, using in fact just a stripped version `\fake@starttoc` of `\@starttoc`. But it is nice to reset to zero the `ptc`, `mtc`, and `stc` counters now, if they are defined[7].

```
\def\faketableofcontents{\fake@starttoc{toc}%
    \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
    \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}%
    \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}%
    }
\def\fakelistoffigures{\fake@starttoc{lof}}
\def\fakelistoftables{\fake@starttoc{lot}}
\def\fake@starttoc#1{\begingroup \makeatletter
  \if@filesw \expandafter\newwrite\csname tf@#1\endcsname
             \immediate\openout \csname tf@#1\endcsname
             \jobname.#1\relax \fi
  \global\@nobreakfalse \endgroup}
```

This code uses the same file descriptors (for writing) than the original commands.

9.29 Depth counters for minilofs and minilots

\AtBeginDocument
\newcounter
\setcounter
\c@lofdepth
\c@lotdepth

If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the necessary new counters: `minilofdepth` and `minilofdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
   {\newcounter{minilofdepth}\setcounter{minilofdepth}{2}}%
 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
   {\newcounter{minilotdepth}\setcounter{minilotdepth}{2}}%
}%
```

9.30 Chapter level commands

From here, we define the chapter-level commands.

[7] Remember the infamous "`stc0`" bug.

\mtc@markboth
\@mkboth

First, we memorize the marks (not used today, but...):

```
\global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\global\let\@mkboth\markboth
```

9.31 Starred parts, chapters or sections

\addst@rred
\addcontentsline
\stepcounter
\c@ptc
\c@mtc
\c@stc

We define commands to manage the starred sectionning commands: \part*, \chapter* and \section*. The section-level is different depending on the presence of the \chapter command. Eventually, a counter is incremented. A contents line is added in the .toc file, with the right depth to print it (see \l@star... later, in section 9.65 on page 373).

```
\def\addst@rred#1#2{%
  \addcontentsline{toc}{star#1}{#2}%
  \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{%
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax
      \stepcounter{ptc}%
    \fi
  }%
  \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{%
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax
      \stepcounter{mtc}%
    \fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix\relax
      \stepcounter{mtc}%
    \fi
  }%
  \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{%
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
%%      \@ifundefined{chapter}{\stepcounter{stc}}{}%
      \stepcounter{stc}%
    \fi
  }%
}%
```

\addstarredsection
\chapter
\addst@rred

If \chapter is not defined, we just define \addstarredsection:

```
\@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\gdef\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}
}%
```

Else we begin to define the stuff for chapter-level commands (the "else" branch of \@ifundefined{chapter}):

```
{%
```

\The@mtc
\firstchapteris
\if@firstchapteris@used@
\newcounter
\setcounter
\adjustmtc
\decrementmtc
\incrementmtc
\themtc
\columnwidth

We define now: the internal format of the mtc counter (\The@mtc), the obsolete command \firstchapteris (it just emits a harmless warning), the mtc counter (initialized to 0), the \adjustmtc command (increments the mtc counter, by 1 by default), the \decrementmtc command (decrements the mtc counter by 1), the \incrementmtc command (increments the mtc counter by 1), the format of the mtc counter (\themtc), the counter minitocdepth, initialized to 2, for the depth of a minitoc (analog to the standard tocdepth counter).

W0003

```
\def\The@mtc{\arabic{mtc}}
\def\firstchapteris#1%
  {\mtcPackageWarning[W0003]{minitoc}%
     {\string\firstchapteris \space is an obsolete (ignored)
      \MessageBreak
      command}%
     \@firstchapteris@used@true}
\newcounter{mtc}
\setcounter{mtc}{0}
\newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{mtc}{#1}}
\def\decrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
\def\incrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{+1}}
\gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}
\newcounter{minitocdepth}
\setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}
```

\mtc@rule
\mlf@rule
\mlt@rule
\plf@rule
\plt@rule
\slf@rule
\slt@rule
\mtcindent

We define the horizontal rules to draw before and after minitocs (\mtc@rule), and we copy that definition into analog macros for other kinds of mini-tables. We also set the default value (24pt) of \mtcindent, the indentation for minitocs (both sides). The rules are 0.4pt thick. They are defined via \hrule to stay in vertical mode for the final \kern.

```
\def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule \@width\columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}
\let\mlf@rule\mtc@rule
\let\mlt@rule\mtc@rule
\let\plf@rule\mtc@rule
\let\plt@rule\mtc@rule
\let\slf@rule\mtc@rule
\let\slt@rule\mtc@rule
\mtcindent=24\p@
```

9.32 Font commands for the mini-tables

\mtcfont
\mtcSfont
\mtcSSfont
\mtcSSSfont
\mtcPfont
\mtcSPfont
\mlffont
\mlfSfont
\mltfont
\mltSfont
\mtifont

We define these commands with full NFSS [291] descriptions. These definitions are effective if \chapter is defined. The fonts for titles are also defined here. See also the \mtcsetfont macro (section 9.67.2 on page 377) and the \mtcsettitlefont macro later (section 9.67.3 on page 381).

```
\def\mtcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\def\mtcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\let\mtcSSfont\mtcfont \let\mtcSSSfont\mtcfont
\let\mtcPfont\mtcfont  \let\mtcSPfont\mtcfont
\let\mlffont\mtcfont   \let\mlfSfont\mtcfont
\let\mltfont\mtcfont   \let\mltSfont\mtcfont
\def\mtifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

\coffeefont

And \coffeefont is used for "coffee breaks ☕" in the minutes package [300].

```
\def\coffeefont{\small\rmfamily\slshape\mdseries}
```

9.33 Internal commands to position the mini-table titles

\df@mtitc
\df@mtilf
\df@mtilt
\do@mtitc
\do@mtilf
\do@mtilt

The commands \miniXXX and \dominiXXX accept an optional argument to left justify, center, right justify or omit the title of the chapter-level mini-tables. By default, these titles are left justified. The choice made in a \dominiXXX command is global and memorized in \df@mtitc, \df@mtilf or \df@mtilt; the choice made in a \miniXXX command is local and stored in \do@mtitc, \do@mtilf or \do@mtilt. See the \minitoc@ macro later (section 9.35.1 on the following page). An empty title needs a vertical correction (Frank Mittelbach).

\c@mti
\l@mti
\r@mti
\e@mti
\n@mti

Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles:

```
\def\c@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\def\l@mti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
\def\r@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
\def\e@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
\def\n@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
```

\l@mti
\do@mtitc
\df@mtitc
\do@mtilf
\df@mtilf
\do@mtilt
\df@mtilt

Default: titles on left:

```
\let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\let\df@mtitc\l@mti
\let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\let\df@mtilf\l@mti
```

```
\let\do@mtilt\l@mti
\let\df@mtilt\l@mti
```

9.34 The mtc@verse environment

mtc@verse
\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc
\\
\list
\itemsep
\itemindent
\listparindent
\topsep
\parsep
\mtcindent

Each minitoc is placed inside a mtc@verse environment. This environment is analog to the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: \mtc@verse and \endmtc@verse. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) \\, then call \list{} and set some dimensions like \itemsep, \itemindent, \listparindent, \topsep. \parsep is set to zero if the tight option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). \parskip is set to zero if the k-tight option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). Both margins are set to \mtcindent. \endmtc@verse terminates the list and discourages a page break. The mtc@verse environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like \mtcoffset).

```
\def\mtc@verse#1{\let\\=\@centercr
  \list{}{%
     \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@ \partopsep=\z@
     \listparindent=\itemindent \topsep=1ex
     \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
     \leftmargin=\mtcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin
     \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+#1}%
     \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-#1}%
  }%
  \item[]}
\def\endmtc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}
```

9.35 The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands

These three commands are very similar, with only cosmetic differences.

9.35.1 The \minitoc command

\minitoc
\chapter

The \minitoc command must be used after \chapter if you need a minitoc (no automatic minitoc).

\dominitoc
\minitoc

This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a \dominitoc command. The letter "d" represents this default value. \dominitoc has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of \minitoc.

The default value of the optional argument of the \dominitoc command is "l". It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (l) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of \dominitoc, or locally via the optional argument of \minitoc.

\minitoc
\minitoc@
\@ifnextchar

So we define \minitoc with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call the true code in the \minitoc@ macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the \@ifnextchar trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
\def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\minitoc@}{\minitoc@[d]}}
```

The real code of \minitoc is in \minitoc@, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

\if@minitoc@used@

First, we set the global flag \@minitoc@used@true to note that \minitoc has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.81.2.2 on page 424).

```
\def\minitoc@[#1]{%
\global\@minitoc@used@true
```

\@tocfile
\if@mtc@longext@

The name of the file containing the minitoc is constructed from \jobname and a suffix \@tocfile, which is .mtc (long extensions) or .M (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minitoc.

```
\if@mtc@longext@
   \def\@tocfile{mtc\The@mtc}%
\else
   \def\@tocfile{M\The@mtc}%
\fi
```

\mtc@CkFile
\if@mtc@FE
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@

Then we test (via \mtc@CkFile) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minitoc has been requested). I0006

```
      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
      \if@mtc@FE
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
         {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
      \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true
      \else
```

\thispageminitocstyle

We call \thispageminitocstyle to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minitoc). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minitoc.

```
        \thispageminitocstyle
%%        \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}%
```

\beforeminitoc
samepage
\do@mtitc
\e@mti
\n@mti
\c@mti
\l@mti
\r@mti
\df@mtic
\mtc@CkStr
\mtctitle
\if@mtc@FE
\mtcfont
\mtifont
\mtc@rule
\columnwidth
tabular

We call \beforeminitoc, then begin a samepage environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minitoc) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (\mtifont), then the top rule of the minitoc (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to \mtcfont.

```
        \beforeminitoc
        \relax\begin{samepage}%
        \if #1e\let\do@mtitc\e@mti
         \else\if #1n\let\do@mtitc\n@mti
         \else\if #1c\let\do@mtitc\c@mti
         \else\if #1l\let\do@mtitc\l@mti
         \else\if #1r\let\do@mtitc\r@mti
         \else\if #1d\let\do@mtitc\df@mtitc
        \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
        \mtc@CkStr{\mtctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtitc\e@mti\relax\fi
        \raggedright
        \parskip=\z@%
        \reset@font\mtcfont%
        \parindent=\z@%
        \nopagebreak[4]%
        \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
        \par\noindent %%
        \ifx\mtc@rule\relax
         \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
         \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\
         \end{tabular}%
        \else
         \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
         \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\\hline
         \end{tabular}%
        \fi
```

\mtc@zrule
\mtc@BBR
\mtcindent
\mtcoffset
mtc@verse

We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an mtc@verse environment:

```
        \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
        \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
        \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
        \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
        \begin{mtc@verse}{\mtcoffset}%
```

\c@tocdepth
\c@minitocdepth
\\
\mtc@BBR

We force the effective depth of the mini-table (\c@tocdepth) to the required depth (\c@minitocdepth), so the printing is done inside the mtc@verse environment, where tocdepth has been forced to minitocdepth, to print only the entries whose level is low enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative indentation.

```
3166        \c@tocdepth=\c@minitocdepth
3167        \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

\mtc@pgno
\@dottedtocline
\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\mtc@setform
\openminitoc
\ifinminitoc
\closeminitoc
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut

We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minitoc by inputing the minitoc file. But before reading the minitoc file, we must call the hook macro (asked for by Donald Arseneau for his notoccite package [14]) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile and the macro \mtc@setform which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some \mtcsetformat commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions. The "open" and "close" features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```
3168 \begingroup
3169   \makeatletter
3170   \@ifundefined{mtc@pgno}%
3171   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3172   \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3173   \mtc@setform%
3174   \openminitoc \global\inminitoctrue
3175   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3176   \global\inminitocfalse\closeminitoc
3177   \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
3178   \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3179   \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

mtc@verse
\mtc@bottom@rule
\\
samepage
\afterminitoc

We close the mtc@verse environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break), then close the samepage environment, and call \afterminitoc. The blank line (\\) is essential.

```
3180        \end{mtc@verse}%
3181        \kernafterminitoc
3182        \nopagebreak[4]\mtc@bottom@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
3183        \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3184        \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminitoc\fi}
```

\mtc@bottom@rule
\mtc@rule
\columnwidth

And we define the bottom rule for a minitoc, with some space under the minitoc:

```
3185 \def\mtc@bottom@rule{%
3186   \ifx\mtc@rule\relax\relax\else
3187       \vskip -2.5ex
3188         \rule[2.4\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}\fi}
```

9.35.2 The \minilof command

\minilof The \minilof command is very similar to the \minitoc command.

\minilof \chapter The \minilof command must be used after \chapter if you need a minilof (no automatic minilof).

\dominilof \minilof This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a \dominilof command. The letter "d" represents this default value. \dominilof has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of \minilof. The default value of the optional argument of the \dominilof command is "l". It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (l) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of \dominilof, or locally via the optional argument of \minilof.

\minilof \minilof@ \@ifnextchar So we define \minilof with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call the true code in the \minilof@ macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the \@ifnextchar trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
\def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[{\minilof@}{\minilof@[d]}}
```

The real code of \minilof is in \minilof@, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

\if@minilof@used@ First, we set the global flag \@minilof@used@true to note that \minilof has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.81.2.2 on page 424).

```
\def\minilof@[#1]{%
\global\@minilof@used@true
```

\@tocfile \if@mtc@longext@ The name of the file containing the minilof is constructed from \jobname and a suffix \@tocfile, which is .mlf (long extensions) or .F (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilof.

```
\if@mtc@longext@%
   \def\@tocfile{mlf\The@mtc}%
\else
   \def\@tocfile{F\The@mtc}%
\fi
```

\mtc@CkFile
\if@mtc@FE
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@

Then we test (via \mtc@CkFile) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilof has been requested). I0006

```
\mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
\if@mtc@FE
\mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
   {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
\@mtc@empty@minilof@true
\else
```

\thispageminilofstyle

We call \thispageminilofstyle to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilof). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilof.

```
\thispageminilofstyle
%%   \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}%
```

\beforeminilof
samepage
\do@mtitc
\e@mti
\n@mti
\c@mti
\l@mti
\r@mti
\df@mtic
\mtc@CkStr
\mtctitle
\if@mtc@FE
\mlffont
\mtifont
\mlf@rule
\columnwidth
tabular

We call \beforeminilof, then begin a samepage environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilof) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (\mtifont), then the top rule of the minilof (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to \mlffont.

```
\beforeminilof
\relax\begin{samepage}%
\if #1e\let\do@mtilf\e@mti
\else\if #1n\let\do@mtilf\n@mti
\else\if #1c\let\do@mtilf\c@mti
\else\if #1l\let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\else\if #1r\let\do@mtilf\r@mti
\else\if #1d\let\do@mtilf\df@mtilf
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\mtc@CkStr{\mlftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilf\e@mti\relax\fi
\raggedright
\parskip=\z@
\reset@font\mlffont
\parindent=\z@
\nopagebreak[4]%
\kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\par\noindent
\ifx\mlf@rule\relax
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\
\end{tabular}%
\else
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\\hline
\end{tabular}%
\fi
```

\mtc@zrule
\mtc@BBR
\mtcindent
\mlfoffset
mtc@verse

We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an mtc@verse environment:

```
\nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
\leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
\itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
\labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
\begin{mtc@verse}{\mlfoffset}%
```

\c@lofdepth
\c@minilofdepth
\\
\mtc@BBR

We force the effective depth of the mini-table (\c@tocdepth) to the required depth (\c@minilofdepth), so the printing is done inside the mtc@verse environment, where tocdepth has been forced to minilofdepth, to print only the entries whose level is low enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative indentation.

```
\@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
  {\c@lofdepth=\c@minilofdepth
 \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
 \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

\mtc@pgno
\@dottedtocline
\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\mlf@setform
\ifinminilof
\openminilof
\closeminilof
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut

We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilof by inputing the minilof file. But before reading the minilof file, we must call the hook macro (asked for by Donald Arseneau for his notoccite package [14]) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile and the macro \mlf@setform which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some \mtcsetformat commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions. The "open" and "close" features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```
\begingroup
  \makeatletter
  \@ifundefined{mlf@pgno}%
  {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
  \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
  \mlf@setform
  \global\openminilof\inminiloftrue
  \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
  \global\inminiloffalse\closeminilof
  \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
  \leavevmode\mtc@strut
  \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

mtc@verse
\mtc@bottom@rule
\\
samepage
\afterminilof

We close the mtc@verse environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break), then close the samepage environment, and call \afterminilof. The blank line (\\) is essential.

```
\end{mtc@verse}%
```

```
3253        \kernafterminilof
3254        \nopagebreak[4]\mlf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
3255        \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3256        \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilof\fi}%
```

9.35.3 The \minilot command

\minilot The \minilot command is absolutely similar to the \minilof command:

\minilot \chapter The \minilot command must be used after \chapter if you need a minilot (no automatic minilot).

\dominilot \minilot This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a \dominilot command. The letter "d" represents this default value. \dominilot has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of \minilot. The default value of the optional argument of the \dominilot command is "l". It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (l) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of \dominilot, or locally via the optional argument of \minilot.

\minilot \minilot@ \@ifnextchar So we define \minilot with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call the true code in the \minilot@ macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the \@ifnextchar trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3257 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{\minilot@}{\minilot@[d]}}
```

The real code of \minilot is in \minilot@, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

\if@minilot@used@ First, we set the global flag \@minilot@used@true to note that \minilot has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.81.2.2 on page 424).

```
3258 \def\minilot@[#1]{%
3259 \global\@minilot@used@true
```

\@tocfile \if@mtc@longext@ The name of the file containing the minilot is constructed from \jobname and a suffix \@tocfile, which is .mlt (long extensions) or .T (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilot.

```
3260 \if@mtc@longext@%
3261    \def\@tocfile{mlt\The@mtc}%
```

```
\else
   \def\@tocfile{T\The@mtc}%
\fi
```

\mtc@CkFile
\if@mtc@FE
\if@mtc@empty@minilot@

Then we test (via \mtc@CkFile) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilot has been requested). I0006

```
      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
      \if@mtc@FE
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
         {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
      \@mtc@empty@minilot@true
      \else
```

\thispageminilotstyle

We call \thispageminilotstyle to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilot). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilot.

```
      \thispageminilotstyle
%%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlttitle}}%
```

\beforeminilot
samepage
\do@mtitc
\e@mti
\n@mti
\c@mti
\l@mti
\r@mti
\df@mtic
\mtc@CkStr
\mtctitle
\if@mtc@FE
\mltfont
\mtifont
\mlt@rule
\columnwidth
tabular

We call \beforeminilot, then begin a samepage environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilot) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (\mtifont), then the top rule of the minilot (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to \mltfont.

```
      \beforeminilot
      \relax\begin{samepage}%
      \if #1e\let\do@mtilt\e@mti
      \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilt\n@mti
      \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilt\c@mti
      \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilt\l@mti
      \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilt\r@mti
      \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilt\df@mtilt
      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
      \mtc@CkStr{\mlttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilt\e@mti\relax\fi
      \raggedright
      \parskip=\z@%
      \reset@font\mltfont%
      \parindent=\z@%
      \nopagebreak[4]%
      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
      \par\noindent
      \ifx\mlt@rule\relax
      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mlttitle}\\
```

```
3293        \end{tabular}%
3294      \else
3295        \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3296        \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mlttitle}\\\hline
3297        \end{tabular}%
3298      \fi
```

\mtc@zrule
\mtc@BBR
\mtcindent
\mltoffset
mtc@verse

We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```
3299        \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
3300        \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
3301        \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3302        \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3303        \begin{mtc@verse}{\mltoffset}%
```

\c@lotdepth
\c@minilotdepth
\\
\mtc@BBR

We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@lotdepth`) to the required depth (`\c@minilotdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where `lotdepth` has been forced to `minilotdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative indentation.

```
3304        \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
3305        {\c@lotdepth=\c@minilotdepth
3306         \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
3307         \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

\mtc@pgno
\@dottedtocline
\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\mlt@setform
\ifinminilot
\openminilot
\closeminilot
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut

We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilot by inputing the minilot file. But before reading the minilot file, we must call the hook macro (asked for by Donald Arseneau for his notoccite package [14]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the macro `\mlt@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions. The "open" and "close" features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```
3308 \begingroup
3309   \makeatletter
3310   \@ifundefined{mlt@pgno}%
3311   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3312   \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3313   \mlt@setform
3314   \global\openminilot\inminilottrue
3315   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3316   \global\inminilotfalse\closeminilot
3317   \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
3318   \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3319   \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

mtc@verse
\mtc@bottom@rule
\\
samepage
\afterminilot

We close the mtc@verse environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break), then close the samepage environment, and call \afterminilot. The blank line (\\) is essential.

```
\end{mtc@verse}%
\kernafterminilot
\nopagebreak[4]\mlt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
\vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
\par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilot\fi}%
```

9.36 Patching the \chapter command, continued

\l@xchapter
\@dottedtocline
\l@chapter
\xchapter

First, we define \l@xchapter which is like \l@chapter, but with a huge depth, to inhibit its printing (except if you cheat):

```
\def\l@xchapter{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1em}{2.3em}}
\def\xchapter{xchapter}
```

\@chapter
\sv@chapter
\addcontentsline
\ignorespaces

Then we patch \@chapter (the non-starred branch of \chapter) to add pseudo-chapter entries in the LOF and the LOT (these entries will be used by the \dominiXXX commands to split the LOF and the LOT into slices).

```
\let\sv@chapter\@chapter
\def\@chapter[#1]#2{\sv@chapter[{#1}]{#2}\relax%
   \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{#1}%
   \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{#1}%
   \ignorespaces}
```

\mtc@schapter
\@schapter
\addtocontents
\chapterbegin
\chapterend

We also patch \@schapter (the starred branch of \chapter) to add marks in the TOC to delimit chapters; these marks will be used by the \dominiXXX commands to take slices from the LOF and the LOT; as they are defined as \relax, they should not perturbate other packages.

```
\let\mtc@schapter\@schapter
\def\@schapter{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\chapterend}\mtc@schapter}
\def\@schapter{\addtocontents{@@@}{\protect\chapterbegin}\mtc@schapter}
\let\chapterbegin\relax
\let\chapterend\relax
```

9.37 The \addstarred... commands

\addstarredsection
\addstarredchapter
\addstarredpart
\chapter
\section
\part
\addst@rred

If the command \chapter is undefined, we define the command \addstarredsection (only if \section is defined). If the command \chapter is defined, we define the command \addstarredchapter. If the command \part is defined, we define the command \addstarredpart. We use the utility command \addst@rred defined in section 9.31 on page 295.

```
\@ifundefined{chapter}%
   {\@ifundefined{section}%
      {}{\def\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}}}%
   {\def\addstarredchapter#1{\addst@rred{chapter}{#1}}}
\@ifundefined{part}%
   {}{\def\addstarredpart#1{\addst@rred{part}{#1}}}
```

9.38 TOC entries without leaders

\@Undottedtocline
\coffeefont

We define two internal macros to format TOC entries without leaders. The macro \@Undottedtocline prints no page number, but \@Undottedtoclinep prints it.

```
\def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
  \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
    \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
    {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
     \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
     \interlinepenalty\@M
     \leavevmode
     \@tempdima #3\relax
     \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
     {\coffeefont #4}\nobreak \nobreak\null
    \par}%
  \fi}
```

\@Undottedtoclinep

The same but with the page number:

```
\def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{%
  \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
    \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
    {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
     \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
     \interlinepenalty\@M
     \leavevmode
     \@tempdima #3\relax
     \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
     {#4}\nobreak \hfill \nobreak\null
     \hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hfil\normalfont \normalcolor #5}%
```

```
3366     \par}%
3367   \fi}
```

9.39 Mini-tables with or without leaders

\minitoc@ \minilof@ \minilot@ \@dottedtocline \@Undottedtoclinep \sv@minitoc@ \sv@minilof@ \sv@minilot@

This code sets the flag to false, then patches each mini-table command (its internal part). We alter the commands \minitoc@, \minilof@, etc., to test the flag \ifundottedmtc and, if true, replace locally \@dottedtocline by its dotless version \@Undottedtoclinep. Of course, we must also test the availability of the \chapter, \part and \section commands, to avoid to define many unnecessary commands.

```
3368 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
3369    \let\sv@minitoc@\minitoc@
3370    \def\minitoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3371       \sv@minitoc@[#1]}}%
3372    \let\sv@minilof@\minilof@
3373    \def\minilof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3374       \sv@minilof@[#1]}}%
3375    \let\sv@minilot@\minilot@
3376    \def\minilot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3377       \sv@minilot@[#1]}}}
```

\sv@parttoc@ \sv@partlof@ \sv@partlot@ \ifundottedmtc \parttoc@ \partlof@ \partlot@

For the part level:

```
3378 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
3379    \let\sv@parttoc@\parttoc@
3380    \def\parttoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3381       \sv@parttoc@[#1]}}%
3382    \let\sv@partlof@\partlof@
3383    \def\partlof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3384       \sv@partlof@[#1]}}%
3385    \let\sv@partlot@\partlot@
3386    \def\partlot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3387       \sv@partlot@[#1]}}}
```

\sv@secttoc@ \sv@sectlof@ \sv@sectlot@ \ifundottedmtc \secttoc@ \sectlof@ \sectlot@

For the section level:

```
3388 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
3389    \@ifundefined{section}{}{%
3390       \let\sv@secttoc@\secttoc@
3391       \def\secttoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3392          \sv@secttoc@[#1]}}%
3393       \let\sv@sectlof@\sectlof@
3394       \def\sectlof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3395          \sv@sectlof@[#1]}}%
```

```
\let\sv@sectlot@\sectlot@
\def\sectlot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
   \sv@sectlot@[#1]}}}{}
```

9.40 The \dominitoc command and its siblings

\dominitoc
\dominilof
\dominilot
\contentsline
\chapbegin
\starchapter

The three commands \dominitoc, \dominilof and \dominilot are, of course, very similar. They take the \jobname.toc file (resp. the \jobname.lof and \jobname.lot files) produced by the previous LaTeX run and cut it in slices (one slice per chapter or starred chapter) into the \jobname.mtc⟨*N*⟩ files (resp. the \jobname.mlf⟨*N*⟩ and \jobname.mlt⟨*N*⟩ files), using specific lines in the \jobname.toc (resp. \jobname.lof and \jobname.lot) file. These lines are essentially chapter-level entry commands (like \contentsline{chapter}..., \contentsline{xchapter}..., \contentsline{starchapter}..., \chapbegin) delimiting chapters in the TOC (or in the LOF or the LOT). Analog part-level lines delimit parts, hence also chapters.

\dominitoc
\dominitoc@
\@@dominitoc
\if@dominitoc@used@

As \dominitoc has an optional argument, whose default value is "l" (left), it calls \dominitoc@ with a argument delimited by brackets.

The macros are \dominitoc (user interface), which calls \dominitoc@[l] (or with the optional argument of \dominitoc). Then \dominitoc@[l] processes its argument and calls \@@dominitoc. \@@dominitoc calls \@dominitoc (passing \jobname as argument) then close the minitoc file written. \@dominitoc reset to zero the counter of mini-tables, calls \MTC@next#1.toc (where #1 is the value of \jobname), then reset again to zero the counter of mini-tables. Each call to \dominitoc@ (i.e., to \dominitoc) sets the flag \@dominitoc@used@true. This will be used later for a hint (which detects that you have correctly called \minitoc *after* \dominitoc and that both or neither have been called). See section 9.81.2.2 on page 424. The code is similar for \dominilof and \dominilot.

\dominitoc
\@dominitoc
\MTC@next
\@ifnextchar

The \dominitoc command extracts information from the .toc file and create the minitocs files, with the adequate extension.

```
\def\@dominitoc#1{{%
  \makeatletter
  \setcounter{mtc}{0}
  \MTC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
\def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dominitoc@}{\dominitoc@[l]}}
```

\dominilof
\@dominilof
\MLF@next
\@ifnextchar

The \dominilof command extracts information from the .lof file and create the minilofs files, with the adequate extension.

```
\def\@dominilof#1{{%
```

```
  \makeatletter
  \setcounter{mtc}{0}
  \MLF@next#1.lof\relax\\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
\def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilof@}{\dominilof@[l]}}
```

\dominilot
\@dominilot
\MLT@next
\@ifnextchar

The \dominilot command extracts information from the .lot file and create the minilots files, with the adequate extension.

```
\def\@dominilot#1{{%
  \makeatletter
  \setcounter{mtc}{0}
  \MLT@next#1.lot\relax\\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
\def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilot@}{\dominilot@[l]}}
```

\if@dominitoc@used@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtitc
\e@mti
\n@mti
\c@mti
\l@mti
\r@mti
\@@dominitoc

Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minitoc title; a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045

```
\def\dominitoc@[#1]{%
\if@mtc@hints@
   \if@dominitoc@used@
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
        {The \string\dominitoc \space command
         \MessageBreak
         has been invoked more than once
         \MessageBreak}
   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
\fi
\global\@dominitoc@used@true
\if #1e\let\df@mtitc\e@mti%
\else\if #1n\let\df@mtitc\n@mti%
\else\if #1c\let\df@mtitc\c@mti%
\else\if #1l\let\df@mtitc\l@mti%
\else\if #1r\let\df@mtitc\r@mti%
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
\@@dominitoc}
```

\if@dominilof@used@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtilf
\e@mti
\n@mti
\c@mti
\l@mti
\r@mti
\@@dominilof

Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilof title; a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045

```
\def\dominilof@[#1]{%
\if@mtc@hints@
   \if@dominilof@used@
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
        {The \string\dominilof \space command
         \MessageBreak
         has been invoked more than once
         \MessageBreak}
```

```
    \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
    \fi
\fi
\global\@dominilof@used@true
\if #1e\let\df@mtilf\e@mti%
\else\if #1n\let\df@mtilf\n@mti%
\else\if #1c\let\df@mtilf\c@mti%
\else\if #1l\let\df@mtilf\l@mti%
\else\if #1r\let\df@mtilf\r@mti%
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
\@@dominilof}
```

\if@dominilot@used@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtilt
\e@mti
\n@mti
\c@mti
\l@mti
\r@mti
\@@dominilot

Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilot title; a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045

```
\def\dominilot@[#1]{%
\if@mtc@hints@
    \if@dominilot@used@
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
         {The \string\dominilot \space command
          \MessageBreak
          has been invoked more than once
          \MessageBreak}
    \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
    \fi
\fi
\global\@dominilot@used@true
\if #1e\let\df@mtilt\e@mti%
\else\if #1n\let\df@mtilt\n@mti%
\else\if #1c\let\df@mtilt\c@mti%
\else\if #1l\let\df@mtilt\l@mti%
\else\if #1r\let\df@mtilt\r@mti%
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
\@@dominilot}
```

\@@dominitoc
\@@dominilof
\@@dominilot
\tf@mtc

These macros invoke the \@domini... macros to create the mini-table file, then close the file descriptor.

```
\def\@@dominitoc{\@dominitoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
\def\@@dominilof{\@dominilof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
\def\@@dominilot{\@dominilot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
```

9.40.1 Analysis and splitting of the TOC file

This is done via a loop managed by the following macros [8]:

\MTC@next
\MTC@list
\MTC@loop

Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```
\def\MTC@next#1\relax#2\\{%
  \edef\MTC@list{#2}%
  \MTC@loop{#1}%
}
```

\MTC@toc
\MTC@list
\MTC@explist

Check if the list is empty:

```
\def\MTC@toc{%
  \ifx\MTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MTC@explist\fi
}
```

\MTC@contentsline
\arabic
\chapter
\themtc
\tf@mtc

The macro \MTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects interesting keywords. If \chapter is found, the mtc counter (which simulates the chapter counter, but is absolute) is incremented and a new minitoc file is created.

```
\def\MTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
  \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
    \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

\if@mtc@longext@
\themtc
\mtcname
\tf@mtc
\closeout
\openout

We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it (after closing the file descriptor): I0033

```
    \if@mtc@longext@%
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
      \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
    \else
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
      \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
    \fi
    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
  \fi
```

[8] This code is derived from the xr package [114], by David P. Carlisle, with his permission. Some modifications were made by Heiko Oberdiek, Didier Verna, and Bernd Jaehne for the support of hyperref, essentially by adding an argument to some macros, to use the hyperlink argument in the contents lines.

\if@mtc@longext@ \themtc \mtcname \tf@mtc \closeout \openout

We need a similar code to detect TOC entries for appendices in the memoir class [9]: I0033

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix
  \stepcounter{mtc}%
  \if@mtc@longext@%
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
       {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
    \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
  \else
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
       {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
    \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
  \fi
  \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
\fi
```

\mtc@toks

Now, we filter the relevant contents lines, the token register \mtc@toks is used as a verbatim memory.

```
\mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
```

\MTC@WriteContentsline \section \subsection \subsubsection \paragraph \subparagraph

Each interesting contents line is copied, with a font command added before it. We begin with the standard sectionning commands, below \chapter:

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
```

\coffee \MTC@WriteCoffeeline

A coffee break contents line ☕ is written for \coffee:

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
  \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
\fi
```

[9] Tim Arnold has signaled the problem; thanks!

\starchapter
\stepcounter
\if@mtc@longext@
\mtcname
\themtc
\tf@mtc
\closeout
\openout

If it is \starchapter (for a starred chapter), we increment the mtc counter, build a new minitoc file name, close the file descriptor and open it with this new file. I0033

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
  \stepcounter{mtc}%
  \if@mtc@longext@
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
       {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
    \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
  \else
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
       {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
    \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
  \fi
  \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
\fi
```

\starsection
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection
\starparagraph
\starsubparagraph

For starred sectionning commands lower than \chapter, a contents line is written into the minitoc file, with a font command added:

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
}
```

\MTC@explist
\MTC@next
\MTC@list

The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; it expands the list of entries and call \MTC@next to process the first one:

```
\def\MTC@explist{\expandafter\MTC@next\MTC@list\\}
```

\MTC@loop
\openin
\@inputcheck
\MTC@toc
\MTC@read

If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list. W0010 I0024

```
\def\MTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
```

```
\ifeof\@inputcheck
  \mtcPackageWarning[W0010]{minitoc}%
     {No file #1.
      \MessageBreak
      MINITOCS NOT PREPARED}%
  \expandafter\MTC@toc
\else
  \mtcPackageInfo[I0024]{minitoc}{PREPARING MINITOCS FROM #1}%
  \expandafter\MTC@read
\fi
}
```

\MTC@read
\read
\@inputcheck
\MTC@line

Read the next entry of the `.toc` file.

```
\def\MTC@read{%
  \read\@inputcheck to\MTC@line
```

\MTC@test
\MTC@line
\MTC@

The `.....` make sure that `\MTC@test` has enough arguments:

```
  \expandafter\MTC@test\MTC@line.....\MTC@%
}%
```

\MTC@test
\MTC@contentsline

The `\MTC@test` macro finds the "interesting" commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit chapters[10]:

\MTC@test
\MTC@contentsline
\contentsline
\mtc@string
\@input
\MTC@list
\chapterend
\closeout
\tf@mtc
\openout
\chapterbegin
\addtocounter
\MTC@toc
\MTC@read

Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is `\@input`, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

```
\long\def\MTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MTC@{%
  \ifx#1\contentsline
    \let\mtc@string\string
    \MTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
    \let\mtc@string\relax
  \else\ifx#1\@input
    \edef\MTC@list{\MTC@list#2\relax}%
  \else\ifx#1\chapterend
    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
  \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
    \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
  \fi\fi\fi\fi
```

[10] The macro `\MTC@test` has been patched to call `\MTC@contentsline` with four parameters instead of three (thanks to Heiko Oberdiek, Didier Verna, Bernd Jaehne and A. J. "Tony" Roberts). The same remark applies to similar macros.

```
  \ifeof\@inputcheck
    \expandafter\MTC@toc
  \else
    \expandafter\MTC@read
  \fi
}%
```

9.41 Mini-lists of figures

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

9.41.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file

\MLF@next
\MLF@list
\MLF@loop

This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:

Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```
\def\MLF@next#1\relax#2\\{%
  \edef\MLF@list{#2}%
  \MLF@loop{#1}}
```

\MLF@lof
\MLF@list
\MLF@explist

Checks if the list is empty:

```
\def\MLF@lof{%
  \ifx\MLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLF@explist\fi}
```

\MLF@contentsline
\arabic
\xchapter

The macro \MLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If \xchapter is found, the counter mtc is incremented and a new minilof file is created.

```
\def\MLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
  \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
    \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

\if@mtc@longext@
\themtc
\mlfname
\closeout
\tf@mtc
\openout

The name of the minilof file is built from \jobname and a long or short extension: I0033

```
    \if@mtc@longext@%
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
```

```
3607          {Writing\space\jobname.mlf\themtc\@gobble}
3608        \def\mlfname{\jobname.mlf\themtc}%
3609      \else
3610        \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
3611          {Writing\space\jobname.F\themtc\@gobble}
3612        \def\mlfname{\jobname.F\themtc}%
3613      \fi
3614      \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3615      \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mlfname
3616    \fi
```

\figure
\subfigure
\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline

The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. If we found a \figure entry, we copy it into the minilof file:

```
3617    \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
3618      \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3619      \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlf}{#3}{#4}%
3620    \fi
3621    \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
3622      \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3623      \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlfS}{#3}{#4}%
3624    \fi
3625  }
```

\MLF@explist
\MLF@next
\MLF@list

The loop to read the LOF file; it expands the list of entries and calls \MLF@next to process the first one:

```
3626  \def\MLF@explist{\expandafter\MLF@next\MLF@list\\}
```

\MLF@loop
\openin
\@inputcheck
\MLF@lof
\MLF@read

And now, we scan the .lof file:

W0008
I0034

```
3627  \def\MLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
3628    \ifeof\@inputcheck
3629      \mtcPackageWarning[W0008]{minitoc}%
3630         {No file #1.
3631          \MessageBreak
3632          MINILOFS NOT PREPARED}%
3633      \expandafter\MLF@lof
3634    \else
3635      \mtcPackageInfo[I0034]{minitoc}%
3636         {PREPARING MINILOFS FROM #1}%
3637      \expandafter\MLF@read\fi}
```

\MLF@read
\read
\@inputcheck

Read the next entry in the .lof file:

```
\def\MLF@read{%
  \read\@inputcheck to\MLF@line
```

\MLF@line
\MLF@test
\MLF@

The ..... make sure that \MLF@test has enough arguments:

```
  \expandafter\MLF@test\MLF@line.....\MLF@%
  }%
```

\MLF@test

The \MLF@test macro finds the "interesting" commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit chapters.

\contentsline
\mtc@string
\MLF@contentsline
\@input
\MLF@list
\chapterend
\closeout
\tf@mtc
\openout
\chapterbegin
\addtocounter
\MLF@lof
\MLF@read

Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

```
\long\def\MLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLF@{%
  \ifx#1\contentsline
    \let\mtc@string\string
    \MLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
    \let\mtc@string\relax
  \else\ifx#1\@input
     \edef\MLF@list{\MLF@list#2\relax}%
  \else\ifx#1\chapterend
     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
  \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
    \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
  \fi\fi\fi\fi
  \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLF@lof
  \else\expandafter\MLF@read\fi}%
```

9.42 Mini-lists of tables

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

9.42.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file

\MLT@next
\MLT@list
\MLT@loop

This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:

Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```
\def\MLT@next#1\relax#2\\{%
  \edef\MLT@list{#2}%
  \MLT@loop{#1}}
```

\MLT@lot
\MLT@list
\MLT@explist

Checks if the list is empty:

```
\def\MLT@lot{%
  \ifx\MLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLT@explist\fi}
```

\MLT@contentsline
\arabic
\xchapter

The macro \MLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If \xchapter is found, the mtc counter is incremented and a new minilot file is created.

```
\def\MLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
  \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
    \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

\if@mtc@longext@
\themtc
\mltname
\closeout
\tf@mtc
\openout

The name of the minilot file it build from \jobname and a long or short extension: I0033

```
    \if@mtc@longext@%
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.mlt\themtc\@gobble}%
      \def\mltname{\jobname.mlt\themtc}%
    \else
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.T\themtc\@gobble}%
      \def\mltname{\jobname.T\themtc}%
    \fi
    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mltname
  \fi
```

\table
\subtable
\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline

The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. If we found a \table entry, we copy it into the minilot file:

```
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
    \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
```

```
    \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlt}{#3}{#4}%
  \fi
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
    \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
    \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mltS}{#3}{#4}%
  \fi
}
```

\MLT@explist
\MLT@next
\MLT@list

The loop to read the LOT file; it expands the list of entries and calls \MLT@next to process the first one:

```
\def\MLT@explist{\expandafter\MLT@next\MLT@list\\}
```

\MLT@loop
\openin
\@inputcheck
\MLT@lot
\MLT@read

And now, we scan the .lot file:

W0009
I0037

```
\def\MLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
  \ifeof\@inputcheck
    \mtcPackageWarning[W0009]{minitoc}%
       {No file #1.
        \MessageBreak
        MINILOTS NOT PREPARED}%
    \expandafter\MLT@lot
  \else
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0037]{minitoc}%
       {PREPARING MINILOTS FROM #1}%
    \expandafter\MLT@read\fi}
```

\MLT@read
\read
\@inputcheck

Read the next entry in the .lot file:

```
\def\MLT@read{%
  \read\@inputcheck to\MLT@line
```

\MLT@line
\MLT@test
\MLT@

The ..... make sure that \MLT@test has enough arguments:

```
  \expandafter\MLT@test\MLT@line.....\MLT@%
  }%
```

\MLT@test

The \MLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit chapters.

\contentsline \mtc@string \MLT@contentsline \@input \MLT@list \chapterend \closeout \tf@mtc \openout \chapterbegin \addtocounter \MLT@lot \MLT@read

Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

```
\long\def\MLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLT@{%
  \ifx#1\contentsline
    \let\mtc@string\string
    \MLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
    \let\mtc@string\relax
  \else\ifx#1\@input
     \edef\MLT@list{\MLT@list#2\relax}%
  \else\ifx#1\chapterend
     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
  \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
    \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
  \fi\fi\fi\fi
  \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLT@lot
  \else\expandafter\MLT@read\fi}%
```

Note that we terminate with a closing brace to end the chapter-level macros (end of the *else* branch of a \@ifundefined{chapter} alternative).

```
}%
```

9.43 Macro to write a contents line

\mtc@dot \MTC@WriteContentsline \mtc@param \write \tf@mtc \@resetfont \mtc@string \contentsline \mtc@toks

The \MTC@WriteContentsline macro makes the definition of \MTC@contentsline shorter. An extra \edef level is removed (Heiko Oberdiek):

The arguments of \MTC@WriteContentsline are:

- #1: the #1 argument of \MTC@contentsline;
- #2: font shorthand $\Longrightarrow$ \csname #2font\endcsname;
- #3: the #3 argument of \MTC@contentsline;
- #4: the #4 argument of \MTC@contentsline (hyperlink).

The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline.

```
\def\mtc@dot{.}
\def\MTC@WriteContentsline#1#2#3#4{%
  \def\mtc@param{#4}%
   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
    {\string\reset@font
```

```
3724      \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
3725      \string\mtc@string
3726      \string\contentsline{#1}%
3727      {\the\mtc@toks}%
3728      {\string\reset@font
3729       \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
3730       \space #3%
3731      }%
3732      \ifx\mtc@dot\mtc@param
3733      \else
3734        {#4}%
3735      \fi
3736     }%
3737   }%
3738 }
```

\MTC@WriteCoffeeline
\write
\tf@mtc
\@resetfont
\coffeefont
\mtc@string
\mtc@toks

And the same for a "coffee" ☕ line. The arguments of the macro \MTC@WriteCoffeeline are:

#1: the #1 argument of \MTC@contentsline;

#2: the #3 argument of \MTC@contentsline.

The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteCoffeeline. Le registre *token* \mtc@toks est utilisé pour passer l'entrée à \MTC@WriteCoffeeline.

```
3739 \def\MTC@WriteCoffeeline#1#2#3{%
3740   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
3741     {\string\reset@font \string\coffeefont \string\mtc@string
3742      {\the\mtc@toks}%
3743      {\string\reset@font \string\coffeefont \space #3%
3744      }%
3745     }%
3746   }%
3747 }
```

9.44 Depth counters for partlofs and partlots

\AtBeginDocument
\newcounter
\setcounter
\c@lofdepth
\c@lotdepth

If the counters lofdepth and lotdepth are defined, we create the corresponding new counters: partlofdepth and partlotdepth. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an \AtBeginDocument block:

```
3748 \AtBeginDocument{%
3749  \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3750    {\newcounter{partlofdepth}\setcounter{partlofdepth}{2}}%
3751  \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
```

```
3752    {\newcounter{partlotdepth}\setcounter{partlotdepth}{2}}%
3753 }%
```

9.45 Part level commands

\xpart
\theptc
\Thepart
\adjustptc
\decrementptc
\incrementptc
\firstpartis
\firstpartis
\if@firstpartis@used@
\newcounter
\setcounter

If \part is defined, we define some utility commands, a counter (ptc) for the parttocs and related commands (\theptc, \Thepart, \adjustptc, \decrementptc, \incrementptc), the obsolete command \firstpartis, and the depth counter parttocdepth.

W0004

```
3754 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
3755 {%
3756 \def\xpart{xpart}
3757 \def\Thepart{\arabic{ptc}}
3758 \def\firstpartis#1%
3759   {\mtcPackageWarning[W0004]{minitoc}%
3760      {\string\firstpartis \space is an obsolete (ignored)
3761       \MessageBreak
3762       command}%
3763      \@firstpartis@used@true}
3764 \newcounter{ptc}
3765 \setcounter{ptc}{0}
3766 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{ptc}{#1}}
3767 \def\decrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
3768 \def\incrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{+1}}
3769 \def\theptc{\arabic{ptc}}
3770 \newcounter{parttocdepth}
3771 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}
```

\ptc@rule
\columnwidth

But, sometimes, we need to make a difference between book/report and article classes (is \chapter defined?), to have a different layout: the definition of \ptc@rule is empty except if \chapter is undefined. By default, there is no rule before/after parttocs, partlofs, and partlots for books. You should redeclare \ptc@rule if you want these rules.

```
3772 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
3773    {\def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}}%
3774    {\let\ptc@rule\relax}
```

\ptcindent

And we declare the default indentation (both sides) of the parttocs:

```
3775 \newlength\ptcindent
3776 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ptcindent=24\p@}{\ptcindent=\z@}
```

9.46 Fonts for the parttocs

\ptcfont \ptcSfont \ptcSSfont \ptcSSSfont \ptcPfont \ptcSPfont \plffont \plfSfont \pltfont \pltSfont \ptifont

We define the fonts for the parttocs. Note that they are larger if \chapter is defined (book/report-like document classes) than when it is not (article-like document classes):

```
\@ifundefined{chapter}{%
   \def\ptcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
   \def\ptcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (sections)
   \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsections)
   \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
   \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
   \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont     % (subparagraphs)
   \let\plffont\ptcfont       % (figures)
   \let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
   \let\pltfont\ptcfont       % (tables)
   \let\pltSfont\ptcfont      % (subtables)
   \def\ptifont{\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
}%
```

\ptcfont \ptcCfont \ptcSfont \ptcSSfont \ptcSSSfont \ptcPfont \ptcSPfont \plffont \plfSfont \pltfont \pltSfont \ptifont

If \chapter is defined, the fonts are larger and \ptcCfont must be defined:

```
{%
   \def\ptcfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
   \def\ptcCfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (chapters)
   \def\ptcSfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}% (sections)
   \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsections)
   \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
   \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
   \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont     % (subparagraphs)
   \let\plffont\ptcfont       % (figures)
   \let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
   \let\pltfont\ptcfont       % (tables)
   \let\pltSfont\ptcfont      % (subtables)
   \def\ptifont{\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
}
```

9.47 Default titles for part-level mini-tables

\parttoc \partlof \partlot

We define the default position, the fonts and the layout for titles of the part-level mini-tables (\parttoc, \partlof and \partlot). This formating is different if \chapter is defined or undefined.

\c@pti
\l@pti
\r@pti
\e@pti
\n@pti

If \chapter is undefined, the definitions are very simple, for centered, flushleft, flushright or empty titles. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank Mittelbach).

```
\@ifundefined{chapter}{%
  \def\c@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
  \def\l@pti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
  \def\r@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
  \def\e@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
  \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}}%
```

\e@pti
\n@pti

But, if \chapter is defined, we must simulate the formatting of a chapter head, which is more complex. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank Mittelbach).

```
{%
\def\e@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}} \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
```

\l@pti
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage
\@afterheading
\ptifont
\@makephead@l
\mtcgapbeforeheads
\mtcgapafterheads

For a title on the left, we must test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\def\l@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makephead@l{#1}]%
    \else \@makephead@l{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\def\@makephead@l#1{%
    \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
    {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
     \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
    }}
```

\r@pti
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage
\@makephead@r
\@afterheading
\ptifont
\mtcgapbeforeheads
\mtcgapafterheads

For a title on the right, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\def\r@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makephead@r{#1}]
    \else \@makephead@r{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\def\@makephead@r#1{%
    \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
    {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
     \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
    }}
```

\c@pti
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage
\@makephead@c
\@afterheading
\ptifont
\mtcgapbeforeheads
\mtcgapafterheads

For a centered title, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\def\c@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makephead@c{#1}]%
    \else \@makephead@c{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\def\@makephead@c#1{%
    \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
    {\parindent \z@ \centering \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
     \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
    }}%
}
```

\l@pti
\do@ptitc
\df@ptitc
\do@ptilf
\df@ptilf
\do@ptilt
\df@ptilt

By default, titles are on left:

```
\let\do@ptitc\l@pti \let\df@ptitc\l@pti
\let\do@ptilf\l@pti \let\df@ptilf\l@pti
\let\do@ptilt\l@pti \let\df@ptilt\l@pti
```

9.48 The ptc@verse environment

ptc@verse
\ptc@verse
\endptc@verse
\\
\@centercr
\list
\itemsep
\itemindent
\listparindent
\topsep
\parsep
\parskip
\partopsep
\ptcindent
\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc

Each parttoc is placed inside a ptc@verse environment. This environment is analog to the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: \ptc@verse and \endptc@verse. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) \\, then call \list{} and set some dimensions like \itemsep, \itemindent, \listparindent, \itemindent, \partopsep, \topsep. \parsep is set to zero if the tight option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). \parskip is set to zero if the k-tight option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). Both margins are set to \ptcindent. \endptc@verse terminates the list and discourages a page break. The ptc@verse environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like \ptcoffset).

```
\def\ptc@verse#1{\let\\=\@centercr
  \list{}{%
     \topsep=1ex \itemsep=\z@   \itemindent=\z@
     \listparindent=\itemindent \partopsep=\z@
     \leftmargin=\ptcindent     \rightmargin=\leftmargin
     \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi
     \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
     \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+#1}
     \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-#1}
     }%
  \item[]}
\def\endptc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}
```

9.49 The part level mini-tables: \parttoc, \partlof, and \partlot

\parttoc
\partlof
\partlot

These commands are essentially similar to the \minitoc command, except that they should be placed after a \part command to produce a parttoc, a partlof or a partlot, and the formatting is different and depends on the availability of the \chapter command (for the fonts and the horizontal rules). The code is very similar. The \partlof and \partlot commands are siblings of the \parttoc command. Note that \parttoc, \partlof and \partlot use page styles, because \beforepart... and \afterpart... commands imply usually a \clear[double]page command, and hence \markboth{...}{...} must be called.

9.49.1 The \parttoc command

\parttoc
\parttoc@
\@ifnextchar

This command must be used after \part if you need a parttoc (no automatic parttoc). First, \parttoc detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \parttoc@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```
\def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\parttoc@}{\parttoc@[d]}}
```

\parttoc@
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@mtc@longext@
\@tocfile
\Thepart

The \parttoc@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@parttoc@used@ (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the parttoc file):

```
\def\parttoc@[#1]{%
\global\@parttoc@used@true
\if@mtc@longext@%
   \def\@tocfile{ptc\Thepart}%
\else
   \def\@tocfile{P\Thepart}%
\fi
```

\mtc@CkFile
\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile

Then, we check the presence of the parttoc file and give a warning if it is not here: I0006

```
      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
      \if@mtc@FE
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
         {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
      \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true
      \else
```

\beforeparttoc

If the parttoc file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, \beforeparttoc, of course:

```
      \beforeparttoc
```

\mtc@markboth
\@mkboth
\thispageparttocstyle
\MakeUppercase
\ptctitle

If \chapter is defined, we just set the page marks with the parttoc title and set the page style:

```
      \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
      \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
      \thispageparttocstyle
      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}}%
```

\do@ptitc
\e@pti
\n@pti
\c@pti
\l@pti
\r@pti
\df@pti
\mtc@CkStr
\ptctitle
\if@mtc@FE
samepage

A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the parttoc title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```
\relax\begin{samepage}%
\if #1e\let\do@ptitc\e@pti
\else\if #1n\let\do@ptitc\n@pti
\else\if #1c\let\do@ptitc\c@pti
\else\if #1l\let\do@ptitc\l@pti
\else\if #1r\let\do@ptitc\r@pti
\else\if #1d\let\do@ptitc\df@ptitc
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\mtc@CkStr{\ptctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptitc\e@pti\relax\fi
```

\raggedright
\parskip
\ptcfont

We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

```
\raggedright \reset@font\ptcfont \parskip=\z@ \parindent=\z@%
\nopagebreak[4]\kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\par\noindent \nopagebreak[4]%
```

\ptc@rule
tabular
\columnwidth
\ptifont
\do@ptitc
\mtc@v
\ptctitle
\hline

The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of the parttoc.

```
\ifx\ptc@rule\relax
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\
\end{tabular}%
\else
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\\hline
\end{tabular}%
\fi
```

\mtc@zrule
\mtc@BBR
\ptcindent

Then, we adjust the position close the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```
\nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
\leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
\itemindent=\z@ \labelwidth=\z@ \labelsep=\z@ \listparindent=\z@%
```

ptc@verse
\ptcoffset
\c@tocdepth
\c@parttocdepth
\mtc@BBR

We enter in a ptc@verse environment to format the parttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to parttocdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

```
3892        \begin{ptc@verse}{\ptcoffset}\c@tocdepth=\c@parttocdepth%
3893        \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

\ptc@pgno
\@dottedtocline
\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\ptc@setform
\ifinparttoc
\openparttoc
\closeparttoc
\@tocfile
\mtc@strut
ptc@verse

If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its undotted version. For chapter-level entries, we must invoke \l@chapter ignoring the page number argument. A hook (redefinissable command) is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat are activated via \ptc@setform. Then the parttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the ptc@verse environment is terminated. The "open" and "close" features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```
3894 \begingroup
3895   \makeatletter
3896   \@ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
3897     {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3898   \@ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
3899     {\let\l@chapter@SVPN\l@chapter%
3900      \def\l@chapter##1##2{\l@chapter@SVPN{##1}{\hbox{}}}}{}
3901   \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3902   \ptc@setform
3903   \openparttoc\global\inparttoctrue
3904   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3905   \global\inparttocfalse\closeparttoc
3906   \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
3907   \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3908   \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
3909         \end{ptc@verse}%
```

\ptc@rule
\mtc@zrule
samepage
\afterparttoc

The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if \chapter is not defined), and \afterparttoc.

```
3910         \kernafterparttoc
3911         \nopagebreak[4]\ptc@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
3912         \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3913         \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
3914         \afterparttoc\fi}%
```

9.49.2 The \partlof command

\partlof
\partlof@
\@ifnextchar

This command must be used after \part if you need a partlof (no automatic partlof). First, \partlof detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \partlof@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```
3915 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[{\partlof@}{\partlof@[d]}}
```

\partlof@
\if@partlof@used@
\if@mtc@longext@
\@tocfile
\Thepart

The \partlof@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@partlof@used@ (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlof file):

```
\def\partlof@[#1]{%
\global\@partlof@used@true
\if@mtc@longext@%
   \def\@tocfile{plf\Thepart}%
\else
   \def\@tocfile{G\Thepart}%
\fi
```

\mtc@CkFile
\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile

Then, we check the presence of the partlof file and give a warning if it is not here: I0006

```
      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
      \if@mtc@FE
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
         {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
      \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
      \else
```

\beforepartlof

If the partlof file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, \beforepartlof, of course:

```
      \beforepartlof
```

\mtc@markboth
\@mkboth
\thispagepartlofstyle
\MakeUppercase
\plftitle

If \chapter is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlof title and set the page style:

```
      \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
      {\global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
       \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
       \thispagepartlofstyle
       \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}%
      }%
```

\do@ptilf
\e@pti
\n@pti
\c@pti
\l@pti
\r@pti
\df@pti
\mtc@CkStr
\plftitle
\if@mtc@FE
samepage

A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```
      \relax\begin{samepage}%
      \if #1e\let\do@ptilf\e@pti
      \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilf\n@pti
      \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilf\c@pti
      \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilf\l@pti
      \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilf\r@pti
      \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilf\df@ptilf
      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
      \mtc@CkStr{\plftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilf\e@pti\relax\fi
```

\raggedright
\parskip
\plffont

We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

```
\raggedright
\parskip=\z@%
\reset@font\plffont%
```

\plf@rule
tabular
\columnwidth
\ptifont
\do@ptilf
\mtc@v
\plftitle
\hline

The parttoc title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the partlof.

```
\parindent=\z@%
\nopagebreak[4]%
\kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\par\noindent
\ifx\plf@rule\relax
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\
\end{tabular}%
\else
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\\hline
\mtc@hstrut\\
\end{tabular}%
\fi
```

\mtc@zrule
\mtc@BBR
\ptcindent

Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```
\nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
\leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
\itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
\labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

ptc@verse
\plfoffset
\mtc@BBR

We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the partlof. If necessary, the toc depth is forced (locally) to `partlofdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

```
\begin{ptc@verse}{\plfoffset}%
\@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
 {\c@lofdepth=\c@partlofdepth
  \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
\leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

\plf@pgno
\@dottedtocline
\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\plf@setform
\ifinpartlof
\openpartlof
\closepartlof
\@tocfile
\mtc@strut
ptc@verse

If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat are activated via \plf@setform. Then the partlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the ptc@verse environment is terminated. The "open" and "close" features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```
\begingroup
  \makeatletter
  \@ifundefined{plf@pgno}%
   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
  \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
  \plf@setform
  \openpartlof\global\inpartloftrue
  \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
  \global\inpartloffalse\closepartlof
  \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
  \leavevmode\mtc@strut
  \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
        \end{ptc@verse}%
```

\plf@rule
\mtc@zrule
samepage
\afterpartlof

The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if \chapter is not defined), and \afterpartlof. The blank line (\\) is essential.

```
        \kernafterpartlof
        \nopagebreak[4]\plf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
        \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
        \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
        \afterpartlof\fi}
```

9.49.3 The \partlot command

\partlot
\partlot@
\@ifnextchar

This command must be used after \part if you need a partlot (no automatic partlot). First, \partlot detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \partlot@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```
\def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[{\partlot@}{\partlot@[d]}}
```

\partlot@
\if@partlot@used@
\if@mtc@longext@
\@tocfile
\Thepart

The \partlot@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@partlot@used@ (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlot file):

```
%
\def\partlot@[#1]{%
\global\@partlot@used@true
\if@mtc@longext@%
```

```
    \def\@tocfile{plt\Thepart}%
\else
    \def\@tocfile{U\Thepart}%
\fi
```

\mtc@CkFile
\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile

Then, we check the presence of the partlot file and give a warning if it is not here: I0006

```
        \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
        \if@mtc@FE
        \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
           {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
        \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
        \else
```

\beforepartlot

If the partlot file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, \beforepartlot, of course:

```
        \beforepartlot
```

\mtc@markboth
\@mkboth
\thispagepartlotstyle
\MakeUppercase
\plttitle

If \chapter is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlot title and set the page style:

```
        \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
         \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
         \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
         \thispagepartlotstyle
         \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}%
        }%
```

\do@ptilt
\e@pti
\n@pti
\c@pti
\l@pti
\r@pti
\df@pti
\mtc@CkStr
\plttitle
\if@mtc@FE
samepage

A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```
        \relax\begin{samepage}%
        \if #1e\let\do@ptilt\e@pti
        \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilt\n@pti
        \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilt\c@pti
        \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilt\l@pti
        \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilt\r@pti
        \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilt\df@ptilt
        \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
        \mtc@CkStr{\plttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilt\e@pti\relax\fi
```

\raggedright
\parskip
\pltfont

We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the partlot, then we set the font:

```
\raggedright
\parskip=\z@%
\reset@font\pltfont%
\parindent=\z@%
\nopagebreak[4]%
\kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\par\noindent
```

\plt@rule
tabular
\columnwidth
\ptifont
\do@ptilt
\mtc@v
\plttitle
\hline

The partlot title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the partlot.

```
\ifx\plt@rule\relax
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\
\end{tabular}%
\else
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\\hline
\mtc@hstrut\\
\end{tabular}%
\fi
```

\mtc@zrule
\mtc@BBR
\ptcindent

Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```
\nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
\leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
\itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
\labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

ptc@verse
\pltoffset
\mtc@BBR

We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. If necessary, the toc depth is forced (locally) to `partlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```
\begin{ptc@verse}{\pltoffset}%
\@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
{\c@lotdepth=\c@partlotdepth
 \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
\leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

\plt@pgno
\@dottedtocline
\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\plt@setform
\ifinpartlot
\openpartlot
\closepartlot
\@tocfile
\mtc@strut
ptc@verse

If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat are activated via \plt@setform. Then the partlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the ptc@verse environment is terminated. The "open" and "close" features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```
\begingroup
  \makeatletter
  \@ifundefined{plt@pgno}%
   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
  \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
  \plt@setform
  \openpartlot\global\inpartlottrue
  \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
  \global\inpartlotfalse\closepartlot
  \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
  \leavevmode\mtc@strut
  \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
        \end{ptc@verse}%
```

\ptc@rule
\mtc@zrule
samepage
\afterpartlot

The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if \chapter is not defined), and \afterpartlot. The blank line (\\) is essential.

```
        \kernafterpartlot
        \nopagebreak[4]\plt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
        \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
        \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
        \afterpartlot\fi}
```

9.50 Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs

\@dottedtocline
\l@xpart
\l@pchapter
\l@psect
\pchapter
\psect

The following auxiliary commands are used in the printing of parttocs. Note that \l@xpart uses a huge depth to inhibit the printing of its contents line (except if you cheat). These commands are similar to \l@subsection, only the arguments have been altered:

```
\def\l@xpart{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\def\l@pchapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\def\l@psect{\@dottedtocline{2}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\def\pchapter{pchapter}
\def\psect{psect}
```

9.51 Patching the \part command, continued

\sv@part
\mtc@svpart
\@part
\addtocontents
\sv@spart
\ptc@spart
\@spart
\stepcounter
\partbegin
\partend

We patch both branches of the \part command: \@part (unstarred \part) and \@spart (\part*). We add the incrementation of the ptc counter to both branches. In the unstarred branch, we add xpart entries in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT. In the starred branch, we add a \partbegin line in the TOC. This command is just a marker and does nothing real (\relax).

```
\let\sv@part\mtc@svpart
\def\@part[#1]#2{\sv@part[{#1}]{#2}\relax
\addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{#1}%
\addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{#1}%
\addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{#1}%
\stepcounter{ptc}}
\let\sv@spart\@spart
\def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\sv@spart}
\let\ptc@spart\@spart
\def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partend}\ptc@spart}
\def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}\ptc@spart}
\let\partend\relax
\let\partbegin\relax
```

9.52 The \doparttoc command and its siblings

\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dopartlot

The \doparttoc command works like the \dominitoc command, \dopartlof like \dominilof and \dopartlot like \dominilot.

\@doparttoc
\PTC@next
\setcounter

The \doparttoc command extracts information from the .toc file and creates the .ptc⟨*N*⟩ files (.ptc becomes .P on MS-DOS).

```
\def\@doparttoc#1{{%
  \makeatletter
  \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
  \PTC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

\@dopartlof
\PLF@next
\setcounter

The \dopartlof command extracts information from the .lof file and creates the .plf⟨*N*⟩ files (.plf becomes .G on MS-DOS).

```
\def\@dopartlof#1{{%
  \makeatletter
  \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
  \PLF@next#1.lof\relax\\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

\@dopartlot
\PLT@next
\setcounter

The \dopartlot command extracts information from the .lot file and creates the .plt⟨*N*⟩ files (.plt becomes .U on MS-DOS).

```
\def\@dopartlot#1{{%
  \makeatletter
  \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
  \PLT@next#1.lot\relax\\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dopartlot
\@ifnextchar

We define the user macros, who detect the optional argument:

```
\def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\doparttoc@}{\doparttoc@[1]}}
\def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlof@}{\dopartlof@[1]}}
\def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlot@}{\dopartlot@[1]}}
```

\doparttoc@
\if@mtc@hints@
\if@doparttoc@used@
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@ptitc
\e@pti
\n@pti
\c@pti
\l@pti
\r@pti

We treat the optional argument of \doparttoc (it becomes the default position for titles of parttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045

```
\def\doparttoc@[#1]{%
\if@mtc@hints@
   \if@doparttoc@used@
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
        {The \string\doparttoc \space command
         \MessageBreak
         has been invoked more than once
         \MessageBreak}
   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
\fi
\global\@doparttoc@used@true
\if #1e\let\df@ptitc\e@pti%
\else\if #1n\let\df@ptitc\n@pti%
\else\if #1c\let\df@ptitc\c@pti%
\else\if #1l\let\df@ptitc\l@pti%
\else\if #1r\let\df@ptitc\r@pti%
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
\@@doparttoc}
```

\dopartlof@
\if@dopartlof@used@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@ptilf
\e@pti
\n@pti
\c@pti
\l@pti
\r@pti

We treat the optional argument of \dopartlof (it becomes the default position for titles of partlofs) and flag this macro as used, a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045

```
\def\dopartlof@[#1]{%
\if@mtc@hints@
   \if@dopartlof@used@
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
        {The \string\dopartlof \space command
         \MessageBreak
         has been invoked more than once
```

```
          \MessageBreak}
   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
\fi
\global\@dopartlof@used@true
\if #1e\let\df@ptilf\e@pti%
\else\if #1n\let\df@ptilf\n@pti%
\else\if #1c\let\df@ptilf\c@pti%
\else\if #1l\let\df@ptilf\l@pti%
\else\if #1r\let\df@ptilf\r@pti%
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
\@@dopartlof}
```

\dopartlot@ \if@mtc@hints@ \@mtc@hints@given@true \if@dopartlot@used@ \df@ptilt \e@pti \n@pti \c@pti \l@pti \r@pti

We treat the optional argument of \dopartlot (it becomes the default position for titles of partlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045

```
\def\dopartlot@[#1]{%
\if@mtc@hints@
   \if@dopartlot@used@
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
        {The \string\dopartlot \space command
         \MessageBreak
         has been invoked more than once
         \MessageBreak}
   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
\fi
\global\@dopartlot@used@true
\if #1e\let\df@ptilt\e@pti%
\else\if #1n\let\df@ptilt\n@pti%
\else\if #1c\let\df@ptilt\c@pti%
\else\if #1l\let\df@ptilt\l@pti%
\else\if #1r\let\df@ptilt\r@pti%
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
\@@dopartlot}
```

\@@doparttoc \@@dopartlof \@@dopartlot \tf@mtc

These macros invoke the @dopart... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the file descriptor.

```
\def\@@doparttoc{\@doparttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
\def\@@dopartlof{\@dopartlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
\def\@@dopartlot{\@dopartlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
```

9.52.1 Processing macros for the parttocs

\PTC@next \PTC@list \PTC@loop

Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\def\PTC@next#1\relax#2\\{%
  \edef\PTC@list{#2}%
  \PTC@loop{#1}}
```

\PTC@toc
\PTC@list
\PTC@explist

Check if the list is empty:

```
\def\PTC@toc{%
  \ifx\PTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PTC@explist\fi}
```

\PTC@contentsline
\part
\theptc
\tf@mtc
\ptcname
\MTC@WriteContentsLine

The macro \PTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects interesting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is created. I0033

```
\def\PTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
    \stepcounter{ptc}%
    \if@mtc@longext@%
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc\@gobble}%
      \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
    \else
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc\@gobble}%
      \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
    \fi
    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
  \fi
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starpart\relax
    \stepcounter{ptc}%
```

\if@mtc@longext@
\ptcname

We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it: I0033

```
    \if@mtc@longext@%
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
      \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
    \else
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc}%
      \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
    \fi
    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
  \fi
```

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline:

```
\mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
```

\MTC@WriteContentsline
\chapter
\pchapter
\section
\coffee
\subsection
\subsubsection
\paragraph
\subparagraph

Now, we filter the relevant contents lines; this code extracts and writes info for chapters, sections, etc.:

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\pchapter
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
  \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
```

\MTC@WriteContentsline
\starchapter
\starsection
\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection
\starparagraph
\starsubparagraph

And for the starred sectionning commands:

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
```

```
    \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
  \fi
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
    \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
  \fi
}
```

\PTC@explist
\PTC@next
\PTC@list

The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call \PTC@next to process the first one:

```
\def\PTC@explist{\expandafter\PTC@next\PTC@list\\}
```

\PTC@loop
\PTC@toc
\PTC@read

If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

W0013
I0025

```
\def\PTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
  \ifeof\@inputcheck
    \mtcPackageWarning[W0013]{minitoc}%
       {No file #1
        \MessageBreak
        PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
    \expandafter\PTC@toc
  \else
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0025]{minitoc}%
       {PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM #1}%
    \expandafter\PTC@read\fi}
```

\PTC@read
\PTC@line

Read the next entry of the .toc file.

```
\def\PTC@read{%
  \read\@inputcheck to\PTC@line
```

\PTC@test
\PTC@line

The ..... make sure that \PTC@test has enough arguments:

```
  \expandafter\PTC@test\PTC@line.....\PTC@%
  }%
```

\PTC@test

The \PTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit parts:

\PTC@contentsline
\mtc@string
\PTC@list
\PTC@toc
\PTC@read
\partend

Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

```
\long\def\PTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PTC@{%
  \ifx#1\contentsline
    \let\mtc@string\string
    \PTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
    \let\mtc@string\relax
  \else\ifx#1\@input
     \edef\PTC@list{\PTC@list#2\relax}%
  \else\ifx#1\partend
     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
  \else\ifx#1\partbegin
     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
  \fi\fi\fi\fi
  \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PTC@toc
  \else\expandafter\PTC@read\fi}%
```

9.52.2 Processing macros for the partlofs

\PLF@next
\PLF@list
\PLF@loop

Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\def\PLF@next#1\relax#2\\{%
  \edef\PLF@list{#2}%
  \PLF@loop{#1}}
```

\PLF@lof
\PLF@list
\PLF@explist

Check if the list is empty:

```
\def\PLF@lof{%
  \ifx\PLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLF@explist\fi}
```

\PLF@contentsline
\part
\theptc
\tf@mtc
\plfname
\PLF@WriteContentsLine

The macro \PLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is created.

```
\def\PLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
    \stepcounter{ptc}%
```

\if@mtc@longext@ \plfname

We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it: I0033

```
\if@mtc@longext@%
  \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
     {Writing\space\jobname.plf\theptc}%
  \def\plfname{\jobname.plf\theptc}%
\else
  \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
     {Writing\space\jobname.G\theptc}%
  \def\plfname{\jobname.G\theptc}%
\fi
\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
\immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plfname
\fi
```

\figure \subfigure \mtc@toks \MTC@WriteContentsline

The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
  \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plf}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
  \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plfS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
}
```

\PLF@explist \PLF@next \PLF@list

The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \PLF@next to process the first one:

```
\def\PLF@explist{\expandafter\PLF@next\PLF@list\\}
```

\PLF@loop \PLF@lof \PLF@read

If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list. W0011 I0035

```
\def\PLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
  \ifeof\@inputcheck
    \mtcPackageWarning[W0011]{minitoc}%
       {No file #1
        \MessageBreak
        PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
    \expandafter\PLF@lof
  \else
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0035]{minitoc}%
       {PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM #1}%
    \expandafter\PLF@read\fi}
```

\PLF@read
\PLF@line

Read the next entry of the .lof file.

```
\def\PLF@read{%
  \read\@inputcheck to\PLF@line
```

\PLF@test
\PLF@line

The ..... make sure that \PLF@test has enough arguments:

```
  \expandafter\PLF@test\PLF@line.....\PLF@%
  }%
```

\PLF@test

The \PLF@test macro finds the "interesting" commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit parts:

\PLF@contentsline
\mtc@string
\PLF@list
\PLF@lof
\PLF@read
\partend

Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

```
\long\def\PLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLF@{%
  \ifx#1\contentsline
    \let\mtc@string\string
    \PLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
    \let\mtc@string\relax
  \else\ifx#1\@input
     \edef\PLF@list{\PLF@list#2\relax}%
  \else\ifx#1\partend
     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
  \else\ifx#1\partbegin
     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
  \fi\fi\fi\fi
  \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLF@lof
  \else\expandafter\PLF@read\fi}%
```

9.52.3 Processing macros for the partlots

\PLT@next
\PLT@list
\PLT@loop

Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\def\PLT@next#1\relax#2\\{%
  \edef\PLT@list{#2}%
  \PLT@loop{#1}}
```

\PLT@lot
\PLT@list
\PLT@explist

Check if the list is empty:

```
\def\PLT@lot{%
  \ifx\PLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLT@explist\fi}
```

\PLT@contentsline
\part
\theptc
\tf@mtc
\pltname
\PLT@WriteContentsLine

The macro \PLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlot file is created.

```
\def\PLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
    \stepcounter{ptc}%
```

\if@mtc@longext@
\pltname

We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it: I0033

```
    \if@mtc@longext@%
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.plt\theptc}%
      \def\pltname{\jobname.plt\theptc}%
    \else
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.U\theptc}%
      \def\pltname{\jobname.U\theptc}%
    \fi
    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\pltname
  \fi
```

\table
\subtable
\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline

The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

```
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
    \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
    \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plt}{#3}{#4}%
  \fi
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
    \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
    \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{pltS}{#3}{#4}%
  \fi
}
```

\PLT@explist
\PLT@next
\PLT@list

The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \PLT@next to process the first one:

```
\def\PLT@explist{\expandafter\PLT@next\PLT@list\\}
```

\PLT@loop
\PLT@lot
\PLT@read

If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

W0012
I0038

```
\def\PLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
  \ifeof\@inputcheck
    \mtcPackageWarning[W0012]{minitoc}%
       {No file #1
        \MessageBreak
        PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
    \expandafter\PLT@lot
  \else
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0038]{minitoc}%
       {PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM #1}%
    \expandafter\PLT@read\fi}
```

\PLT@read
\PLT@line

Read the next entry of the .lot file.

```
\def\PLT@read{%
  \read\@inputcheck to\PLT@line
```

\PLT@test
\PLT@line

The ..... make sure that \PLT@test has enough arguments:

```
  \expandafter\PLT@test\PLT@line.....\PLT@%
  }%
```

\PLT@test

The \PLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit parts:

\PLT@contentsline
\mtc@string
\PLT@list
\PLT@lot
\PLT@read
\partend

Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

```
\long\def\PLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLT@{%
  \ifx#1\contentsline
    \let\mtc@string\string
    \PLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
    \let\mtc@string\relax
  \else\ifx#1\@input
```

```
    \edef\PLT@list{\PLT@list#2\relax}%
  \else\ifx#1\partend
    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
  \else\ifx#1\partbegin
    \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
  \fi\fi\fi\fi
  \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLT@lot
  \else\expandafter\PLT@read\fi}%
```

End of the part level stuff (begun in section 9.45 on page 325):

```
}%
```

9.53 Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots

\AtBeginDocument
\c@lofdepth
\c@lotdepth
\newcounter
\setcounter

If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create new counters for the depths of the corresponding mini-tables: `sectlofdepth` and `sectlotdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
  \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
    {\newcounter{sectlofdepth}\setcounter{sectlofdepth}{2}}%
  \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
    {\newcounter{sectlotdepth}\setcounter{sectlotdepth}{2}}%
}%
```

9.54 Section-level commands

\if@mtc@chapter@undef@
\if@mtc@section@def@

The section-level commands are defined only if `\chapter` is *not* defined, hence in article-like document classes, and only if `\section` is defined:

```
\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \if@mtc@section@def@
```

\firstsectionis
\adjuststc
\decrementstc
\incrementstc
\stc@rule
\stcindent
\columnwidth

We define the obsolete command `\firstsectionis` (with its harmless warning), the counter `stc` of secttocs, the `\adjuststc`, `\decrementstc` and `\incrementstc` commands, the depth counter `secttocdepth` and its default value 2 (to include at least the subsections), the horizontal rule `\stc@rule` (rule before/after secttoc/sectlof/sectlot), the indentation (both sides) `\stcindent` for the secttocs (with its default values).

W0005

```
\def\firstsectionis#1{\mtcPackageWarning[W0005]{minitoc}%
```

```
4398      {\string\firstsectionis \space is an obsolete (ignored)
4399       \MessageBreak
4400       command}%
4401      \@firstsectionis@used@true}
4402 \newcounter{stc}\setcounter{stc}{0}%
4403 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{stc}{#1}}%
4404 \def\decrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}%
4405 \def\incrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{+1}}%
4406 \newcounter{secttocdepth}\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}%
4407 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}%
4408 \newlength\stcindent \stcindent=24\p@
```

9.55 Fonts commands for secttocs and co.

\stcfont
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont
\stcPfont
\stcSPfont
\slffont
\slfSfont
\sltfont
\sltSfont
\stifont

We define the fonts commands for the secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots and their titles:

```
4409 \def\stcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}    % secttoc
4410 \def\stcSSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}  % (subsections)
4411 \let\stcSSSfont\stcfont    % (subsubsections)
4412 \let\stcPfont\stcfont      % (paragraphs)
4413 \let\stcSPfont\stcfont     % (subparagraphs)
4414 \let\slffont\stcfont       % sectlof (figures)
4415 \let\slfSfont\stcfont      % sectlof (subfigures)
4416 \let\sltfont\stcfont       % sectlot (tables)
4417 \let\sltSfont\stcfont      % sectlot (subtables)
4418 \def\stifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}    % titles
```

9.56 Internal macros for title positionning

\l@sti
\c@sti
\r@sti
\e@sti
\n@sti

Some internal macros for title positionning, from the optional arguments of \dosecttoc and \secttoc commands (and siblings). Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles (with a vertical correction for empty titles, from Frank Mittelbach):

```
4419 \def\c@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
4420 \def\l@sti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
4421 \def\r@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
4422 \def\e@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
4423 \def\n@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
```

\do@stitc
\df@stitc
\do@stilf
\df@stilf
\do@stilt
\df@stilt
\l@sti

By default, titles are flushleft.

```
4424 \let\do@stitc\l@sti
4425 \let\df@stitc\l@sti
```

```
\let\do@stilf\l@sti
\let\df@stilf\l@sti
\let\do@stilt\l@sti
\let\df@stilt\l@sti
```

9.57 The stc@verse environment

stc@verse
\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc

The stc@verse environment is a very simple list environment, analog to the standard verse environment. Some formatting parameters are adjusted. The tight/loose and k-tight/k-loose package options are honored. The stc@verse environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like \stcoffset).

```
\def\stc@verse#1{\let\\=\@centercr
  \list{}{%
    \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@ \topsep=1ex
    \listparindent=\itemindent \partopsep=\z@
    \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi
    \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
    \leftmargin=\stcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin
    \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+#1}%
    \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-#1}%
    }%
  \item[]}%
\def\endstc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}
```

9.58 The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands

These three commands are very similar.

9.58.1 The \secttoc command

\secttoc
\secttoc@
\@ifnextchar

The \secttoc command must be used after \section if you need a secttoc (no automatic secttoc). Its code is similar to the code of \minitoc (but simpler). First, \secttoc detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \secttoc@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```
\def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\secttoc@}{\secttoc@[d]}}
```

\secttoc@ \if@secttoc@used@ \if@mtc@longext@ \@tocfile \thestc

The \secttoc@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@secttoc@used@ (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the secttoc file):

```
\def\secttoc@[#1]{%
\global\@secttoc@used@true
\if@mtc@longext@%
   \def\@tocfile{stc\thestc}%
\else
   \def\@tocfile{S\thestc}%
\fi
```

\mtc@CkFile \if@mtc@FE \@tocfile

Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the secttoc file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty: I0006

```
        \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
        \if@mtc@FE
        \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
           {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
        \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true
        \else
```

\beforesecttoc \thispagesecttocstyle

If the secttoc file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, \beforesecttoc, of course, and the page style feature:

```
        \beforesecttoc
        \thispagesecttocstyle
```

\do@stitc \e@sti \n@sti \c@sti \l@sti \r@sti \df@sti \mtc@CkStr \stctitle \if@mtc@FE samepage

We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty, we simulate the "e" positionning.

```
%%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}%
        \relax\begin{samepage}%
        \if #1e\let\do@stitc\e@sti
        \else\if #1n\let\do@stitc\n@sti
        \else\if #1c\let\do@stitc\c@sti
        \else\if #1l\let\do@stitc\l@sti
        \else\if #1r\let\do@stitc\r@sti
        \else\if #1d\let\do@stitc\df@stitc
        \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
        \mtc@CkStr{\stctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stitc\e@sti\relax\fi
```

\raggedright
\parskip
\stcfont

We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the secttoc, then we set the font:

```
\raggedright
\parskip=\z@%
\reset@font\stcfont%
\parindent=\z@%
\nopagebreak[4]%
```

\stc@rule
tabular
\columnwidth
\stifont
\do@stitc
\mtc@v
\stctitle
\hline

The secttoc title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the secttoc.

```
\kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\par\noindent
\nopagebreak[4]%
\ifx\stc@rule\relax
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\reset@font\stifont\do@stitc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\
\end{tabular}%
\else
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\reset@font\stifont\do@stitc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\\hline
\end{tabular}%
\fi
```

\mtc@zrule
\mtc@BBR
\stcindent

Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```
\nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
\leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
\itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
\labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

stc@verse
\stcoffset
\c@tocdepth
\c@secttocdepth
\mtc@BBR

We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the secttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `secttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```
\begin{stc@verse}{\stcoffset}\c@tocdepth=\c@secttocdepth%
\leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

\stc@pgno
\@dottedtocline
\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\stc@setform
\ifinsecttoc
\opensecttoc
\closesecttoc
\@tocfile
\mtc@strut
stc@verse

If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\stc@setform`. Then the secttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated. The "`open`" and "`close`" features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```
\begingroup
  \makeatletter
  \stc@setform%
  \@ifundefined{stc@pgno}%
  {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
  \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
  \stc@setform%
  \opensecttoc\global\insecttoctrue
  \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
  \global\insecttocfalse\closesecttoc
  \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
  \leavevmode\mtc@strut
  \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
        \end{stc@verse}%
```

\stc@rule
\mtc@zrule
samepage
\aftersecttoc

The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and \aftersecttoc.

```
        \kernaftersecttoc
        \nopagebreak[4]\stc@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
        \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
        \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersecttoc\fi}%
```

9.58.2 The \sectlof command

\sectlof
\sectlof@
\@ifnextchar

The \sectlof command must be used after \section if you need a sectlof (no automatic sectlof). Its code is similar to the code of \minilof (but simpler). First, \sectlof detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \sectlof@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```
\def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\sectlof@}{\sectlof@[d]}}
```

\sectlof@
\if@sectlof@used@
\if@mtc@longext@
\@tocfile
\thestc

The \sectlof@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@sectlof@used@ (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlof file):

```
\def\sectlof@[#1]{%
\global\@sectlof@used@true
\if@mtc@longext@%
   \def\@tocfile{slf\thestc}%
\else
   \def\@tocfile{H\thestc}%
\fi
```

\mtc@CkFile \if@mtc@FE \@tocfile

Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlof file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty: I0006

```
\mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
\if@mtc@FE
\mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
   {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
\@mtc@empty@sectlof@true
\else
```

\beforesectlof \thispagesectlofstyle

If the sectlof file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, \beforesectlof, of course, and the page style feature:

```
\thispagesectlofstyle
%%   \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}%
\beforesectlof
```

\do@stilf \e@sti \n@sti \c@sti \l@sti \r@sti \df@sti \mtc@CkStr \slftitle \if@mtc@FE samepage

We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty, we simulate the “e” positionning.

```
\relax\begin{samepage}%
\if #1e\let\do@stilf\e@sti
\else\if #1n\let\do@stilf\n@sti
\else\if #1c\let\do@stilf\c@sti
\else\if #1l\let\do@stilf\l@sti
\else\if #1r\let\do@stilf\r@sti
\else\if #1d\let\do@stilf\df@stilf
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\mtc@CkStr{\slftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilf\e@sti\relax\fi
```

\raggedright \parskip \slffont

We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlof, then we set the font:

```
\raggedright
\parskip=\z@%
\reset@font\slffont%
\parindent=\z@%
\nopagebreak[4]%
```

\slf@rule tabular \stifont \columnwidth \do@stilf \mtc@v \slftitle \hline

The sectlof title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of the sectlof.

```
\kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\par\noindent
```

```
        \ifx\slf@rule\relax
        \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
        \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\
        \end{tabular}%
        \else
        \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
        \mtc@hstrut
        \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\\hline
        \end{tabular}%
        \fi
```

\mtc@zrule
\mtc@BBR
\stcindent

Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```
        \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
        \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
        \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
        \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

stc@verse
\slfoffset
\c@tocdepth
\c@sectlofdepth
\mtc@BBR

We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the sectlof. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `sectlofdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```
        \begin{stc@verse}{\slfoffset}%
        \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
          {\c@lofdepth=\c@sectlofdepth
           \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
        \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

\slf@pgno
\@dottedtocline
\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\slf@setform
\ifinsectlof
\opensectlof
\closesectlof
\@tocfile
\mtc@strut
stc@verse

If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\slf@setform`. Then the sectlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated. The "`open`" and "`close`" features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```
\begingroup
  \makeatletter
  \@ifundefined{slf@pgno}%
  {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
  \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
  \slf@setform%
  \opensectlof\global\insectloftrue
  \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
  \global\insectloffalse\closesectlof
  \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
        \end{stc@verse}%
```

\stc@rule
\mtc@zrule
samepage
\aftersectlof

The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and \aftersectlof. The blank line (\\) is essential.

```
        \kernaftersectlof
        \nopagebreak[4]\slf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
        \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
        \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlof\fi}%
```

9.58.3 The \sectlot command

\sectlot
\sectlot@
\@ifnextchar

The \sectlot command must be used after \section if you need a sectlot (no automatic sectlot). Its code is similar to the code of \minilot (but simpler). First, \sectlot detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \sectlot@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```
\def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\sectlot@}{\sectlot@[d]}}
```

\sectlot@
\if@sectlot@used@
\if@mtc@longext@
\@tocfile
\thestc

The \sectlot@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@sectlot@used@ (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlot file):

```
\def\sectlot@[#1]{%
\global\@sectlot@used@true
\if@mtc@longext@%
   \def\@tocfile{slt\thestc}%
\else
   \def\@tocfile{I\thestc}%
\fi
```

\mtc@CkFile
\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile

Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlot file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

I0006

```
        \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
        \if@mtc@FE
        \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
           {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
        \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true
        \else
```

\beforesectlot
\thispagesectlotstyle

If the sectlot file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, \beforesectlot, of course, and the page style feature:

```
        \thispagesectlotstyle
%%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}%
        \beforesectlot
```

\do@stilt
\e@sti
\n@sti
\c@sti
\l@sti
\r@sti
\df@sti
\mtc@CkStr
\slttitle
\if@mtc@FE
samepage

We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty, we simulate the "e" positionning.

```
\relax\begin{samepage}%
\if #1e\let\do@stilt\e@sti
\else\if #1n\let\do@stilt\n@sti
\else\if #1c\let\do@stilt\c@sti
\else\if #1l\let\do@stilt\l@sti
\else\if #1r\let\do@stilt\r@sti
\else\if #1d\let\do@stilt\df@stilt
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\mtc@CkStr{\slttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilt\e@sti\relax\fi
```

\raggedright
\parskip
\sltfont

We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlot, then we set the font:

```
\raggedright
\parskip=\z@%
\reset@font\sltfont%
\parindent=\z@%
\nopagebreak[4]%
```

\stc@rule
tabular
\stifont
\columnwidth
\do@stilt
\mtc@v
\slttitle
\hline

The sectlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of the sectlot.

```
\kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\par\noindent
\ifx\slt@rule\relax
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\slttitle}\\
\end{tabular}%
\else
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\mtc@hstrut
\reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\slttitle}\\\hline
\end{tabular}%
\fi
```

\mtc@zrule
\mtc@BBR
\stcindent

Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```
\nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
\leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
\itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
\labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

stc@verse
\c@tocdepth
\c@sectlotdepth
\mtc@BBR

We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the sectlot. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `sectlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```
\begin{stc@verse}{\sltoffset}%
\@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
  {\c@lotdepth=\c@sectlotdepth
\ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
\leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

\slt@pgno
\@dottedtocline
\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\slt@setform
\ifinsectlot
\opensectlot
\closesectlot
\@tocfile
\mtc@strut
stc@verse

If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\slt@setform`. Then the sectlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated. The "`open`" and "`close`" features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```
\begingroup
  \makeatletter
  \@ifundefined{slt@pgno}%
  {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}
  \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
  \slt@setform%
  \opensectlot\global\insectlottrue
  \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
  \global\insectlotfalse\closesectlot
  \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
        \end{stc@verse}%
```

\stc@rule
\mtc@zrule
samepage
\aftersectlot

The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and `\aftersectlot`.

```
        \kernaftersectlof
        \nopagebreak[4]\slt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
        \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
        \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlot\fi}%
```

9.59 Auxiliary internal commands, section level

\l@xsect
\@dottedtocline
\l@schapter
\xsect
\schapter

We define auxiliary commands, used for the mini-tables and as delimiters in the TOC file (and LOF and LOT files). The depth of `xsect` is huge to inhibit the printing of its contents line (except if you cheat).

```
\def\l@xsect{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\def\l@xsection{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
```

```
\def\l@schapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\def\xsect{xsect} \def\schapter{schapter}
```

9.60 Patching the \section command (continued)

\@sect
\addcontentsline

We patch the both branches of the \section command: \@sect for the unstarred version and \@ssect for the starred version. First, for the unstarred version (\@sect), we add a xsect contents line in the LOF and in the LOT. The test \ifnum #2=1 restricts the action to the section level macros (because \@sect is also used by \subsection and below, which have no mini-tables).

```
\let\sv@sect\@sect
\gdef\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
\ifnum #2=1\relax
   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
\fi
\sv@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#4}{#5}{#6}[{#7}]{#8}}
```

\section
\starsection
\addcontentsline

If it is a section (unstarred or starred via \starsection), we add a xsect entry in the LOF and in the LOT.

```
\def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{
\expandafter
\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
\fi
\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection\relax
   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
\fi
```

\@svsec
\refstepcounter
\@tempskipa
\@hangfrom
\addcontentsline
\numberline
\@svsechd
\@xsect

And the remainder of the section header formatting:

```
\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax
   \let\@svsec\@empty
\else
   \refstepcounter{#1}%
   \edef\@svsec{\csname the#1\endcsname\hskip 1em}%
\fi
\@tempskipa #5\relax
\ifdim \@tempskipa>\z@
   \begingroup #6\relax
      \@hangfrom{\hskip #3\relax\@svsec}%
```

```
4675          {\interlinepenalty \@M #8\par}%
4676    \endgroup
4677    \csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}\addcontentsline
4678    {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax
4679                \else
4680                \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%
4681                \fi
4682                #7}%
4683 \else
4684    \def\@svsechd{#6\hskip #3\relax
4685    \@svsec #8\csname #1mark\endcsname
4686    {#7}\addcontentsline
4687    {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax
4688                \else
4689                   \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}
4690                \fi
4691    #7}}%
4692 \fi
4693 \@xsect{#5}}
```

\@sect
\sectbegin
\sectend
\stc@sect
\addtocontents

Then we patch the unstarred branch (\@sect). We define also the delimiting commands \sectbegin and \sectend commands. We do not add \sectbegin if it is a subsection or deeper.

```
4694 \let\stc@sect\@sect
4695 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4696    \ifnum #2<1 \relax
4697    \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\sectbegin}
4698    \fi
4699    \stc@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[{#7}]{#8}}
4700 \let\sectend\relax
4701 \let\sectbegin\relax
```

9.61 The \dosecttoc command and siblings

The \dosecttoc command is very similar to \dominitoc.

\dosecttoc
\@dosecttoc
\STC@next

The \dosecttoc command extracts information from the .toc file and creates the .stc⟨*N*⟩ files (.stc becomes .S on MS-DOS).

```
4702 \def\@dosecttoc#1{{%
4703   \makeatletter
4704   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4705   \STC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}
```

\dosectlof
\@dosectlof
\SLF@next

The \dosectlof command extracts information from the .lof file and creates the .slf⟨N⟩ files (.slf becomes .H on MS-DOS).

```
\def\@dosectlof#1{{%
  \makeatletter
  \setcounter{stc}{0}
  \SLF@next#1.lof\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}
```

\dosectlot
\@dosectlot
\PLT@next

The \dosectlot command extracts information from the .lot file and creates the .slt⟨N⟩ files (.slt becomes .V on MS-DOS).

```
\def\@dosectlot#1{{%
  \makeatletter
  \setcounter{stc}{0}
  \SLT@next#1.lot\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}
```

\dosecttoc
\dosectlof
\dosectlot
\@ifnextchar

We define the user-level macros, who detect the optional argument:

```
\def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dosecttoc@}{\dosecttoc@[1]}}
\def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlof@}{\dosectlof@[1]}}
\def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlot@}{\dosectlot@[1]}}
```

\dosecttoc@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dosecttoc@used@
\df@stitc
\e@sti
\n@sti
\c@sti
\l@sti
\r@sti

We treat the optional argument of \dosecttoc (it becomes the default position for titles of secttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045

```
\def\dosecttoc@[#1]{%
\if@mtc@hints@
   \if@dosecttoc@used@
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
        {The \string\dosecttoc \space command
         \MessageBreak
         has been invoked more than once
         \MessageBreak}
   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
\fi
\global\@dosecttoc@used@true
\if #1e\let\df@stitc\e@sti%
\else\if #1n\let\df@stitc\n@sti%
\else\if #1c\let\df@stitc\c@sti%
\else\if #1l\let\df@stitc\l@sti%
\else\if #1r\let\df@stitc\r@sti%
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
\@@dosecttoc}
```

\dosectlof@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dosectlof@used@
\df@stilf
\e@sti
\n@sti
\c@sti
\l@sti
\r@sti

We treat the optional argument of \dosectlof (it becomes the default position for titles of sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045

```
\def\dosectlof@[#1]{%
\if@mtc@hints@
   \if@dosectlof@used@
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
        {The \string\dosectlof \space command
         \MessageBreak
         has been invoked more than once
         \MessageBreak}
   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
\fi
\global\@dosectlof@used@true
\if #1e\let\df@stilf\e@sti%
\else\if #1n\let\df@stilf\n@sti%
\else\if #1c\let\df@stilf\c@sti%
\else\if #1l\let\df@stilf\l@sti%
\else\if #1r\let\df@stilf\r@sti%
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
\@@dosectlof}
```

\dosectlot@
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dosectlot@used@
\df@stilt
\e@sti
\n@sti
\c@sti
\l@sti
\r@sti

We treat the optional argument of \dosectlot (it becomes the default position for titles of sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045

```
\def\dosectlot@[#1]{%
\if@mtc@hints@
   \if@dosectlot@used@
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
        {The \string\dosectlot \space command
         \MessageBreak
         has been invoked more than once
         \MessageBreak}
   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
\fi
\global\@dosectlot@used@true
\if #1e\let\df@stilt\e@sti%
\else\if #1n\let\df@stilt\n@sti%
\else\if #1c\let\df@stilt\c@sti%
\else\if #1l\let\df@stilt\l@sti%
\else\if #1r\let\df@stilt\r@sti%
\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
\@@dosectlot}
```

\@@dosecttoc
\@@dosectlof
\@@dosectlot
\tf@mtc

These macros invoke the \@dosect... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the file descriptor.

```
\def\@@dosecttoc{\@dosecttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
\def\@@dosectlof{\@dosectlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
\def\@@dosectlot{\@dosectlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
```

\STC@next
\STC@list
\STC@loop

Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\def\STC@next#1\relax#2\\{%
  \edef\STC@list{#2}%
  \STC@loop{#1}}
```

\STC@toc
\STC@list
\STC@explist

Check if the list is empty:

```
\def\STC@toc{%
  \ifx\STC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\STC@explist\fi}
```

\STC@contentsline
\section
\thestc
\tf@mtc
\stcname
\MTC@WriteContentsLine

The macro \STC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file. If \section is found, the stc counter is incremented and a new secttoc file is created.

```
\def\STC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
  \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
    \stepcounter{stc}%
```

\if@mtc@longext@
\stcname

We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

I0033

```
    \if@mtc@longext@%
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%
      \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%
    \else
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%
      \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%
    \fi
    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
  \fi
```

\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteCoffeeline
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\coffee
\subsection
\subsubsection
\paragraph
\subparagraph

The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline or \MTC@WriteCoffeeline. Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

```
\mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
  \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
```

\starsection
\stepcounter
\thestc
\arabic
\if@mtc@longext@
\stcname
\closeout
\openout

A starred section terminates the current section and creates a new secttoc file: I0033

```
\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
  \stepcounter{stc}%
  \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}
  \if@mtc@longext@%
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
       {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%
    \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%
  \else
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
       {Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%
    \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%
  \fi
  \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
\fi
```

\MTC@WriteContentsline
\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection
\starparagraph
\starsubparagraph

We process the entries for starred sectionning commands:

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
```

```
    \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
  \fi
}
```

\STC@explist
\STC@next
\STC@list

The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call \STC@next to process the first one.

```
\def\STC@explist{\expandafter\STC@next\STC@list\\}
```

\STC@loop
\STC@toc
\STC@read

If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

W0016
I0026

```
\def\STC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
  \ifeof\@inputcheck
    \mtcPackageWarning[W0016]{minitoc}%
       {No file #1
        \MessageBreak
        SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
    \expandafter\STC@toc
  \else
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0026]{minitoc}%
       {PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM #1}%
    \expandafter\STC@read\fi}
```

\STC@read
\STC@line

Read the next entry of the .toc file.

```
\def\STC@read{%
  \read\@inputcheck to\STC@line
```

\STC@test
\STC@line

The ..... make sure that \STC@test has enough arguments:

```
  \expandafter\STC@test\STC@line.....\STC@%
  }%
```

\STC@test
\STC@contentsline
\mtc@string
\STC@list
\STC@toc
\STC@read
\sectend
\sectbegin

The \STC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit sections;

```
\long\def\STC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\STC@{%
  \ifx#1\contentsline
    \let\mtc@string\string
    \STC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
    \let\mtc@string\relax
  \else\ifx#1\@input
```

```
    \edef\STC@list{\STC@list#2\relax}%
  \else\ifx#1\sectend
    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
  \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
    \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
  \fi\fi\fi\fi
  \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\STC@toc
  \else\expandafter\STC@read\fi}%
```

\SLF@next
\SLF@list
\SLF@loop

Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\def\SLF@next#1\relax#2\\{%
  \edef\SLF@list{#2}%
  \SLF@loop{#1}}
```

\SLF@lof
\SLF@list
\SLF@explist

Check if the list is empty:

```
\def\SLF@lof{%
  \ifx\SLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLF@explist\fi}
```

\SLF@contentsline
\section
\thestc
\tf@mtc
\slfname
\MTC@WriteContentsLine

The macro \SLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file. If \section is found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlof file is created.

```
\def\SLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
  \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
    \stepcounter{stc}%
```

\if@mtc@longext@
\slfname

We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

I0033

```
    \if@mtc@longext@%
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.slf\thestc}%
      \def\slfname{\jobname.slf\thestc}%
    \else
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
         {Writing\space\jobname.H\thestc}%
      \def\slfname{\jobname.H\thestc}%
    \fi
    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\slfname
  \fi
```

\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\figure
\subfigure

The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

```
\mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slf}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
  \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slfS}{#3}{#4}%
\fi
}
```

\SLF@explist
\SLF@next
\SLF@list

The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \SLF@next to process the first one.

```
\def\SLF@explist{\expandafter\SLF@next\SLF@list\\}
```

\SLF@loop
\SLF@lof
\SLF@read

If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

W0014
I0036

```
\def\SLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
  \ifeof\@inputcheck
    \mtcPackageWarning[W0014]{minitoc}%
       {No file #1
        \MessageBreak
        SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
    \expandafter\SLF@lof
  \else
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0036]{minitoc}%
       {PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM #1}%
    \expandafter\SLF@read\fi}
```

Read the next entry of the .lof file.

\SLF@read
\SLF@test
\SLF@line

The ..... make sure that \SLF@test has enough arguments:

```
\def\SLF@read{%
  \read\@inputcheck to\SLF@line
  \expandafter\SLF@test\SLF@line.....\SLF@%
  }%
```

\SLF@test
\SLF@contentsline
\mtc@string
\SLF@list
\SLF@lof
\SLF@read
\sectend
\sectbegin

The \SLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit sections;

```
\long\def\SLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLF@{%
```

```
\ifx#1\contentsline
  \let\mtc@string\string
  \SLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
  \let\mtc@string\relax
\else\ifx#1\@input
   \edef\SLF@list{\SLF@list#2\relax}%
\else\ifx#1\sectend
   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
\else\ifx#1\sectbegin
   \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
\fi\fi\fi\fi
\ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLF@lof
\else\expandafter\SLF@read\fi}%
```

\SLT@next
\SLT@list
\SLT@loop

Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\def\SLT@next#1\relax#2\\{%
  \edef\SLT@list{#2}%
  \SLT@loop{#1}}
```

\SLT@lot
\SLT@list
\SLT@explist

Check if the list is empty:

```
\def\SLT@lot{%
  \ifx\SLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLT@explist\fi}
```

\SLT@contentsline
\section
\thestc
\tf@mtc
\sltname
\MTC@WriteContentsLine

The macro \SLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file. If \section is found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlot file is created.

```
\def\SLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
  \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
    \stepcounter{stc}%
```

\if@mtc@longext@
\sltname

We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

I0033

```
  \if@mtc@longext@%
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
       {Writing\space\jobname.slt\thestc}%
    \def\sltname{\jobname.slt\thestc}%
  \else
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
       {Writing\space\jobname.V\thestc}%
    \def\sltname{\jobname.V\thestc}%
  \fi
```

```
    \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
    \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\sltname
  \fi
```

\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\table
\subtable

The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

```
  \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
    \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slt}{#3}{#4}%
  \fi
  \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
    \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{sltS}{#3}{#4}%
  \fi
}
```

\SLT@explist
\SLT@next
\SLT@list

The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \SLT@next to process the first one.

```
\def\SLT@explist{\expandafter\SLT@next\SLT@list\\}
```

\SLT@loop
\SLT@lot
\SLT@read

If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

W0015
I0039

```
\def\SLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
  \ifeof\@inputcheck
    \mtcPackageWarning[W0015]{minitoc}%
       {No file #1
        \MessageBreak
        SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
    \expandafter\SLT@lot
  \else
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0039]{minitoc}%
       {PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM #1}%
    \expandafter\SLT@read\fi}
```

Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\SLT@read
\SLT@test
\SLT@line

The ..... make sure that \SLT@test has enough arguments:

```
\def\SLT@read{%
  \read\@inputcheck to\SLT@line
  \expandafter\SLT@test\SLT@line.....\SLT@%
  }%
```

\SLT@test
\SLT@contentsline
\mtc@string
\SLT@list
\SLT@lot
\SLT@read
\sectend
\sectbegin

The \SLT@test macro finds the "interesting" commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit sections;

```
\long\def\SLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLT@{%
  \ifx#1\contentsline
    \let\mtc@string\string
    \SLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
    \let\mtc@string\relax
  \else\ifx#1\@input
     \edef\SLT@list{\SLT@list#2\relax}%
  \else\ifx#1\sectend
     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
  \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
     \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
  \fi\fi\fi\fi
  \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLT@lot
  \else\expandafter\SLT@read\fi}%
```

9.62 End of section-level commands

We terminate the *else* branch of the test \@ifundefined{section}, the *true* branch of the test \@ifundefined{chapter} and add an empty *else* branch to that test:

```
\fi% end of \if@mtc@section@def@
\fi% end of \if@mtc@chapter@undef@
```

9.63 The \mtcprepare command

\mtcprepare
\@ifnextchar
\mtcprepare@
\@ifundefined
\IfFileExists
\jobname
\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dopartlot
\dominitoc
\dominilof
\dominilot
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof
\dosectlot
\mtcPackageInfo

This command tests the availability of the \do... minitoc preparation commands and of the contents files, then calls as much as possible of these preparation commands. A hint is given. I0048

```
\def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\mtcprepare@}{\mtcprepare@[l]}}%
\def\mtcprepare@[#1]{%
\@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\doparttoc[#1]}{}%
\IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dopartlof[#1]}{}%
\IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dopartlot[#1]}{}%
}%
\@ifundefined{chapter}{%
  \@ifundefined{section}{}%
  {%
\IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dosecttoc[#1]}{}%
\IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dosectlof[#1]}{}%
\IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dosectlot[#1]}{}%
```

```
  }%
}{%
\IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dominitoc[#1]}{}%
\IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dominilof[#1]}{}%
\IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dominilot[#1]}{}%
}%
\if@mtc@hints@
  \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \mtcPackageInfo[I0048]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {Using \string\mtcprepare\space may induce some
      \MessageBreak
      hints about the preparation commands,
      \MessageBreak
      because it invokes ALL the preparation
      \MessageBreak
      commands allowed by the document class,
      \MessageBreak
      without any previous check\@gobble}%
\fi
}
```

9.64 Use with \nofiles

\nofiles
\gobbleopt@

In case the document uses the \nofiles command (in its preamble), the auxiliary files for the mini-tables should not be overwritten by the preparation commands, so these ones must be just faked; as these commands may have an optional argument, they will be faked using the internal LaTeX macro \@ifnextchar (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command \gobbleopt@. Problem signaled by Andreas Deininger.

```
\def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}
```

\AtBeginDocument
\if@filesw
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine

A test is placed in a \AtBeginDocument and gives a warning if \nofiles is used:

```
\AtBeginDocument{\if@filesw\relax\else
    \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0098]{minitoc}%
       {--- You have used the \string\nofiles\space command
        \MessageBreak
        in your preamble; all preparation commands
        \MessageBreak
        in the body of the document will be ignored}
```

Since \nofiles has been used, we must disable all the preparation commands:

\@ifnextchar
\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dopartlot

Commands for part level mini-tables:

```
\def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
```

\@ifnextchar
\dominitoc
\dominilof
\dominilot

Commands for chapter level mini-tables:

```
\def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
```

\@ifnextchar
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof
\dosectlot

Commands for section level mini-tables:

```
\def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
```

\@ifnextchar
\mtcprepare

Command \mtcprepare:

```
\def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
```

End of the inhibition of the preparation commands and of the \AtBeginDocument block:

```
\fi}
```

9.65 Necessary \l@... commands

\l@listof
\l@starpart
\l@starchapter
\l@starsection
\l@starsubsection
\l@starsubsubsection
\l@starparagraph
\l@starsubparagraph

Some \l@... commands (analog to \l@section or \l@paragraph) are required to format some entries in the mini-tables, for starred sectionning commands essentially:

```
\@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@listof\l@section}
\@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@listof\l@chapter}
\@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
\@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
\@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
\@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
\@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}
```

9.66 The horizontal rules and their default values

\columnwidth
\noptcrule
\nomtcrule
\nostcrule
\ptcrule
\ptc@rule
\mtcrule
\mtc@rule
\stcrule
\stc@rule

We define here the various commands to activate ou inhibit the horizontal rules in the various kinds of mini-tables. Each such command is an indirect definition of the corresponding horizontal rule. The rules are .4 pt high horizontal rules. We begin with rules for mini-tables of contents.

```
\def\noptcrule{\let\ptc@rule\relax}
\def\nomtcrule{\let\mtc@rule\relax}
\def\nostcrule{\let\stc@rule\relax}
\def\ptcrule{\def\ptc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\def\mtcrule{\def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\def\stcrule{\def\stc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\def\mtc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
```

\columnwidth
\noplfrule
\nomlfrule
\noslfrule
\plfrule
\plf@rule
\mlfrule
\mlf@rule
\slfrule
\slf@rule

Then, the rules for mini-lists of figures:

```
\def\noplfrule{\let\plf@rule\relax}
\def\nomlfrule{\let\mlf@rule\relax}
\def\noslfrule{\let\slf@rule\relax}
\def\plfrule{\def\plf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\def\mlfrule{\def\mlf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\def\slfrule{\def\slf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\def\plf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\def\mlf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\def\slf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
```

\columnwidth
\nopltrule
\nomltrule
\nosltrule
\pltrule
\plt@rule
\mltrule
\mlt@rule
\sltrule
\slt@rule

Then, the rules for mini-lists of tables:

```
\def\nopltrule{\let\plt@rule\relax}
\def\nomltrule{\let\mlt@rule\relax}
\def\nosltrule{\let\slt@rule\relax}
\def\pltrule{\def\plt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\def\mltrule{\def\mlt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\def\sltrule{\def\slt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\def\plt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\def\mlt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\def\slt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
```

9.67 The \mtcset... commands

These commands [11] have been introduced to build a nicer user interface, and each of them replaces numerous user commands, offering a rather unified and logical syntax.

9.67.1 Keywords for the \mtcset... commands

\@namedef
\@nameuse

We define some common keywords for the \mtcset... commands. A keyword is created via the \@namedef – \@nameuse mechanism the following way:

\@namedef{mtc@*family*@*name*}{*abbreviation*}

where *family* is the name of a group of keywords relative to one or several \mtcset... macros, *name* is the keyword that the user gives as argument to the \mtcset... macro, and *abbreviation* is a string used to build the name of the macro effectively used. As some \mtcset... macros have several keyword parameters, this method can reduce the number of macros at the user level, at the cost of few keyword families.

\@namedef

We define a family (typetable) of keywords for the types of mini-tables:

```
\@namedef{mtc@typetable@parttoc}{ptc}\def\mtc@typetable@parttoc{ptc}
\@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlof}{plf}\def\mtc@typetable@partlof{plf}
\@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlot}{plt}\def\mtc@typetable@partlot{plt}
\@namedef{mtc@typetable@minitoc}{mtc}\def\mtc@typetable@minitoc{mtc}
\@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilof}{mlf}\def\mtc@typetable@minilof{mlf}
\@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilot}{mlt}\def\mtc@typetable@minilot{mlt}
\@namedef{mtc@typetable@secttoc}{stc}\def\mtc@typetable@secttoc{stc}
\@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlof}{slf}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlof{slf}
\@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlot}{slt}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlot{slt}
```

\@namedef

Then another family (typetitle) for the titles of the mini-tables:

```
\@namedef{mtc@typetitle@parttoc}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@parttoc{pti}
\@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlof}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlof{pti}
\@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlot}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlot{pti}
\@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minitoc}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minitoc{mti}
\@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilof}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilof{mti}
\@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilot}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilot{mti}
\@namedef{mtc@typetitle@secttoc}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@secttoc{sti}
\@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlof}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlof{sti}
\@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlot}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlot{sti}
```

[11] The general concept of the \mtcset... commands was proposed by Benjamin Bayart.

\@namedef We define a family (YN) of keywords to recognize the keywords "off" and "on", with their many synonyms [12] and meaning false or true[13]:

```
\@namedef{mtc@YN@off}{no}\def\mtc@YN@off{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@OFF}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OFF{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@no}{no}\def\mtc@YN@no{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@NO}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NO{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@n}{no}\def\mtc@YN@n{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@N}{no}\def\mtc@YN@N{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@false}{no}\def\mtc@YN@false{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@FALSE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FALSE{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@faux}{no}\def\mtc@YN@faux{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@FAUX}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FAUX{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@f}{no}\def\mtc@YN@f{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@F}{no}\def\mtc@YN@F{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@NON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NON{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@non}{no}\def\mtc@YN@non{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@0}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@0\endcsname{no}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@-}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@-\endcsname{no}
%
\@namedef{mtc@YN@on}{}\def\mtc@YN@on{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@ON}{}\def\mtc@YN@ON{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@yes}{}\def\mtc@YN@yes{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@YES}{}\def\mtc@YN@YES{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@y}{}\def\mtc@YN@y{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@Y}{}\def\mtc@YN@Y{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@true}{}\def\mtc@YN@true{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@TRUE}{}\def\mtc@YN@TRUE{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@t}{}\def\mtc@YN@t{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@T}{}\def\mtc@YN@T{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@vrai}{}\def\mtc@YN@vrai{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@VRAI}{}\def\mtc@YN@VRAI{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@v}{}\def\mtc@YN@v{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@V}{}\def\mtc@YN@V{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@OUI}{}\def\mtc@YN@OUI{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@oui}{}\def\mtc@YN@oui{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@O}{}\def\mtc@YN@O{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@o}{}\def\mtc@YN@o{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@1}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@1\endcsname{}
\@namedef{mtc@YN@+}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@+\endcsname{}
```

[12] This (deliberately extreme) case shows the easyness for creating synonyms of frequently used keywords. Note also that when a keyword contains a non-letter character, we must use a hack with \expandafter \csname ... \endcsname.

[13] O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

9.67.2 The \mtcsetfont command

\@namedef We define the sectionning level keywords (note that part is not a member of this family (sectlevel), because no contents line for a part can appear in a mini-table, part being the highest sectionning level); "*" represents "any level", and is used to set the global default font for a given kind of mini-table.

```
\@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@chapter}{C}\def\mtc@sectlevel@chapter{C}
\@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@section}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@section{S}
\@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsection}{SS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsection{SS}
\@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection}{SSS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection{SSS}
\@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@paragraph}{P}\def\mtc@sectlevel@paragraph{P}
\@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph}{SP}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph{SP}
\@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@*}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@sectlevel@*\endcsname{}
\@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@figure}{}\def\mtc@sectlevel@figure{}
\@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@table}{}\def\mtc@sectlevel@table{}
\@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subfigure}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subfigure{S}
\@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subtable}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subtable{S}
```

\mtcsetfont The \mtcsetfont command has the following syntax:

\mtcsetfont{*mini-table*}{*level-name*}{*font commands*}

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc, the *level-name* is a sectionning level like subsection (no backslash). The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [291] basic commands usually.

\if@mtc@setfont@ First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
\newif\if@mtc@setfont@\@mtc@setfont@true
```

\mtcsetfont Then, we begin the command, which has three arguments:

```
\newcommand{\mtcsetfont}[3]{%
```

\mtc@mta@abbrev \if@mtc@setfont@ \@nameuse The two first arguments of this command are keywords. They must be translated into the effective strings. We process the first argument, a keyword from the typetable family. The result is stored in \mtc@mta@abbrev. Example: if #1 is minitoc, we get mtc. E0013

```
\def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
\@mtc@setfont@true
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
    \@mtc@setfont@false
```

```
5155    \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
5156    \mtcPackageError[E0013]{minitoc}%
5157       {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong first argument
5158        \MessageBreak
5159        (#1).
5160        \MessageBreak
5161        It should be a mini-table type
5162        \MessageBreak
5163        (parttoc...sectlot)}%
5164       {Correct the source code.
5165        \MessageBreak
5166        Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5167 \else
5168    \edef\mtc@mta@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5169 \fi
```

\mtc@level@abbrev
\if@mtc@setfont@
\@nameuse

The second argument, a keyword from the family `sectlevel`, is processed the same way and the result is stored into a macro `\mtc@level@abbrev`. Example: if `#2` is the `subparagraph` keyword, we get SP. E0014

```
5170 \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5171 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@sectlevel@#2\endcsname\relax
5172    \@mtc@setfont@false
5173    \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5174    \mtcPackageError[E0014]{minitoc}%
5175       {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong second argument
5176        \MessageBreak
5177        (#2).
5178        \MessageBreak
5179        It should be a sectionning level
5180        \MessageBreak
5181        (part...subparagraph) or * }%
5182       {Correct the source code.
5183        \MessageBreak
5184        Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5185 \else
5186    \edef\mtc@level@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@sectlevel@#2}}
5187 \fi
```

\mtc@tmp@name
\mtc@mta@abbrev
\mtc@level@abbrev

Then, we construct the effective macro to be applied:

```
5188 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}
```

Example: if `#1` is `minitoc` and `#2` is `subsection`, we get `mtcSSfont`, which is the name of the command for the font of a subsection entry in a minitoc (the backslash is missing, but we will use a `\csname` ... `\endcsname` pair to apply the constructed command).

\if@mtc@setfont@

But all combinaisons are not legal (the level of the entry must be lower than the level of the mini-table, and the kind [14] of the entry must be consistent with that of the mini-table), so we must test. Special care must be taken for testing via internal defined commands (*quarks*) with `@mtcqk` at the end of their names).

```
\def\parttoc@mtcqk{parttoc@mtcqk}
\def\minitoc@mtcqk{minitoc@mtcqk}
\def\secttoc@mtcqk{secttoc@mtcqk}
\def\partlof@mtcqk{partlof@mtcqk}
\def\minilof@mtcqk{minilof@mtcqk}
\def\sectlof@mtcqk{sectlof@mtcqk}
\def\partlot@mtcqk{partlot@mtcqk}
\def\minilot@mtcqk{minilot@mtcqk}
\def\sectlot@mtcqk{sectlot@mtcqk}
\def\part@mtcqk{part@mtcqk}
\def\chapter@mtcqk{chapter@mtcqk}
\def\appendix@mtcqk{appendix@mtcqk}
\def\section@mtcqk{section@mtcqk}
\def\subsection@mtcqk{subsection@mtcqk}
\def\subsubsection@mtcqk{subsubsection@mtcqk}
\def\paragraph@mtcqk{paragraph@mtcqk}
\def\subparagraph@mtcqk{subparagraph@mtcqk}
\def\figure@mtcqk{figure@mtcqk}
\def\table@mtcqk{table@mtcqk}
\def\subfigure@mtcqk{subfigure@mtcqk}
\def\subtable@mtcqk{subtable@mtcqk}
\@mtc@setfont@true
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\parttoc@mtcqk\relax
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\partlof@mtcqk\relax
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\partlot@mtcqk\relax
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\minitoc@mtcqk\relax
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\part@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\chapter@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\appendix@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\minilof@mtcqk\relax
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\part@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
```

[14] "Kind" being sectionning, (sub-)figure, or (sub-)table.

```
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\chapter@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\appendix@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\minilot@mtcqk\relax
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\part@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\chapter@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\appendix@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\secttoc@mtcqk\relax
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\part@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\chapter@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\appendix@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\section@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\sectlof@mtcqk\relax
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\part@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\chapter@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\appendix@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\section@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
\fi
\expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\sectlot@mtcqk\relax
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\part@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\chapter@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\appendix@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\section@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
    \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
\fi
```

\if@mtc@setfont@
\mtc@tmp@name
\mtc@mta@abbrev
\mtc@level@abbrev
\mtc@toks

If the combinaison is legal, we apply it, i.e., we redefine the meaning of the constructed macro with the sequence of commands given as third argument of \mtcsetfont and we log that event (we store the third argument in a token register to can print it *verbatim*); if the combinaison is not legal, an error message is displayed.

I0015
E0024

```
\if@mtc@setfont@
    \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}
    \mtc@toks{#3}
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0015]{minitoc}%
       {\string\mtcsetfont\space redefines the macro
        \MessageBreak
        "\mtc@tmp@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
    \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmp@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
```

```
\else
   \mtcPackageError[E0024]{minitoc}%
      {The macro \string\mtcsetfont\space has incompatible
       \MessageBreak
       first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
      {Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
\fi}
```

9.67.3 The \mtcsettitlefont command

\mtcsettitlefont

This command is very similar to the \mtcsetfont command. Its syntax is almost identical:

\mtcsettitlefont{*mini-table*}{*font commands*}

\if@mtc@settitlefont@

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [291] basic commands usually. The difference is the absence of the second keyword argument, because the *font commands* will be applied to the title of each mini-table of the given kind.

First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
\newif\if@mtc@settitlefont@\@mtc@settitlefont@true
```

\mtcsettitlefont

And we begin the definition of the \mtcsettitlefont command, which has two arguments:

```
\newcommand{\mtcsettitlefont}[2]{%
```

\mtc@mtatf@abbrev
\if@mtc@settitlefont@
\@nameuse

We process the first argument, a keyword of the typetitle family, then the result is stored into \mtc@mtatf@abbrev: E0022

```
\def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
\@mtc@settitlefont@true
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetitle@#1\endcsname\relax
   \@mtc@settitlefont@false
   \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
   \mtcPackageError[E0022]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsettitlefont \space has a wrong first argument
       \MessageBreak
       (#1).
       \MessageBreak
       It should be a mini-table type
```

```
5304        \MessageBreak
5305        (parttoc...sectlot)}%
5306       {Correct the source code.
5307        \MessageBreak
5308        Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5309 \else
5310    \edef\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetitle@#1}}
5311 \fi
```

\if@mtc@settitlefont@
\mtc@tmptf@name
\mtc@mtatf@abbrev
\mtc@toks

Then we build the name of the effective command and apply this command:

I0018
E0034

```
5312 \if@mtc@settitlefont@
5313    \def\mtc@tmptf@name{\mtc@mtatf@abbrev font}
5314    \mtc@toks{#2}%
5315    \mtcPackageInfo[I0018]{minitoc}%
5316       {\string\mtcsettitlefont\space redefines the macro
5317        \MessageBreak
5318        "\mtc@tmptf@name" as
5319        \MessageBreak
5320        "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5321    \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmptf@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5322 \else
5323    \mtcPackageError[E0034]{minitoc}%
5324       {The macro \string\\mtcsettitlefont\space uses
5325        \MessageBreak
5326        an illegal type of table (#1)}%
5327       {Correct the source code.
5328        \MessageBreak
5329        Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5330 \fi
5331 }
```

9.67.4 The \mtcsettitle command

\mtcsettitle

This command is very similar to the \mtcsettitlefont command. Its syntax is almost identical:

\mtcsettitle{*mini-table*}{*text*}

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *text* is the text for a mini-table title.

\if@mtc@settitle@

First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5332 \newif\if@mtc@settitle@\@mtc@settitle@true
```

\mtcsettitle Then we define the \mtcsettitle command, which has two arguments:

```
\newcommand{\mtcsettitle}[2]{%
```

\mtc@mtati@abbrev
\if@mtc@settitle@
\@nameuse

We process the first argument, a keyword of the typetable family. The result is stored in \mtc@mtati@abbrev: E0021

```
\def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
\@mtc@settitle@true
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
   \@mtc@settitle@false
   \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
   \mtcPackageError[E0021]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsettitle \space has a wrong first argument
       \MessageBreak
       (#1).
       \MessageBreak
       It should be a mini-table type
       \MessageBreak
       (parttoc...sectlot)}%
      {Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
\else
   \edef\mtc@mtati@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
\fi
```

\if@mtc@settitle@
\mtc@tmpti@name
\mtc@mtati@abbrev
\mtc@toks

And we construct the name of the effective macro and apply it: I0017 E0033

```
\if@mtc@settitle@
   \def\mtc@tmpti@name{\mtc@mtati@abbrev title}%
   \mtc@toks{#2}%
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0017]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsettitle\space redefines the macro
       \MessageBreak
       "\mtc@tmpti@name" as
       \MessageBreak
       "\the\mtc@toks"}%
   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpti@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
\else
   \mtcPackageError[E0033]{minitoc}%
      {The macro \string\mtcsettitle\space uses
       \MessageBreak
       an illegal type of table (#1)}%
      {Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
\fi
}
```

9.67.5 The \mtcsetformat command

\@namedef We define first the keywords (family formatparam) for the three formatting parameters that this command can alter:

```
\@namedef{mtc@formatparam@dotinterval}{dotsep}%
\def\mtc@arg@dotinterval{dotsep}
\@namedef{mtc@formatparam@tocrightmargin}{tocrmarg}%
\def\mtc@arg@tocrightmargin{tocrightmargin}
\@namedef{mtc@formatparam@pagenumwidth}{pnumwidth}%
\def\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth{\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth}
%% \@namedef{mtc@arg@numwidth}{numwidth} %not yet available
%% \def\mtc@arg@numwidth{\mtc@arg@numwidth} %not yet available
```

\AtBeginDocument The \mtcsetformat command needs an initialization to be done at the beginning of the document, to set the defaults values of the formatting parameters:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
```

\@pnumwidth \ptcpnumwidth \mtcpnumwidth \stcpnumwidth \plfpnumwidth \mlfpnumwidth \slfpnumwidth \pltpnumwidth \mltpnumwidth \sltpnumwidth We take, if possible, the default value of \@pnumwith for each type of mini-tables:

```
\@ifundefined{ptcpnumwidth}{\let\ptcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\@ifundefined{stcpnumwidth}{\let\stcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\@ifundefined{mtcpnumwidth}{\let\mtcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\@ifundefined{plfpnumwidth}{\let\plfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\@ifundefined{mlfpnumwidth}{\let\mlfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\@ifundefined{slfpnumwidth}{\let\slfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\@ifundefined{pltpnumwidth}{\let\pltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\@ifundefined{mltpnumwidth}{\let\mltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\@ifundefined{sltpnumwidth}{\let\sltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
```

\@tocrmarg \ptctocrmarg \mtclofrmarg \stclotrmarg \plftocrmarg \mlflofrmarg \slflotrmarg \plttocrmarg \mltlofrmarg \sltlotrmarg We take, if possible, the default value of \@tocrmarg for each type of mini-tables:

```
\@ifundefined{ptctocrmarg}{\let\ptctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\@ifundefined{mtctocrmarg}{\let\mtctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\@ifundefined{stctocrmarg}{\let\stctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\@ifundefined{plftocrmarg}{\let\plftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\@ifundefined{mlftocrmarg}{\let\mlftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\@ifundefined{slftocrmarg}{\let\slftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\@ifundefined{plttocrmarg}{\let\plttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\@ifundefined{mlttocrmarg}{\let\mlttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\@ifundefined{slttocrmarg}{\let\slttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
```

\@dotsep
\ptcdotsep
\mtcdotsep
\stcdotsep
\plfdotsep
\mlfdotsep
\slfdotsep
\pltdotsep
\mltdotsep
\sltdotsep

We take, if possible, the default value of \@dotsep for each type of mini-tables:

```
\@ifundefined{ptcdotsep}{\let\ptcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\@ifundefined{mtcdotsep}{\let\mtcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\@ifundefined{stcdotsep}{\let\stcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\@ifundefined{plfdotsep}{\let\plfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\@ifundefined{mlfdotsep}{\let\mlfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\@ifundefined{slfdotsep}{\let\slfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\@ifundefined{pltdotsep}{\let\pltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\@ifundefined{mltdotsep}{\let\mltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\@ifundefined{sltdotsep}{\let\sltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
```

And we terminate the \AtBeginDocument block:

```
}%
```

\mtcsetformat

The executive part is done via the following macros, which are invoked in the mtc@verse-like environments for each kind of mini-table. These commands activate the values recorded by \mtcsetformat.

\ptc@setform
ptc@verse

The \ptc@setform macro is invoked in ptc@verse to set format parameters:

```
\def\ptc@setform{%
\let\@pnumwidth\ptcpnumwidth\relax
\let\@tocrmarg\ptctocrmarg\relax
\let\@dotsep\ptcdotsep\relax
}
```

\mtc@setform
mtc@verse

The \mtc@setform macro is invoked in mtc@verse to set format parameters:

```
\def\mtc@setform{%
\let\@pnumwidth\mtcpnumwidth\relax
\let\@tocrmarg\mtctocrmarg\relax
\let\@dotsep\mtcdotsep\relax
}
```

\stc@setform
stc@verse

The \stc@setform macro is invoked in stc@verse to set format parameters:

```
\def\stc@setform{%
\let\@pnumwidth\stcpnumwidth\relax
\let\@tocrmarg\stctocrmarg\relax
\let\@dotsep\stcdotsep\relax
}
```

\plf@setform
ptc@verse

The \plf@setform macro is invoked in ptc@verse to set format parameters:

```
\def\plf@setform{%
\let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
\let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
\let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
}
```

\mlf@setform
mtc@verse

The \mlf@setform macro is invoked in mtc@verse to set format parameters:

```
\def\mlf@setform{%
\let\@pnumwidth\mlfpnumwidth\relax
\let\@tocrmarg\mlftocrmarg\relax
\let\@dotsep\mlfdotsep\relax
}
```

\slf@setform
stc@verse

The \slf@setform macro is invoked in stc@verse to set format parameters:

```
\def\slf@setform{%
\let\@pnumwidth\slfpnumwidth\relax
\let\@tocrmarg\slftocrmarg\relax
\let\@dotsep\slfdotsep\relax
}
```

\plt@setform
ptc@verse

The \plt@setform macro is invoked in ptc@verse to set format parameters:

```
\def\plt@setform{%
\let\@pnumwidth\pltpnumwidth\relax
\let\@tocrmarg\plttocrmarg\relax
\let\@dotsep\pltdotsep\relax
}
```

\mlt@setform
mtc@verse

The \mlt@setform macro is invoked in mtc@verse to set format parameters:

```
\def\mlt@setform{%
\let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
\let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
\let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
}
```

\slt@setform
stc@verse

The \slt@setform macro is invoked in stc@verse to set format parameters:

```
\def\slt@setform{%
\let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
\let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
\let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
}
```

\if@mtc@setformat@
\mtcsetformat

We now define a flag and the \mtcsetformat command, with has the following syntax:

\mtcsetformat{*mini-table*}{*parameter-name*}{*value*}

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the typetable family, *parameter-name* is a keyword of the formatparam family and *value*, the value of this parameter for the given kind of mini-table.

```
\newif\if@mtc@setformat@\@mtc@setformat@true
\newcommand{\mtcsetformat}[3]{%
```

\mtc@mtf@abbrev
\mtc@fparam@abbrev

We now process the first argument and store the result in \mtc@mtf@abbrev: E0021

```
\def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
\def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
\@mtc@setformat@true
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
  \@mtc@setformat@false
  \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
  \mtcPackageError[E0015]{minitoc}%
     {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong first argument
      \MessageBreak
      (#1).
      \MessageBreak
      It should be a mini-table type
      \MessageBreak
      (parttoc...sectlot)}%
     {Correct the source code.
      \MessageBreak
      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
\else \edef\mtc@mtf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
\fi
```

\mtc@fparam@abbrev
\@nameuse

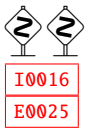
Then we process the second argument and store the result into a macro \mtc@fparam@abbrev: E0016

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@formatparam@#2\endcsname\relax
 \@mtc@setformat@false
  \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
  \mtcPackageError[E0016]{minitoc}%
```

```
5480      {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong second argument
5481       \MessageBreak
5482       (#2).
5483       \MessageBreak
5484       It should be a formatting param choosen from:
5485       \MessageBreak
5486       pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval}%
5487      {Correct the source code.
5488       \MessageBreak
5489       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
5490 \else
5491   \edef\mtc@fparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@formatparam@#2}}%
5492 \fi
```

\if@mtc@setformat@
\mtc@tmpfm@name
\mtc@mtf@abbrev
\mtc@fparam@abbrev

The name of the storage macro is built and it receives the third parameter as value (*via* \edef because it can contain some complex code):




```
5493 \if@mtc@setformat@
5494   \mtc@toks{#3}%
5495   \def\mtc@tmpfm@name{\mtc@mtf@abbrev\mtc@fparam@abbrev}%
5496   \mtcPackageInfo[I0016]{minitoc}%
5497      {\string\mtcsetformat\space redefines the macro
5498       \MessageBreak
5499       "\mtc@tmpfm@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}
5500   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpfm@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5501 \else
5502   \mtcPackageError[E0025]{minitoc}%
5503      {The macro \string\mtcsetformat\space has incompatible
5504       \MessageBreak
5505       first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5506       {Correct the source code.
5507        \MessageBreak
5508        Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
5509 \fi
5510 }
```

9.67.6 The \mtcsetpagenumbers command

This command activates of inhibits page numbers in the mini-tables of a given kind. Its syntax is the following:

\mtcsetpagenumbers{*mini-table*}{on|off}

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (parttoc, ... sectlot), or on and off a keyword to activate (on) or inhibit (off) the page numbers. on and off have many synonyms.

\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@
\if@mtc@spn@ok@

We define some flags:

```
\newif\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
\newif\if@mtc@spn@ok@
```

\mtcsetpagenumbers
\@ifundefined
\mtcsetpagenumbers@

We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro \mtcsetpagenumbers@ for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```
\newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers}[2]{%
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
     \@ifundefined{part}{}%
     {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{parttoc}{#2}
      \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlof}{#2}
      \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlot}{#2}}
     \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
     {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{minitoc}{#2}
      \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilof}{#2}
      \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilot}{#2}}
     \@ifundefined{section}{}%
     {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{secttoc}{#2}
      \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlof}{#2}
      \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlot}{#2}}
   \else
   \mtcsetpagenumbers@{#1}{#2}%
  \fi
}
```

\mtcsetpagenumber@

Then the \mtcsetpagenumbers@ internal macro, with two arguments:

```
\newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers@}[2]{%
```

\mtc@mttpn@abbrev
\mtc@pnsw@abbrev

We process the first argument, a keyword of the typetable family, and store the result in \mtc@mttpn@abbrev: E0017

```
\def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
\@mtc@setpagenumbers@true
\def\mtc@pnsw@abbrev{}
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
   \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
   \def\mtc@pnsw@abbrev{X}
   \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
   \mtcPackageError[E0017]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong first
       \MessageBreak
       argument (#1)}%
      {It should be a mini-table type
       \MessageBreak
```

```
       (parttoc...sectlot)
       \MessageBreak
       Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
\else
   \edef\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
\fi
```

\if@mtc@spn@ok@
\mtc@pnsw@abbrev
\mtc@mttpn@abbrev
\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@
\mtc@tmppn@name

Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result into a macro \mtc@pnsw@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.

E0018
I0022
I0021

```
\@mtc@spn@ok@true
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
   \@mtc@spn@ok@false
   \def\mtc@pnsw@abbrev{X}
   \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
   \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
   \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
   \mtcPackageError[E0018]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong second
       \MessageBreak
       argument (#2)}%
      {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
       \MessageBreak
       Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
\else
   \edef\mtc@pnsw@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
   \def\mtc@pnsw@abbrevX{X}
   \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
   \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@pnsw@abbrev\mtc@mttpn@abbrev pagenumbers}
   \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@pnsw@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0022]{minitoc}%
         {Page numbers are inhibited
          \MessageBreak
          for the #1s}
   \else
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0021]{minitoc}%
         {Page numbers are activated
          \MessageBreak for the #1s}
   \fi
   \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
\fi
}
```

9.67.7 The \mtcsetrules command

This macro is very similar to \mtcsetpagenumbers and its syntax is the same:

\mtcsetrules{*mini-table*}{on|off}

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (parttoc, ... sectlot), or on and off a keyword to activate (on) or inhibit (off) the horizontal rules. on and off have many synonyms.

Hence the code is similar.

\if@mtc@setrules@
\if@mtc@sru@ok@

We define some flags:

```
\newif\if@mtc@setrules@ \@mtc@setrules@false
\newif\if@mtc@sru@ok@
```

\mtcsetrules
\@ifundefined
\mtcsetrules@

We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro \mtcsetrules@ for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```
\newcommand{\mtcsetrules}[2]{%
   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
     \@ifundefined{part}{}%
     {\mtcsetrules@{parttoc}{#2}
      \mtcsetrules@{partlof}{#2}
      \mtcsetrules@{partlot}{#2}}
     \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
     {\mtcsetrules@{minitoc}{#2}
      \mtcsetrules@{minilof}{#2}
      \mtcsetrules@{minilot}{#2}}
     \@ifundefined{section}{}%
     {\mtcsetrules@{secttoc}{#2}
      \mtcsetrules@{sectlof}{#2}
      \mtcsetrules@{sectlot}{#2}}
   \else
   \mtcsetrules@{#1}{#2}%
  \fi
}
```

\mtcsetrules@

Then the \mtcsetrules@ internal macro, which has two arguments:

```
\newcommand{\mtcsetrules@}[2]{%
```

\mtc@mttru@abbrev
\if@mtc@setrules@
\mtc@rusw@abbrev
\@nameuse

We process the first argument, a keyword of the typetable family and store the result in a macro \mtc@mttru@abbrev: E0019

```
\def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
\@mtc@setrules@true
\def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{}
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
   \@mtc@setrules@false
   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
   \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
   \mtcPackageError[E0019]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong first argument
       \MessageBreak
       (#1)}%
      {It should be a mini-table type
       \MessageBreak
       (parttoc...sectlot)
       \MessageBreak
       Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
\else
   \edef\mtc@mttru@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
\fi
```

\if@mtc@sru@ok@
\mtc@rusw@abbrev
\mtc@mttru@abbrev
if@setrules@false
\mtc@noX
\mtc@tmppn@name

Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result in a macro \mtc@rusw@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed. E0020 I0008 I0007

```
\@mtc@sru@ok@true
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
   \@mtc@sru@ok@false
   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
   \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
   \@mtc@setrules@false
   \mtcPackageError[E0020]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong second argument
       \MessageBreak
       (#2)}%
      {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
       \MessageBreak
       Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
\else
   \edef\mtc@rusw@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrevX{X}
   \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
   \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@rusw@abbrev\mtc@mttru@abbrev rule}
   \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@rusw@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0008]{minitoc}%
         {Horizontal rules are inhibited
          \MessageBreak
```

```
          for the #1s}
   \else
      \mtcPackageInfo[I0007]{minitoc}%
         {Horizontal rules are activated
          \MessageBreak
          for the #1s}
   \fi
   \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
\fi
}
```

9.67.8 The \mtcsetfeature command

For this command, we must define three families of keywords, but the third is just used to add the word "style" for the "pagestyle" when "pagestyle" is used.

A family (ltypetable) for the long names of the types of mini-tables:

```
\@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@parttoc}{parttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@parttoc{parttoc}
\@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlof}{partlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlof{partlof}
\@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlot}{partlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlot{partlot}
\@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minitoc}{minitoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minitoc{minitoc}
\@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilof}{minilof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilof{minilof}
\@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilot}{minilot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilot{minilot}
\@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@secttoc}{secttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@secttoc{secttoc}
\@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlof}{sectlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlof{sectlof}
\@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlot}{sectlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlot{sectlot}
```

A family (featureparam) for the type of feature:

```
\@namedef{mtc@featureparam@before}{before}%
   \def\mtc@featureparam@before{before}
\@namedef{mtc@featureparam@after}{after}%
   \def\mtc@featureparam@after{after}
\@namedef{mtc@featureparam@open}{open}%
   \def\mtc@featureparam@open{open}
\@namedef{mtc@featureparam@close}{close}%
   \def\mtc@featureparam@close{close}
\@namedef{mtc@featureparam@pagestyle}{thispage}%
   \def\mtc@featureparam@pagestyle{thispage}
```

And a family (ft3) to add "style" if it is a "pagestyle" feature:

```
\@namedef{mtc@ft3@before}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@before\endcsname{}
\@namedef{mtc@ft3@after}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@after\endcsname{}
\@namedef{mtc@ft3@open}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@open\endcsname{}
\@namedef{mtc@ft3@close}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@close\endcsname{}
\@namedef{mtc@ft3@pagestyle}{style}%
    \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@pagestyle\endcsname{style}
```

The \mtcsetfeature command has the following syntax:

\mtcsetfeature{*mini-table*}{*feature-name*}{*commands*}

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the ltypetable family, *feature-name* is a keyword of the featureparam family (but also of the ft3 family), and *commands* are the commands which constitute the selected feature.

\if@mtc@setfeature@
\mtcsetfeature

We define a flag and the \mtcsetfeature command, with three arguments:

```
\newif\if@mtc@setfeature@\@mtc@setfeature@true
\newcommand{\mtcsetfeature}[3]{%
```

\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev
\mtc@featparam@abbrev

We process the first argument, a keyword of the ltypetable family, and store the result in \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev: E0011

```
\def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
\def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
\@mtc@setfeature@true
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
  \@mtc@setfeature@false
  \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
  \mtcPackageError[E0011]{minitoc}%
     {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong first argument
      \MessageBreak
      (#1).
      \MessageBreak
      It should be a mini-table type
      \MessageBreak
      (parttoc...sectlot)}%
     {Correct the source code.
      \MessageBreak
      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
\else
  \edef\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
\fi
```

\if@mtc@setfeature@
\mtc@featparam@abbrev
\mtc@featparam@third
\@nameuse

The second argument is a keyword of the featureparam family, the result is stored in \mtc@featparam@; and the complement is computed from the first argument, interpreted as a keyword of the ft3 family and whose result is stored in \mtc@featparam@third. E0012

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@featureparam@#2\endcsname\relax
 \@mtc@setfeature@false
  \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
  \def\mtc@featparam@third{X}
  \mtcPackageError[E0012]{minitoc}%
     {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong second argument
```

```
      \MessageBreak
      (#2).
      \MessageBreak
      It should be a feature param
      \MessageBreak
      (before, after, open, close, pagestyle)}%
    {Correct the source code.
      \MessageBreak
      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
\else
  \edef\mtc@featparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@featureparam@#2}}
  \edef\mtc@featparam@third{\@nameuse{mtc@ft3@#2}}
\fi
```

\if@mtc@setfeature@
\mtc@tmpfeat@name
\mtc@featparam@abbrev
\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev
\mtc@featparam@third

The name of the effective macro is built by concatenating these three pieces (named \mtc@featparam@abbrev, \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev, and \mtc@featparam@third respectively), then this macro is executed:

I0014
E0023

```
\if@mtc@setfeature@
  \def\mtc@tmpfeat@name%
     {\mtc@featparam@abbrev\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev\mtc@featparam@third}%
     \mtc@toks{#3}%
  \mtcPackageInfo[I0014]{minitoc}%
     {\string\mtcsetfeature\space redefines the macro
      \MessageBreak
      "\csname mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname" as
      \MessageBreak
      "\the\mtc@toks"}%
  \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
\else
  \mtcPackageError[E0023]{minitoc}%
     {The macro \string\mtcsetfeature\space has incompatible
      \MessageBreak
      first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
     {Correct the source code.
      \MessageBreak
      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
\fi}
```

9.67.9 The \mtcsetdepth command

This command is very similar to the \mtcsettitle command. Its syntax is almost identical:

\mtcsetdepth{*mini-table*}{*depth*}

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *depth* is the depth for a mini-table. If it is a mini-table for a list of figures or tables, the corresponding depth counter *must be available*, i.e., must have been created (often by an adequate package, like the subfig package [132]).

\if@mtc@setdepth@ First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
\newif\if@mtc@setdepth@\@mtc@setdepth@true
```

\mtcsetdepth Then we define the \mtcsetdepth command, with two arguments:

```
\newcommand{\mtcsetdepth}[2]{%
```

\mtc@mtade@abbrev
\if@mtc@setdepth@
\@nameuse
We process the first argument, a keyword of the ltypetable family. The result is stored in \mtc@mtade@abbrev: E0009

```
\def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
\@mtc@setdepth@true
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
   \@mtc@setdepth@false
   \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
   \mtcPackageError[E0009]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsetdepth \space has a wrong first argument
       \MessageBreak
       (#1).
       \MessageBreak
       It should be a mini-table type
       \MessageBreak
       (parttoc...sectlot)}%
      {Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
\else
   \edef\mtc@mtade@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
\fi
```

\if@mtc@setdepth@
\mtc@tmpde@name
\mtc@mtade@abbrev
\mtc@toks
\setcounter
And we construct the name of the effective counter and gave it the value: E0008 I0013 E0010

```
\if@mtc@setdepth@
   \def\mtc@tmpde@name{\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}
   \@ifundefined{c@\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}%
      {\mtcPackageError[E0008]{minitoc}%
       {\string\mtcsetdepth \space attempts to use
        \MessageBreak
             an undefined counter (#1depth).}%
      {Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}{%
   \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0013]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsetdepth\space redefines the counter
       \MessageBreak
       "\mtc@tmpde@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
    \expandafter\csname c@\mtc@tmpde@name\endcsname=#2}%
```

```
\else
   \mtcPackageError[E0010]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsetdepth:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
      {Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}%
\fi}% end of \mtcsetdepth
```

9.67.10 The \mtcsetoffset command

This command is very similar to the \mtcsettitle command. Its syntax is almost identical:

\mtcsetoffset{*mini-table*}{*value*}

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *value* is the offset value for a mini-table.

\if@mtc@setoffset@ First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
\newif\if@mtc@setoffset@\@mtc@setoffset@true
```

\mtcsetoffset Then we define the \mtcsetoffset command, with two arguments:

```
\newcommand{\mtcsetoffset}[2]{%
```

\mtc@mtaof@abbrev \if@mtc@setoffset@ \@nameuse We process the first argument, a keyword of the typetable family. The result is stored in \mtc@mtaof@abbrev: E0042

```
\def\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{X}
\@mtc@setoffset@true
\expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
   \@mtc@setoffset@false
   \def\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{X}
   \mtcPackageError[E0042]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsetoffset \space has a wrong first argument
       \MessageBreak
       (#1).
       \MessageBreak
       It should be a mini-table type
       \MessageBreak
       (parttoc...sectlot)}%
      {Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
\else
   \edef\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
\fi
```

\if@mtc@setoffset@
\mtc@tmpof@name
\mtc@mtaof@abbrev
\mtc@toks
\setcounter

E0041
I0052
E0043

And we construct the name of the effective offset and gave it the value:

```
\if@mtc@setoffset@
   \def\mtc@tmpof@name{\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset.}
   \@ifundefined{\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset}%
      {\mtcPackageError[E0041]{minitoc}%
       {\string\mtcsetoffset \space attempts to use
        \MessageBreak
             an undefined offset (\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset).}%
      {Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}{%
   \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0052]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsetoffset\space redefines
       \MessageBreak
       "\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
    \expandafter\def\csname \mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset\endcsname{#2}}%
\else
   \mtcPackageError[E0043]{minitoc}%
      {\string\mtcsetoffset:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
      {Correct the source code.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}%
\fi}% end of \mtcsetoffset
```

9.68 Polymorphic entries

\mtcpolymtoc
\DeclareRobustCommand
\ifinparttoc
\ifinminitoc
\ifinsecttoc

A toc entry should be able to have variants when it appears in the normal text (like the mandatory argument of a sectionning command), in a page header or in the main TOC (like the optionnal argument of a sectionning command), in a minitable (parttoc, minitoc or secttoc). Similar behaviour should be available for entries in th LOF or the LOT. So we define three commands to be used inside the optionnal argument of a sectionning command or of `\caption` for a figure or a table. These commands must be robust (because used in optionnal arguments) and have 4 arguments: (1) the variant to appear in a parttoc (or partlof or partlof), (2) the variant to appear in a minitoc (or minilof or minilof), (3) the variant to appear in a secttoc (or sectlof or sectlof). (4) the variant to appear in the main TOC (or LOF or LOT). The variant to appear locally as title of the sectionning unit or as local caption of the figure or table is the mandatory argument of the sectionning command or of the caption command (see section 1.4.13 on page 43). We use the `\ifin...` flags.

```
\DeclareRobustCommand{\mtcpolymtoc}[4]{%
      \ifinparttoc\relax{#1}%
      \else\ifinminitoc\relax{#2}%
           \else\ifinsecttoc\relax{#3}%
                \else\relax{#4}
                \fi
           \fi
      \fi}
```

\mtcpolymlof
\DeclareRobustCommand
\ifinpartlof
\ifinminilof
\ifinsectlof

For entries of the list of figures:

```
\DeclareRobustCommand{\mtcpolymlof}[4]{%
      \ifinpartlof\relax{#1}%
      \else\ifinminilof\relax{#2}%
           \else\ifinsectlof\relax{#3}%
                \else\relax{#4}
                \fi
           \fi
      \fi}
```

\mtcpolymlot
\DeclareRobustCommand
\ifinpartlot
\ifinminilot
\ifinsectlot

For entries of the list of tables:

```
\DeclareRobustCommand{\mtcpolymlot}[4]{%
      \ifinpartlot\relax{#1}%
      \else\ifinminilot\relax{#2}%
           \else\ifinsectlot\relax{#3}%
                \else\relax{#4}
                \fi
           \fi
      \fi}
```

9.69 The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings

\if@mtc@Himtoc@

The flag \if@mtc@Himtoc@ is used to detect an incorrect imbrication of this environment:

```
\newif\if@mtc@Himtoc@ \@mtc@Himtoc@false
```

\mtc@savetocdepth
\mtc@restoretocdepth
mtchideinmaintoc
\if@mtc@Himtoc@
\mtc@sv@tocdepth
\arabic
\addtocontents
\setcounter

We define a macro \mtc@savetocdepth to save the current value of the counter tocdepth. Then we define this environment, which inserts into the TOC file this command and commands of the form \setcounter{tocdepth}{...}. Note that \xdef is necessary! It also save and restore the value of the counter tocdepth, as the optional argument is the hiding depth of the entries in the main TOC.

E0005 E0031

```
\newcommand{\mtc@savetocdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}}%
\newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{tocdepth}{\mtc@sv@tocdepth}}%
\newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
{\if@mtc@Himtoc@\mtcPackageError[E0005]{minitoc}%
    {Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments}%
    {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@true
 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
{\if@mtc@Himtoc@\else\mtcPackageError[E0031]{minitoc}%
    {Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment}%
```

```
    {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
\global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}%
```

\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@Himlof@
mtchideinmainlof
\mtc@savelofdepth
\empty
\mtc@sv@lofdepth
\mtc@sv@tocdepth
\mtc@svf@tocdepth
\arabic
\addtocontents
\setcounter

The `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments are similar, but we must verify the presence of the associated depth counter, so we have two versions of each of these environments. This must be done *after* the loading of the packages.

First, for the list of figures:

E0003
E0029

```
\newif\if@mtc@Himlof@ \@mtc@Himlof@false
\AtBeginDocument{%
\@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
   \providecommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\empty}
   \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
   {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[E0003]{minitoc}%
       {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
       {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
    \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
    \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
    \def\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
    \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
    \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
   {\if@mtc@Himlof@\else\mtcPackageError[E0029]{minitoc}%
       {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
       {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
    \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
    \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
}}%
{%
   \newcommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{lofdepth}}}%
   \newcommand{\mtc@restorelofdepth}{\setcounter{lofdepth}{\mtc@sv@lofdepth}}%
   \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
   {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[E0003]{minitoc}%
       {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
       {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
    \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
    \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savelofdepth}%
    \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
   {\if@mtc@Himlof@\else\mtcPackageError[E0029]{minitoc}%
       {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
       {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
    \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
    \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}}
```

\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@Himlot@
mtchideinmainlot
\mtc@savelotdepth
\empty
\mtc@sv@lotdepth
\mtc@sv@tocdepth
\mtc@svt@tocdepth
\arabic
\addtocontents
\setcounter

Then for the list of tables:

E0004
E0030

```
\newif\if@mtc@Himlot@ \@mtc@Himlot@false
\AtBeginDocument{%
\@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
```

```
\providecommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\empty}
\newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
{\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[E0004]{minitoc}%
    {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
    {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
 \def\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
{\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[E0030]{minitoc}%
    {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
    {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
}}%
{%
\newcommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{lotdepth}}}%
\newcommand{\mtc@restorelotdepth}{\setcounter{lotdepth}{\mtc@sv@lotdepth}}%
\newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
{\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[E0004]{minitoc}%
    {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
    {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savelotdepth}%
 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
{\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[E0030]{minitoc}%
    {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
    {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}}
```

9.70 Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixglossary[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined
\mtc@glofix@level

Depending on the document class, the “Glossary” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@glofix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

W0001
E0001
W0006

```
\@ifundefined{chapter}{%
  \@ifundefined{section}%
    {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0001]{minitoc}%
     {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
```

```
5948         \MessageBreak
5949         Cannot use \string\mtcfixglossary \space without
5950         \MessageBreak
5951         optional argument [part]}%
5952       \@ifundefined{part}%
5953         {\mtcPackageError[E0001]{minitoc}%
5954            {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
5955            {\string\mtcfixglossary\space not usable}}%
5956       {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0006]{minitoc}%
5957          {\string\mtcfixglossary\space can only be used
5958           \MessageBreak
5959           with the [part] optional argument,
5960           \MessageBreak
5961           which becomes the default}%
5962        \def\mtc@glofix@level{part}%
5963       }}%
5964       {\def\mtc@glofix@level{section}}}%
5965 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{chapter}}
```

\if@mtcfixglossary@
\mtcfixglossary
\addcontentsline

Then we define a flag (\if@mtcfixglossary@) and the command \mtcfixglossary, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT. E0026

```
5966 \newif\if@mtcfixglossary@ \@mtcfixglossary@false
5967 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\mtc@glofix@level]{%
5968    \@mtcfixglossary@false
5969    \expandafter%
5970     \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
5971    \expandafter%
5972     \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
5973    \expandafter%
5974     \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
5975    \if@mtcfixglossary@
5976    \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
5977    \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
5978    \csname mtcadd\mtc@glofix@level\endcsname\relax
5979    \else
5980    \mtcPackageError[E0026]{minitoc}%
5981       {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixglossary
5982        \MessageBreak
5983        is wrong}%
5984       {It must be omitted (\mtc@glofix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
5985    \fi
5986 }%
```

9.71 Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixindex[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined
\mtc@ixfix@level

Depending on the document class, the “Index” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@ixfix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

W0002 W0007 E0002

```
\@ifundefined{chapter}{%
   \@ifundefined{section}%
      {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0002]{minitoc}%
       {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
        \MessageBreak
        Cannot use \string\mtcfixindex \space without
        \MessageBreak
        optional argument [part]}%
       \@ifundefined{part}%
         {\mtcPackageError[E0002]{minitoc}%
            {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
            {\string\mtcfixindex\space not usable}}%
       {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0007]{minitoc}%
          {\string\mtcfixindex\space can only be used with
           \MessageBreak
           the [part] optional argument,
           \MessageBreak
           which becomes the default}%
        \def\mtc@ixfix@level{part}%
       }}%
       {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{section}}}%
{\def\mtc@ixfix@level{chapter}}
```

\if@mtcfixindex@
\mtcfixindex
\addcontentsline

Then we define a flag and the command \mtcfixindex, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.

E0027

```
\newif\if@mtcfixindex@ \@mtcfixindex@false
\newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\mtc@ixfix@level]{%
   \@mtcfixindex@false
   \expandafter%
    \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
   \expandafter%
    \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
   \expandafter%
    \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
   \if@mtcfixindex@
   \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
```

```
6020    \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
6021    \csname mtcadd\mtc@ixfix@level\endcsname\relax
6022    \else
6023    \mtcPackageError[E0027]{minitoc}%
6024       {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixindex
6025        \MessageBreak
6026        is wrong}%
6027       {It must be omitted (\mtc@ixfix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
6028    \fi
6029 }%
```

9.72 Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixnomenclature[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined
\mtc@nomenclfix@level

Depending on the document class, the “Nomenclature” entry [15] in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@nomenclfix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

W0095
E0039
W0096

```
6030 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6031    \@ifundefined{section}%
6032       {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0095]{minitoc}%
6033        {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
6034         \MessageBreak
6035         Cannot use \string\mtcfixnomenclature \space without
6036         \MessageBreak
6037         optional argument [part]}%
6038        \@ifundefined{part}%
6039          {\mtcPackageError[E0039]{minitoc}%
6040             {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
6041             {\string\mtcfixnomclature\space not usable}}%
6042        {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0096]{minitoc}%
6043           {\string\mtcfixnomenclature\space can only be used with
6044            \MessageBreak
6045            the [part] optional argument,
6046            \MessageBreak
6047            which becomes the default}%
6048         \def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{part}%
6049        }}%
6050        {\def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{section}}}%
6051 {\def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{chapter}}
```

[15] If you are using the nomencl package [456] or nomentbl package [161] (nomencl calls nomentbl).

\if@mtcfixnomclature@
\mtcfixnomenclature
\addcontentsline

Then we define a flag and the command \mtcfixnomenclature, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT. E0040

```
\newif\if@mtcfixnomenclature@ \@mtcfixnomenclature@false
\newcommand{\mtcfixnomenclature}[1][\mtc@nomenclfix@level]{%
   \@mtcfixnomenclature@false
   \expandafter%
    \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixnomenclature@true\fi
   \expandafter%
    \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixnomenclature@true\fi
   \expandafter%
    \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixnomenclature@true\fi
   \if@mtcfixnomenclature@
   \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@nomenclfix@level}{}%
   \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@nomenclfix@level}{}%
   \csname mtcadd\mtc@nomenclfix@level\endcsname\relax
   \else
   \mtcPackageError[E0040]{minitoc}%
      {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixnomenclature
       \MessageBreak
       is wrong}%
      {It must be omitted (\mtc@nomenclfix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
   \fi
}%
```

9.73 The \mtcselectlanguage command

\mtcselectlanguage
\if@mtc@insellang@
\IfFileExists
\@input

This command loads a minitoc language definition file *language*.mld to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables. But first, we verify that this file exists. The flag \if@mtc@insellang@ is true while we are in this macro. I0010 E0006

```
\newif\if@mtc@insellang@ \@mtc@insellang@false
\def\mtcselectlanguage#1{%
     \@mtc@insellang@true
     \InputIfFileExists{#1.mld}%
       {\mtcPackageInfo[I0010]{minitoc}{The #1 language is selected.%
         \MessageBreak
         }}%
       {\mtcPackageError[E0006]{minitoc}%
          {#1 is not a known language,
           \MessageBreak
           #1.mld not found.
           \MessageBreak
           Command ignored}%
          {See the minitoc documentation.
           \MessageBreak
           Correct the source using a valid language name.
           \MessageBreak
           Press RETURN}}%
```

```
6091      \@mtc@insellang@false
6092 }
```

9.74 The \mtcloadmlo internal command

\mtcloadmlo
\if@mtc@insellang@
\IfFileExists
\@input

This command loads a minitoc language object file *language*.mlo to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables when exotic characters are needed. This command is used only in some .mld files when the title strings can not be generated by the normal processing of minitoc.dtx. The .mlo files are generated by filecontents environments in the minitoc.ins file. But first, we verify that this .mlo file exists.

This command should not be invoked directly by the user. This is verified via the flag \if@mtc@insellang@.

I0011
E0007
E0032

```
6093 \def\mtcloadmlo#1{%
6094      \if@mtc@insellang@
6095      \InputIfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
6096        {\mtcPackageInfo[I0011]{minitoc}%
6097           {#1 minitoc language object selected.
6098            \MessageBreak}}%
6099        {\mtcPackageError[E0007]{minitoc}%
6100           {#1 is not a known minitoc
6101            \MessageBreak
6102            language object file (.mlo),
6103            \MessageBreak
6104            #1.mlo not found.
6105            \MessageBreak
6106            Command ignored}%
6107           {See the minitoc documentation.
6108            \MessageBreak
6109            Correct the source using a valid language name.
6110            \MessageBreak
6111            Press RETURN}}%
6112      \else
6113        \mtcPackageError[E0032]{minitoc}%
6114            {You are using the \string\mtcloadmlo\space command
6115             \MessageBreak
6116             outside of a .mld file}%
6117            {It will be ignored}
6118        \@mtc@insellang@false
6119      \fi}
```

9.75 The “coffee breaks”

\addcoffeeline \addtocontents \coffeeline \l@coffee \@Undottedtocline

For the minutes package [300] (by Knut Lickert), we need some commands to insert special entries, undotted, in the TOC to mark “coffee breaks” ☕ in a conference. Hence we define \addcoffeeline, \coffeeline and \l@coffee, and internal commands analog to the standard internal commands to format the TOC.

```
\def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{%
  \addtocontents{#1}{\protect\coffeeline{#2}{#3}{\null}}}
\def\coffeeline#1{\csname l@#1\endcsname}
\newcommand*\l@coffee{\@Undottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
```

9.76 Initialization of counters

\AtBeginDocument \@ifundefined \setcounter

At the beginning of the document, we initialize the absolute counters for parts, chapters and sections, if they are defined.

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
\@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}
\@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
\@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}}
```

9.77 Declarations for simple options

These options are just setting a flag.

9.77.1 Options tight and loose, k-tight and k-loose

\DeclareOption \iftightmtc \ifktightmtc

These options influence the interline separation in the mini-tables.

```
\DeclareOption{tight}{\tightmtctrue}
\DeclareOption{loose}{\tightmtcfalse} % default
\DeclareOption{k-tight}{\ktightmtctrue}
\DeclareOption{k-loose}{\ktightmtcfalse} % default
```

9.77.2 Options checkfiles and nocheckfiles

\DeclareOption
\if@mtc@checkfiles

These options activate or inhibit the checking for empty mini-table files.

```
\DeclareOption{checkfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilestrue} % default
\DeclareOption{nocheckfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilesfalse}
```

9.77.3 Options dotted and undotted

\DeclareOption
\ifundottedmtc

These options activate or inhibit the leaders (lines of dots) in the mini-tables.

```
\DeclareOption{undotted}{\undottedmtctrue}
\DeclareOption{dotted}{\undottedmtcfalse} % default
```

9.77.4 Option notoccite

\DeclareOption
\if@mtc@notoccite@

This option will later load the notoccite package [14].

```
\DeclareOption{notoccite}{\@mtc@notoccite@true}
```

9.77.5 Option shortext

\DeclareOption
\if@mtc@longext@

This option forces the use of short extensions. W0020

```
\DeclareOption{shortext}{%
   \@mtc@longext@false
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0020]{minitoc}%
      {You have forced the use of short extensions}}
```

9.78 The insection option

\if@mtc@ss@insection@
\@ifundefined
\DeclareOption

This option is available only if \chapter is not defined and \section defined. It is to be revised when chapter/section level commands will ever be allowed together, sometime in the far away future, with a lot of luck (and work)[16]. E0035

```
\newif\if@mtc@ss@insection@ \@mtc@ss@insection@false
```

[16] Please, do not dream too much!

```
\@ifundefined{chapter}{%
   \@ifundefined{section}{\DeclareOption{insection}{%
   \mtcPackageError[E0035]{minitoc}%
      {You have used the 'insection' option in
       \MessageBreak
       a document where chapters are defined.
       \MessageBreak
       This is not compatible: option ignored.}%
      {Remove this option.
       \MessageBreak
       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
                          }}%
                         {%
                          \DeclareOption{insection}%
                            {\@mtc@ss@insection@true}%
                         }%
}{}
```

9.79 The `listfiles` and `nolistfiles` options

\if@mtc@listfiles@
\DeclareOption

The `listfiles` option creates a file containing a list of the auxiliary files created by the minitoc package. This is the default. This file is named *document*`.maf`. The `nolistfiles` option inhibits this listing.

```
\newif\if@mtc@listfiles@ \@mtc@listfiles@true
\DeclareOption{listfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@true}
\DeclareOption{nolistfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@false}
```

9.80 Language options

\@gobblethree
\mtc@listmisslanguages
\mtc@addmisslanguage
\mtc@LML
\MessageBreak

First, we define an utility macro (`\@gobblethree`), a list of the missing files (accumulated in the `\mtc@listmisslanguages` macro), and a macro (`\mtc@addmisslanguage`) to add a file name to the list:

```
\def\@gobblethree#1#2#3{\empty}
\def\mtc@listmisslanguages{}
\def\mtc@addmisslanguage#1{%
    \let\mtc@LML\mtc@listmisslanguages
    \edef\mtc@listmisslanguages{\mtc@LML \MessageBreak #1}}
```

\if@mtc@misslang
\mtc@setlangopt
\mtc@setlangopto
\IfFileExists
\DeclareOption
\mtc@addmisslanguage
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine

Before defining a language option, we must verify that the corresponding `.mld` file exists, and, if necessary, that the corresponding `.mlo` file exists. Hence, we must first define a flag `\if@mtc@misslang` and two macros to test the presence of these files; if the files are available, we define the language option.

I0050
I0051

```
\newif\if@mtc@misslang\@mtc@misslangfalse
\newcommand{\mtc@setlangopt}[1]{%
   \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
      {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
      {\@mtc@misslangtrue \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
       \mtcPackageInfo[I0050]{minitoc}%
          {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
           \MessageBreak
           The "#1" language option will not be available.
           \MessageBreak
           Please install it from a recent distribution
           \MessageBreak
           or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}}%
}%
\newcommand{\mtc@setlangopto}[1]{%
   \IfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
     {\mtc@setlangopt{#1}}%
     {\@mtc@misslangtrue \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mlo}
       \mtcPackageInfo[I0051]{minitoc}%
          {The required "#1.mlo" file is missing.
           \MessageBreak
           The "#1" language option will not be available.
           \MessageBreak
           Please install it from a recent distribution
           \MessageBreak
           or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
   \IfFileExists{#1.mld}{}%
       {\@mtc@misslangtrue
        \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
       \mtcPackageInfo[I0050]{minitoc}%
          {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
           \MessageBreak
           The "#1" language option will not be available.
           \MessageBreak
           Please install it from a recent distribution
           \MessageBreak
           or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
       }%
     }%
}%
```

\if@mtc@misslang
\mtc@setlangoptm
\IfFileExists
\DeclareOption
\mtcPackageError
\mtc@addmisslanguage

Some `.mld` files are mandatory (`english.mld` because english is the default language), so their absence is a serious error:

E0038

```
\newcommand{\mtc@setlangoptm}[1]{%
   \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
      {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
```

```
      {\@mtc@misslangtrue
       \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
       \mtcPackageError[E0038]{minitoc}%
          {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
           \MessageBreak
           A mandatory minitoc language object file,
           \MessageBreak
           #1.mld, is not found.
           \MessageBreak
           We will try to continue with
           \MessageBreak
           current/default values}%
          {See the minitoc documentation.
           \MessageBreak
           Please fix your minitoc installation.
           \MessageBreak
           Press <return> to continue}%
```

\providecommand
\ptctitle
\plftitle
\plttitle
\mtctitle
\mlftitle
\mlttitle
\stctitle
\slftitle
\slttitle

We must define the default titles (english):

```
           \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
           \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
           \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
           \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
           \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
           \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
           \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
           \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
           \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
}}%
```

\AtEndDocument
\if@mtc@misslang
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine
\MessageBreak
\mtc@listmisslanguages
\@gobblethree

If a `.mld` or `.mlo` file is missing, we signal that at the end of the document, with also the full list of the missing language files:

W0093
W0094

```
\AtEndDocument{%
  \if@mtc@misslang
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0093]{minitoc}%
       {Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
        \MessageBreak
        in your installation.
        \MessageBreak
        Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
        \MessageBreak
        in the \string\jobname.log file.
        \MessageBreak
        The full list of the missing language files
        \MessageBreak
        is given in the W0094 warning message.
        \MessageBreak
        Please install the missing files from
```

```
        \MessageBreak
        a recent distribution
        \MessageBreak
        or from the CTAN archives}%
    \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0094]{minitoc}%
      {Missing minitoc language file(s)\string:
        \MessageBreak
        \mtc@listmisslanguages\@gobblethree}%
  \fi
}%
```

\DeclareOption
\mtc@setlangopt
\mtc@setlangopto
\mtc@setlangoptm

Each language option reads the corresponding *language*`.mld` file via the specialized macro `\mtcselectlanguage`, after verification by `\mtc@setlangopt` or `\mtc@setlangopto` (when a `.mlo` file is required), by `\mtc@setlangoptm` when the language is mandatory. If the file does not exist, a standard error message is displayed. The language options are (should be) in alphabetical order (to make maintenance easier). Several options could load the same file, but, by convention, there should be a *language*`.mld` file for each language option, given that this file may load another one (as `american.mld` loads `english.mld`).

```
\mtc@setlangopt{acadian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{acadien}%
\mtc@setlangopt{afrikaan}%
\mtc@setlangopt{afrikaans}%
\mtc@setlangopt{albanian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{american}%
\mtc@setlangopt{arab}%
\mtc@setlangopt{arab2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{arabi}%
\mtc@setlangopt{arabic}%
\mtc@setlangopt{armenian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{australian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{austrian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{bahasa}%
\mtc@setlangopt{bahasai}%
\mtc@setlangopt{bahasam}%
\mtc@setlangopt{bangla}%
\mtc@setlangopt{basque}%
\mtc@setlangopt{bengali}%
\mtc@setlangopt{bicig}%
\mtc@setlangopt{bicig2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{bicig3}%
\mtc@setlangopt{bithe}%
\mtc@setlangopt{brazil}%
\mtc@setlangopt{brazilian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{breton}%
\mtc@setlangopt{british}%
\mtc@setlangopt{bulgarian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{bulgarianb}%
\mtc@setlangopt{buryat}%
\mtc@setlangopt{buryat2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{canadian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{canadien}%
\mtc@setlangopt{castillan}%
\mtc@setlangopt{castillian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{catalan}%
\mtc@setlangopto{chinese1}%
\mtc@setlangopto{chinese2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{croatian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{czech}%
\mtc@setlangopt{danish}%
\mtc@setlangopt{devanagari}%
\mtc@setlangopt{dutch}%
\mtc@setlangoptm{english}%
\mtc@setlangopt{english1}%
\mtc@setlangopt{english2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{esperant}%
\mtc@setlangopt{esperanto}%
\mtc@setlangopt{estonian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{ethiopia}%
\mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian2}%
\mtc@setlangopto{farsi1}%
\mtc@setlangopto{farsi2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{farsi3}%
\mtc@setlangopt{finnish}%
\mtc@setlangopt{finnish2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{francais}%
\mtc@setlangopt{french}%
\mtc@setlangopt{french1}%
\mtc@setlangopt{french2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{frenchb}%
\mtc@setlangopt{frenchle}%
\mtc@setlangopt{frenchpro}%
\mtc@setlangopt{galician}%
\mtc@setlangopt{german}%
```

```
\mtc@setlangopt{germanb}%
\mtc@setlangopt{germanb2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{greek}%
\mtc@setlangopt{greek-mono}%
\mtc@setlangopt{greek-polydemo}%
\mtc@setlangopt{greek-polykatha}%
\mtc@setlangopt{guarani}%
\mtc@setlangopto{hangul1}%
\mtc@setlangopto{hangul2}%
\mtc@setlangopto{hangul3}%
\mtc@setlangopto{hangul4}%
\mtc@setlangopto{hangul-u8}%
\mtc@setlangopto{hanja1}%
\mtc@setlangopto{hanja2}%
\mtc@setlangopto{hanja-u8}%
\mtc@setlangopt{hebrew}%
\mtc@setlangopt{hebrew2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{hindi}%
\mtc@setlangopt{hindi-modern}%
\mtc@setlangopt{hungarian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{icelandic}%
\mtc@setlangopt{indon}%
\mtc@setlangopt{indonesian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{interlingua}%
\mtc@setlangopt{irish}%
\mtc@setlangopt{italian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{italian2}%
\mtc@setlangopto{japanese}%
\mtc@setlangopto{japanese2}%
\mtc@setlangopto{japanese3}%
\mtc@setlangopto{japanese4}%
\mtc@setlangopto{japanese5}%
\mtc@setlangopto{japanese6}%
\mtc@setlangopt{kannada}%
\mtc@setlangopt{khalkha}%
\mtc@setlangopt{latin}%
\mtc@setlangopt{latin2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{latinc}%
\mtc@setlangopt{latinc2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{latvian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{latvian2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{letton}%
\mtc@setlangopt{letton2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{lowersorbian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{lsorbian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{magyar}%
\mtc@setlangopt{magyar2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{magyar3}%
\mtc@setlangopt{malay}%
\mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-b}%
\mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-keli}%
\mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-keli2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-mr}%
\mtc@setlangopto{malayalam-omega}%
\mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana}%
\mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana3}%
\mtc@setlangopt{manju}%
\mtc@setlangopt{mexican}%
\mtc@setlangopt{meyalu}%
\mtc@setlangopt{mongol}%
\mtc@setlangopt{mongolb}%
\mtc@setlangopt{mongolian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{naustrian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{ngerman}%
\mtc@setlangopt{newzealand}%
\mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb}%
\mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{norsk}%
\mtc@setlangopt{norsk2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk}%
\mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{occitan}%
\mtc@setlangopt{occitan2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{polish}%
\mtc@setlangopt{polish2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{polski}%
\mtc@setlangopt{portuges}%
\mtc@setlangopt{portuguese}%
\mtc@setlangopt{romanian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{romanian2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{romanian3}%
\mtc@setlangopt{russian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{russianb}%
\mtc@setlangopt{russianc}%
\mtc@setlangopt{russian2m}%
\mtc@setlangopt{russian2o}%
\mtc@setlangopto{russian-cca}%
\mtc@setlangopto{russian-cca1}%
\mtc@setlangopto{russian-lh}%
\mtc@setlangopto{russian-lhcyralt}%
\mtc@setlangopto{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
\mtc@setlangopto{russian-lhcyrwin}%
\mtc@setlangopt{samin}%
\mtc@setlangopt{scottish}%
\mtc@setlangopt{serbian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{serbianc}%
\mtc@setlangopt{slovak}%
\mtc@setlangopt{slovene}%
\mtc@setlangopt{spanish}%
\mtc@setlangopt{spanish2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{spanish3}%
\mtc@setlangopt{spanish4}%
\mtc@setlangopt{swahili}%
\mtc@setlangopt{swedish}%
\mtc@setlangopt{swedish2}%
```

```
\mtc@setlangopto{thai}%
\mtc@setlangopt{turkish}%
\mtc@setlangopt{uighur}%
\mtc@setlangopt{uighur2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{uighur3}%
\mtc@setlangopt{UKenglish}%
\mtc@setlangopt{ukraineb}%
\mtc@setlangopt{ukrainian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{uppersorbian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{USenglish}%
\mtc@setlangopt{usorbian}%
\mtc@setlangopt{vietnam}%
\mtc@setlangopt{vietnamese}%
\mtc@setlangopt{welsh}%
\mtc@setlangopt{xalx}%
\mtc@setlangopt{xalx2}%
\mtc@setlangopt{xalx3}%
```

9.81 The hints option

\DeclareOption
\if@mtc@hints@

We declare the hints (default) and nohints options:

```
\DeclareOption{hints}{\@mtc@hints@true}
\DeclareOption{nohints}{\@mtc@hints@false}
```

\mtc@hints@begindoc
\AtBeginDocument

The hints option is made of three parts: the first, \mtc@hints@begindoc, is executed via \AtBeginDocument and looks if some packages or classes are loaded, then gives warnings about their compatibility with minitoc.

The second part is made of tiny pieces of code inserted in the minitoc code, to verify that some macros are called in the right order.

\mtc@hints@enddoc
\AtEndDocument

The third and last part, \mtc@hints@enddoc, is executed via \AtEndDocument and examines the flags set by the first and the second parts. Then, if necessary, it writes some infos in the *document*.log file and/or warnings on the screen and in the *document*.log file. The hints option *does not signal errors*, only infos and warnings, so it does not stop the LaTeX run.

9.81.1 First part: \mtc@hints@begindoc

\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@
\mtc@hints@begindoc
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@
\if@mtc@lot@used@

I0049

We declare some flags and the first part of the hints option (for an \AtBeginDocument block):

```
\newif\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false
\newif\if@mtc@toc@used@ \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
\newif\if@mtc@lof@used@ \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
\newif\if@mtc@lot@used@ \global\@mtc@lot@used@false
\def\mtc@hints@begindoc{%
\mtcPackageInfo[I0049]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {==> You requested the hints option.
    \MessageBreak
    Some hints are eventually given below\@gobble}%
```

9.81.1.1 Hint about the alphanum package

\@ifpackageloaded
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test the presence of the alphanum package (part of the jura class [103]), and emit a warning, because this package is *incompatible* with minitoc:

W0025

```
\@ifpackageloaded{alphanum}%
   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
    \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0025]{minitoc(hints)}%
       {--- The alphanum package is loaded.
        \MessageBreak
        It is incompatible
        \MessageBreak
        with the minitoc package}}{}%
```

9.81.1.2 Hint about the appendix package

\@ifpackageloaded
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test the presence of the appendix package [471]:

I0042

```
\@ifpackageloaded{appendix}{%
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\mtcPackageInfo[I0042]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {--- The appendix package is loaded.
    \MessageBreak
    See the minitoc package documentation
    \MessageBreak
    for specific precautions\@gobble}}{}%
```

9.81.1.3 Hint about the tocbibind package

\@ifpackageloaded
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test the presence of the tocbibind package [472]:

I0046

```
\@ifpackageloaded{tocbibind}%
   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0046]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {--- The tocbibind package is loaded.
       \MessageBreak
       See the minitoc package documentation
       \MessageBreak
       for specific precautions\@gobble}}{}%
```

9.81.1.4 Hint about the KOMA-Script classes

\@ifclassloaded
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test the presence of each minitoc-compatible KOMA-Script class [343, 344, 399]:

I0043

```
\@ifclassloaded{scrbook}%
   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {--- The KOMAScript scrbook class is loaded.
       \MessageBreak
       See the minitoc package documentation
       \MessageBreak
       for specific precautions\@gobble}}{}%
\@ifclassloaded{scrreprt}%
   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {--- The KOMAScript scrreprt class is loaded.
       \MessageBreak
       See the minitoc package documentation
       \MessageBreak
       for specific precautions\@gobble}}{}%
\@ifclassloaded{scrartcl}%
   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {--- The KOMAScript scrartcl class is loaded.
       \MessageBreak
       See the minitoc package documentation
       \MessageBreak
       for specific precautions\@gobble}}{}%
```

9.81.1.5 Hint about the tocloft package

\@ifpackageloaded
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test the presence of the tocloft package [469]: I0047

```
\@ifpackageloaded{tocloft}%
   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0047]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {--- The tocloft package is loaded.
       \MessageBreak
       See the minitoc package documentation
       \MessageBreak
       for specific precautions\@gobble}}{}%
```

9.81.1.6 Hint about the titlesec package

\@ifpackageloaded
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test the presence of the titlesec package [46], and emit a warning, because this package is *incompatible* with minitoc:

W0099

```
\@ifpackageloaded{titlesec}%
   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
    \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0099]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {--- The titlesec package is loaded.
```

```
6525        \MessageBreak
6526        It is incompatible
6527        \MessageBreak
6528        with the minitoc package}}{}%
```

9.81.1.7 Hint about the titletoc package

\@ifpackageloaded
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test the presence of the titletoc package [46], and emit a warning, because this package is *incompatible* with minitoc:


```
6529 \@ifpackageloaded{titletoc}%
6530    {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6531     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0040]{minitoc(hints)}%
6532        {--- The titletoc package is loaded.
6533         \MessageBreak
6534         It is incompatible
6535         \MessageBreak
6536         with the minitoc package}}{}%
```

9.81.1.8 Hint about the placeins package

\@ifpackageloaded
\if@mtc@ss@insection@
\@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if the placeins package [15] is loaded and, if yes, we check if the selected options are correct (see section 1.3.3 on page 29):

W0031
W0084
W0085
W0032

```
6537 \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
6538    {\if@mtc@ss@insection@
6539     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{section}{}%
6540        {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6541         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0031]{minitoc(hints)}%
6542            {--- The placeins package is loaded
6543             \MessageBreak
6544             without the section option,
6545             \MessageBreak
6546             but minitoc used the insection option
6547             \MessageBreak
6548             which implies it. Try to inverse the
6549             \MessageBreak
6550             loading order and use consistent options.
6551             \MessageBreak
6552             You may have got a message
6553             \MessageBreak
6554     ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins}%
6555        }%
6556     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{above}%
6557        {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6558         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0084]{minitoc(hints)}%
6559            {--- The placeins package is loaded
```

```
            \MessageBreak
            with the above option,
            \MessageBreak
            but minitoc used the insection option
            \MessageBreak
            which is incompatible with it.
            \MessageBreak
            Try to remove the above option
            \MessageBreak
            and use consistent options}%
       }{}%
    \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{below}%
       {\@mtc@hints@given@true
        \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0085]{minitoc(hints)}%
           {--- The placeins package is loaded
            \MessageBreak
            with the below option,
            \MessageBreak
            but minitoc used the insection option
            \MessageBreak
            which is incompatible with it.
            \MessageBreak
            Try to remove the below option
            \MessageBreak
            and use consistent options}%
       }{}%
    \fi
   \@ifpackagelater{placeins}{2005/04/18}{}{%
      \@mtc@hints@given@true
      \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0032]{minitoc(hints)}%
         {--- The placeins package loaded is
          \MessageBreak
          too old. You should use a version
          \MessageBreak
          dated of 2005/04/18 at least}%
   }%
   }{}%
```

9.81.1.9 Hint about the memoir class

`\@ifclassloaded` `\if@mtc@hints@given@`

We test if the memoir class [479, 481, 482] is loaded: I0044

```
\@ifclassloaded{memoir}%
   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0044]{minitoc(hints)}%
       {--- The memoir class is loaded.
        \MessageBreak
        See the minitoc package documentation
        \MessageBreak
        for specific precautions\@gobble}{}%
   }{}%
```

9.81.1.10 Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes

\@ifclassloaded
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if the amsart or amsproc class is loaded and emit a warning, because these classes are *incompatible* with minitoc:

W0026
W0027

```
\@ifclassloaded{amsart}%
   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
    \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0026]{minitoc(hints)}%
       {--- The amsart class is loaded.
        \MessageBreak
        It is incompatible
        \MessageBreak
        with the minitoc package}}{}%
\@ifclassloaded{amsproc}%
   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
    \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0027]{minitoc(hints)}%
       {--- The amsproc class is loaded.
        \MessageBreak
        It is incompatible
        \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}{}%
```

9.81.1.11 Hint about the amsbook class

\@ifclassloaded
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if the amsbook class is loaded:

I0041

```
\@ifclassloaded{amsbook}%
   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
    \mtcPackageInfo[I0041]{minitoc(hints)}%
       {--- The amsbook class is loaded.
        \MessageBreak
        See the minitoc package documentation
        \MessageBreak
        for specific precautions\@gobble}{}%
   }{}%
```

9.81.1.12 Hint about the abstract package

\@ifpackageloaded
\@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test the presence of the abstract package [470], then its options:

I0040

```
\@ifpackageloaded{abstract}%
   {\@mtc@abstract@loaded@true%
   \@ifpackagewith{abstract}{addtotoc}%
      {\@mtc@hints@given@true
       \mtcPackageInfo[I0040]{minitoc(hints)}%
          {The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
           \MessageBreak
```

```
6637            loaded with the ``addtotoc'' option.
6638            \MessageBreak
6639            You need to look at the
6640            \MessageBreak
6641            documentation to adjust.
6642            \MessageBreak}
6643       }}{}
```

9.81.1.13 Hint about the jura class

\@ifclassloaded
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if the jura class is loaded and emit a warning, because this class is *incompatible* with minitoc:


```
6644 \@ifclassloaded{jura}%
6645    {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6646     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0029]{minitoc(hints)}%
6647        {--- The jura class is loaded.
6648         \MessageBreak
6649         It is incompatible
6650         \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}{}%
```

9.81.1.14 Hint about the flowfram package

\@ifpackageloaded
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test the presence of the flowfram package [433, 434], and emit a warning, because this package is *incompatible* with minitoc:


```
6651 \@ifpackageloaded{flowfram}%
6652    {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6653     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0097]{minitoc(hints)}%
6654        {--- The flowfram package is loaded.
6655         \MessageBreak
6656         It is incompatible
6657         \MessageBreak
6658         with the minitoc package}}{}%
```

9.81.1.15 Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands

\part
\chapter
\section
\AtBeginDocument
\mtc@hints@part
\mtc@hints@chapter
\mtc@hints@section

To check if the sectionning commands \part, \chapter or \section have been altered by some package or in the preamble, we compare them (when executing an \AtBeginDocument block) with their saved versions (saved by the minitoc package when it is loaded) \mtc@hints@part, \mtc@hints@chapter and \mtc@hints@section. For each sectionning command, we must perform the comparaison for the command itself, its unstarred branch and its starred branch. But the hyperref package [390] may interfere, hence the formal precautions in the messages.

9.81.1.15.1 Alteration of \part

\if@mtc@hints@w@
\@ifundefined
\part
\mtc@hints@part
\@part
\mtc@hints@@part
\@spart
\mtc@hints@@spart
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@mtc@hyper@used@

We check the alteration of \part, \@part and \@spart: W0030 W0023

```
\@mtc@hints@w@false
\@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\part\mtc@hints@part\relax
   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@part\mtc@hints@@part\relax
   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@spart\mtc@hints@@spart\relax
   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0030]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {--- The \string\part\space command is altered
          \MessageBreak
          after minitoc}
  \if@mtc@hyper@used@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
        {--- It may be the consequence
             \MessageBreak
             of loading the ``hyperref'' package}
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.1.15.2 Alteration of \chapter

\if@mtc@hints@w@
\@ifundefined
\chapter
\mtc@hints@chapter
\@chapter
\mtc@hints@@chapter
\@schapter
\mtc@hints@@schapter
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@mtc@hyper@used@

We check the alteration of \chapter, \@chapter and \@schapter: W0028 W0023

```
\@mtc@hints@w@false
\@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\chapter\mtc@hints@chapter\relax
   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@chapter\mtc@hints@@chapter\relax
   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@schapter\mtc@hints@@schapter\relax
   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0028]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {--- The \string\chapter\space command is altered
          \MessageBreak
          after minitoc}
  \if@mtc@hyper@used@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
        {--- It may be the consequence
             \MessageBreak
             of loading the ``hyperref'' package}
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.1.15.3 Alteration of \section

\if@mtc@hints@w@
\@ifundefined
\section
\mtc@hints@section
\@sect
\mtc@hints@@sect
\@ssect
\mtc@hints@@ssect
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@mtc@hyper@used@

We check the alteration of \section, \@sect and \@ssect:

W0039
W0023

```
\@mtc@hints@w@false
\@ifundefined{chapter}%
   {\@ifundefined{section}{}{\ifx\section\mtc@hints@section\relax\else
      \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
   \@ifundefined{section}{}{\ifx\@sect\mtc@hints@@sect\relax\else
      \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
   \@ifundefined{section}{}{\ifx\@ssect\mtc@hints@@ssect\relax\else
      \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0039]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {--- The \string\section\space command is altered
          \MessageBreak
          after minitoc}
  \if@mtc@hyper@used@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
        {--- It may be the consequence
             \MessageBreak
             of loading the ``hyperref'' package}
  \fi
  \relax\else\fi}{}%
```

9.81.1.16 Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands

And finally, we prepare the consistency tests about the calling sequences of triplets of associated commands like \doparttoc, \parttoc and \[fake]tableofcontents, and similar: to be able to use \parttoc, a table of contents file must have been created via \[fake]tableofcontents and splitted into parttoc files via \doparttoc.

\if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@
\if@mtc@lot@used@

Hence we initialize some flags:

```
\if@mtc@hints@
\global\@mtc@toc@used@false
\global\@mtc@lof@used@false
\global\@mtc@lot@used@false
```

\mtc@sv@tableofcontents
\tableofcontents
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\mtc@sv@listoffigures
\listoffigures
\if@mtc@lof@used@
\mtc@sv@listoftables
\listoftables
\if@mtc@lot@used@

Then we patch the involved commands to set the corresponding flag when they are used. First, the commands for the main summaries:

```
\let\mtc@sv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\def\tableofcontents%
   {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@tableofcontents}
\let\mtc@sv@listoffigures\listoffigures
```

```
\def\listoffigures%
    {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@listoffigures}
\let\mtc@sv@listoftables\listoftables
\def\listoftables%
    {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@listoftables}
```

Then, their "fake" siblings:

```
\let\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents\faketableofcontents
\def\faketableofcontents%
    {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents}
\let\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures\fakelistoffigures
\def\fakelistoffigures%
    {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures}
\let\mtc@sv@fklistoftables\fakelistoftables
\def\fakelistoftables%
    {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoftables}
\fi
```

And the `\mtc@hints@begindoc` definition is finished (it begins in section 9.81.1 on page 414):

```
}
```

9.81.2 Final part: `\mtc@hints@enddoc`

The final part of the `hints` option is executed via `\AtEndDocument`. Its code is in the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro. It is a sequence of tests on the packages or classes loaded and the flags set during the first and the second parts of this option. First, we declare the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro:

```
\def\mtc@hints@enddoc{%
```

9.81.2.1 Hint about `\sect-lof|lot` and the `insection` option

We look if some section-level lists of figures or tables have been requested.

```
\if@dosectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@dosectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@mtc@section@def@
```

\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@
\if@mtc@sect@floats@
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

If yes, we verify that the placeins package [15] has been loaded with the correct options or that the insection option of the minitoc package has been invoked. If not, a warning is given. W0056

```
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \else
  \if@mtc@sect@floats@%
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0056]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {You are using \string\dosectlof\space and/or
       \MessageBreak
       \string\dosectlot, \string\sectlof\space and/or \string\sectlot,
       \MessageBreak
       hence the ``insection'' package
       \MessageBreak
       option is recommended}%
   \@mtc@hints@w@true \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.2 Final part of the consistency tests

We test if \parttoc has been used without \doparttoc, etc., for each pair of preparation/insertion commands.

\if@mtc@part@def@
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@doparttoc@used@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@partlof@used@
\if@dopartlof@used@
\if@partlot@used@
\if@dopartlot@used@

For the part level commands: W0062 W0060 W0061

```
\if@mtc@part@def@
\if@parttoc@used@
  \if@doparttoc@used@\else
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0062]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {You have used \string\parttoc,
      \MessageBreak
      but not \string\doparttoc}
  \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
\if@partlof@used@
  \if@dopartlof@used@\else
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0060]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {You have used \string\partlof,
      \MessageBreak
      but not \string\dopartlof}
  \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
\if@partlot@used@
  \if@dopartlot@used@\else
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0061]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {You have used \string\partlot,
      \MessageBreak
      but not \string\dopartlot}
```

```
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
 \fi
\fi
```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@minitoc@used@
\if@dominitoc@used@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@minilof@used@
\if@dominilof@used@
\if@minilot@used@
\if@dominilot@used@

For the chapter level commands:

W0059 W0057 W0058

```
\if@mtc@chapter@def@
 \if@minitoc@used@
   \if@dominitoc@used@\else
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0059]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {You have used \string\minitoc,
       \MessageBreak
       but not \string\dominitoc}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
 \fi
 \if@minilof@used@
   \if@dominilof@used@\else
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0057]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {You have used \string\minilof,
       \MessageBreak
       but not \string\dominilof}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
 \fi
 \if@minilot@used@
   \if@dominilot@used@\else
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0058]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {You have used \string\minilot,
       \MessageBreak
       but not \string\dominilot}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
 \fi
\fi
```

\if@mtc@section@def@
\if@secttoc@used@
\if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@sectlof@used@
\if@dosectlof@used@
\if@sectlot@used@
\if@dosectlot@used@

For the section level commands:

W0065 W0063 W0064

```
\if@mtc@section@def@
 \if@secttoc@used@
   \if@dosecttoc@used@\else
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0065]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {You have used \string\secttoc,
       \MessageBreak
       but not \string\dosecttoc}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
 \fi
 \if@sectlof@used@
```

```
  \if@dosectlof@used@\else
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0063]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {You have used \string\sectlof,
      \MessageBreak
      but not \string\dosectlof}
  \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
\if@sectlot@used@
  \if@dosectlot@used@\else
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0064]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {You have used \string\sectlot,
      \MessageBreak
      but not \string\dosectlot}
  \fi
\fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)

Now, we test if a \doparttoc macro has been called but without any matching \parttoc, hence it is a vain call. We do the same for each analog command.

\if@mtc@part@def@
\if@doparttoc@used@
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@dopartlof@used@
\if@partlof@used@
\if@dopartlot@used@
\if@partlot@used@

Part level commands:

W0075
W0076
W0077

```
\if@mtc@part@def@
\if@doparttoc@used@
  \if@parttoc@used@\else
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0075]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {You have used \string\doparttoc,
      \MessageBreak
      but not \string\parttoc}
  \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
\if@dopartlof@used@
  \if@partlof@used@\else
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0076]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {You have used \string\dopartlof,
      \MessageBreak
      but not \string\partlof}
  \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
\if@dopartlot@used@
  \if@partlot@used@\else
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0077]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {You have used \string\dopartlot,
      \MessageBreak
      but not \string\partlot}
```

```
6871    \@mtc@hints@given@true
6872    \fi
6873  \fi
6874 \fi
```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@dominitoc@used@
\if@minitoc@used@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@dominilof@used@
\if@minilof@used@
\if@dominilot@used@
\if@minilot@used@

Chapter level commands:

W0078
W0079
W0080

```
6875 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
6876  \if@dominitoc@used@
6877    \if@minitoc@used@\else
6878    \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0078]{minitoc(hints)}%
6879       {You have used \string\dominitoc,
6880        \MessageBreak
6881        but not \string\minitoc}
6882    \@mtc@hints@given@true
6883    \fi
6884  \fi
6885  \if@dominilof@used@
6886    \if@minilof@used@\else
6887    \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0079]{minitoc(hints)}%
6888       {You have used \string\dominilof,
6889        \MessageBreak
6890        but not \string\minilof}
6891    \@mtc@hints@given@true
6892    \fi
6893  \fi
6894  \if@dominilot@used@
6895    \if@minilot@used@\else
6896    \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0080]{minitoc(hints)}%
6897       {You have used \string\dominilot,
6898        \MessageBreak
6899        but not \string\minilot}
6900    \@mtc@hints@given@true
6901    \fi
6902  \fi
6903 \fi
```

\if@mtc@section@def@
\if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@secttoc@used@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@dosectlof@used@
\if@sectlof@used@
\if@dosectlot@used@
\if@sectlot@used@

Section level commands:

W0081
W0082
W0083

```
6904 \if@mtc@section@def@
6905  \if@dosecttoc@used@
6906    \if@secttoc@used@\else
6907    \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0081]{minitoc(hints)}%
6908       {You have used \string\dosecttoc,
6909        \MessageBreak
6910        but not \string\secttoc}
6911    \@mtc@hints@given@true
6912    \fi
6913  \fi
6914  \if@dosectlof@used@
```

```
   \if@sectlof@used@\else
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0082]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {You have used \string\dosectlof,
       \MessageBreak
       but not \string\sectlof}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
 \fi
 \if@dosectlot@used@
   \if@sectlot@used@\else
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0083]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {You have used \string\dosectlot,
       \MessageBreak
       but not \string\sectlot}
   \fi
 \fi
\fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)

Another consistency test verifies that if the macro `\parttoc` has been called, then the macro `\tableofcontents` or `\faketableofcontents` has also been called (to create the necessary contents file); similar tests are made for the other mini-table commands.

`\if@mtc@part@def@` `\if@mtc@hints@given@` `\if@parttoc@used@` `\ifmtc@toc@used@` `\if@partlof@used@` `\ifmtc@lof@used@` `\if@partlot@used@` `\ifmtc@lot@used@`

Part level commands:

W0071 W0069 W0070

```
\if@mtc@part@def@
 \if@parttoc@used@
   \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0071]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {You have used \string\parttoc\space but not
       \MessageBreak
       \string\tableofcontents
       \MessageBreak
       nor \string\faketableofcontents}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
 \fi
 \if@partlof@used@
   \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0069]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {You have used \string\partlof\space but not
       \MessageBreak
       \string\listoffigures
       \MessageBreak
       nor \string\fakelistoffigures}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
 \fi
```

```
\if@partlot@used@
  \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0070]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {You have used \string\partlot\space but not
      \MessageBreak
      \string\listoftables
      \MessageBreak
      nor \string\fakelistoftables}
  \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
\fi
```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@minitoc@used@
\ifmtc@toc@used@
\if@minilof@used@
\ifmtc@lof@used@
\if@minilot@used@
\ifmtc@lot@used@

Chapter level commands:

W0068
W0066
W0067

```
\if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@minitoc@used@
  \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0068]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {You have used \string\minitoc\space but not
      \MessageBreak
      \string\tableofcontents
      \MessageBreak
      nor \string\faketableofcontents}
  \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
\if@minilof@used@
  \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0066]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {You have used \string\minilof\space but not
      \MessageBreak
      \string\listoffigures
      \MessageBreak
      nor \string\fakelistoffigures}
  \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
\if@minilot@used@
  \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0067]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {You have used \string\minilot\space but not
      \MessageBreak
      \string\listoftables
      \MessageBreak
      nor \string\fakelistoftables}
  \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
\fi
```

\if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@secttoc@used@
\ifmtc@toc@used@
\if@sectlof@used@
\ifmtc@lof@used@
\if@sectlot@used@
\ifmtc@lot@used@

Section level commands:

W0074 W0072 W0073

```
\if@mtc@section@def@
 \if@secttoc@used@
   \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0074]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {You have used \string\secttoc\space but not
       \MessageBreak
       \string\tableofcontents
       \MessageBreak
       nor \string\faketableofcontents}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
 \fi
 \if@sectlof@used@
   \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0072]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {You have used \string\sectlof\space but not
       \MessageBreak
       \string\listoffigures
       \MessageBreak
       nor \string\fakelistoffigures}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
 \fi
 \if@sectlot@used@
   \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0073]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {You have used \string\sectlot\space but not
       \MessageBreak
       \string\listoftables
       \MessageBreak
       nor \string\fakelistoftables}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
   \fi
 \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions

\mtc@hints@checklongext
\if@mtc@longext@
\if@mtc@part@def@
\value
\if@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@section@def@

If short extensions are used, you can use only 99 mini-tables of each kind. If more are created, the auxiliary files can be overwritten: the hundredth minitoc file `\jobname.U100` has its name truncated to `\jobname.U10`, which is already the tenth minitoc file. Thus, we need a hint to signal this situation. The code is rather simple, but the remedy is bitter and costly: either use a better operating system [17], either redesign the document.

W0054 W0053 W0055

```
\def\mtc@hints@checklongext{%
\if@mtc@longext@
```

[17] On the long term, a good investment.

```
\else
  \if@mtc@part@def@
    \ifnum 99 < \value{ptc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true
       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0054]{minitoc(hints)}%
          {You have used short extensions
           \MessageBreak
           and more than 99 parts (\arabic{ptc})}
    \fi
  \fi
  \if@mtc@chapter@def@
    \ifnum 99 < \value{mtc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true
       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
          {You have used short extensions
           \MessageBreak
           and more than 99 chapters (\arabic{mtc})}
    \fi
  \else
    \if@mtc@section@def@
      \ifnum 99 < \value{stc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true
         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0055]{minitoc(hints)}%
            {You have used short extensions
             \MessageBreak
             and more than 99 sections (\arabic{stc})}
      \fi
    \fi
  \fi
\fi}
\mtc@hints@checklongext
```

9.81.2.6 Final part of the hint about the sectsty package

\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ \if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if sectsty has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.1 on page 275. W0037

```
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0037]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The sectsty package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.7 Final part of the hint about the varsects package

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ \if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if varsects has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0038

section 9.9.2 on page 275.

```
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0038]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The varsects package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.8 Final part of the hint about the fncychap package

\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if fncychap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.3 on page 275. W0086

```
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0086]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The fncychap package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.9 Final part of the hint about the hangcaption package

\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if hangcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.4 on page 275. W0092

```
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0092]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The hangcaption package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.10 Final part of the hint about the quotchap package

\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if quotchap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.5 on page 276. W0087

```
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0087]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The quotchap package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.11 Final part of the hint about the romannum package

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if romannum has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.6 on page 276. W0088

```
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0088]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The romannum package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.12 Final part of the hint about the sfheaders package

\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if sfheaders has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.7 on page 276. W0089

```
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0089]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The sfheaders package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.13 Final part of the hint about the alnumsec package

\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if alnumsec has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.8 on page 276. W0090

```
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0090]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The alnumsec package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.14 Final part of the hint about the captcont package

\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if captcont has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.9 on page 277. W0091

```
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0091]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The captcont package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.15 Final part of the hint about the caption package

\if@mtc@captionLoaded@
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if caption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.10 on page 277. W0033

```
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0033]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The caption package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.16 Final part of the hint about the caption2 package

\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if caption2 has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.11 on page 277. W0034

```
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0034]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The caption2 package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.17 Final part of the hint about the ccaption package

\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if ccaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.12 on page 277. W0035

```
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0035]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The ccaption package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.18 Final part of the hint about the mcaption package

\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if mcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.13 on page 278. W0036

```
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@\else
  \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0036]{minitoc(hints)}%
     {The mcaption package should be
      \MessageBreak
      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
     \@mtc@hints@given@true
  \fi
\fi
```

9.81.2.19 Final part of the hint about the float package

\if@mtc@floatLoaded@ \if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if float has been loaded. See section 9.9.14 on page 278. I0053

```
\if@mtc@floatLoaded@\
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have loaded the float package;
    \MessageBreak
    please be aware that the minitoc package
    \MessageBreak
    facilities can not be used for new types
    \MessageBreak
    of floats defined by the float package\@gobble}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

9.81.2.20 Final part of the hint about the floatrow package

\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ \if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if floatrow has been loaded. See section 9.9.15 on page 278. I0053

```
\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@\
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have loaded the floatrow package;
    \MessageBreak
    please be aware that the minitoc package
    \MessageBreak
    facilities can not be used for new types
    \MessageBreak
    of floats defined by the floatrow package\@gobble}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

9.81.2.21 Final part of the hint about the trivfloat package

\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@ \if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if trivfloat has been loaded. See section 9.9.16 on page 278. I0053

```
\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@\
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have loaded the trivfloat package;
    \MessageBreak
    please be aware that the minitoc package
    \MessageBreak
    facilities can not be used for new types
    \MessageBreak
    of floats defined by the trivfloat package\@gobble}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

9.81.2.22 Final part of the hint about the rotfloat package

\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ \if@mtc@hints@given@

We test if rotfloat has been loaded. See section 9.9.17 on page 278. I0053

```
\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@\
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have loaded the rotfloat package;
    \MessageBreak
    please be aware that the minitoc package
    \MessageBreak
    facilities can not be used for new types
    \MessageBreak
    of floats defined by the rotfloat package\@gobble}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

9.81.2.23 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected

We test for each kind of mini-tables.

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@

For parttocs: W0046

```
\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0046]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have attempted to insert
    \MessageBreak
    empty parttocs}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@partlof@

For partlofs: W0044

```
\if@mtc@empty@partlof@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0044]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have attempted to insert
    \MessageBreak
    empty partlofs}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@partlot@

For partlots: W0045

```
\if@mtc@empty@partlot@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
```

```
   {You have attempted to insert
    \MessageBreak
    empty partlots}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@` For minitocs: W0043

```
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have attempted to insert
    \MessageBreak
    empty minitocs}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

`\if@mtc@empty@minilof@` For minilofs: W0041

```
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0041]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have attempted to insert
    \MessageBreak
    empty minilofs}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

`\if@mtc@empty@minilot@` For minilots: W0042

```
\if@mtc@empty@minilot@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0042]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have attempted to insert
    \MessageBreak
    empty minilots}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

`\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@` For secttocs: W0049

```
\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0049]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have attempted to insert
    \MessageBreak
    empty secttocs}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ For sectlofs: W0047

```
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0047]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have attempted to insert
    \MessageBreak
    empty sectlofs}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ For sectlots: W0048

```
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0048]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have attempted to insert
    \MessageBreak
    empty sectlots}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

9.81.2.24 Check if obsolete commands have been used

This hint is just a reminder if you have used obsolete commands, which are also signalled in the *document*.log file.

\if@firstpartis@used@ Obsolete macro \firstpartis: W0051

```
\if@firstpartis@used@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0051]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
    \MessageBreak
    command: \string\firstpartis}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

\if@firstchapteris@used@ Obsolete macro \firstchapteris: W0050

```
\if@firstchapteris@used@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0050]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
    \MessageBreak
    command: \string\firstchapteris}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

\if@firstsectionis@used@ Obsolete macro \firstsectionis: W0052

```
\if@firstsectionis@used@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0052]{minitoc(hints)}%
   {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
    \MessageBreak
    command: \string\firstsectionis}
   \@mtc@hints@given@true
\fi
```

9.81.2.25 Check if some hints have been written

\if@mtc@hints@given@ \mtc@hints@enddoc We come at the end of the third part of the hints option: if problems have been detected, a warning is displayed; the warning is not displayed but only written in the *document*.log file if no problems have been detected. And we terminate the \mtc@hints@enddoc macro by a closing brace. W0024 I0019

```
\if@mtc@hints@given@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0024]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {Some hints have been written
       \MessageBreak
       in the \jobname.log file}
\else
   \mtcPackageInfo[I0019]{minitoc(hints)}%
      {No hints have been written
       \MessageBreak
       in the \jobname.log file.\@gobble}
\fi
}
```

9.82 Processing of options

\InputIfFileExists \ExecuteOptions First, if possible, we apply the default language option, english:

```
    \InputIfFileExists{english.mld}%
      {\ExecuteOptions{english}}%
```

\mtcPackageError
\providecommand
\ptctitle
\plftitle
\plttitle
\mtctitle
\mlftitle
\mlttitle
\stctitle
\slftitle
\slttitle

Else, we signal a severe error and provide the missing default titles:


```
7327      {\mtcPackageError[E0036]{minitoc}%
7328         {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
7329          \MessageBreak
7330          The minitoc language object file (.mld),
7331          \MessageBreak
7332          english.mld is not found.
7333          \MessageBreak
7334          We will try to continue with default values}%
7335         {See the minitoc documentation.
7336          \MessageBreak
7337          Please fix your minitoc installation.
7338          \MessageBreak
7339          Press <return> to continue}%
7340       \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
7341       \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
7342       \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
7343       \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
7344       \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
7345       \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
7346       \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
7347       \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
7348       \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
7349     }%
```

\ProcessOptions*

Then, we execute all requested options: for most options, it is just setting a flag, or loading a file for the language options.

```
7350 \ProcessOptions*
```

We now examine the flags for some options and execute the necessary actions.

9.82.1 Processing the `insection` option

\if@mtc@ss@insection@
\RequirePackage
\@ifpackageloaded
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@

For the `insection` option, we load the placeins package [15] with its options `verbose` and `section`, after the flafter package (described in [288] and [330, page 286]); the correct loading is verified:

```
7351 \if@mtc@ss@insection@
7352    \RequirePackage{flafter}[2000/07/23]%
7353    \RequirePackage[section,verbose]{placeins}[2005/04/18]%
7354    \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
7355       {\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true}{\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false}%
7356 \fi
```

9.82.2 Processing the notoccite option

\if@mtc@notoccite@ \RequirePackage

For the notoccite option, we just load the notoccite package [14]:

```
\if@mtc@notoccite@
   \RequirePackage{notoccite}%
\fi
```

9.82.3 Processing the listfiles option

\mtc@maf \tf@mtc \if@mtc@longext@ \mtc@maf@long \mtc@maf@short \mtc@addtomaf \IfFileExists \jobname

I0009

We define the \mtc@maf macro which closes \tf@mtc and reopens it to write into the file *document*.maf. It calls \mtc@maf@long or \mtc@maf@short (long or short extensions), then closes \tf@mtc. \mtc@maf@long or \mtc@maf@short writes the names of the existing auxiliary files using decrementing loops on the associated counters, and includes *document*.mtc in the list (but *not* the *document*.maf [18] file). We must also check the existence of \jobname.mtc0 if long extensions are used.

```
\def\mtc@maf{%
       \mtcPackageInfo[I0009]{minitoc}%
                      {Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
                       \MessageBreak
                       Creating the \jobname.maf file\@gobble}
       \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
       \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.maf
       \if@mtc@longext@\mtc@maf@long\else\mtc@maf@short\fi
       \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
\def\mtc@addtomaf#1{%
  \IfFileExists{#1}{\immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}}{}}
\def\mtc@maf@long{%
       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc0}
\@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.ptc\arabic{ptc}}
       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plf\arabic{ptc}}
       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plt\arabic{ptc}}
       \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
\@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{%
       \loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc\arabic{mtc}}
       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlf\arabic{mtc}}
       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlt\arabic{mtc}}
       \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
\@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.stc\arabic{stc}}
       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slf\arabic{stc}}
       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slt\arabic{stc}}
       \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}
```

[18] Some users could made a cleanup using this file as a list of files to delete, so it must not be in the list.

```
\def\mtc@maf@short{%
        \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
\@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
        \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.P\arabic{ptc}}
        \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.G\arabic{ptc}}
        \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.U\arabic{ptc}}
        \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
\@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
        \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.M\arabic{mtc}}
        \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.F\arabic{mtc}}
        \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.T\arabic{mtc}}
        \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
\@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
        \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.S\arabic{stc}}
        \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.H\arabic{stc}}
        \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.V\arabic{stc}}
        \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}
```

`\if@mtc@listfiles@` `\AtEndDocument` `\mtc@maf`

If this option is active, we call `\mtc@maf` in an `\AtEndDocument` block.

```
\if@mtc@listfiles@{\AtEndDocument{\mtc@maf}}\else\fi
```

9.82.4 Processing the `hints` option

`\if@mtc@hints@` `\AtBeginDocument` `\mtc@hints@begindoc` `\AtEndDocument` `\mtc@hints@enddoc`

For the `hints` option, we set its first part in an `\AtBeginDocument` block and its third (last) part in an `\AtEndDocument` block:

```
\if@mtc@hints@
   \AtBeginDocument{\mtc@hints@begindoc}%
   \AtEndDocument{\mtc@hints@enddoc}%
\fi
```

9.82.5 Saving the sectionning commands

And, at least, we save the definitions of sectionning commands (and of their unstarred and starred branches), for comparaisons (this is a part of the `hints` option executed in the preamble):

`\@ifundefined` `\mtc@hints@part` `\part` `\mtc@hints@@part` `\@part` `\mtc@hints@@spart` `\@spart`

For the `\part` command:

```
\@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\mtc@hints@part\part
                      \let\mtc@hints@@part\@part
                      \let\mtc@hints@@spart\@spart}
```

\@ifundefined
\mtc@hints@chapter
\chapter
\mtc@hints@@chapter
\@chapter
\mtc@hints@@schapter
\@schapter

For the \chapter command:

```
\@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\mtc@hints@chapter\chapter
                         \let\mtc@hints@@chapter\@chapter
                         \let\mtc@hints@@schapter\@schapter}
```

\@ifundefined
\mtc@hints@section
\section
\mtc@hints@@sect
\@sect
\mtc@hints@@ssect
\@ssect

For the \section command:

```
\@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\mtc@hints@section\section
                         \let\mtc@hints@@sect\@sect
                         \let\mtc@hints@@ssect\@ssect}
```

9.83 Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands

\mtc@classck
\mtcPackageError

E0037

It may happen that you use a preparation command (like \dominitoc) or an insertion command (like \dominitoc) in a document using a class where that command is not available (like article). To get a better diagnostic for such errors, we intercept such commands by providing a default definition which just emits an error message. These default definitions are made in an \AtBeginDocument block.

```
\def\mtc@classck#1{%
  \mtcPackageError[E0037]{minitoc}%
     {The \csname #1\endcsname\space command is incompatible
      \MessageBreak
      with the document class}%
     {Correct the source code.
      \MessageBreak
      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
}%
```

\AtBeginDocument

An \AtBeginDocument bloc:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
```

\providecommand
\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dopartlot

Part-level preparation commands:

```
 \providecommand{\doparttoc}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{doparttoc}}%
 \providecommand{\dopartlof}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{dopartlof}}%
 \providecommand{\dopartlot}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{dopartlot}}%
```

\dominitoc
\dominilof
\dominilot
Chapter-level preparation commands:

```
\providecommand{\dominitoc}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{dominitoc}}%
\providecommand{\dominilof}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{dominilof}}%
\providecommand{\dominilot}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{dominilot}}%
```

\dosecttoc
\dosectlof
\dosectlot
Section-level preparation commands:

```
\providecommand{\dosecttoc}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{dosecttoc}}%
\providecommand{\dosectlof}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{dosectlof}}%
\providecommand{\dosectlot}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{dosectlot}}%
```

\parttoc
\partlof
\partlot
Part-level insertion commands:

```
\providecommand{\parttoc}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{parttoc}}%
\providecommand{\partlof}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{partlof}}%
\providecommand{\partlot}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{partlot}}%
```

\minitoc
\minilof
\minilot
Chapter-level insertion commands:

```
\providecommand{\minitoc}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{minitoc}}%
\providecommand{\minilof}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{minilof}}%
\providecommand{\minilot}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{minilot}}%
```

\secttoc
\sectlof
\sectlot
Section-level insertion commands:

```
\providecommand{\secttoc}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{secttoc}}%
\providecommand{\sectlof}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{sectlof}}%
\providecommand{\sectlot}[1][l]{\mtc@classck{sectlot}}%
}
```

And the package is terminated.

```
⟨/minitoc⟩
```

9.84 The minitoc-fr.dtx file

\jobname
\input
This short file is necessary to create the french documentation. Its rôle is to set \jobname to minitoc-fr in place of minitoc. As minitoc.ins generates the minitoc.lan and minitoc-fr.lan files which set a language number \LANG, and minitoc.dtx reads then the \jobname.lan file, the documentation can be in several languages (english and french here) in minitoc.dtx, the language being selected by \ifcase\LANG\relax ... \or\relax ... \fi constructs. The \relax primitives are necessary to avoid bad surprises.

```
⟨*minitoc-fr⟩
\ProvidesFile{minitoc-fr.dtx}%
              [2018/07/12 minitoc v62 french documentation start file]
\input{minitoc.dtx}
⟨/minitoc-fr⟩
```

Chapter 10

Commented code of the mtcoff package

Contents

10.1 Why mtcoff?

The minitoc package [156, 157] requires that the user inserts many commands in the source code of her/his document, and not only into the preamble of the document. Hence the concept of a replacement package, mtcoff (means "minitoc off"), which substitutes to all commands and environments of the minitoc package some alternative commands and environments with the same names and syntaxes, but doing nothing (except emitting some harmless warnings, for special cases). This way, to turn off easily the minitoc package, you just have to write, in the preamble of your document, something like:

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
%\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the minitoc package is activated with the specified options. If you modify this two lines this way:

```
%\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the minitoc package is desactivated and all its commands and environments are ignored. This is much easier, faster and safer than commenting out all the commands and environments of minitoc. Moreover, this operation is reversible.

10.2 Identification of the package

\NeedsTeXFormat
\ProvidesPackage

First, we identify the package and check the version of LaTeX [1]; we need the mtcmess package to write messages with unique identifiers.

```
7456 ⟨*mtcoff⟩
7457 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}%
7458 \ProvidesPackage{mtcoff}[2018/07/12 v62 The mtcoff package]
7459 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
```

[1] This checking is not really useful for the mtcoff package itself, but it is good to check that your version of LaTeX is not too old to support minitoc.

10.3 Faking counters and dimensions

\count@ \dimen@ \c@minitocdepth \mtcindent \mtcskipamount \bigskipamount \c@parttocdepth \mtcindent \c@secttocdepth \stcindent

As minitoc declares some counters and dimensions registers, we fake them using \count@ or \dimen@. For \mtcskipamount, we must use its default definition, \bigskipamount.

```
\let\c@minitocdepth\count@
\let\mtcindent\dimen@
\let\mtcskipamount\bigskipamount
\let\c@parttocdepth\count@
\let\ptcindent\dimen@
\let\c@secttocdepth\count@
\let\stcindent\dimen@
```

\c@mtc \c@ptc \c@stc

The basic mini-table counters are provided by \count@:

```
\let\c@mtc\count@   \let\c@ptc\count@   \let\c@stc\count@
```

\mtcgapbeforeheads \mtcgapafterheads

The gaps before and after parttoc heads receive their default values:

```
\def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}  \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}
```

\@ifundefined \kernafterparttoc \kernafterpartlof \kernafterpartlot \kernaftersecttoc \kernaftersectlof \kernaftersectlot \kernafterminitoc \kernafterminilof \kernafterminilot

F0008

We must define the macros for the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before the bottom rule. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros is used.

```
\@ifundefined{part}{}{%
   \def\kernafterparttoc{%
    \mtcoffwarn@true
    \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
      {The macro \string\kernafterparttoc
       \MessageBreak
       should not be used out of context
       \MessageBreak}%
     \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
   \def\kernafterpartlof{%
    \mtcoffwarn@true
    \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
      {The macro \string\kernafterpartlof
       \MessageBreak
       should not be used out of context
       \MessageBreak}%
     \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
   \def\kernafterpartlot{%
    \mtcoffwarn@true
    \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
      {The macro \string\kernafterpartlot
```

```
7490            \MessageBreak
7491            should not be used out of context
7492            \MessageBreak}%
7493          \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7494                          }%
7495      \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
7496         \@ifundefined{section}{}%
7497                               {%
7498            \def\kernaftersecttoc{%
7499                  \mtcoffwarn@true
7500                  \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7501                    {The macro \string\kernaftersecttoc
7502                     \MessageBreak
7503                     should not be used out of context
7504                     \MessageBreak}%
7505               \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7506            \def\kernaftersectlof{%
7507                  \mtcoffwarn@true
7508                  \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7509                    {The macro \string\kernaftersectlof
7510                     \MessageBreak
7511                     should not be used out of context
7512                     \MessageBreak}%
7513               \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7514            \def\kernaftersectlot{%
7515                  \mtcoffwarn@true
7516                  \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7517                    {The macro \string\kernaftersectlot
7518                     \MessageBreak
7519                     should not be used out of context
7520                     \MessageBreak}%
7521               \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7522                             }%
7523                          }%
7524                          {%
7525            \def\kernafterminitoc{%
7526                  \mtcoffwarn@true
7527                  \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7528                    {The macro \string\kernafterminitoc
7529                     \MessageBreak
7530                     should not be used out of context
7531                     \MessageBreak}%
7532                \kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7533            \def\kernafterminilof{%
7534                  \mtcoffwarn@true
7535                  \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7536                    {The macro \string\kernafterminilof
7537                     \MessageBreak
7538                     should not be used out of context
7539                     \MessageBreak}%
7540                \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.0ex}%
7541            \def\kernafterminilot{%
7542                  \mtcoffwarn@true
7543                  \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
```

```
                    {The macro \string\kernafterminilot
                     \MessageBreak
                     should not be used out of context
                     \MessageBreak}%
                \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.0ex}%
                          }%
```

\@ifundefined
\ptcoffset
\plfoffset
\pltoffset
\stcoffset
\slfoffset
\sltoffset
\mtcoffset
\slfoffset
\mltoffset

We must define the macros for the horizontal offsets of the mini-tables. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros is used. F0009

```
\@ifundefined{part}{}{%
   \def\ptcoffset{%
    \mtcoffwarn@true
    \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
      {The macro \string\ptcoffset
       \MessageBreak
       should not be used out of context
       \MessageBreak}%
     0pt}%
   \def\plfoffset{%
    \mtcoffwarn@true
    \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
      {The macro \string\plfoffset
       \MessageBreak
       should not be used out of context
       \MessageBreak}%
     0pt}%
   \def\pltoffset{%
    \mtcoffwarn@true
    \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
      {The macro \string\pltoffset
       \MessageBreak
       should not be used out of context
       \MessageBreak}%
     0pt}%
                    }%
\@ifundefined{chapter}{%
   \@ifundefined{section}{}%
                         {%
       \def\stcoffset{%
              \mtcoffwarn@true
              \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
                {The macro \string\stcoffset
                 \MessageBreak
                 should not be used out of context
                 \MessageBreak}%
          0pt}%
       \def\slfoffset{%
              \mtcoffwarn@true
              \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
                {The macro \string\slfoffset
                 \MessageBreak
```

```
                should not be used out of context
                \MessageBreak}%
      0pt}%
   \def\sltoffset{%
          \mtcoffwarn@true
          \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
            {The macro \string\sltoffset
             \MessageBreak
             should not be used out of context
             \MessageBreak}%
      0pt}%
                      }%
                   }%
                   {%
   \def\mtcoffset{%
          \mtcoffwarn@true
          \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
            {The macro \string\mtcoffset
             \MessageBreak
             should not be used out of context
             \MessageBreak}%
       0pt}%
   \def\slfoffset{%
          \mtcoffwarn@true
          \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
            {The macro \string\slfoffset
             \MessageBreak
             should not be used out of context
             \MessageBreak}%
       0pt}%
   \def\mltoffset{%
          \mtcoffwarn@true
          \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
            {The macro \string\mltoffset
             \MessageBreak
             should not be used out of context
             \MessageBreak}%
       0pt}%
                   }%
```

10.4 Faking simple commands

\faketableofcontents
\fakelistoffigures
\fakelistoftables
\mtcskip

Some user commands are easy to fake:

```
\let\faketableofcontents\relax
\let\fakelistoffigures\relax
\let\fakelistoftables\relax
\let\mtcskip\relax
```

\adjustptc
\adjustmtc
\adjuststc
\decrementptc
\decrementmtc
\decrementstc
\incrementptc
\incrementmtc
\incrementstc

Basic adjustment commands are also easy:

```
\newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\relax}
\newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\relax}
\newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\relax}
\let\decrementptc\relax \let\incrementptc\relax
\let\decrementmtc\relax \let\incrementmtc\relax
\let\decrementstc\relax \let\incrementstc\relax
```

\partend
\partbegin
\chapterend
\chapterbegin
\sectend
\sectbegin

The following commands are not directly called by the user, in normal circumstances, but must be faked:

```
\let\partend\relax    \let\partbegin\relax
\let\chapterend\relax \let\chapterbegin\relax
\let\sectend\relax    \let\sectbegin\relax
```

10.5 Faking commands with one optional argument

\gobbleopt@

The user commands with an optional argument are faked using the internal LaTeX macro \@ifnextchar (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command \gobbleopt@.

```
\def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}
```

\@ifnextchar
\doparttoc
\dopartlof
\dopartlot
\parttoc
\partlof
\partlot

Commands for part level mini-tables:

```
\def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
```

\@ifnextchar
\dominitoc
\dominilof
\dominilot
\minitoc
\minilof
\minilot

Commands for chapter level mini-tables:

```
\def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
```

\@ifnextchar
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof
\dosectlot
\secttoc
\sectlof
\sectlot

Commands for section level mini-tables:

```
\def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
\def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
```

\@ifnextchar
\mtcprepare

Command \mtcprepare:

```
\def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[l]}}
```

10.6 Faking flags

\ifinparttoc
\ifinpartlof
\ifinpartlot
\ifinminitoc
\ifinminilof
\ifinminilot
\ifinsecttoc
\ifinsectlof
\ifinsectlot

We defines flags which were true when inside a mini-table of the matching type, false outside.

```
\newif\ifinparttoc\inparttocfalse%
\newif\ifinpartlof\inpartloffalse%
\newif\ifinpartlot\inpartlotfalse%
\newif\ifinsecttoc\insecttocfalse%
\newif\ifinsectlof\insectloffalse%
\newif\ifinsectlot\insectlotfalse%
\newif\ifinminitoc\inminitocfalse%
\newif\ifinminilof\inminiloffalse%
\newif\ifinminilot\inminilotfalse%
```

10.7 Disabling the internal commands

\@gobbletwo
\tf@mtc
\mtc@string
\appendixmtc
\l@xchapter
\xchapter
\pchapter
\psect
\l@xpart
\xpart
\l@xsect
\xsect

We need also to disable some minitoc commands, with \relax (macros with no argument) or \@gobbletwo (macros with two arguments):

```
\let\tf@mtc\count@
\let\mtc@string\relax
\let\appendixmtc\relax
\let\l@xchapter\@gobbletwo
\let\xchapter\relax
\let\pchapter\relax
\let\psect\relax
\let\l@xpart\@gobbletwo
\let\xpart\relax
\let\l@xsect\@gobbletwo
\let\xsect\relax
```

10.8 Disabling the font commands

\empty We disable the minitoc font commands (like \mtcSSfont) with \empty, because some users might have used:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{...}
```

which will not work if we use \relax here.

\ptcfont \ptcCfont \ptcSfont \ptcSSfont \ptcSSSfont \ptcPfont \ptcSPfont \plffont \plfSfont \pltfont \pltSfont \ptifont

Fonts for part level mini-tables:

```
\let\ptcfont\empty
\let\ptcCfont\empty
\let\ptcSfont\empty
\let\ptcSSfont\empty
\let\ptcSSSfont\empty
\let\ptcPfont\empty
\let\ptcSPfont\empty
\let\plffont\empty
\let\plfSfont\empty
\let\pltfont\empty
\let\pltSfont\empty
\let\ptifont\empty
```

\mtcfont \mtcSfont \mtcSSfont \mtcSSSfont \mtcPfont \mtcSPfont \mlffont \mlfSfont \mltfont \mltSfont \mtifont

Fonts for chapter level mini-tables:

```
\let\mtcfont\empty
\let\mtcSfont\empty
\let\mtcSSfont\empty
\let\mtcSSSfont\empty
\let\mtcPfont\empty
\let\mtcSPfont\empty
\let\mlffont\empty
\let\mlfSfont\empty
\let\mltfont\empty
\let\mltSfont\empty
\let\mtifont\empty
```

\stcfont \stcSSfont \stcSSSfont \stcPfont \stcSPfont \slffont \slfSfont \sltfont \sltSfont \stifont

Fonts for section level mini-tables:

```
\let\stcfont\empty
\let\stcSSfont\empty
\let\stcSSSfont\empty
\let\stcPfont\empty
\let\stcSPfont\empty
\let\slffont\empty
```

```
\let\slfSfont\empty
\let\sltfont\empty
\let\sltSfont\empty
\let\stifont\empty
```

\coffeefont Font for "coffee" ☕ lines:

```
\let\coffeefont\empty
```

10.9 Disabling the \mtcset... commands

\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetdepth
\mtcsetoffset
\mtcsetfont
\mtcsettitlefont
\mtcsettitle
\mtcsetformat
\mtcsetfeature
\mtcsetpagenumbers
\mtcsetrules

These commands use two or three mandatory arguments:

```
\let\mtcsetdepth\@gobbletwo
\let\mtcsetoffset\@gobbletwo
\def\mtcsetfont#1#2#3{\empty}
\let\mtcsettitlefont\@gobbletwo
\let\mtcsettitle\@gobbletwo
\def\mtcsetformat#1#2#3{\empty}
\def\mtcsetfeature#1#2#3{\empty}
\let\mtcsetpagenumbers\@gobbletwo
\let\mtcsetrules\@gobbletwo
```

10.10 Disabling the \mtcpolym... commands

\DeclareRobustCommand
\mtcpolymtoc
\mtcpolymlof
\mtcpolymlot

We simulate these commands by keeping only the fourth argument; they must still be robust.

```
% \DeclareRobustCommand{\mtcpolymtoc}[4]{{#4}}
% \DeclareRobustCommand{\mtcpolymlof}[4]{{#4}}
% \DeclareRobustCommand{\mtcpolymlot}[4]{{#4}}
```

10.11 Disabling the new \l@... commands

\l@starpart
\l@starchapter
\l@starsection
\l@starsubsection
\l@starsubsubsection
\l@starparagraph
\l@starsubparagraph

The minitoc package defines the \l@starXXX commands to format TOC entries for starred sectionning commands. We reset to the unstarred version, when necessary:

```
\@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
```

```
\@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
\@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
\@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
\@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}
```

10.12 Ignore the obsolete commands

\@gobble
\firstpartis
\firstchapteris
\firstsectionis

We just ignore the obsolete commands (with one mandatory argument):

```
\let\firstpartis\@gobble \let\firstchapteris\@gobble \let\firstsectionis\@gobble
```

10.13 Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage and \mtcloadmlo commands

\@gobble
\mtcselectlanguage
\mtcloadmlo

These command have one mandatory argument:

```
\let\mtcselectlanguage\@gobble   \let\mtcloadmlo\@gobble
```

10.14 Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules

\ptcrule
\noptcrule
\mtcrule
\nomtcrule
\stcrule
\nostcrule
\plfrule
\noplfrule
\mlfrule
\nomlfrule
\slfrule
\noslfrule
\pltrule
\nopltrule
\mltrule
\nomltrule
\sltrule
\nosltrule

These commands have no argument:

```
\let\ptcrule\relax
\let\noptcrule\relax
\let\mtcrule\relax
\let\nomtcrule\relax
\let\stcrule\relax
\let\nostcrule\relax
\let\plfrule\relax
\let\noplfrule\relax
\let\mlfrule\relax
\let\nomlfrule\relax
\let\slfrule\relax
\let\noslfrule\relax
\let\pltrule\relax
\let\nopltrule\relax
\let\mltrule\relax
\let\nomltrule\relax
\let\sltrule\relax
\let\nosltrule\relax
```

10.15 Disabling the commands for the page numbers

\ptcpagenumbers
\noptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers
\nomtcpagenumbers
\stcpagenumbers
\nostcpagenumbers
\plfpagenumbers
\noplfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers
\nomlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers
\noslfpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers
\nopltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers
\nomltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers
\nosltpagenumbers

These commands have no argument:

```
\let\mtcpagenumbers\relax
\let\nomtcpagenumbers\relax
\let\stcpagenumbers\relax
\let\nostcpagenumbers\relax
\let\ptcpagenumbers\relax
\let\noptcpagenumbers\relax
\let\mlfpagenumbers\relax
\let\nomlfpagenumbers\relax
\let\slfpagenumbers\relax
\let\noslfpagenumbers\relax
\let\plfpagenumbers\relax
\let\noplfpagenumbers\relax
\let\mltpagenumbers\relax
\let\nomltpagenumbers\relax
\let\sltpagenumbers\relax
\let\nosltpagenumbers\relax
\let\pltpagenumbers\relax
\let\nopltpagenumbers\relax
```

10.16 Disabling the mini-table features commands

We disable the commands for features (like \beforeparttoc) with \empty, because some users may have used:

```
\renewcommand{\beforeparttoc}{...}
```

which will not work if we use \relax here. These commands have no argument,

\beforeparttoc
\beforepartlof
\beforepartlot
\afterparttoc
\afterpartlof
\afterpartlot
\openparttoc
\openpartlof
\openpartlot
\closeparttoc
\closepartlof
\closepartlot
\thispageparttocstyle
\thispagepartlofstyle
\thispagepartlotstyle

Commands for part level mini-tables:

```
\let\beforeparttoc\empty
\let\beforepartlof\empty
\let\beforepartlot\empty
\let\afterparttoc\empty
\let\afterpartlof\empty
\let\afterpartlot\empty
\let\openparttoc\empty
\let\openpartlof\empty
\let\openpartlot\empty
\let\closeparttoc\empty
\let\closepartlof\empty
\let\closepartlot\empty
```

```
\let\thispageparttocstyle\empty
\let\thispagepartlofstyle\empty
\let\thispagepartlotstyle\empty
```

\beforeminitoc
\beforeminilof
\beforeminilot
\afterminitoc
\afterminilof
\afterminilot
\openminitoc
\openminilof
\openminilot
\closeminitoc
\closeminilof
\closeminilot
\thispageminitocstyle
\thispageminilofstyle
\thispageminilotstyle

Commands for chapter level mini-tables:

```
\let\beforeminitoc\empty
\let\beforeminilof\empty
\let\beforeminilot\empty
\let\afterminitoc\empty
\let\afterminilof\empty
\let\afterminilot\empty
\let\openminitoc\empty
\let\openminilof\empty
\let\openminilot\empty
\let\closeminitoc\empty
\let\closeminilof\empty
\let\closeminilot\empty
\let\thispageminitocstyle\empty
\let\thispageminilofstyle\empty
\let\thispageminilotstyle\empty
```

\beforesecttoc
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot
\aftersecttoc
\aftersectlof
\aftersectlot
\opensecttoc
\opensectlof
\opensectlot
\closesecttoc
\closesectlof
\closesectlot
\thispagesecttocstyle
\thispagesectlofstyle
\thispagesectlotstyle

Commands for section level mini-tables:

```
\let\beforesecttoc\empty
\let\beforesectlof\empty
\let\beforesectlot\empty
\let\aftersecttoc\empty
\let\aftersectlof\empty
\let\aftersectlot\empty
\let\opensecttoc\empty
\let\opensectlof\empty
\let\opensectlot\empty
\let\closesecttoc\empty
\let\closesectlof\empty
\let\closesectlot\empty
\let\thispagesecttocstyle\empty
\let\thispagesectlofstyle\empty
\let\thispagesectlotstyle\empty
```

10.17 Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands

\if@mtc@longext@
\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc
\ifundottedmtc
\l@listof
\ifmtcsecondpart
\chapter

There are some flags and commands that it is wise to declare:

```
\newif\if@mtc@longext@ \@mtc@longext@true
\newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
```

```
\newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
\newif\ifundottedmtc \undottedmtcfalse
\newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
\let\l@listof\chapter
```

10.18 Caution for some commands

\AtBeginDocument
\ifmtcoffwarn@

Some minitoc commands should eventually be replaced if you decide to *definitely* stop using the minitoc package with your document. So we declare a flag and an \AtEndDocument block to signal that you have used these commands:

F0007

```
\newif\ifmtcoffwarn@ \mtcoffwarn@false
\AtEndDocument{\ifmtcoffwarn@
   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[F0007]{mtcoff}%
      {You should scan (backwards) your .log
       \MessageBreak
       file to find some commands needing
       \MessageBreak
       to be replaced if you decide to
       \MessageBreak
       DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
       \MessageBreak
       document. It is more wise to keep the
       \MessageBreak
       \string\usepackage\space lines for minitoc and mtcoff
       \MessageBreak
       and to comment out only one of them}
\fi}
```

\mtcaddchapter
\mtcaddsection
\mtcaddpart
\ifmtcoffwarn@
\mtc@ck
\addcontentsline

Then these commands are disabled and they set the flag and give a warning (useful to get the line number):

F0004
F0006
F0005

```
\newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][]{\mtcoffwarn@true
   \mtcPackageWarning[F0004]{mtcoff}%
   {\protect\mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
    \MessageBreak
    by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
    \MessageBreak}
\def\mtc@ck{#1}
\ifx\mtc@ck\empty
\else
   \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
\fi}
\newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][]{\mtcoffwarn@true
   \mtcPackageWarning[F0006]{mtcoff}%
      {\protect\mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
       \MessageBreak
```

```
       by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
       \MessageBreak}
\def\mtc@ck{#1}
\ifx\mtc@ck\empty
\else
     \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
\fi}
\newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][]{\mtcoffwarn@true
   \mtcPackageWarning[F0005]{mtcoff}%
      {\protect\mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
       \MessageBreak
       by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
       \MessageBreak}
\def\mtc@ck{#1}
\ifx\mtc@ck\empty
\else
   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
\fi}
```

10.19 Disabling commands for “coffee”

\addcoffeeline
\coffeeline
\@gobble
\@Undottedtocline
\@Undottedtoclinep

We disable the commands relative to “coffee” lines, and the specific version of contents lines without leaders of dots:

```
\def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{\relax}
\let\coffeeline\@gobble
\let\l@coffee\relax
\def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}
\def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}
```

10.20 Disabling the `mtchideinmain...` environments

mtchideinmaintoc
mtchideinmainlof
mtchideinmainlot

These environments accept one optional argument:

```
\newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}
\newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}
\newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}
```

10.21 Inhibition of the \mtc@[save|restore]XXXdepth internal commands

\mtc@savetocdepth
\mtc@savelofdepth
\mtc@savelotdepth
\mtc@restoretocdepth
\mtc@restorelofdepth
\mtc@restorelotdepth

We must inhibit these commands, inserted in the .toc, .lof and .lot files by the hiding commands. So we will not have to delete these files when switching from the minitoc package to the mtcoff package.

```
\let\mtc@savetocdepth\empty
\let\mtc@savelofdepth\empty
\let\mtc@savelotdepth\empty
\let\mtc@restoretocdepth\empty
\let\mtc@restorelofdepth\empty
\let\mtc@restorelotdepth\empty
```

10.22 Disabling the \mtcfixglossary command

\mtcfixglossary

This command accepts one optional argument:

```
\newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][]{\relax}
```

10.23 Disabling the \mtcfixindex command

\mtcfixindex

This command accepts one optional argument:

```
\newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][]{\relax}
```

10.24 Disabling the \mtcfixnomenclature command

\mtcfixnomenclature

This command accepts one optional argument:

```
\newcommand{\mtcfixnomenclature}[1][]{\relax}
```

10.25 Disabling the \addstarred... commands

\ifmtcoffwarn@
\addstarredpart
\addstarredchapter
\addstarredsection
\addcontentsline

These commands should be replaced by standard commands, but mtcoff simulates and gives a warning, which will be reminded at the end of document:

F0002
F0001
F0003

```
\def\addstarredpart#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
   \mtcPackageWarning[F0002]{mtcoff}%
   {\protect\addstarredpart{...} should be replaced by
    \MessageBreak
    \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
    \MessageBreak}
   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}
\def\addstarredchapter#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
   \mtcPackageWarning[F0001]{mtcoff}%
   {\protect\addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced by
    \MessageBreak
    \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
    \MessageBreak}
   \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}
\def\addstarredsection#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
   \mtcPackageWarning[F0003]{mtcoff}%
   {\protect\addstarredsection{...} should be replaced by
    \MessageBreak
    \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
    \MessageBreak}
   \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}
```

And the mtcoff package is terminated.

⟨/mtcoff⟩

Chapter 11

Commented code of the mtcmess package

\mtcPackageInfo
\PackageInfo
\MessageBreak
\mtcPackageWarning
\PackageWarning
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine
\PackageWarningNoLine
\mtcPackageError
\PackageError

To make easier the search of a message in the documentation[1], we will assign an unique identifier to each message of the minitoc and mtcoff packages. As the standard commands for such messages do not include this feature, we make extended versions, with the same syntax, plus a first optional argument:

```
7915 ⟨*mtcmess⟩
7916 \ProvidesPackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]%
7917 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
7918 \newcommand{\mtcPackageInfo}[3][]%
7919     {\PackageInfo{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7920 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarning}[3][]%
7921     {\PackageWarning{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7922 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarningNoLine}[3][]%
7923     {\PackageWarningNoLine{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7924 \newcommand{\mtcPackageError}[4][]%
7925     {\PackageError{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}{#4}}%
7926 ⟨/mtcmess⟩
```

Hence the first line of the message will contain the package name and the unique identifier of the message.

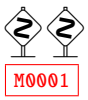
These macros are defined in a separate package because they are used by at least two packages (minitoc and mtcoff) and because they could be useful for other packages.

[1] For instance, using the search facility of some PDF reader utility.

Chapter 12

Patch for the memoir class

This code must be loaded to fix an *incompatibility* of the minitoc package with some recent versions of the memoir class. This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.




```
7927 ⟨*mtcpatchmem⟩
7928 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
7929 \ProvidesPackage{mtcpatchmem}%
7930    [2018/07/12 v62 package mtcpatchmem]
7931 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
7932 \mtcPackageInfo[M0001]{mtcpatchmem}%
7933    {mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class\@gobble}
7934 \renewcommand{\@m@mchapter}[1][]{%
7935   \def\ch@pt@c{#1}% capture first optional arg
7936    \@ifnextchar[{\@chapter}{\@chapter[]}%
7937 }
7938 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{%
7939 % if |\ch@pt@c| is empty, no [ was found at all. Use |#2| as
7940 % entry for all fields.
7941    \ifx\ch@pt@c\@empty
7942      \def\f@rtoc{#2}%
7943      \def\f@rhdr{#2}%
7944    \else
7945 % otherwise at least one [ was found. If |#1| is empty then only
7946 % one was found.
7947      \let\f@rtoc\ch@pt@c
7948      \ifx\@empty#1\@empty
7949        \let\f@rhdr\ch@pt@c
7950      \else
7951        \def\f@rhdr{#1}%
7952      \fi
7953    \fi
7954    \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne\relax
7955      \if@mainmatter
7956        \refstepcounter{chapter}%
```

```
    \fi
  \fi
  \chaptermark{\f@rhdr}%
  \ifartopt
    \@makechapterhead{#2}%
    \@afterheading
  \else
    \insertchapterspace
    \if@twocolumn
      \@topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
    \else
      \@makechapterhead{#2}%
    \fi
    \@afterheading
  \fi
  \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne\relax
    \if@mainmatter
      \ifanappendix
        \addcontentsline{toc}{appendix}{%
          \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
      \else
        \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{%
          \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
      \fi
    \else
      \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
    \fi
  \else
    \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
  \fi
  \ifheadnameref\M@gettitle{\f@rhdr}\else\M@gettitle{\f@rtoc}\fi
}
⟨/mtcpatchmem⟩
```

Chapter 13

Language definition (`.mld`) and object (`.mlo`) files

Contents

13.1 Overview

This chapter shows the code of each .mld file. A .mld file is a *minitoc language definition* file, which defines the titles of the mini-tables for a given language. It contains often some comments about its origin, if you need further details.

For some languages, I have added a map (and a flag) of the country or area where the language is spoken, if it is not trivial. The origin of each map is given by an URL to the graphic file or to the WEB page where I found it. Note that the [294] and [229] Web sites are useful sources. Maps from [229] are under the Creative Commons License, see http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/1.0/deed.en_GB. The site http://www.expatries.senat.fr/pays.html allows to look at the maps of many countries (but not of France!). The Perry-Castañeda Library Map Collection [395] (The University of Texas at Austin, http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps) contains countless maps.

Many free maps were also found by a search in the vast Wikipedia (i.e. http://en.wikipedia.org, http://fr.wikipedia.org, http://de.wikipedia.org, http://simple.wikipedia.org, etc.). If you are curious and brave, you can also find many maps and documents about Eastern Europa and about Asia at http://www.hunmagyar.org; that site give many historical informations.

A .mld file is loaded either via a package option in the \usepackage command for the minitoc package (or a global option for the document), either via the command:

\mtcselectlanguage `\mtcselectlanguage{⟨language⟩}`

Each .mld file must define the nine following commands (for the mini-tables of contents, mini-lists of figures and mini-lists of tables, at the part, chapter and section levels):

\ptctitle \plftitle \plttitle \mtctitle \mlftitle \mlttitle \stctitle \slftitle \slttitle

- \ptctitle
- \plftitle
- \plttitle
- \mtctitle
- \mlftitle
- \mlttitle
- \stctitle
- \slftitle
- \slttitle

Many .mld files require special fonts adequate for the corresponding language; as this is a language-dependent issue, the user must set up the correct language and font context for each language, like using the babel package [54, 60, 61, 74], the CJK system [127, 297, 298], the HLaTeX system [266, in korean], the Antomega system [272], the ArabTeX [276, 277], BangTeX [362], Devanāgarī for TeX [364], ethiop [44], FarsiTeX [162][1], guarani [45], malayalam [4] et omal [5], MonTeX [137, 140], or ArmTeX [142] packages. Note that it is often the *english* name of the language which is used to name the corresponding .mld file.

filecontents
\mtcselectlanguage

But for some oriental languages[2], the source of the titles use some *exotic encodings*, difficult to manipulate in a .dtx file, the .mld file is then just a wrapper loading a .mlo file[3], not generated by the .dtx files in the current version of minitoc package. To go around this limitation, the minitoc.ins file uses filecontents environments to generate the .mlo files. The adequate input encoding must be set up by the user *before* loading the .mld file via the \mtcselectlanguage command.

Since version #49, the minitoc package checks the presence of the *language*.mld file (and of the *language*.mlo file if necessary) for each language option of the package, before validating the option. If a .mld or .mlo file is missing, the corresponding language option is not enabled and a warning message is written in the *document*.log file. But the presence of the english.mld file is mandatory, because english is the default language. If some .mld or .mlo files are missing, the list of this files is given in the .log file. You should find these files on CTAN.

I0050
I0051
E0036
E0038
W0094

13.2 "Acadian" language: acadian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The acadian language[4] is just french, so we load the french.mld file (see section 13.60 on page 497):

```
7990 ⟨*acadian⟩
7991 \ProvidesFile{acadian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
7992 ⟨/acadian⟩
```

13.3 "Acadien" language: acadien.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The "acadien" language[4] is just french ("acadien" is the french term for "acadian"), so we load the french.mld file (see section 13.60 on page 497):

[1] By Mohammad Ghodsi (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and the FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at http://www.farsitex.org

[2] Mainly for chinese, farsi (iranian), hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai, and russian variants.

[3] The extension .mlo means *minitoc language object*.

[4] Spoken in Acadia and some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

```
⟨*acadien⟩
\ProvidesFile{acadien.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
⟨/acadien⟩
```

13.4 "Afrikaan" language: afrikaan.mld

The titles for the "afrikaan" language[5] come from the dutch.dtx file (by Johannes L. Braams and Stoffel Lombard) in the babel package [55, 60, 61]:

```
⟨*afrikaan⟩
\ProvidesFile{afrikaan.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Afrikaan(s) titles from dutch.dtx (babel) by Braams, Johannes~L.
\def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
\def\plftitle{Lys van figure}%
\def\plttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
\def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
\def\mlftitle{Lys van figure}%
\def\mlttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
\def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
\def\slftitle{Lys van figure}%
\def\slttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
⟨/afrikaan⟩
```

13.5 "Afrikaans" language: afrikaans.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The term "afrikaans" is a synonym of "afrikaan", so we just load afrikaan.mld (see section 13.4):

```
⟨*afrikaans⟩
\ProvidesFile{afrikaans.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{afrikaan}%
⟨/afrikaans⟩
```

13.6 "Albanian" language: albanian.mld

The albanian language (*shqip*) is spoken in Albania and some regions of Macedonia, Montenegro, Serbia and Kosovo. The titles for the "albanian" language are taken from the albanian.dtx file (with a contribution of Adi Zaimi) in the babel package [60, 61, 101]:

[5] Spoken in South Africa and Namibia, it has dutch origins; compare with section 13.44 on page 489. See also http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/afrikaans.htm in [294].

```
8012 ⟨*albanian⟩
8013 \ProvidesFile{albanian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8014 %% Albanian titles from albabian.dtx (babel).
8015 %% Adi Zaimi (zami1st at yahoo.com / adizaimi at yahoo.com).
8016 \def\ptctitle{P\"ermbajta}%
8017 \def\plftitle{Figurat}%
8018 \def\plttitle{Tabelat}%
8019 \def\mtctitle{P\"ermbajta}%
8020 \def\mlftitle{Figurat}%
8021 \def\mltitle{Tabelat}%
8022 \def\stctitle{P\"ermbajta}%
8023 \def\slftitle{Figurat}%
8024 \def\slttitle{Tabelat}%
8025 ⟨/albanian⟩
```

13.7 "American" language: american.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The "american" language is just like "english" (the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules, some spellings and phonetics), so we just load english.mld (see section 13.45 on page 490):

```
8026 ⟨*american⟩
8027 \ProvidesFile{american.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8028 ⟨/american⟩
```

13.8 "Arab" language: arab.mld

The titles for the "arab" language (al-'Arabiyyah) are taken from the ArabTEX package [276, 277] (by Klaus Lagally), which should be used, with the associated fonts. The arabic language is spoken in: Algeria, Bahrain, Egypt, Iraq, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Mauritania, Morocco, Oman, Palestinian territories, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Sudan, Syria, Tunisia, United Arab Emirates, Western Sahara, Yemen by a majority; it is also the liturgical language of Islam.

```
8029 ⟨*arab⟩
8030 \ProvidesFile{arab.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8031 %% Arabic titles. Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
8032 \def\ptctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
8033 \def\plftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
8034 \def\plttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
8035 \def\mtctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
8036 \def\mlftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
8037 \def\mlttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
8038 \def\stctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
```

```
\def\slftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
\def\slttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
⟨/arab⟩
```

13.9 "Arab2" language: arab2.mld

\mtcArabTok
\tcArabTok
\a@tok

The titles for the "arab2" language are taken from the ArabTEX package [276, 277] (by Klaus Lagally), which should be used, with the associated fonts. It is a variant of the "arab" language.

```
⟨*arab2⟩
\ProvidesFile{arab2.mld}[2006/03/31]%
%% Arabic titles. Variant. Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
{\makeatletter\global\let\mtcArabTok\a@tok}%
\def\ptctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
\def\plftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAimaTu aS-Suwari)}%
\def\plttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAimaTu al-GadAwili)}%
\def\mtctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
\def\mlftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAimaTu aS-Suwari)}%
\def\mlttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAimaTu al-GadAwili)}%
\def\stctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
\def\slftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAimaTu aS-Suwari)}%
\def\slttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAimaTu al-GadAwili)}%
⟨/arab2⟩
```

13.10 "Arabi" language: arabi.mld

\R

The titles for the "arabi" language are taken from the Arabi package [243] (by Youssef Jabri), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```
⟨*arabi⟩
\ProvidesFile{arabi.mld}[2006/07/27]%
%% Arabic titles (strings taken from arabi.ldf; to be used with arabi)
%% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of the Arabi package, by Youssef Jabri)
\def\ptctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
\def\plftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space\alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
\def\plttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space\alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
\def\mtctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
\def\mlftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space\alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
\def\mlttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space\alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
\def\stctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
\def\slftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space\alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
\def\slttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space\alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
⟨/arabi⟩
```

13.11 "Arabic" language: arabic.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "arabic" language is a synomym for "arab", so we just load arab.mld (see section 13.8 on page 474):

```
8070 ⟨*arabic⟩
8071 \ProvidesFile{arabic.mld}[2005/02/10]\mtcselectlanguage{arab}%
8072 ⟨/arabic⟩
```

13.12 "Armenian" language: armenian.mld

The titles for the "armenian" language (*hayeren*) are taken from the ArmTEX package [142] (by Sergueï Dachian, Arnak Dalalyan and Vartan Akopian), which should be used, with the associated fonts. The armenian language is spoken in Armenia, in a part of Azerbaidjan and in the armenian diaspora.

```
8073 ⟨*armenian⟩
8074 \ProvidesFile{armenian.mld}[1999/06/28]%
8075 %% Armenian titles from ArmTeX. Sergueï Dachian (Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr),
8076 %% Arnak Dalalyan & Vartan Akopian
8077 \def\ptctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8078 \def\plftitle{Patkerneri cank}%
8079 \def\plttitle{Aghyusakneri cank}%
8080 \def\mtctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8081 \def\mlftitle{Patkerneri cank}%
8082 \def\mlttitle{Aghyusakneri cank}%
8083 \def\stctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8084 \def\slftitle{Patkerneri cank}%
8085 \def\slttitle{Aghyusakneri cank}%
8086 ⟨/armenian⟩
```

13.13 "Australian" language: australian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "australian" language is just like "english", so we just load english.mld (see section 13.45 on page 490):

```
8087 ⟨*australian⟩
8088 \ProvidesFile{australian.mld}[2006/01/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8089 ⟨/australian⟩
```

13.14 "Austrian" language: austrian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage For the mini-table titles, the "austrian" language is like the "german" language, so we load german.mld (see section 13.67 on page 500):

```
8090 ⟨*austrian⟩
8091 \ProvidesFile{austrian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{german}%
8092 ⟨/austrian⟩
```

13.15 "Bahasa" language: bahasa.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "bahasa" language is just like "bahasai", so we just load bahasai.mld (see section 13.16):

```
8093 ⟨*bahasa⟩
8094 \ProvidesFile{bahasa.mld}[2006/01/11]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
8095 ⟨/bahasa⟩
```

13.16 "Bahasai" language: bahasai.mld

The titles of the mini-tables for the "bahasai" language [6] (bahasa indonesia / bahasa meyalu) are taken from the file bahasa.dtx (by Jörg Knappen and Terry Mart) in the babel package [60, 61, 82]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.17 on the following page. The word "bahasa" means "language" in bahasa. For other names for this language, see sections 13.15 and 13.89 to 13.90 on page 511.

```
8096 ⟨*bahasai⟩
8097 \ProvidesFile{bahasai.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8098 %% Bahasa Indonesia titles from bahasa.dtx in the babel package.
8099 %% Knappen, Jörg & Mart, Terry
8100 \def\ptctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8101 \def\plftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8102 \def\plttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8103 \def\mtctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8104 \def\mlftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8105 \def\mlttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8106 \def\stctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8107 \def\slftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8108 \def\slttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8109 ⟨/bahasai⟩
```

[6] Bahasa is spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasai is the indonesian variant. See http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/asie/indonesie-1_langues.htm in [294].

13.17 "Bahasam" language: bahasam.mld

The titles of the mini-tables for the "bahasam" language (Bahasa Malaysia)[7] are taken from the file bahasam.dtx (by Jörg Knappen, Terry Mart and Bob Margolis) in the babel package [60, 61, 83]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.15 on the page before. For other names for this language, see sections 13.118 on page 524 and 13.129 on page 529.

```
8110 ⟨*bahasam⟩
8111 \ProvidesFile{bahasam.mld}[2006/12/19]%
8112 %% Bahasa Malaysia titles from bahasam.dtx in the babel package
8113 %% Knappen, Jörg & Mart, Terry & Margolis, Bob
8114 \def\ptctitle{Kandungan}%
8115 \def\plftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8116 \def\plttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8117 \def\mtctitle{Kandungan}%
8118 \def\mlftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8119 \def\mlttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8120 \def\stctitle{Kandungan}%
8121 \def\slftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8122 \def\slttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8123 ⟨/bahasam⟩
```

13.18 "Bangla" language: bangla.mld

The titles for the "bangla" (bengali) language[8] are taken from the BangTeX package [362] (by Palash Baran Pal); they need specific fonts (the bengali alphabet is derived from sanskrit).

```
8124 ⟨*bangla⟩
8125 \ProvidesFile{bangla.mld}[2006/03/31]%
8126 %% Bangla titles from BangTeX. Needs specific fonts.
8127 \def\ptctitle{suu\*c*ipotRo}%        <-----
8128 \def\plftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8129 \def\plttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8130 \def\mtctitle{suu\*c*i}%
8131 \def\mlftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8132 \def\mlttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8133 \def\stctitle{suu\*c*i}%
8134 \def\slftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8135 \def\slttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8136 ⟨/bangla⟩
```

[7] Spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasam is the malaysian variant.

[8] Spoken in Bangladesh and some parts of India, like Occidental Bengal (19), Orissa (21), Assam (18), Bihar (10) and Tripura (16).

13.19 "Basque" language: basque.mld

The titles for the "basque" language [9] (*euskara*) are taken from the basque.dtx file in the babel package [60–62], by Juan M. Aguirregabiria and Julio Sánchez, with help from Zunbeltz Izaola Azkona. It seems that 8 bits fonts are preferable.

```
8137 ⟨*basque⟩
8138 \ProvidesFile{basque.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8139 %% Basque titles from basque.dtx (babel).
8140 %% Aguirregabiria, Juan M. <wtpagagj at lg.ehu.es> WWW: http://tp.lc.ehu.es/jma.html
8141 %% & Sanchez, Julio <jsanchez at gmv.es>,
8142 %% and help from Izaola Azkona, Zunbeltz <wmbizazz at lg dot ehu>
8143 %% Needs special fonts.
8144 \def\ptctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8145 \def\plftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8146 \def\plttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8147 \def\mtctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8148 \def\mlftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8149 \def\mlttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8150 \def\stctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8151 \def\slftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8152 \def\slttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8153 ⟨/basque⟩
```

13.20 "Bengali" language: bengali.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The "bengali" language is a synonym for the "bangla" language, so we load the file bangla.mld (see section 13.18 on the preceding page):

```
8154 ⟨*bengali⟩
8155 \ProvidesFile{bengali.mld}[2007/07/23]\mtcselectlanguage{bangla}%
8156 ⟨/bengali⟩
```

13.21 "Bicig" language: bicig.mld

\bcg

The titles for the "bicig" language [10] are taken from the MonTEX package [137, 140]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.22 to 13.23 on the following page, and 13.130 on page 529.

[9] Spoken in the basque country, in the north of Spain and south-west of France.

[10] The bicig is a written form of the mongolian language. It is also known as Uighur or Bichig. See also section 13.178 on page 552.

```
8157 ⟨*bicig⟩
8158 \ProvidesFile{bicig.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8159 %% Mongol (Bicig) titles needs mongol fonts
8160 \def\ptctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8161 \def\plftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaalt}}%
8162 \def\plttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
8163 \def\mtctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8164 \def\mlftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaalt}}%
8165 \def\mlttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
8166 \def\stctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8167 \def\slftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaalt}}%
8168 \def\slttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
8169 ⟨/bicig⟩
```

13.22 “Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld

The titles for the “bicig2” language [11] are taken from the MonTEX package [137, 140]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.21 on the page before, and 13.23, and 13.130 on page 529.

```
8170 ⟨*bicig2⟩
8171 \ProvidesFile{bicig2.mld}[2005/11/16]%
8172 %% Mongol (Bicig2) titles (needs mongol fonts)
8173 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8174 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8175 \def\plttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8176 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8177 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8178 \def\mlttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8179 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8180 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8181 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8182 ⟨/bicig2⟩
```

13.23 “Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld

The titles for the “bicig3” language [12] are taken from the MonTEX package [137, 140]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.21 to 13.22 on pages 479–480 and 13.130 on page 529.

[11] The bicig, or uighur, is a written form of the mongolian language, bicig2 is a variant. See also section 13.179 on page 553.

[12] The bicig, or uighur, is a written form of the mongolian language, bicig3 is a variant. See also section 13.180 on page 553.

```
8183 ⟨*bicig3⟩
8184 \ProvidesFile{bicig3.mld}[2006/03/31]%
8185 %% Mongol (Bicig3) titles (needs mongol fonts)
8186 \def\ptctitle{aguulag=a}%
8187 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8188 \def\plttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8189 \def\mtctitle{aguulag=a}%
8190 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8191 \def\mlttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8192 \def\stctitle{aguulag=a}%
8193 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8194 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8195 ⟨/bicig3⟩
```

13.24 "Bithe" language: bithe.mld

The titles for the "bithe" language [13] are taken from the MonTEX package [137, 140]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.127 on page 528 and 13.130 on page 529. The Manju writing, or *bithe* system is a close relative of the Mongolian system; the basical letter shapes are the same. Yet for Manju, a set of diacritics (*dots and circles*) was designed to eliminate all the ambiguities of Mongolian.

```
8196 ⟨*bithe⟩
8197 \ProvidesFile{bithe.mld}[2005/11/16]%
8198 %% Manju (bithe) titles (needs mongol fonts)
8199 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8200 \def\plftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8201 \def\plttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8202 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8203 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8204 \def\mlttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8205 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8206 \def\slftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8207 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8208 ⟨/bithe⟩
```

13.25 "Brazil" language: brazil.mld

The titles for the "brazil" language (*português brasileiro* or *português do Brasil*) [14] are taken from the portuges.dtx file (for portugese titles by Jose Pedro Ramalhete) in the babel package [60, 61, 92]:

[13] The bithe is a written form of the manju variant of the mongolian language.

[14] It is the main portuguese dialect spoken in Brazil. Note that these titles are *different* in Brazil and in Portugal. Arnaldo Viegas de Lima contributed to brazilian translations. See section 13.148 on page 537.

```
8209 ⟨*brazil⟩
8210 \ProvidesFile{brazil.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8211 %% Portugues (brazil) titles, from portuges.dtx (babel)
8212 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro & "de Lima", Arnaldo Viegas
8213 \def\ptctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8214 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8215 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8216 \def\mtctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8217 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8218 \def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8219 \def\stctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8220 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8221 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8222 ⟨/brazil⟩
```

13.26 “Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The “brazilian” language is just like “brazil”, so we just load brazil.mld (see section 13.25 on the page before):

```
8223 ⟨*brazilian⟩
8224 \ProvidesFile{brazilian.mld}[2005/07/11]\mtcselectlanguage{brazil}%
8225 ⟨/brazilian⟩
```

13.27 “Breton” language: breton.mld

The titles for the “breton” language (*brezhoneg*) [15] are taken from the breton.dtx file (by Christian Rolland) in the babel package [60, 61, 93]:

```
8226 ⟨*breton⟩
8227 \ProvidesFile{breton.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8228 %% Breton titles from breton.dtx (babel) by Rolland, Christian
8229 \def\ptctitle{Taolenn}%
8230 \def\plftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\‘u}%
8231 \def\plttitle{Listenn an taolenno\‘u}%
8232 \def\mtctitle{Taolenn}%
8233 \def\mlftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\‘u}%
8234 \def\mlttitle{Listenn an taolenno\‘u}%
8235 \def\stctitle{Taolenn}%
8236 \def\slftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\‘u}%
8237 \def\slttitle{Listenn an taolenno\‘u}%
8238 ⟨/breton⟩
```

[15] Spoken as a local celtic dialect in french Brittany. See also http://www.ofis-bzh.org, http://www.geobreizh.com/breizh/images/cartes/carte-bretagne-langue-fr.jpg and http://www.geobreizh.com/breizh/images/cartes/carte-bretagne-langue-br.jpg.

13.28 "British" language: british.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "british" language is just like "english", so we just load english.mld (see section 13.45 on page 490):

```
8239 ⟨*british⟩
8240 \ProvidesFile{british.mld}[2005/07/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8241 ⟨/british⟩
```

13.29 "Bulgarian" language: bulgarian.mld

\cyr The titles for the "bulgarian" language (*bălgarski*) are taken from the bulgarian.dtx (adapted from russian by Georgi N. Boshnakov) file in the babel package [60, 61, 67]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.30.

```
8242 ⟨*bulgarian⟩
8243 \ProvidesFile{bulgarian.mld}[2007/03/08]%
8244 %% Bulgarian titles from bulgarian.dtx (babel) (needs special cyrillic fonts)
8245 %% by Boshnakov, Georgi N. <georgi.boshnakov at umist.ac.uk>
8246 \def\ptctitle{%
8247    {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8248 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8249     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8250 \def\plttitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8251     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8252 \def\mtctitle{%
8253    {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8254 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8255     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8256 \def\mlttitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8257     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8258 \def\stctitle{%
8259    {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8260 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8261     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8262 \def\slttitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8263     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8264 ⟨/bulgarian⟩
```

13.30 "Bulgarianb" language: bulgarianb.mld

\cyr The titles for the "bulgarianb" (upper bulgarian) language are taken from the russianb.dtx file (by Olga G. Lapko, Vladimir Volovich, Werner Lemberg, and Irina A. Makhovaya) of the

babel package [60, 61, 84, 286]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.29 on the preceding page.

```
⟨*bulgarianb⟩
\ProvidesFile{bulgarianb.mld}[2006/03/06]%
%% Upper bulgarian titles from russianb.dtx. Needs cyrillic fonts for upper bulgarian.
\def\ptctitle{%
 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
\def\plftitle{% Figuri
  {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
\def\plttitle{% Tablici
  {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
\def\mtctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
\def\mlftitle{% Figurite
  {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
\def\mlttitle{% Tablici
  {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
\def\stctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
\def\slftitle{% Figuri
  {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
\def\slttitle{% Tablici
  {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
⟨/bulgarianb⟩
```

13.31 “Buryat” language: buryat.mld

\mnr
\sh

The titles for the “buryat” language [16] are taken from the MonTEX package [137, 140]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.130 on page 529.

```
⟨*buryat⟩
\ProvidesFile{buryat.mld}[1999/03/16]%
%% Buryat titles. Needs special fonts.
\def\ptctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
\def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
\def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
\def\mtctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
\def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
\def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
\def\stctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
\def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
\def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
⟨/buryat⟩
```

[16] Spoken in some regions of Mongolia and in the Buryatia republic, near Lake Baikal.

13.32 “Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld

\mnr The titles for the “buryat2” language (a variant for the “buryat” language, see section 13.31 on the preceding page) are taken from the MonTEX package [137, 140]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.130 on page 529.

```
8300 ⟨*buryat2⟩
8301 \ProvidesFile{buryat2.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8302 %% Buryat2 titles. Needs special fonts.
8303 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8304 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8305 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8306 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8307 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8308 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8309 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8310 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8311 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8312 ⟨/buryat2⟩
```

13.33 “Canadian” language: canadian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “canadian” language (note the final “i*an*”) is just the english language spoken in Canada. We just load the file english.mld (see section 13.45 on page 490):

```
8313 ⟨*canadian⟩
8314 \ProvidesFile{canadian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8315 ⟨/canadian⟩
```

13.34 “Canadien” language: canadien.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “canadien” language (note the final “i*en*”) is just the french language spoken in Canada. We just load the file french.mld (see section 13.60 on page 497):

```
8316 ⟨*canadien⟩
8317 \ProvidesFile{canadien.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8318 ⟨/canadien⟩
```

13.35 “Castillan” language: castillan.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “castillan” language is better known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. We just load the spanish.mld file (see section 13.169 on page 548):

```
8319 ⟨*castillan⟩
8320 \ProvidesFile{castillan.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8321 ⟨/castillan⟩
```

13.36 “Castillian” language: castillian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage “Castillian” is just the english name for “castillan”, so we just load the spanish.mld file (see section 13.169 on page 548):

```
8322 ⟨*castillian⟩
8323 \ProvidesFile{castillian.mld}[2005/07/01]\mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8324 ⟨/castillian⟩
```

13.37 “Catalan” language: catalan.mld

The titles for the “catalan” language (*català, valencià*) [17] are taken from the catalan.dtx file (adapted from spanish by Gonçal Badenes and Jörg Knappen) in the babel package [60, 61, 64]:

```
8325 ⟨*catalan⟩
8326 \ProvidesFile{catalan.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8327 %% Catalan titles from catalan.dtx (babel) (Badenes, Gonçal)
8328 \def\ptctitle{\'Index}%
8329 \def\plftitle{\'Index de figures}%
8330 \def\plttitle{\'Index de taules}%
8331 %%
8332 \def\mtctitle{\'Index}%
8333 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8334 \def\mlttitle{Taules}%
8335 \def\stctitle{\'Index}%
8336 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8337 \def\slttitle{Taules}%
8338 ⟨/catalan⟩
```

[17] Spoken in Catalunya, the eastern part of Spain, around Barcelona, and in Roussillon, in France.

13.38 "Chinese1" language: chinese1.ml[d|o]

\mtcloadmlo There are several variants for the chinese language. The "chinese1" language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cap file in the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner Lemberg). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.39. See [418] about the history of China and the chinese language. The titles for the "chinese1" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese1.mlo.

```
⟨*chinese1⟩
\ProvidesFile{chinese1.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{chinese1}%
%% From file Bg5.cap of the CJK package for using Asian logographs with LaTeX2e
%% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
%% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5
⟨/chinese1⟩
```

13.39 "Chinese2" language: chinese2.ml[d|o]

\mtcloadmlo The "chinese2" language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cpx file in the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner Lemberg). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.38. The titles for the "chinese2" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese2.mlo.

```
⟨*chinese2⟩
\ProvidesFile{chinese2.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{chinese2}%
%% From file Bg5.cpx of the CJK package for using Asian logographs with LaTeX2e
%% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
%% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5, preprocessed
⟨/chinese2⟩
```

13.40 "Croatian" language: croatian.mld

The titles for the "croatian" language (*hrvatski*) are taken from the file croatian.dtx file (by Alan Paić) in the babel package [60, 61, 89]:

```
⟨*croatian⟩
\ProvidesFile{croatian.mld}[2007/12/18]%
%% Croatian titles from croatian.dtx (babel). Pai\'{c}, Alan.
\def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
\def\plftitle{Popis slika}%
```

```
\def\plttitle{Popis tablica}%
\def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
\def\mlftitle{Popis slika}%
\def\mlttitle{Popis tablica}%
\def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
\def\slftitle{Slike}%
\def\slttitle{Tablice}%
⟨/croatian⟩
```

13.41 "Czech" language: czech.mld

The titles for the "czech" language (*čeština, český jazyk*) are taken from the file czech.dtx (contributions by Miloš V. Lokajíček) in the babel package [60, 61, 87]:

```
⟨*czech⟩
\ProvidesFile{czech.mld}[2007/12/04]%
%% Czech titles from czech.dtx (babel). Lokaj{\'{\i}}\v{c}ek, Milo\v{s} V.
\def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
\def\plftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\r{u}}%
\def\plttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
\def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
\def\mlftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\r{u}}%
\def\mlttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
\def\stctitle{Obsah}%
\def\slftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\r{u}}%
\def\slttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
⟨/czech⟩
```

13.42 "Danish" language: danish.mld

The titles for the "danish" language [18] are taken from the danish.dtx file (by Henning Larsen) in the babel package [60, 61, 85]:

```
⟨*danish⟩
\ProvidesFile{danish.mld}[2007/12/18]%
%% Danish titles from danish.dtx (babel). Larsen, Henning (larsen@cernvm.cern.ch)
\def\ptctitle{Indhold}%
\def\plftitle{Figurer}%
\def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
\def\mtctitle{Indhold}%
\def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
\def\stctitle{Indhold}%
```

[18] The danish (*dansk*) language is spoken in Denmark, in the Faeroe Islands and in Greenland.

```
\def\slftitle{Figurer}%
\def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
⟨/danish⟩
```

13.43 "Devanagari" language: devanagari.mld

The titles for the "devanagari" language are taken from the devanagari.sty and captions.dn files (by Anshuman Pandey, C. V. Radhakrishnan, Zdeněk Wagner, John Smith, Kevin Carmody, Richard Mahoney and Dominik Wujastyk) in the Devanāgarī package [364] (Devanāgarī). See also section 13.85 on page 510.

\dn
\qva
\re
\rs
\8
\2

Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is http://devnag.sarovar.org. See also [148] about the hindi language.

```
⟨*devanagari⟩
\ProvidesFile{devanagari.mld}[2006/08/25]%
%% Devanagari (hindi) titles from devanagari.sty by
%% Pandey, Anshuman & Radhakrishnan, C.~V. & Wagner, Zden\v{e}k &
%% Smith, John & Carmody, Kevin & Mahoney, Richard & Wujastyk, Dominik
\def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
\def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
\def\plttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
\def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
\def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
\def\mlttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
\def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
\def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
\def\slttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
⟨/devanagari⟩
```

13.44 "Dutch" language: dutch.mld

The titles for the "dutch" language [19] are taken from the dutch.dtx file (by Johannes L. Braams) in the babel package [55, 60, 61]:

```
⟨*dutch⟩
\ProvidesFile{dutch.mld}[2007/12/18]%
%% Dutch titles from dutch.dtx (babel) (Braams, Johannes~L.)
\def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
\def\plftitle{L"yst van figuren}%
\def\plttitle{L"yst van tabellen}%
```

[19] The dutch language (*nederlands*) is spoken in the Netherlands and a part of Belgium.

```
\def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
\def\mlftitle{L"yst van figuren}%
\def\mlttitle{L"yst van tabellen}%
\def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
\def\slftitle{L"yst van figuren}%
\def\slttitle{L"yst van tabellen}%
⟨/dutch⟩
```

13.45 "English" language: english.mld

The titles for the "english" language are taken from the english.dtx file (by Johannes L. Braams) in the babel package [56, 60, 61]. *The presence of the english.mld file is mandatory, because english is the default language.*

See also sections 13.7 on page 474, 13.13 on page 476, 13.28 on page 483, 13.33 on page 485, 13.134 on page 531, 13.181 on page 553, and 13.185 on page 555.

```
⟨*english⟩
\ProvidesFile{english.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% English titles from english.dtx (babel) (Braams, Johannes~L.)
\def\ptctitle{Table of Contents}%
\def\plftitle{List of Figures}%
\def\plttitle{List of Tables}%
%%
\def\mtctitle{Contents}%
\def\mlftitle{Figures}%
\def\mlttitle{Tables}%
\def\stctitle{Contents}%
\def\slftitle{Figures}%
\def\slttitle{Tables}%
⟨/english⟩
```

13.46 "English1" language: english1.mld

\ifnum
\value
\Roman

The titles for the "english1" language come from the english.dtx file (written by Johannes L. Braams) in the babel package [56, 60, 61], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```
⟨*english1⟩
\ProvidesFile{english1.mld}[2006/03/30]%
%% English titles from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
%% ptctitle, plftitle and plttitle modified (JPFD)
\def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
  Table of Contents of the First Part\relax
  \else Table of Contents of Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
```

```
\def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
  List of Figures in the First Part\relax
  \else List of Figures in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
\def\plttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
  List of Tables in the First Part\relax
  \else List of Tables in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
%%
\def\mtctitle{Contents}%
\def\mlftitle{Figures}%
\def\mlttitle{Tables}%
\def\stctitle{Contents}%
\def\slftitle{Figures}%
\def\slttitle{Tables}%
⟨/english1⟩
```

13.47 "English2" language: english2.mld

\mtcEnglishIIpart
\ifcase
\value
\Roman

The titles for the "english2" language are again taken from the english.dtx file (written by Johannes L. Braams) in the babel package [56, 60, 61], with adaptations at the part level.

```
⟨*english2⟩
\ProvidesFile{english2.mld}[2006/03/30]%
%% English titles from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
%% ptctitle, plftitle and plttitle modified (JPFD)
\def\mtcEnglishIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
\or the First Part\or the Second Part\or the Third Part
\or the Fourth Part\or the Fifth Part\or the Sixth Part
\or the Seventh Part\or the Eighth Part\or the Ninth Part
\or the Tenth Part\or the Eleventh Part\or the Twelfth Part
\or the Thirteenth Part\or the Fourteenth Part \or the Fifteenth Part
\or the Sixteenth Part \or the Seventeenth Part \or the Eighteenth Part
\or the Nineteenth Part\or the Twentieth Part \else Part~\Roman{part}\fi}
\def\ptctitle{Contents of \mtcEnglishIIpart}
\def\plftitle{List of Figures in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
\def\plttitle{List of Tables in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
%%
\def\mtctitle{Contents}%
\def\mlftitle{Figures}%
\def\mlttitle{Tables}%
\def\stctitle{Contents}%
\def\slftitle{Figures}%
\def\slttitle{Tables}%
⟨/english2⟩
```

13.48 “Esperant” language: esperant.mld

The titles for the “esperant” (espéranto) language are taken from the esperanto.dtx file (by Marti Ruiz-Altaba and Jörg Knappen) in the babel package [60, 61, 94]. The esperanto artificial language was created in the 1877–1885 years by Doctor Ludwig Lejzer Zamenhof†[20] (1859–1917) of Warsaw, Poland.

```
8476 ⟨*esperant⟩
8477 \ProvidesFile{esperant.mld}[2006/12/19]%
8478 %% Esperanto titles from esperanto.dtx (babel) Ruiz-Altaba, Marti & Knappen, Jörg
8479 \def\ptctitle{Enhavo}%
8480 \def\plftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8481 \def\plttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8482 \def\mtctitle{Enhavo}%
8483 \def\mlftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8484 \def\mlttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8485 \def\stctitle{Enhavo}%
8486 \def\slftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8487 \def\slttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8488 ⟨/esperant⟩
```

13.49 “Esperanto” language: esperanto.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The “esperanto” and “esperant” languages are synonyms, so we just load the esperant.mld file (see section 13.48):

```
8489 ⟨*esperanto⟩
8490 \ProvidesFile{esperanto.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{esperant}%
8491 ⟨/esperanto⟩
```

13.50 “Estonian” language: estonian.mld

The titles for the “estonian” language[21] are taken from the estonian.dtx file (by Enn Saar) in the babel package [60, 61, 95]:

```
8492 ⟨*estonian⟩
8493 \ProvidesFile{estonian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8494 %% Estonian titles from estonian.dtx (babel) Saar, Enn
8495 \def\ptctitle{Sisukord}%
8496 \def\plftitle{Joonised}%
```

[20] See http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/L.L._Zamenhof, http://uea.org/ and http://www.esperanto-france.org/ for more information; his first names are sometimes spelled “Ludvic Lazarus” or “Louis-Lazare”, with small variations.

[21] Estonian (*eesti keel*) is *not* a baltic language, but a language from the uralian family.

```
\def\plttitle{Tabelid}%
\def\mtctitle{Sisukord}%
\def\mlftitle{Joonised}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabelid}%
\def\stctitle{Sisukord}%
\def\slftitle{Joonised}%
\def\slttitle{Tabelid}%
⟨/estonian⟩
```

13.51 “Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld

\eth@doaltchar

The titles for the “ethiopia” language (amharic, *āmariñña*) are taken from the ethiop package [44] (written by Berhanu Beyene, Manfred Kudlek, Olaf Kummer, and Jochen Metzinger). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.53 on the next page. for the repartition of the various ethiopian dialects.

```
⟨*ethiopia⟩
\ProvidesFile{ethiopia.mld}[1999/03/16]%
%% Ethopian titles. Needs special fonts.
\def\ptctitle{yezate}%
\def\plftitle{%
    ya\eth@doaltchar{85}‘elo\eth@doaltchar{109} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
\def\plttitle{%
    yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
\def\mtctitle{yezate}%
\def\mlftitle{%
    ya\eth@doaltchar{85}‘elo\eth@doaltchar{109} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
\def\mlttitle{%
    yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
\def\stctitle{yezate}%
\def\slftitle{%
    ya\eth@doaltchar{85}‘elo\eth@doaltchar{109} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
\def\slttitle{%
    yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
⟨/ethiopia⟩
```

13.52 “Ethiopian” language: ethiopian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The “ethiopian” language is just a synonym for the “ethiopia” language, so we just load the ethiopia.mld file (see section 13.51).

```
⟨*ethiopian⟩
\ProvidesFile{ethiopian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{ethiopia}%
⟨/ethiopian⟩
```

13.53 "Ethiopian2" language: ethiopian2.mld

The titles for the "ethiopian2" language (for Omega) are taken from the ethiop package [44] (by Berhanu Beyene, Manfred Kudlek, Olaf Kummer, and Jochen Metzinger). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.51 on the page before.

```
⟨*ethiopian2⟩
\ProvidesFile{ethiopian2.mld}[2006/01/30]%
%% Ethopian titles  with Omega. Needs special fonts
\def\ptctitle{^^^^12ed^^^^12d8^^^^1275}%
\def\plftitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1225^^^^12d5^^^^120e^^^^127d ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
\def\plttitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1230^^^^1295^^^^1320^^^^1228^^^^12e5
  ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
\def\mtctitle{^^^^12ed^^^^12d8^^^^1275}%
\def\mlftitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1225^^^^12d5^^^^120e^^^^127d ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
\def\mlttitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1230^^^^1295^^^^1320^^^^1228^^^^12e5
  ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
\def\stctitle{^^^^12ed^^^^12d8^^^^1275}%
\def\slftitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1225^^^^12d5^^^^120e^^^^127d ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
\def\slttitle{^^^^12e8^^^^1230^^^^1295^^^^1320^^^^1228^^^^12e5
  ^^^^121b^^^^12cd^^^^132b}%
⟨/ethiopian2⟩
```

13.54 "Farsi1" language: farsi1.ml[d|o]

\mtcloadmlo

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran and Afghanistan. The "farsi1" language uses titles taken from the farsi.sty file in the FarsiTEX [162] system[22], by Mohammad Ghodsi, Behdad Esfahbod, Roozbeh Pournader, Hassan Abolhassani, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.55 on the following page. The titles for the "farsi1" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load farsi1.mlo.

```
⟨*farsi1⟩
\ProvidesFile{farsi1.mld}[2005/09/13]\mtcloadmlo{farsi1}%
%% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
%% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu), Hassan Abolhassani, & others.
%% http://www.farsitex.org
⟨/farsi1⟩
```

[22] By Mohammad Ghodsi (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and the FarsiTEX Project Group. See the FarsiTEX site at http://www.farsitex.org

13.55 "Farsi2" language: farsi2.ml[d|o]

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran and Afghanistan. The "farsi2" language uses titles taken from the farsi.sty file in the FarsiTEX system [162][23], by Mohammad Ghodsi, Roozbeh Pournader, Behdad Esfahbod, Hassan Abolhassani, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.54 on the page before.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "farsi2" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load farsi2.mlo.

```
8549 ⟨*farsi2⟩
8550 \ProvidesFile{farsi2.mld}[2005/09/13]\mtcloadmlo{farsi2}%
8551 %% From farsi.sty (FarsiTeX project: http://www.farsitex.org). Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
8552 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu), Hassan Abolhassani, & others.
8553 ⟨/farsi2⟩
```

13.56 "Farsi3" language: farsi3.mld

\FR There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran and Afghanistan. The "farsi3" language uses titles taken from the farsi.ldf file in the Arabi system[243], by Youssef Jabri. Special fonts are needed, of course.

```
8554 ⟨*farsi3⟩
8555 \ProvidesFile{farsi3.mld}[2006/07/27]%
8556 %% From farsi.ldf of the Arabi system by Youssef Jabri.
8557 \def\ptctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8558 \def\plftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8559 \def\plttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\  \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8560 \def\mtctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8561 \def\mlftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8562 \def\mlttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\  \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8563 \def\stctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8564 \def\slftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8565 \def\slttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\  \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8566 ⟨/farsi3⟩
```

13.57 "Finnish" language: finnish.mld

The titles for the "finnish" language (*suomi*) are taken from the finnish.dtx file (by Mikko Kanerva and Keranen Reino) in the babel package [60, 61, 80]. See also section 13.58 on the following page.

[23] By Mohammad Ghodsi (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and the FarsiTEX Project Group. See the FarsiTEX site at http://www.farsitex.org

```
⟨*finnish⟩
\ProvidesFile{finnish.mld}[2006/03/20]%
%% Finnish titles from finnish.dtx (babel). Kanerva, Mikko & Reino, Keranen
\def\ptctitle{Sis\"alt\"o}%
\def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
\def\plttitle{Taulukot}%
\def\mtctitle{Sis\"alt\"o}%
\def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
\def\mlttitle{Taulukot}%
\def\stctitle{Sis\"alt\"o}%
\def\slftitle{Kuvat}%
\def\slttitle{Taulukot}%
⟨/finnish⟩
```

13.58 "Finnish2" language: finnish2.mld

The titles for the "finnish2" language are taken from a variant proposed by the finnish.dtx file (by Mikko Kanerva and Keranen Reino) in the babel package [60, 61, 80]. See also section 13.57 on the page before.

```
⟨*finnish2⟩
\ProvidesFile{finnish2.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Finnish titles (variant) from finnish.dtx (babel). Kanerva, Mikko & Reino, Keranen
\def\ptctitle{Sis\"allys}%
\def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
\def\plttitle{Taulukot}%
\def\mtctitle{Sis\"allys}%
\def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
\def\mlttitle{Taulukot}%
\def\stctitle{Sis\"allys}%
\def\slftitle{Kuvat}%
\def\slttitle{Taulukot}%
⟨/finnish2⟩
```

13.59 "Francais" language: francais.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The "francais" (*français*) language is a synonym for the "french" language, so we load the file french.mld (see section 13.60 on the following page):

```
⟨*francais⟩
\ProvidesFile{francais.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
⟨/francais⟩
```

13.60 "French" language: french.mld

The titles for the "french" language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file (by Daniel Flipo) in the babel package [60, 61, 75]. See also sections 13.2 to 13.3 on page 472, 13.34 on page 485, 13.59 on the page before, and 13.63 to 13.65 on pages 498–499.

```
⟨*french⟩
\ProvidesFile{french.mld}[2006/03/21]%
%% French titles from frenchb.dtx (babel). Flipo, Daniel
\def\ptctitle{Table des mati\‘eres}%
\def\plftitle{Liste des figures}%
\def\plttitle{Liste des tableaux}%
%%
\def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
\def\mlftitle{Figures}%
\def\mlttitle{Tableaux}%
\def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
\def\slftitle{Figures}%
\def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
⟨/french⟩
```

13.61 "French1" language: french1.mld

\ifnum
\value
\Roman

The titles for the "french1" language are taken from the frenchb.dtx (by Daniel Flipo) file in the babel package [60, 61, 75], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```
⟨*french1⟩
\ProvidesFile{french1.mld}[2006/03/29]%
%% French titles from frenchb.dtx (babel). Flipo, Daniel
%% ptctitle, plftitle and plttitle modified (JPFD)
\def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
  Sommaire de la premi\‘ere partie\relax
  \else Sommaire de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
\def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
  Liste des figures de la premi\‘ere partie\relax
  \else Liste des figures de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
\def\plttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
  Liste des tableaux de la premi\‘ere partie\relax
  \else Liste des tableaux de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
%%
\def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
\def\mlftitle{Figures}%
\def\mlttitle{Tableaux}%
\def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
\def\slftitle{Figures}%
\def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
⟨/french1⟩
```

13.62 “French2” language: french2.mld

\mtcFrenchIIpart
\ifmtcsecondpart
\ifnum
\value
\Roman

The titles for the “french2” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file (by Daniel Flipo) in the babel package [60, 61, 75], with some adaptations for the part-level titles[24]. See also section 9.5.8 on page 273, for the subtle distinction between “deuxième” and “seconde”. See the mtc-2nd.tex example file in section 4.2 on page 92.

```
⟨*french2⟩
\ProvidesFile{french2.mld}[2006/07/07]%
%% French titles from frenchb.dtx (babel). Flipo, Daniel
%% ptctitle, plftitle and plttitle modified (JPFD)
\def\mtcFrenchIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
\or premi\‘ere partie\or
{\ifmtcsecondpart seconde\else deuxi\‘eme\fi} partie\or
troisi\‘eme partie\or quatri\‘eme partie\or cinqui\‘eme partie\or
sixi\‘eme partie\or septi\‘eme partie\or huiti\‘eme partie\or
neuvi\‘eme partie\or dixi\‘eme partie\or onzi\‘eme partie\or
douzi\‘eme partie\or treizi\‘eme partie\or quatorzi\‘eme partie\or
quinzi\‘eme partie\or seizi\‘eme partie\or dix-septi\‘eme partie\or
dix-huiti\‘eme partie\or dix-neuvi\‘eme partie\or
vingti\‘eme partie\else partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
\def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
  Sommaire \else Sommaire de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}%
\def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
  Liste des figures\else
  Liste des figures de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}%
\def\plttitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
  Liste des tableaux\else
  Liste des tableaux de la \mtcFrenchIIpart}%
%%
\def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
\def\mlftitle{Figures}%
\def\mlttitle{Tableaux}%
\def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
\def\slftitle{Figures}%
\def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
⟨/french2⟩
```

13.63 “Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The “frenchb” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.60 on the preceding page.

```
⟨*frenchb⟩
\ProvidesFile{frenchb.mld}[2003/02/11]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
⟨/frenchb⟩
```

[24] This is an example of a .mld file needing some support from code in the minitoc package.

13.64 "Frenchle" language: frenchle.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "frenchle" language is a synonym for the "french" language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.60 on page 497. See also [179].

```
8664 ⟨*frenchle⟩
8665 \ProvidesFile{frenchle.mld}[2003/02/20]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8666 ⟨/frenchle⟩
```

13.65 "Frenchpro" language: frenchpro.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "frenchpro" language is a synonym for the "french" language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.60 on page 497. See also [180, 181].

```
8667 ⟨*frenchpro⟩
8668 \ProvidesFile{frenchpro.mld}[2003/02/20]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8669 ⟨/frenchpro⟩
```

13.66 "Galician" language: galician.mld

The titles for the "galician" language (*galego*)[25] are taken from the galician.dtx file, (by Manuel Carriba and Javier A. Múgica de Rivera) derived from the spanish.dtx file (by Javier Bezos) in the babel package [60, 61, 70, 71]:

```
8670 ⟨*galician⟩
8671 \ProvidesFile{galician.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8672 %% Galician titles from galician.dtx (babel).
8673 %% Carriba, Manuel (mcarriba@eunetcom.net)
8674 %% Javier A. Múgica de Rivera (jmugica@digi21.net)
8675 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8676 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}\else \def\ptctitle{\'Indice xeral}\fi%
8677 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8678 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de t\'aboas}%
8679 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8680 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}\else \def\mtctitle{\'Indice xeral}\fi%
8681 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8682 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de t\'aboas}%
8683 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8684 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}\else \def\stctitle{\'Indice xeral}\fi%
8685 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8686 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de t\'aboas}%
8687 ⟨/galician⟩
```

[25] Spoken in Galice, in the north-west part of Spain, around Santiago de Compostela.

13.67 "German" language: german.mld

The titles for the "german" language (*deutsch*) are taken from the babel package [60, 61]. See also the section 13.14 on page 477.

```
⟨*german⟩
\ProvidesFile{german.mld}[1999/03/16]%
%% German titles
\def\ptctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
\def\plftitle{Figuren}%
\def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
\def\mtctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
\def\mlftitle{Figuren}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
\def\stctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
\def\slftitle{Figuren}%
\def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
⟨/german⟩
```

13.68 "Germanb" language: germanb.mld

The "germanb" language is a variant for the "german" language. The titles come from germanb.dtx (by Johannes L. Braams and Bernd Raichle) in the babel package [60, 61, 90]:

```
⟨*germanb⟩
\ProvidesFile{germanb.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% German titles (variant) from germanb.dtx (babel). Braams, Johannes~L. & Raichle, Bernd
\def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
\def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
\def\plttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
\def\mtctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
\def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
%%
\def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
\def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
\def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
⟨/germanb⟩
```

13.69 "Germanb2" language: germanb2.mld

The "germanb2" language is a variant for the "german" language, with short titles. See also section 13.68 on the preceding page. The titles are taken from the file germanb.dtx (by Johannes L. Braams and Bernd Raichle) in the babel package [60, 61]:

```
⟨*germanb2⟩
\ProvidesFile{germanb2.mld}[2007/12/18]%
%% German titles (variant)
\def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
\def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
\def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
\def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
\def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
\def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
\def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
\def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
⟨/germanb2⟩
```

13.70 "Greek" language: greek.mld

The titles for the "greek" language (modern greek, *νέα ελληνικά*) are taken from the greek.dtx file (by Apostolos Syropoulos) in the babel package [60, 61, 98, 427]. Greek fonts are required.

```
⟨*greek⟩
\ProvidesFile{greek.mld}[2007/12/18]%
%% Greek titles from greek.dtx (babel) by Syropoulos, Apostolos. Needs greek fonts.
\def\ptctitle{Perieq'omena}%
\def\plftitle{Kat'alogos Sqhm'atwn}%
\def\plttitle{Kat'alogos Pin'akwn}%
\def\mtctitle{Perieq'omena}%
\def\mlftitle{Kat'alogos Sqhm'atwn}%
\def\mlttitle{Kat'alogos Pin'akwn}%
\def\stctitle{Perieq'omena}%
\def\slftitle{Kat'alogos Sqhm'atwn}%
\def\slttitle{Kat'alogos Pin'akwn}%
⟨/greek⟩
```

13.71 “Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld

\localgreek The titles for the “greek-mono” language [26] are taken from the omega-greek.ldf file (by Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov) in the Antomega project [272]:

```
8741 ⟨*greek-mono⟩
8742 \ProvidesFile{greek-mono.mld}[2005/02/08]%
8743 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project). Needs Omega.
8744 %% Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
8745 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8746 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^03cc^^^^03bc%
8747  ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
8748 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8749 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^03ac^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8750  ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^03ac^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
8751  ^^^^03bd}}%
8752 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8753 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^03ac^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8754  ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^03ac^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
8755 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
8756 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^03cc^^^^03bc%
8757  ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
8758 \def\mlftitle%{\localgreek%
8759 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^03ac^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8760  ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^03ac^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
8761  ^^^^03bd}}%
8762 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8763 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^03ac^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8764  ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^03ac^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
8765 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8766 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^03cc^^^^03bc%
8767  ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
8768 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8769 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^03ac^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8770  ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^03ac^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
8771  ^^^^03bd}}%
8772 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8773 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^03ac^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
8774  ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^03ac^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
8775 ⟨/greek-mono⟩
```

13.72 “Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld

\localgreek The titles for the “greek-polydemo” language [27] are taken from the file omega-greek.ldf (by Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov) in the Antomega project [272]:

[26] Monotonic greek, from a recent (1982) but strongly contested – and contestable – reform of the greek language.
[27] Polytonic demotic (popular) greek, for classical greek.

```
⟨*greek-polydemo⟩
\ProvidesFile{greek-polydemo.mld}[2005/02/08]%
%% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project). Needs Omega.
%% Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
\def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
\def\plftitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
 ^^^^03bd}}%
\def\plttitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
\def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
\def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
 ^^^^03bd}}%
\def\mlttitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
\def\stctitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
\def\slftitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
 ^^^^03bd}}%
\def\slttitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
⟨/greek-polydemo⟩
```

13.73 "Greek-polykatha" language: greek-polykatha.mld

\localgreek The titles for the "greek-polykatha" language [28] are taken from the omega-greek.ldf file (by Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov) in the Antomega project [272]:

```
⟨*greek-polykatha⟩
\ProvidesFile{greek-polykatha.mld}[2005/02/08]%
%% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project). Needs Omega.
```

[28] Polytonic greek, « kathaverousa » (purified) style, a form of the Greek language created during the early XIX-th century by Adamantios Korais, to purify the language from the Byzantine and non-greek vocabulary. It has now been obsoleted by the demotic (popular) greek, but it has left a very noticeable trace in the modern Greek language.

```
%% Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
\def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
\def\plftitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
\def\plttitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
\def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
\def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
\def\mlttitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
\def\stctitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
\def\slftitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
\def\slttitle{\localgreek%
{^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
⟨/greek-polykatha⟩
```

13.74 “Guarani” language: guarani.mld

The “guarani” (guaraní) language is the main language spoken in Paraguay. Very often, a mixture of Guaraní and Spanish, known as Jopará or Yopará, is spoken. The titles are taken from the guarani.ldf file by Javier Bezos [45]. A special input encoding (win-gn.def) is needed. These files are available on the CTAN archives.

```
⟨*guarani⟩
\ProvidesFile{guarani.mld}[2005/08/26]%
%% Guaraní titles from guarani.ldf by Javier Bezos. Input encoding win-gn.def needed.
\def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
\def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\plttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
\def\mtctitle{\'Indice general}%
\def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\mlttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
\def\stctitle{\'Indice general}%
\def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\slttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
⟨/guarani⟩
```

13.75 "Hangul1" language: hangul1.ml[d|o]

The Korean language was originally written using the Chinese characters; it is now mainly written in Hangûl, the Korean writing system, optionally incorporating Hanja to write Sino-Korean words [453]. See [214, page 150], [216] and [365].

The titles for the "hangul1" language (korean in hangûl script, first variant) are taken from the file hangul.cap of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner Lemberg). Special fonts are needed, of course.

See also sections 13.76 to 13.82 on pages 505–508.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "hangul1" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul1.mlo.

```
⟨*hangul1⟩
\ProvidesFile{hangul1.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hangul1}%
%% From the file hangul.cap of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
%% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
%% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions
%% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
⟨/hangul1⟩
```

13.76 "Hangul2" language: hangul2.ml[d|o]

The titles for the "hangul2" language (korean in hangûl script, second variant) are taken from the file hangul.cpx of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner Lemberg). Special fonts are needed, of course.

See also sections 13.75 and 13.77 to 13.82 on pages 506–508.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "hangul2" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul2.mlo.

```
⟨*hangul2⟩
\ProvidesFile{hangul2.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hangul2}%
%% From the file hangul.cpx of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
%% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
%% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003), Hangul captions
%% char. set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
⟨/hangul2⟩
```

13.77 “Hangul3” language: hangul3.ml[d|o]

The titles for the “hangul3” language (korean in hangûl script, third variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cap of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner Lemberg). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.75 to 13.76 on the preceding page and 13.78 to 13.82 on pages 506–508.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “hangul3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul3.mlo.

```
⟨*hangul3⟩
\ProvidesFile{hangul3.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hangul3}%
%% From the file hangul2.cap of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
%% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
%% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions set 2
%% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
⟨/hangul3⟩
```

13.78 “Hangul4” language: hangul4.ml[d|o]

The titles for the “hangul4” language (korean in hangûl script, fourth variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner Lemberg). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.75 to 13.77 on pages 505–506, and 13.79 to 13.82 on pages 507–508.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “hangul4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul4.mlo.

```
⟨*hangul4⟩
\ProvidesFile{hangul4.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hangul4}%
%% From the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
%% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
%% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions set 2,
%% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
%% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
⟨/hangul4⟩
```

13.79 "Hangul-u8" language: hangul-u8.ml[d|o]

The titles for the "hangul-u8" language (korean in hangûl script, for *Lambda* **Λ**) are taken from the file u8hangul.tex of the HLaTeX system [266, in korean] by Un Koaunghi. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8.

See also sections 13.75 to 13.78 on pages 505–506, and 13.80 to 13.82 on pages 507–508. See [214, page 150], [216] and [365].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "hangul-u8" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul-u8.mlo.

```
8885 ⟨*hangul-u8⟩
8886 \ProvidesFile{hangul-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]\mtcloadmlo{hangul-u8}%
8887 %% Hangul captions for Lambda. From the file u8hangul.tex
8888 %% of the HLaTeX package by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
8889 ⟨/hangul-u8⟩
```

13.80 "Hanja1" language: hanja1.mld.ml[d|o]

The titles for the "hanja1" language (korean in the old script hanja, first variant) are taken from the file hanja.cpx of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner Lemberg). Special fonts are needed, of course.

See also sections 13.75 to 13.79 on pages 505–507, and 13.81 to 13.82 on the next page.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "hanja1" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hanja1.mlo.

```
8890 ⟨*hanja1⟩
8891 \ProvidesFile{hanja1.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hanja1}%
8892 %% From the file hanja.cpx of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8893 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Hanja captions.
8894 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>, Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8895 %% Character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8896 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
8897 ⟨/hanja1⟩
```

13.81 "Hanja2" language: hanja2.ml[d|o]

The titles for the "hanja2" language (Korean in the old script hanja, second variant) are taken from the file hanja.cap of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner Lemberg). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.75 to 13.80 on pages 505–507, and 13.82.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "hanja2" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hanja2.mlo.

```
8898 ⟨*hanja2⟩
8899 \ProvidesFile{hanja2.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hanja2}%
8900 %% From the file hanja.cap of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8901 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Hanja captions.
8902 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <a7971428@unet.univie.ac.at>.
8903 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8904 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung). Version 4.1.3 (20-Jun-1997)
8905 ⟨/hanja2⟩
```

13.82 "Hanja-u8" language: hanja-u8.ml[d|o]

The titles for the "hanja-u8" language (korean in hanja script, for *Lambda* **Λ**) are taken from the file u8hanja.tex of the HLaTeX system [266, in korean] by Un Koaunghi. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8. See also sections 13.75 to 13.81 on pages 505–508. See [214, page 150], [216] and [365].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "hanja-u8" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hanja-u8.mlo.

```
8906 ⟨*hanja-u8⟩
8907 \ProvidesFile{hanja-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]\mtcloadmlo{hanja-u8}%
8908 %% Hanja captions for Lambda. From the file hanja-u8.tex of the HLaTeX package
8909 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
8910 ⟨/hanja-u8⟩
```

13.83 "Hebrew" language: hebrew.mld

The titles for the "hebrew" language (*ivrit*) are taken from the ArabTeX package [276, 277] (by Klaus Lagally), with the associated fonts. See also section 13.84 on the next page. See the hebrew alphabet (*alefbet*): http://www.jewfaq.org/graphics/hebrew.gif.

```
⟨*hebrew⟩
\ProvidesFile{hebrew.mld}[2001/02/28]%
%% Hebrew titles. Need hebrew fonts (see arabtex documentation)
\def\ptctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\ \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
\def\plftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
\def\plttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
\def\mtctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\ \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
\def\mlftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
\def\mlttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
\def\stctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\ \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
\def\slftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
\def\slttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
⟨/hebrew⟩
```

13.84 "Hebrew2" language: hebrew2.mld

\@ensure@R

The titles for the "hebrew2" language are taken from the file hebrew.dtx (by Boris Lavva and Rama Porrat) in the babel package [60, 61, 86], which should be used, with the associated fonts and encodings. See also section 13.83 on the preceding page.

```
⟨*hebrew2⟩
\ProvidesFile{hebrew2.mld}[2006/01/11]%
%% From hebrew.dtx in the Babel package. Boris Lavva (lavva@tx.technion.ac.il)
%% Need hebrew fonts.
\def\ptctitle{\@ensure@R{\hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
  \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
\def\plftitle{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmem\hebtav\ %
  \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebresh\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
\def\plttitle{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmem\hebtav\
  \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
\def\mtctitle{\@ensure@R{\hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
  \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
\def\mlftitle{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmem\hebtav\ %
  \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebresh\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
\def\mlttitle{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmem\hebtav\
  \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
\def\stctitle{\@ensure@R{\hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
  \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
\def\slftitle{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmem\hebtav\ %
  \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebresh\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
\def\slttitle{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmem\hebtav\
  \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
⟨/hebrew2⟩
```

13.85 “Hindi” language: hindi.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “hindi” language is just like “devanagari”, so we just load devanagari.mld (see section 13.43 on page 489):

```
8947 ⟨*hindi⟩
8948 \ProvidesFile{hindi.mld}[2006/08/24]\mtcselectlanguage{devanagari}%
8949 ⟨/hindi⟩
```

13.86 “Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld

The titles for the “hindi-modern” language are taken from the captions.dn file (by Anshuman Pandey, C. V. Radhakrishnan, Zdeněk Wagner, John Smith, Kevin Carmody, Richard Mahoney and Dominik Wujastyk) in the Devanāgarī package [364] (Devanāgarī) after conversion. See also section 13.43 on page 489. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is http://devnag.sarovar.org.

```
 \dn
\qva
 \re 8950 ⟨*hindi-modern⟩
 \rs 8951 \ProvidesFile{hindi-modern.mld}[2006/08/29]%
  \2 8952 %% Hindi modern titles from captions.dn in ``Devanagari for TeX''
  \8 8953 %% by Pandey, Anshuman & Radhakrishnan, C.~V. & Wagner, Zden\v{e}k &
     8954 %% Smith, John & Carmody, Kevin & Mahoney, Richard & Wujastyk, Dominik
     8955 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
     8956 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
     8957 \def\plttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
     8958 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
     8959 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
     8960 \def\mlttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
     8961 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
     8962 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
     8963 \def\slttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
     8964 ⟨/hindi-modern⟩
```

13.87 “Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “hungarian” language is a synonym of the “magyar” language, so we load magyar.mld. See section 13.115 on page 523.

```
8965 ⟨*hungarian⟩
8966 \ProvidesFile{hungarian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{magyar}%
8967 ⟨/hungarian⟩
```

13.88 "Icelandic" language: icelandic.mld

The titles for the "icelandic" language (*íslenska*) are taken from the icelandic.dtx file (by Einar Árnason) in the babel package [60, 61, 63]. See also [236].

```
8968 ⟨*icelandic⟩
8969 \ProvidesFile{icelandic.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8970 %% From icelandic.dtx (babel). Needs inputenc with 8-bits encoding. Árnason, Einar
8971 \def\ptctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
8972 \def\plftitle{Myndaskr\'{a}}%
8973 \def\plttitle{T\"{o}fluskr\'{a}}%
8974 \def\mtctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
8975 \def\mlftitle{Myndaskr\'{a}}%
8976 \def\mlttitle{T\"{o}fluskr\'{a}}%
8977 \def\stctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
8978 \def\slftitle{Myndaskr\'{a}}%
8979 \def\slttitle{T\"{o}fluskr\'{a}}%
8980 ⟨/icelandic⟩
```

13.89 "Indon" language: indon.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "indon" language is just like "bahasai", so we just load bahasai.mld (see section 13.16 on page 477):

```
8981 ⟨*indon⟩
8982 \ProvidesFile{indon.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
8983 ⟨/indon⟩
```

13.90 "Indonesian" language: indonesian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "indonesian" language is just like "bahasai", so we just load bahasai.mld (see section 13.16 on page 477):

```
8984 ⟨*indonesian⟩
8985 \ProvidesFile{indonesian.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
8986 ⟨/indonesian⟩
```

13.91 "Interlingua" language: interlingua.mld

The titles for the "interlingua" language are taken from the interlingua.dtx file (by Peter KLEIWEG) in the babel package [60, 61, 81]. Interlingua is an auxiliary language, built from the common vocabulary of Spanish/Portuguese, English, Italian and French, with some normalisation of spelling. The grammar is very easy, more similar to English's than to neolatin languages[29]. See also:

- http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Interlingua, http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Interlingua,
- Union Interlinguiste de France: http://www.interlingua.com.fr/
- interlingua-english dictionnary: http://www.interlingua.com/ied/
- interlingua grammar (in french): http://filip.ouvaton.org/ia/gram/entra1.html
- somes sites in interlingua: http://www.dmoz.org/World/Interlingua
- other sites about interlingua: http://www.cle.unicamp.br/wcp3/interlingua.htm

```
8987 ⟨*interlingua⟩
8988 \ProvidesFile{interlingua.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8989 %% Interlingua titles from interlingua.dtx (babel). Kleiweg, Peter
8990 \def\ptctitle{Contento}%
8991 \def\plftitle{Lista de figuras}%
8992 \def\plttitle{Lista de tabellas}%
8993 \def\mtctitle{Contento}%
8994 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
8995 \def\mlttitle{Tabellas}%
8996 \def\stctitle{Contento}%
8997 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
8998 \def\slttitle{Tabellas}%
8999 ⟨/interlingua⟩
```

13.92 "Irish" language: irish.mld

The titles for the "irish" language (*gaeilge*) come from the irish.dtx file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT) in the babel package [57, 60, 61]:

```
9000 ⟨*irish⟩
9001 \ProvidesFile{irish.mld}[2006/02/28]%
9002 %% From irish.dtx (babel). Braams, Johannes~L. & Gunn, Marion & Grant, Fraser
9003 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9004 \def\plftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9005 \def\plttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
```

[29] The site http://www.interlingua.com is mostly written in interlingua (as is http://interlingua.altervista.org), in case you want to read some sample of it.

```
\def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
\def\mlftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
\def\mlttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
\def\stctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
\def\slftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
\def\slttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
⟨/irish⟩
```

13.93 "Italian" language: italian.mld

The titles for the "italian" language (*italiano*) come from the file italian.dtx (by Maurizio Codogno and Claudio Beccari) in the babel package [60, 61, 73]. See also section 13.94.

```
⟨*italian⟩
\ProvidesFile{italian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Italian titles from italian.dtx (babel). Same authors.
%% Maurizio Codogno (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it) & Claudio Beccari (beccari@polito.it)
\def\ptctitle{Indice}%
\def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
\def\plttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
\def\mtctitle{Indice}%
\def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
\def\mlttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
\def\stctitle{Indice}%
\def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
\def\slttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
⟨/italian⟩
```

13.94 "Italian2" language: italian2.mld

The titles for the "italian2" language are the same as for the "italian" language, except at the part level ("Contenuto"). See also section 13.93.

```
⟨*italian2⟩
\ProvidesFile{italian2.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Italian titles. Variant, from italian.dtx (babel). Same authors.
\def\ptctitle{Contenuto}%
\def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
\def\plttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
\def\mtctitle{Contenuto}%
\def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
\def\mlttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
\def\stctitle{Contenuto}%
\def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
```

```
\def\slttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
⟨/italian2⟩
```

13.95 "Japanese" language: japanese.ml[d|o]

There are several variants for the japanese titles. The titles for a first variant of the "japanese" language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA[30].

But see also other variants in sections 13.96 to 13.100 on pages 514–516.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "japanese" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load japanese.mlo.

```
⟨*japanese⟩
\ProvidesFile{japanese.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese}%
%% Japanese titles. Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
%% From Kumazawa Toshiki <kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp>
%% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
⟨/japanese⟩
```

13.96 "Japanese2" language: japanese2.ml[d|o]

The titles for the "japanese2" language (japanese, second variant) are taken from file JIS.cap of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.95, and 13.97 to 13.100 on pages 515–516.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "japanese2" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load japanese2.mlo.

```
⟨*japanese2⟩
\ProvidesFile{japanese2.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese2}%
%% From the file JIS.cap of the CJK package
%% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e.
%% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
%% Character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: EUC
⟨/japanese2⟩
```

[30] http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html

13.97 "Japanese3" language: japanese3.ml[d|o]

The titles for the "japanese3" language (japanese, third variant) are taken from file JIS.cpx of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG).

Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.95 to 13.96 on the page before, and 13.98s+mld+japanese6. The titles for the "japanese3" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load japanese3.mlo.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "japanese3" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load japanese3.mlo.

```
9053 ⟨*japanese3⟩
9054 \ProvidesFile{japanese3.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese3}%
9055 %% From the file JIS.cpx of the CJK package
9056 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e.
9057 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9058 %% Character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: EUC, preprocessed
9059 ⟨/japanese3⟩
```

13.98 "Japanese4" language: japanese4.ml[d|o]

The titles for the "japanese4" language (japanese, fourth version) are taken from file SJIS.cap of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.95 to 13.97 on pages 514–515, and 13.99 to 13.100 on the next page.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "japanese4" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load japanese4.mlo.

```
9060 ⟨*japanese4⟩
9061 \ProvidesFile{japanese4.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese4}%
9062 %% From SJIS.cap in CJK package for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean)
9063 %% with LaTeX2e. Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28/03/2003).
9064 %% Character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS
9065 ⟨/japanese4⟩
```

13.99 "Japanese5" language: japanese5.ml[d|o]

The titles for the "japanese5" (japanese, fifth variant) language are taken from file SJIS.cpx of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.95 to 13.98 on pages 514–515, and 13.100. The titles for the "japanese5" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load japanese5.mlo.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "japanese5" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load japanese5.mlo.

```
9066 ⟨*japanese5⟩
9067 \ProvidesFile{japanese5.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese5}%
9068 %% From the file SJIS.cpx of the CJK package
9069 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e.
9070 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9071 %% Character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS, preprocessed
9072 ⟨/japanese5⟩
```

13.100 "Japanese6" language: japanese6.ml[d|o]

The titles for the "japanese6" (japanese, sixth variant) language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA[31]. See also sections 13.95 to 13.99 on pages 514–516.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "japanese6" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load japanese6.mlo.

```
9073 ⟨*japanese6⟩
9074 \ProvidesFile{japanese6.mld}[2006/10/31]\mtcloadmlo{japanese6}%
9075 %% Japanese6 titles. Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9076 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki <kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp>
9077 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9078 ⟨/japanese6⟩
```

13.101 "Kannada" language: kannada.mld

The Kannada ("kannada") (or Kannara) language is a dravidian language spoken in the Karnataka state (main town: Bangalore) of India. Titles are taken in the kanlel.sty package file from the KannadaTEX project [485][32] by C. S. YOGANANDA and K. K. SUBRAMANIAM. Specific fonts are required. See the alphabet here: http://www.omniglot.com/writing/kannada.htm.

[31] http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
[32] http://Sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex

```
9079 ⟨*kannada⟩
9080 \ProvidesFile{kannada.mld}[2007/02/22]%
9081 %% From kanlel.sty of Kannadatex
9082 %% (C. S. Yogananda yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in yogacs@users.sarovar.org)
9083 %% (K. K. Subramaniam subbukk@users.sarovar.org)
9084 \def\ptctitle{pariviDi}%
9085 \def\plftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9086 \def\plftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9087 \def\mtctitle{pariviDi}%
9088 \def\mlftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9089 \def\mlftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9090 \def\stctitle{pariviDi}%
9091 \def\slftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9092 \def\slftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9093 ⟨/kannada⟩
```

13.102 "Khalkha" language: khalkha.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

"khalkha" is a synomym for "xalx", so we just load xalx.mld (see sections 13.190 to 13.192 on pages 557–558):

```
9094 ⟨*khalkha⟩
9095 \ProvidesFile{khalkha.mld}[2005/11/16]\mtcselectlanguage{xalx}%
9096 ⟨/khalkha⟩
```

13.103 "Latin" language: latin.mld

The titles for the "latin" language (medieval) are taken from the latin.dtx file (by Claudio Beccari, Raffaella Tabacco, and Krzysztof Konrad Żelechowski) in the babel package [60, 61, 65]. See also section 13.104 on the next page. The latin language is still used by the Catholic Church and the Vatican for archives and some texts.

```
9097 ⟨*latin⟩
9098 \ProvidesFile{latin.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9099 %% Latin (medieval) titles from latin.dtx (babel)
9100 %% Beccari, Claudio & Tabacco, Raffalla & {\.Zelechowski}, Krzysztof Konrad
9101 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9102 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9103 \def\plttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9104 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9105 \def\mlftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9106 \def\mlttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9107 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9108 \def\slftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9109 \def\slttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
```

9110 ⟨/latin⟩

13.104 "Latin2" language: latin2.mld

\ae The titles for the "latin2" language (latin, medieval, abbreviated variant) are taken from the latin.dtx (by Claudio Beccari, Raffaella Tabacco, and Krzysztof Konrad Żelechowski) file in the babel package [60, 61, 65], but abbreviated. See also section 13.103 on the preceding page.

```
9111 ⟨*latin2⟩
9112 \ProvidesFile{latin2.mld}[2007/04/06]%
9113 %% Latin (medieval) titles (abbreviated) from latin.dtx (babel)
9114 %% Beccari, Claudio & Tabacco, Raffalla & {\.Zelechowski}, Krzysztof Konrad
9115 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9116 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9117 \def\plttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9118 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9119 \def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
9120 \def\mlttitle{{Tabul\ae}}%
9121 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9122 \def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
9123 \def\slttitle{{Tabul\ae}}%
9124 ⟨/latin2⟩
```

13.105 "Latinc" language: latinc.mld

The titles for the "latinc" language (classical latin) are taken from the latin.dtx file (by Claudio Beccari and Krzysztof Konrad Żelechowski) in the babel package [60, 61, 65]. See also section 13.106 on the next page.

```
9125 ⟨*latinc⟩
9126 \ProvidesFile{latinc.mld}[2007/04/13]%
9127 %% Latin (classical) titles from latin.dtx (babel)
9128 %% Beccari, Claudio & {\.Zelechowski}, Krzysztof Konrad
9129 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9130 \def\plftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9131 \def\plttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9132 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9133 \def\mlftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9134 \def\mlttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9135 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9136 \def\slftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9137 \def\slttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9138 ⟨/latinc⟩
```

13.106 "Latinc2" language: latinc2.mld

The titles for the "latinc2" language (classical latin, abbreviated variant) are taken from the latin.dtx (by Claudio Beccari and Krzysztof Konrad Żelechowski) file in the babel package [60, 61, 65], but abbreviated. See also section 13.105 on the preceding page.

```
⟨*latinc2⟩
\ProvidesFile{latinc2.mld}[2007/04/06]%
%% Latin (classical) titles (abbreviated) from latin.dtx (babel)
%% Beccari, Claudio & {\.Zelechowski}, Krzysztof Konrad
\def\ptctitle{Index}%
\def\plftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
\def\plttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
\def\mtctitle{Index}%
\def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabvlae}%
\def\stctitle{Index}%
\def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
\def\slttitle{Tabvlae}%
⟨/latinc2⟩
```

13.107 "Latvian" language: latvian.mld

The titles for the "latvian" language[33] (*latviešu valoda*) come from the latvian.ldf file (by Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov) in the Antomega project [272]. See also section 13.109 on the next page.

```
⟨*latvian⟩
\ProvidesFile{latvian.mld}[2005/02/08]%
%% From latvian.ldf (Antomega project).
%% Needs Omega. Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
\def\ptctitle{\locallatvian{Saturs}}%
\def\plftitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
\def\plttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
\def\mtctitle{\locallatvian{Saturs}}%
\def\mlftitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
\def\mlttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
\def\stctitle{\locallatvian{Saturs}}%
\def\slftitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
\def\slttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
⟨/latvian⟩
```

[33] Note that "latvian" is the original name for "letton".

13.108 “Latvian2” language: latvian2.mld

The titles for the “latvian2” language come from the latvian.ldf file (by Andris Lasis and Ivars Dr̦iķis) at http://home.lanet.lv/~drikis/TeX/2e/latvian.ldf. See also section 13.107 on the preceding page.

```
⟨*latvian2⟩
\ProvidesFile{latvian2.mld}[2007/06/05]%
% Andris Lasis (andris_lisis@simms.lv) Ivars Drikis (drikis@lanet.lv)
% http://home.lanet.lv/~drikis/TeX/2e/latvian.ldf
\def\ptctitle{Saturs}%
\def\plftitle{Att\= elu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
\def\plttitle{Tabulu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
\def\mtctitle{Saturs}%
\def\mlftitle{Att\= elu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabulu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
\def\stctitle{Saturs}%
\def\slftitle{Att\= elu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
\def\slttitle{Tabulu r\= ad\={\i}t\= ajs}%
⟨/latvian2⟩
```

13.109 “Letton” language: letton.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “letton” language is a synonym for the “latvian” language, so we just load latvian.mld. See section 13.107 on the page before.

```
⟨*letton⟩
\ProvidesFile{letton.mld}[2005/02/08]\mtcselectlanguage{latvian}%
⟨/letton⟩
```

13.110 “Letton2” language: letton2.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The “letton2” language is a synonym for the “latvian2” language, so we just load latvian2.mld. See section 13.108 on the preceding page.

```
⟨*letton2⟩
\ProvidesFile{letton2.mld}[2007/06/05]\mtcselectlanguage{latvian2}%
⟨/letton2⟩
```

13.111 “Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld

The titles for the “lithuanian” language (*lietuvių kalba*) are taken from the lithuanian.ldf file[34] (by Sigitas Tolušis) for the babel package [60, 61]. See also section 13.112.

```
⟨*lithuanian⟩
\ProvidesFile{lithuanian.mld}[2007/12/04]%
%% Lithuanian titles from lithuanian.ldf
%% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/zip/babel.zip
%% by Tolusis, Sigitas (sigitas@vtex.lt)
\def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
\def\plftitle{Paveiksl\protect\k u s\protect\k ara\protect\v sas}%
\def\plttitle{Lentel\protect\.es}%
\def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
\def\mlftitle{Paveiksl\protect\k u s\protect\k ara\protect\v sas}%
\def\mlttitle{Lentel\protect\.es}%
\def\stctitle{Turinys}%
\def\slftitle{Paveiksl\protect\k u s\protect\k ara\protect\v sas}%
\def\slttitle{Lentel\protect\.es}%
⟨/lithuanian⟩
```

13.112 “Lithuanian2” language: lithuanian2.mld

The titles for the “lithuanian2” language (variant) are taken from the lithuanian.ldf file, found in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/littex/littex-20070713.tar.gz, (by Sigitas Tolušis) for the babel package [60, 61]. See also section 13.111. The L7x encoding and the Latin Modern fonts are needed.

```
⟨*lithuanian2⟩
\ProvidesFile{lithuanian2.mld}[2007/12/04]%
%% Lithuanian titles (variant) from lithuanian.ldf
%% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/littex/littex-20060928.tar.gz
%% by Tolusis, Sigitas (sigitas@vtex.lt)
\def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
\def\plftitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
\def\plttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
\def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
\def\mlftitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
\def\mlttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
\def\stctitle{Turinys}%
\def\slftitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
\def\slttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
⟨/lithuanian2⟩
```

[34] Found in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/zip/babel.zip.

13.113 "Lowersorbian" language: lowersorbian.mld

The titles for the "lowersorbian" language [35] (*dolnoserbski, dolnoservšćina*) are taken from the lsorbian.dtx file (by Eduard Werner) in the babel package [60, 61, 99]. See also section 13.184 on page 554. A shorter language name is lsorbian (see section 13.114).

```
⟨*lowersorbian⟩
\ProvidesFile{lowersorbian.mld}[2006/02/28]%
%% Lower sorbian titles from lsorbian.dtx (babel) by Werner, Eduard
\def\ptctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
\def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
\def\plttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
\def\mtctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
\def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
\def\mlttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
\def\stctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
\def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
\def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
⟨/lowersorbian⟩
```

13.114 "Lsorbian" language: lsorbian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The "lsorbian" language is a synonym for "lowersorbian", so we just need to load lowersorbian.mld. See section 13.113.

```
⟨*lsorbian⟩
\ProvidesFile{lsorbian.mld}[2007/12/04]\mtcselectlanguage{lowersorbian}%
⟨/lsorbian⟩
```

13.115 "Magyar" language: magyar.mld

The titles for the "magyar" language are taken from the magyar.dtx (by József Bérces and Árpád Bíró, with help from Attila Koppanyi) file in the babel package [60, 61, 66]. A synonym of "magyar" is "hungarian" (see section 13.87 on page 510). See also sections 13.116 to 13.117 on pages 523–524 for variants.

```
⟨*magyar⟩
\ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]%
%% Magyar titles from magyar.dtx (babel). Bíró, Árpád & Bérces, József
```

[35] Lower sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Lower Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

```
\def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
\def\plftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
\def\plttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
\def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
\def\mlftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
\def\mlttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
\def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
\def\slftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
\def\slttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
⟨/magyar⟩
```

13.116 "Magyar2" language: magyar2.mld

The titles for the "magyar2" language are taken from a variant proposed in the magyar.dtx file of the babel package [60, 61] (by József Bérces, Árpád Bíró, and Attila Koppanyi). See also sections 13.115 and 13.117 on the following page.

```
⟨*magyar2⟩
\ProvidesFile{magyar2.mld}[2008/04/03]%
%% Magyar2 titles (variant) from magyar.dtx (babel).
%% Bíró, Árpád & Bérces, József
\def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
\def\plftitle{\'Abr\'ak list\'aja}%
\def\plttitle{T\'abl\'azatok list\'aja}%
\def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
\def\mlftitle{\'Abr\'ak list\'aja}%
\def\mlttitle{T\'abl\'azatok list\'aja}%
\def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
\def\slftitle{\'Abr\'ak list\'aja}%
\def\slttitle{T\'abl\'azatok list\'aja}%
⟨/magyar2⟩
```

13.117 "Magyar3" language: magyar3.mld

The titles for the "magyar3" language (third variant of magyar) are taken from the magyar.dtx file (by József Bérces, Árpád Bíró, and Attila Koppanyi) in the babel package [60, 61, 66] [36]. See also sections 13.115 to 13.116 on the page before.

```
⟨*magyar3⟩
\ProvidesFile{magyar3.mld}[2006/03/08]%
%% Magyar3 titles (variant) from magyar.dtx (babel).
%% Bíró, Árpád & Bérces, József
\def\ptctitle{Tartalomjegyz\'ek}%
\def\plftitle{\'Abr\'ak jegyz\'eke}%
```

[36] The situation of the magyar language in the babel package is not clear; some experimental versions exist.

```
\def\plttitle{T\'abl\'azatok jegyz\'eke}%
\def\mtctitle{Tartalomjegyz\'ek}%
\def\mlftitle{\'Abr\'ak jegyz\'eke}%
\def\mlttitle{T\'abl\'azatok jegyz\'eke}%
\def\stctitle{Tartalomjegyz\'ek}%
\def\slftitle{\'Abr\'ak jegyz\'eke}%
\def\slttitle{T\'abl\'azatok jegyz\'eke}%
⟨/magyar3⟩
```

13.118 "Malay" language: malay.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The "malay" language is just like "bahasam", so we just load bahasam.mld (see section 13.17 on page 478):

```
⟨*malay⟩
\ProvidesFile{malay.mld}[2006/01/11]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
⟨/malay⟩
```

13.119 "Malayalam-b" language: malayalam-b.mld

\mm
\X
\<>

The titles for the "malayalam-b" language are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A.J. Alex. The Malayalam language is spoken from the western coast of Malabar to the extreme southern India, mainly in the Kerala state. It is one of the dravidian languages strongly bound to the Tamil language. The alphabet and the script are dated from the 8th or 9th centuries. This language option requires specific fonts (depending on the option of the malayalam package). It should be used with the following options of the malayalam package[37]: aathira, ambili, anahka, ashtamudi, aswathi, ayilyambold, bhanu, bhavana, chippi, gauri, gopika, indulekha, ISMashtamudi, ISMkarthika, ISMkaumudi, ISMrevathi, jaya, karthika, kaumudi, kottakkal, makam, malavika mridula, payippad, periyar, ravivarma, revathi, sabari, sarada, sruthy, and triruvathira. See also sections 13.120 to 13.126 on pages 525–528.

```
⟨*malayalam-b⟩
\ProvidesFile{malayalam-b.mld}[2007/12/04]%
\def\ptctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
\def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
\def\plttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
\def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
\def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
\def\mlttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
\def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
\def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
\def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
```

[37] There is a great variety of fonts for malayalam; hence I have attempted to limit the number of .mld files.

⟨/malayalam-b⟩

13.120 "Malayalam-keli" language: malayalam-keli.mld

\mm \X \<> The titles for the "malayalam-keli" language, with the "Keli" fonts, are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A.J. Alex. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.119 on the page before and 13.121 to 13.126 on pages 525–528.

```
⟨*malayalam-keli⟩
\ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Malayalam: Keli fonts
\def\ptctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
\def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
\def\plttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
\def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
\def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
\def\mlttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
\def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
\def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
\def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
⟨/malayalam-keli⟩
```

13.121 "Malayalam-keli2" language: malayalam-keli2.mld

\mm \X \<> The titles for the "malayalam-keli2" language are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A.J. Alex. This language requires specific fonts (keli second variant). See also sections 13.119 to 13.120 on pages 524–525 and 13.122 to 13.126 on pages 526–528.

```
⟨*malayalam-keli2⟩
\ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli2.mld}[2007/12/04]%
% Keli fonts (mkl)
\def\ptctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
\def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}
\def\plttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
\def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
\def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}
\def\mlttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
\def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
\def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}
\def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
⟨/malayalam-keli2⟩
```

13.122 "Malayalam-mr" language: malayalam-mr.mld

\mm \X \<> The titles for the "malayalam-mr" language are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A.J. Alex. This language requires specific fonts (traditional rachana). See also sections 13.119 to 13.121 on pages 524–525 and 13.123 to 13.126 on pages 526–528.

```
⟨*malayalam-mr⟩
\ProvidesFile{malayalam-mr.mld}[2007/12/04]%
% mr fonts (rachana: mr1,...,mr6)
\def\ptctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}
\def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}
\def\plttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}
\def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}
\def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}
\def\mlttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}
\def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}
\def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}
\def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}
⟨/malayalam-mr⟩
```

13.123 "Malayalam-omega" language: malayalam-omega.ml[d|o]

\mtcloadmlo This is the Malayalam language implementation "malayalam-omega" based on *Lambda* (Λ) (the version of LaTeX for Omega) via the omal package [5] (by A.J. Alex) of the Malayalam-Omega project[38]. As the titles contain characters in a special encoding, we must load a .mlo file. A lot of fonts are available via options of the omal package. See also sections 13.119 to 13.122 on pages 524–526 and 13.124 to 13.126 on pages 527–528.

```
⟨*malayalam-omega⟩
\ProvidesFile{malayalam-omega.mld}[2007/12/04]\mtcloadmlo{malayalam-omega}%
%% from omal.sty (Alex A.J. indicTeX@gmail.com)
⟨/malayalam-omega⟩
```

13.124 "Malayalam-rachana" language: malayalam-rachana.mld

\mm \X \C \F \<> The titles for the "malayalam-rachana" language, with the traditionnal "Rachana" fonts (old lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A.J. Alex. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.119 to 13.123 on pages 524–526 and 13.125 to 13.126 on pages 527–528.

[38] http://Sarovar.org/projects/malayalam

```
⟨*malayalam-rachana⟩
\ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana.mld}[2005/06/07]%
%% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, traditionnal.
\def\ptctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
\def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{{\C\<94>}}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\plttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{{\F\<59>}}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
\def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{{\C\<94>}}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\mlttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{{\F\<59>}}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
\def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{{\C\<94>}}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{{\F\<59>}}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
⟨/malayalam-rachana⟩
```

13.125 “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld

\mm
\X
\<>

The titles for the “malayalam-rachana2” language, with the reformed “Rachana” fonts (new lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A.J. Alex. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.119 to 13.124 on pages 524–527 and 13.126 on the following page.

```
⟨*malayalam-rachana2⟩
\ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana2.mld}[2006/01/13]% %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, reformed.
\def\ptctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
\def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\plttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
\def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\mlttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
\def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
⟨/malayalam-rachana2⟩
```

13.126 “Malayalam-rachana3” language: malayalam-rachana3.mld

\mm
\X
\<>
\C
\F

The titles for the “malayalam-rachana3” language are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A.J. Alex. This language requires specific fonts (rachana). See also sections 13.119 to 13.125 on pages 524–527.

```
⟨*malayalam-rachana3⟩
\ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana3.mld}[2007/12/04]% % Rachana fonts (mr2,...,mr6)
\def\ptctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
```

```
\def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{{\C\<94>}}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\plttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{{\F\<59>}}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
\def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{{\C\<94>}}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\mlttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{{\F\<59>}}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
\def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{{\C\<94>}}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
\def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{{\F\<59>}}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
⟨/malayalam-rachana3⟩
```

13.127 "Manju" language: manju.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The "manju" language is a synomym for "bithe", so we just load bithe.mld (see section 13.24 on page 481):

```
⟨*manju⟩
\ProvidesFile{manju.mld}[2005/11/16]\mtcselectlanguage{bithe}%
⟨/manju⟩
```

13.128 "Mexican" language: mexican.mld

The titles for the "mexican" language (*español mexicano*) are taken from the mexican.ldf file (by Luis Rivera) in http://mirror.ctan.org/language/spanish/nonstandard/mx/. Mexican is a spanish (castillan) dialect. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 13.172 on page 550.

```
⟨*mexican⟩
\ProvidesFile{mexican.mld}[2008/04/03]%
%% Spanish titles (from mexican.ldf) Rivera, Luis (jlrn77@gmail.com)
\expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
\def\ptctitle{\'Indice} \else \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general} \fi % <----
\def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\plttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
\def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
\def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\mlttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
\def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
\def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\slttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
⟨/mexican⟩
```

13.129 "Meyalu" language: meyalu.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "meyalu" language is just like "bahasam", so we just load bahasam.mld (see section 13.17 on page 478):

```
9386 ⟨*meyalu⟩
9387 \ProvidesFile{meyalu.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9388 ⟨/meyalu⟩
```

13.130 "Mongol" language: mongol.mld

\mnr The titles for the "mongol" language are taken from the MonTEX package [137, 140] (by Oliver Corff and Dorjpalam Dorj). This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.21 to 13.24 on pages 479–481, 13.31 to 13.32 on pages 484–485, and 13.190 to 13.192 on pages 557–558.

```
9389 ⟨*mongol⟩
9390 \ProvidesFile{mongol.mld}[1999/03/16]%
9391 %% Mongol (xalx) titles. Needs mongol fonts
9392 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9393 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9394 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9395 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9396 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9397 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9398 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9399 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9400 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9401 ⟨/mongol⟩
```

13.131 "Mongolb" language: mongolb.mld

This is an other variant for the mongolian titles, taken from the mongolian.dtx file [26] (by Dorjgotov Batmunkh) for the babel package [60, 61] (hence the final "b" in "mongolb").

\cyr The titles for the "mongolb" language use cyrillic characters and the X2 and T2 encodings and are derived from the russianb.dtx file (by Olga G. Lapko, Vladimir Volovich and Werner Lemberg).

```
⟨*mongolb⟩
\ProvidesFile{mongolb.mld}[2007/01/29]%
%% Mongolian titles from mongolian.dtx for the babel package
%% Dorjgotov Batmunkh (batmunkh@num.edu.mn)
%% Needs some cyrillic fonts and special cyrillic encoding T2 and X2.
%% Vladimir Volovich (TeX@vvv.vsu.ru) & Werner Lemberg (wl@gnu.org)
\expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
  \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
\else\relax
  \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
\fi
\def\plftitle{{{\cyr\CYRZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
\def\plttitle{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
\expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
  \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
\else\relax
  \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
\fi
\def\mlftitle{{{\cyr\CYRZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
\def\mlttitle{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
\expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
  \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
\else\relax
  \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
\fi
\def\slftitle{{{\cyr\CYRZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
\def\slttitle{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
⟨/mongolb⟩
```

13.132 “Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

This is an other name for the “mongolb” language, because the babel package [60, 61] uses the name “mongolian”. We just load mongolb.mld. See section 13.131 on the preceding page.

```
⟨*mongolian⟩
\ProvidesFile{mongolian.mld}[2007/02/05]\mtcselectlanguage{mongolb}%
⟨/mongolian⟩
```

13.133 "Naustrian" language: naustrian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "naustrian" language is a synonym of the "ngermanb" language (a revised version of the germanb variant of the german language), so we just load the ngermanb.mld file. See also section 13.136 on the next page.

```
9439 ⟨*naustrian⟩
9440 \ProvidesFile{naustrian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9441 ⟨/naustrian⟩
```

13.134 "Newzealand" language: newzealand.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "newzealand" language is just like "english", so we just load english.mld (section 13.45 on page 490):

```
9442 ⟨*newzealand⟩
9443 \ProvidesFile{newzealand.mld}[2006/01/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
9444 ⟨/newzealand⟩
```

13.135 "Ngerman" language: ngerman.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "ngerman" language is a synonym of the "ngermanb" language [39], so we just load the ngermanb.mld file. See also section 13.136 on the next page.

```
9445 ⟨*ngerman⟩
9446 \ProvidesFile{ngerman.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9447 ⟨/ngerman⟩
```

13.136 "Ngermanb" language: ngermanb.mld

The titles for the "ngermanb" language [40] are taken from the file ngermanb.dtx file (by Bernd Raichle and Walter Schmidt) in the babel package [60, 61, 91]. See also sections 13.133 on the preceding page, and 13.135 on the page before.

[39] A revised version of the germanb variant of the german language.
[40] A variant of the german language, with revised spelling.

```
⟨*ngermanb⟩
\ProvidesFile{ngermanb.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% New german (B) titles from ngermanb.dtx (babel). Raichle, Bernd & Schmidt, Walter
\def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%    % oder nur: Inhalt % <-----
\def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
\def\plttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
\def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
\def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
\def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
\def\slftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
\def\slttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
⟨/ngermanb⟩
```

13.137 "Ngermanb2" language: ngermanb2.mld

The titles for the "ngermanb2" language (revised spelling and short titles) are taken from the ngermanb.dtx file (by Bernd Raichle and Walter Schmidt) in the babel package [60, 61, 91], and abbreviated. See also section 13.136.

```
⟨*ngermanb2⟩
\ProvidesFile{ngermanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]%
%% New german (B) short (2) titles
\def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
\def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
\def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
\def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
\def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
\def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
\def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
\def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
⟨/ngermanb2⟩
```

13.138 "Norsk" language: norsk.mld

The titles for the "norsk" language (or *bokmål*, "language of the kingdom") are taken from the norsk.dtx file (by Johannes L. Braams, Håvard Helstrup, Alv Kjetil Holme, Per Steinar Iversen, Terje Engeset Petterst and Rune Kleveland) in the babel package [58, 60, 61], with help from Dag Langmyhr. See also section 13.140 on the next page.

```
⟨*norsk⟩
\ProvidesFile{norsk.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Norsk titles from norsk.dtx (babel). Braams, Johannes~L. & Helstrup, Haavard
%% & Holme, Alv Kjetil & Iversen, Per Steinar &  Petterst, Terje Engeset
```

```
%% & Kleveland, Rune. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
\def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
\def\plftitle{Figurer}%
\def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
\def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
\def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
\def\stctitle{Innhold}%
\def\slftitle{Figurer}%
\def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
⟨/norsk⟩
```

13.139 "Norsk2" language: norsk2.mld

The titles for the "norsk2" language (or *bokmål*, "language of the kingdom") are taken from the babel package [58, 60, 61], with help from Dag Langmyhr, and abbreviated.

```
⟨*norsk2⟩
\ProvidesFile{norsk2.mld}[2005/09/27]%
%% Short norsk titles. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
\def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
\def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
\def\plttitle{Tabelliste}%
\def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
\def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabelliste}%
\def\stctitle{Innhold}%
\def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
\def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
⟨/norsk2⟩
```

13.140 "Nynorsk" language: nynorsk.mld

The titles for the "nynorsk" language[41] are taken from the norsk.dtx file (by Johannes L. Braams, Håvard Helstrup, Alv Kjetil Holme, Per Steinar Iversen, Terje Engeset Petterst and Rune Kleveland) in the babel package [58, 60, 61], with help from Dag Langmyhr. See also section 13.138 on the preceding page.

```
⟨*nynorsk⟩
\ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Nynorsk titles from norsk.dtx (babel). Braams, Johannes~L. & Helstrup, Haavard
%% & Holme, Alv Kjetil & Iversen, Per Steinar & Petterst, Terje Engeset
```

[41] Created around 1800 by Ivar Åssen to make a real independent and national norvegian language, in reaction to danish, from the various dialects spoken in the country. But nynorsk has never gained much popularity outside rural regions.

```
%% & Kleveland, Rune. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
\def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
\def\mlftitle{Figurar}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabellar}%
\def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
\def\plftitle{Figurar}%
\def\plttitle{Tabellar}%
\def\stctitle{Innhald}%
\def\slftitle{Figurar}%
\def\slttitle{Tabellar}%
⟨/nynorsk⟩
```

13.141 "Nynorsk2" language: nynorsk2.mld

The titles for the "nynorsk2" language are variants of the titles of the "nynorsk" language. See also section 13.140.

```
⟨*nynorsk2⟩
\ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[1999/03/16]%
%% Nynorsk titles. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
\def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
\def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabelliste}%
\def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
\def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
\def\plttitle{Tabelliste}%
\def\stctitle{Innhald}%
\def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
\def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
⟨/nynorsk2⟩
```

13.142 "Occitan" language: occitan.mld

The occitan language[42] is still spoken in the south of France, from Limoges (Letmòges), Bordeaux (Bordèu) and Toulouse (Tolosa[43]) to Marseille (Marselha) and Nice (Niça), with many local variants. This bilingual street sign in Toulouse (Tolosa), like many such signs found in historical parts of the city, is maintained primarily for its antique charm; it is typical of what little remains of the "lenga d'oc" in southern French cities. See also http://www.orbilat.com/Maps/Occitan/Occitan.gif. See also [122].

[42] I used the site http://www.panoccitan.org/diccionari.aspx for the translations.
[43] *Per Tolosa totjorn mai!*

```
⟨*occitan⟩
\ProvidesFile{occitan.mld}[2007/12/18]%
%% Occitan titles (translations using http://www.panoccitan.org/diccionari.aspx)
\def\ptctitle{Ensenhador}%
\def\plftitle{Ti\‘era de las figurats}%
\def\plttitle{Ti\‘era de las taulas}%
\def\mtctitle{Ensenhador}%
\def\mlftitle{Ti\‘era de las figurats}%
\def\mlttitle{Ti\‘era de las taulas}%
\def\stctitle{Ensenhador}%
\def\slftitle{Ti\‘era de las figurats}%
\def\slttitle{Ti\‘era de las taulas}%
⟨/occitan⟩
```

13.143 “Occitan2” language: occitan2.mld

The occitan2 language provides an example of variants for the occitan titles.

```
⟨*occitan2⟩
\ProvidesFile{occitan2.mld}[2008/04/03]%
% Occitan titles (variants)
\def\ptctitle{Taula dels ensenhadors}%
\def\plftitle{Lista de las figuras}%
\def\plttitle{Lista dels tabl\‘eus}%
\def\mtctitle{Taula dels ensenhadors}%
\def\mlftitle{Lista de las figuras}%
\def\mlttitle{Lista dels tabl\‘eus}%
\def\stctitle{Taula dels ensenhadors}%
\def\slftitle{Lista de las figuras}%
\def\slttitle{Lista dels tabl\‘eus}%
⟨/occitan2⟩
```

13.144 “Polish” language: polish.mld

The titles for the “polish” language (*język polski*) are taken from the polish.dtx file (by Elmar Schalück and Michael Janich) in the babel package [60, 61, 96]. See also sections 13.145 to 13.146 on pages 536–537.

```
⟨*polish⟩
\ProvidesFile{polish.mld}[2007/12/18]%
%% Polish titles from polish.dtx (babel). Schalück, Elmar & Janich, Michael
\def\ptctitle{Spis tre\’sci}%
\def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\’ow}%
\def\plttitle{Spis tablic}%
\def\mtctitle{Spis tre\’sci}%
\def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\’ow}%
```

```
\def\mlttitle{Spis tablic}%
\def\stctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
\def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
\def\slttitle{Spis tablic}%
⟨/polish⟩
```

13.145 "Polish2" language: polish2.mld

\localpolish The titles for the "polish2" language[44] are taken from the omega-polish.ldf (by Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov) in the Antomega project [272]. See also sections 13.144 and 13.146 on the next page.

```
⟨*polish2⟩
\ProvidesFile{polish2.mld}[2005/02/08]%
%% from omega-polish.ldf (Antomega). Needs Omega. Alexej M. Kryukov, Dmitry Ivanov
\def\ptctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
\def\plftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
\def\plttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
\def\mtctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
\def\mlftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
\def\mlttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
\def\stctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
\def\slftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
\def\slttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
⟨/polish2⟩
```

13.146 "Polski" language: polski.mld

The titles for the "polski" language (variant for polish) are taken from the polski.dtx file (by Mariusz Olko and Marcin Woliński) in the polski package [357, 463]. See also sections 13.144 to 13.145 on the preceding page.

```
⟨*polski⟩
\ProvidesFile{polski.mld}[2008/01/15]%
%% Polski titles from polski.dtx. Olko, Mariusz & Woli\'nski, Marcin.
\def\ptctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
\def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
\def\plttitle{Spis tabel}%
\def\mtctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
\def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
\def\mlttitle{Spis tabel}%
\def\stctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
\def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
```

[44] "Polish2" is a variant of "polish".

```
\def\slttitle{Spis tabel}%
⟨/polski⟩
```

13.147 "Portuges" language: portuges.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The name "portuges" is another spelling for "portuguese" (see section 13.148), so we just load portuguese.mld:

```
⟨*portuges⟩
\ProvidesFile{portuges.mld}[2005/06/07]\mtcselectlanguage{portuguese}%
⟨/portuges⟩
```

13.148 "Portuguese" language: portuguese.mld

The titles for the "portuguese" language (*português*) are taken from the portuges.dtx file (by Jose Pedro Ramalhete) in the babel package [60, 61, 92]. The portuguese language is spoken in Portugal (with the islands of Azores and Madeira) , in Brazil, and in former portuguese colonies like Angola, Guinea-Bissau, Mozambique, Cape Verde Islands, Saõ Tomé and Príncipe Islands, East Timor, and some old trading posts like Macao and Goa. See also section 13.25 on page 481, because the titles are different in Brazil, even if the language is also portuguese.

```
⟨*portuguese⟩
\ProvidesFile{portuguese.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Portuguese titles from portuges.dtx (babel).
%% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro
\def\ptctitle{Conte\'udo}%
\def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
\def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
\def\mtctitle{Conte\'udo}%
\def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
\def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
\def\stctitle{Conte\'udo}%
\def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
\def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
⟨/portuguese⟩
```

13.149 "Romanian" language: romanian.mld

The titles for the "romanian" language (*română*) come from the romanian.dtx file (by Umstatter Horst and Robert Juhasz) in the babel package [60, 61, 78]. See also sections 13.150 to 13.151 on pages 538–539.

```
⟨*romanian⟩
\ProvidesFile{romanian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Romanian titles from romanian.dtx (babel).
%% Horst, Umstatter & Juhasz, Robert
\def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
\def\plftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
\def\plttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
\def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
\def\mlftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
\def\mlttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
\def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
\def\slftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
\def\slttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
⟨/romanian⟩
```

13.150 "Romanian2" language: romanian2.mld

The titles for the "romanian2" language come from the romanian.dtx file (by Adrian Rezuş and Bernd Raichle) in the RomanianTEX package [397]. See also sections 13.149 and 13.151 on the following page. Alas, RomanianTEX *is not compatible* with the babel package [60, 61].

```
⟨*romanian2⟩
\ProvidesFile{romanian2.mld}[2006/08/03]%
%% Titles in RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx). Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl),
%% Bernd Raichle (raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de)
\def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
\def\plftitle{Lista de figuri}%
\def\plttitle{Lista de tabele}%
\def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
\def\mlftitle{Lista de figuri}%
\def\mlttitle{Lista de tabele}%
\def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
\def\slftitle{Lista de figuri}%
\def\slttitle{Lista de tabele}%
⟨/romanian2⟩
```

13.151 "Romanian3" language: romanian3.mld

The titles for the "romanian3" language come from the romanian.dtx file (by Adrian Rezuş and Bernd Raichle) in the RomanianTEX package [397]. See also sections 13.149 to 13.150 on the page before. Alas, RomanianTEX *is not compatible* with the babel package [60, 61].

```
⟨*romanian3⟩
\ProvidesFile{romanian3.mld}[2006/08/03]%
%% Romanian titles from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx) variant.
%% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl)
%% Bernd Raichle (raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de)
\def\ptctitle{Tabla de materii}%
\def\plttitle{Indice de figuri}%
\def\plttitle{Tabele}%
\def\mtctitle{Tabla de materii}%
\def\mlttitle{Indice de figuri}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
\def\stctitle{Tabla de materii}%
\def\slttitle{Indice de figuri}%
\def\slttitle{Tabele}%
⟨/romanian3⟩
```

13.152 "Russian" language: russian.mld

\cz
\mz

The titles for the "russian" language (*russkiy yazyk*) are taken from the babel package [60, 61]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required.

```
⟨*russian⟩
\ProvidesFile{russian.mld}[1999/03/16]%
%% Russian titles
\def\ptctitle{Oglavlenie}%
\def\plftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
\def\plttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
\def\mtctitle{Oglavlenie}%
\def\mlftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
\def\mlttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
\def\stctitle{Oglavlenie}%
\def\slftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
\def\slttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
⟨/russian⟩
```

13.153 "Russian2m" language: russian2m.mld

\localrussian The titles for the "russian2m" language ("russian2m" is a modern variant of "russian") are taken from the russian2m.ldf file (by Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov) in the Antomega project [272]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.152 on the preceding page.

```
9668 ⟨*russian2m⟩
9669 \ProvidesFile{russian2m.mld}[2005/02/08]%
9670 %% from russian2m.ldf (Antomega project, russian modern)
9671 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts. Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
9672 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
9673 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d^^^^0438^^^^0435}}%
9674 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
9675 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a ^^^^0438^^^^043b%
9676  ^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0438^^^^0439}}%
9677 \def\plttitle{\localrussian%
9678 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a ^^^^0442^^^^0430%
9679  ^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446}}%
9680 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
9681 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d^^^^0438^^^^0435}}%
9682 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
9683 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a ^^^^0438^^^^043b%
9684  ^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0438^^^^0439}}%
9685 \def\mlttitle{\localrussian%
9686 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a ^^^^0442^^^^0430%
9687  ^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446}}%
9688 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
9689 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d^^^^0438^^^^0435}}%
9690 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
9691 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a ^^^^0438^^^^043b%
9692  ^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0438^^^^0439}}%
9693 \def\slttitle{\localrussian%
9694 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a ^^^^0442^^^^0430%
9695  ^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446}}%
9696 ⟨/russian2m⟩
```

13.154 "Russian2o" language: russian2o.mld

\localrussian The titles for the "russian2o" language ("russian2o" is an old variant of "russian") are taken from the omega-russian.ldf file (by Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov) in the Antomega project [272]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.152 on page 539.

```
9697 ⟨*russian2o⟩
9698 \ProvidesFile{russian2o.mld}[2005/02/08]%
9699 %% from russian2o.mld (Antomega project - russian old)
```

```
%% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts. Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
\def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
{^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d^^^^0456^^^^0435}}%
\def\plftitle{\localrussian%
{^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a ^^^^0438%
 ^^^^043b^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0456^^^^0439}}%
\def\plttitle{\localrussian%
{^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a ^^^^0442%
 ^^^^0430^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446^^^^044a}}%
\def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
{^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d^^^^0456^^^^0435}}%
\def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
{^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a ^^^^0438%
 ^^^^043b^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0456^^^^0439}}%
\def\mlttitle{\localrussian%
{^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a ^^^^0442%
 ^^^^0430^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446^^^^044a}}%
\def\stctitle{\localrussian%
{^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d^^^^0456^^^^0435}}%
\def\slftitle{\localrussian%
{^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a ^^^^0438%
 ^^^^043b^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0456^^^^0439}}%
\def\slttitle{\localrussian%
{^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a ^^^^0442%
 ^^^^0430^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446^^^^044a}}%
⟨/russian2o⟩
```

13.155 "Russianb" language: russianb.mld

\cyr The titles for the "russianb" language ("russianb" is a variant of "russian") are taken from the russianb.dtx file (by Olga G. Lapko, Vladimir Volovich, Werner Lemberg, and Irina A. Makhovaya) in the babel package [60, 61, 84, 286]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.152 on page 539. The parttoc title varies depending on the presence of chapters defined or not by the document class.

```
⟨*russianb⟩
\ProvidesFile{russianb.mld}[2006/02/15]%
%% Russian (russianb) titles from russianb.dtx (babel)
%% Lapko, Olga & Volovitch, Vladimir & Lemberg, Werner
\expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
\def\ptctitle{%
  {\cyr\CYRS\cyro\cyrd\cyre\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
\else\def\ptctitle{%
  {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
\fi
\def\plftitle{%
  {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
    \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
\def\plttitle{%
```

```
  {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
  \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
\def\mtctitle{%
  {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
\def\mlftitle{%
  {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
    \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
\def\mlttitle{%
  {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
  \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
\def\stctitle{%
  {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
\def\slftitle{%
  {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
    \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
\def\slttitle{%
  {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
  \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
⟨/russianb⟩
```

13.156 "Russianc" language: russianc.mld

\xalx The titles for the "russianc" language ("russianc" is a variant of "russian", used in the part of Mongolia under russian influence) are taken from the file russian.def in the MonTEX package [137, 140]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.152 on page 539.

```
⟨*russianc⟩
\ProvidesFile{russianc.mld}[1999/03/16]%
%% Russian titles (Mongolia). Needs cyrillic fonts.
\def\ptctitle{\xalx{Oglawlenie}}%
\def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
\def\plttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
%%
\def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
\def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
\def\mlttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
\def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
\def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
\def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
⟨/russianc⟩
```

13.157 "Russian-cca" language: russian-cca.ml[d|o]

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for a first variant of the "russian-cca" are taken from the russian.sty (by Victor Boyko and Vadim Maslov) file in the cmcyralt package [53].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "russian-cca" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-cca.mlo.

```
9773 ⟨*russian-cca⟩
9774 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca.mld}[2006/03/08]\mtcloadmlo{russian-cca}%
9775 %% Russian-cca titles. From russian.sty in the cmcyralt package
9776 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu) & Victor Boyko (vb1890@cs.nyu.edu)
9777 %% Needs cmcyralt fonts and special input encoding.
9778 ⟨/russian-cca⟩
```

13.158 "Russian-cca1" language: russian-cca1.ml[d|o]

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for the "russian-cca1" language are taken from the cmcyralt.sty file (by Vadim Maslov, Alexander Harin and Vadim V. Zhytnikov) in the cmcyralt package[222].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "russian-cca1" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-cca1.mlo.

```
9779 ⟨*russian-cca1⟩
9780 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca1.mld}[2006/03/08]\mtcloadmlo{russian-cca1}%
9781 %% Russian-cca1 titles. From cmcyralt.sty in the cmcyralt package
9782 %% with cmcyr fonts in alt encoding.
9783 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu) & Alexander Harin (harin@lourie.und.ac.za)
9784 %% & Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@phy.ncu.edu.tw)
9785 ⟨/russian-cca1⟩
```

13.159 "Russian-lh" language: russian-lh.ml[d|o]

The russian titles for the LH fonts ("russian-lh" language) are taken from the russian.sty file (by Sergei O. Naumov) in the LH package [342].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "russian-lh" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lh.mlo.

```
9786 ⟨*russian-lh⟩
9787 \ProvidesFile{russian-lh.mld}[2006/03/08]\mtcloadmlo{russian-lh}%
9788 %% Russian-lh titles from russian.sty in the LH package
9789 %% LH fonts in special encoding. By Sergei O. Naumov (serge@astro.unc.edu)
9790 ⟨/russian-lh⟩
```

13.160 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.ml[d|o]

The russian titles for the LHCYRALT fonts (“russian-lhcyralt” language) are taken from the lhcyralt.sty file (by Vadim V. Zhytnikov) in the lhcyr package [487].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “russian-lhcyralt” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyralt.mlo. The input encoding is ALT (code page CP866).

```
⟨*russian-lhcyralt⟩
\ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyralt.mld}[2006/03/10]\mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyralt}%
%% Russian-lhcyralt titles from lhcyralt.sty in the LHCYR package
%% LHCYRALT fonts in special encoding ALT (CP866).
%% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
⟨/russian-lhcyralt⟩
```

13.161 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.ml[d|o]

The russian titles for the LHCYRKOI fonts (“russian-lhcyrkoi” language) are taken from the lhcyrkoi.sty file (by Vadim V. Zhytnikov) in the lhcyr package [487].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “russian-lhcyrkoi” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo. The input encoding is KOI-8.

```
⟨*russian-lhcyrkoi⟩
\ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrkoi.mld}[2006/03/13]\mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
%% Russian-lhcyrkoi titles from lhcyrkoi.sty in the LHCYR package
%% LHCYRKOI fonts in special encoding KOI-8. Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
⟨/russian-lhcyrkoi⟩
```

13.162 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d|o]

The russian titles for the LHCYRWIN fonts (“russian-lhcyrwin” language) are taken from the lhcyrwin.sty file (by Vadim V. Zhytnikov) in the lhcyr package [487].

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the “russian-lhcyrwin” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrwin.mlo. The input encoding is CP1251.

```
⟨*russian-lhcyrwin⟩
\ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrwin.mld}[2006/03/13]\mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrwin}%
%% Russian titles from lhcyrwin.sty in the LHCYR package
%% LHCYRWIN fonts in encoding CP1251. Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
⟨/russian-lhcyrwin⟩
```

13.163 "Samin" language: samin.mld

The titles for the "samin" language come from the samin.dtx file (by Regnor Jernsletten) in the babel package [60, 61, 79]. Specific fonts are required. Note that several Sámi dialects/languages are spoken in Finland, Norway, Sweden, and on the Kola Peninsula (Russia). The alphabets differ, so there will eventually be a need for more .dtx files for, e.g., Lule and South Sámi. Hence the (artificial) name samin.dtx (and not sami.dtx or the like) in the North Sámi case[45]. These dialects and languages are part of the Finnic group. See also http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sápmi_(area).

```
⟨*samin⟩
\ProvidesFile{samin.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% North Sámi (samin) titles from samin.dtx (babel). Jernsletten, Regnor
\def\ptctitle{Sisdoallu}%
\def\plftitle{Govvosat}%
\def\plttitle{Tabeallat}%
\def\mtctitle{Sisdoallu}%
\def\mlftitle{Govvosat}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabeallat}%
\def\stctitle{Sisdoallu}%
\def\slftitle{Govvosat}%
\def\slttitle{Tabeallat}%
⟨/samin⟩
```

13.164 "Scottish" language: scottish.mld

The titles for the "scottish" language (gaelic scottish, *gàidhlig*) come from the scottish.dtx file (by Fraser Grant) in the babel language [60, 61, 76]:

```
⟨*scottish⟩
\ProvidesFile{scottish.mld}[2007/12/18]%
%% Scottish titles from scottish.dtx (babel). Grant, Fraser
\def\ptctitle{Cl\‘ar-obrach}%
\def\plftitle{Liosta Dhealbh}%
\def\plttitle{Liosta Chl\‘ar}%
\def\mtctitle{Cl\‘ar-obrach}%
\def\mlftitle{Liosta Dhealbh}%
```

[45] Adapted from the samin.dtx file.

```
\def\mlttitle{Liosta Chl\‘ar}%
\def\stctitle{Cl\‘ar-obrach}%
\def\slftitle{Liosta Dhealbh}%
\def\slttitle{Liosta Chl\‘ar}%
⟨/scottish⟩
```

13.165 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld

The titles for the “serbian” (serbocroatian) (*srpski jezik*, *srpskohrvatski jezik*) language are taken from the serbian.dtx file (by Dejan Muhamedagić and Jankovic Slobodan) in the babel package [60, 61, 88]. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.166 on the following page .

```
⟨*serbian⟩
\ProvidesFile{serbian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Serbian titles in serbian.dtx (babel). Muhamedagi\'{c}, Dejan & Slobodan, Jankovic
\def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
\def\plftitle{Slike}%
\def\plttitle{Tabele}%
\def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
\def\mlftitle{Slike}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
\def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
\def\slftitle{Slike}%
\def\slttitle{Tabele}%
⟨/serbian⟩
```

13.166 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld

\cyr The titles for the “serbianc” language [46] have been gently provided by Marko Èehaja and Frank Küster. Cyrillic fonts are required. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.165 on the page before.

[46] The “serbianc” language is written with cyrillic characters.

```
⟨*serbianc⟩
\ProvidesFile{serbianc.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Serbian cyrillic titles. Marko Èehaja Internut@Thetaworld.Org
%% Frank Küster, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, frank@kuesterei.ch
\def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
\def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
\def\plttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
\def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
\def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
\def\mlttitle{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
\def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
\def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
\def\slttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
⟨/serbianc⟩
```

13.167 "Slovak" language: slovak.mld

The titles for the "slovak" language (*slovenčina, slovenký jazyk*) are taken from the slovak.dtx file (Jana Chlebîková and Tobias Schlemmer) in the babel package [60, 61, 72].

```
⟨*slovak⟩
\ProvidesFile{slovak.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Slovak titles from slovak.dtx (babel). Chlebîková, Jana & Schlemmer, Tobias. T1 encoding.
\def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
\def\plftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
\def\plttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
\def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
\def\mlftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
\def\mlttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
\def\stctitle{Obsah}%
\def\slftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
\def\slttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
⟨/slovak⟩
```

13.168 "Slovene" language: slovene.mld

The slovene language (*slovenščina, slovenski jezik*) is spoken in Slovenia, but somewhat also in Italy (Frioul), in Austria (Carinthia and Styria), in Hungary (Szlovénviék and Porabje), in West Germany and Sweden. The titles for the "slovene" language come from the slovene.dtx file (by Danilo Zavrtanik and Leon Žlajpah) in the babel package [60, 61, 102]:

```
⟨*slovene⟩
\ProvidesFile{slovene.mld}[2006/01/13]%
%% Slovene titles from slovene.dtx (babel). Zavrtanik, Danilo & \v{Z}lajpah, Leon
\def\ptctitle{Kazalo}%
```

```
\def\plftitle{Slike}%
\def\plttitle{Tabele}%
\def\mtctitle{Kazalo}%
\def\mlftitle{Slike}%
\def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
\def\stctitle{Kazalo}%
\def\slftitle{Slike}%
\def\slttitle{Tabele}%
⟨/slovene⟩
```

13.169 "Spanish" language: spanish.mld

The titles for the "spanish" (*español, castellano*) language are taken from the spanish.dtx file (by Javier Bezos, initialy by Julio Sánchez) in the babel package [48, 60, 61]. Note that the "spanish" language is in fact "castillan" (see section 13.35 on page 486). But note also that other languages are spoken in Spain: "basque" (section 13.19 on page 479), "catalan" (section 13.37 on page 486), and "galician" (section 13.66 on page 499). Note that "spanish2" is a version of "spanish" with shorter titles (see section 13.170 on the following page). And "spanish3" (see section 13.171 on the next page) is a version for the Antomega [272] project; some titles are differents. And "spanish4" is a variant of "spanish" where \ptctitle is shorter for articles (section 13.172 on page 550).

```
⟨*spanish⟩
\ProvidesFile{spanish.mld}[2008/04/03]%
%% Spanish titles from spanish.dtx (babel) by Bezos, Javier & CervanTeX
\expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
\def\ptctitle{\'Indice}\else\def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}\fi
\def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\plttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
%%
\def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
\def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\mlttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
\def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
\def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\slttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
⟨/spanish⟩
```

13.170 "Spanish2" language: spanish2.mld

The titles for the "spanish2" language are taken from the spanish.dtx file in the babel package [48, 60, 61], but made shorter for chapter and section levels. See section 13.169 on the page before.

```
⟨*spanish2⟩
\ProvidesFile{spanish2.mld}[2008/04/03]%
\def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
\def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\plttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
\def\mtctitle{Contenido}%
\def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
\def\mlttitle{Tablas}%
\def\stctitle{Contenido}%
\def\slftitle{Figuras}%
\def\slttitle{Tablas}%
⟨/spanish2⟩
```

13.171 "Spanish3" language: spanish3.mld

\localspanish The titles for the "spanish3" language are taken from the omega-spanish.ldf file (by Alexej M. Kryukov) of the Antomega project [272]. See section 13.169 on the preceding page.

```
⟨*spanish3⟩
\ProvidesFile{spanish3.mld}[2005/09/06]%
%% Spanish titles from omega-spanish.ldf of the Antomega project.
\def\ptctitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice general}}%
\def\plftitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
\def\plttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
\def\mtctitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice general}}%
\def\mlftitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
\def\mlttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
\def\stctitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice general}}%
\def\slftitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
\def\slttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
⟨/spanish3⟩
```

13.172 "Spanish4" language: spanish4.mld

The titles for the "spanish4" language are taken from the spanish.dtx file (by Javier Bezos) from the CervanTEX package [47]. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 13.169 on page 548.

```
⟨*spanish4⟩
\ProvidesFile{spanish4.mld}[2006/01/19]%
%% Spanish titles (from spanish.dtx in CervanTeX) Bezos, Javier
\expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
\def\ptctitle{\'Indice} \else \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general} \fi
\def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\plttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
%%
\def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
\def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\mlttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
\def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
\def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
\def\slttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
⟨/spanish4⟩
```

13.173 "Swahili" language: swahili.mld

The titles for the "swahili" language (*kiswahili*) are taken from the *obsolete* swahili.tex file [47], with adaptations and corrections given on the comp.text.tex news group (messages 57662, 57713, and 57717) by Giancarlo Bassi and Enrico Gregorio. Swahili is the main Bantu language and is spoken in East Africa: Tanzania, Kenya, Uganda, Rwanda, Burundi, Zanzibar and in the area of the Great Lakes in the Democratic Republic of Congo (Congo-Kinshasa, formerly Zaire) and in the Republic of Congo (Congo-Brazzaville), in the north of Mozambique and the south of Somalia [48]. See [135, page 991] .

```
⟨*swahili⟩
\ProvidesFile{swahili.mld}[2007/07/02]%
%% Swahili titles from swahili.tex in articles: 57662,57713,57717
%% in comp.text.tex by Giancarlo Bassi <g.bassi@iperbole.bologna.it>
%% & Enrico Gregorio <gregorio@math.unipd.it>
\def\ptctitle{Yaliyomo}%
\def\plftitle{Picha zilizomo}%
\def\plttitle{Orodha ya Mfano}%
\def\mtctitle{Yaliyomo}%
\def\mlftitle{Picha zilizomo}%
\def\mlttitle{Orodha ya Mfano}%
\def\stctitle{Yaliyomo}%
\def\slftitle{Picha zilizomo}%
\def\slttitle{Orodha ya Mfano}%
⟨/swahili⟩
```

[47] http://mirror.ctan.org/obsolete/macros/latex209/contrib/ml/swahili.tex

[48] See http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/AXL/monde/swahili.htm, http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/czaire.htm in [294], http://www.glcom.com/hassan/swahili_history.html, and http://www.omniglot.com/writing/swahili.htm .

13.174 "Swedish" language: swedish.mld

The titles for the "swedish" (*svenska*) language come from the swedish.dtx file (by Sten Hellman and Erik Östhols, with a correction by Jan Michael Rynning) in the babel package [60, 61, 77]. The swedish language is spoken in Sweden and in some regions of Finland like the Åland Islands. See also section 13.175.

```
9956 ⟨*swedish⟩
9957 \ProvidesFile{swedish.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9958 %% Swedish titles from swedish.dtx (babel). Hellman, Sten & Östhols, Erik
9959 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
9960 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
9961 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
9962 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
9963 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
9964 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
9965 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
9966 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
9967 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
9968 ⟨/swedish⟩
```

13.175 "Swedish2" language: swedish2.mld

The titles for the "swedish2" language (variant for swedish) are taken from the rapport.doc file (by Sven Mattisson) in the SLaTeX package [318]. See also section 13.174.

```
9969 ⟨*swedish2⟩
9970 \ProvidesFile{swedish2.mld}[2006/04/04]%
9971 %% Swedish2 titles from rapport.doc (slatex). Mattisson, Sven (sven@tde.lu.se)
9972 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
9973 \def\plftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
9974 \def\plttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
9975 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
9976 \def\mlftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
9977 \def\mlttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
9978 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
9979 \def\slftitle{Figurf\"orteckning}%
9980 \def\slttitle{Tabellf\"orteckning}%
9981 ⟨/swedish2⟩
```

13.176 "Thai" language: thai.ml[d|o]

The titles for the "thai" language come from the thaicjk.ldf file (by Werner Lemberg) and use fonts of the CJK system [127, 297, 298]. The thailatex package [320] (by Surapant Meknavin, Theppitak Karoonboonyanan, Chanop Silpa-Anan and Veerathanabutr Poonlap) provides the same titles in its thai.ldf file.

\mtcloadmlo The titles for the "thai" language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load thai.mlo. See also [255].

```
⟨*thai⟩
\ProvidesFile{thai.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{thai}%
%% From thaicjk.ldf CJK 4.5.2 Thai support for the babel system
%% by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
⟨/thai⟩
```

13.177 "Turkish" language: turkish.mld

The The turkish language (*türkçe*) is spoken mainly in Turkey and in Cyprus. The titles for the "turkish" language are taken from the turkish.dtx file (by Mustafa Burc, Pierre A. MacKay and Turgut Uyar) in the babel package [60, 61, 68].

```
⟨*turkish⟩
\ProvidesFile{turkish.mld}[2007/12/18]%
%% Turkish titles from turkish.dtx (babel). Burc, Mustafa
\def\ptctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
\def\plftitle{\c Sekil Listesi}%
\def\plttitle{Tablo Listesi}%
\def\mtctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
\def\mlftitle{\c Sekil Listesi}%
\def\mlttitle{Tablo Listesi}%
\def\stctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
\def\slftitle{\c Sekil Listesi}%
\def\slttitle{Tablo Listesi}%
⟨/turkish⟩
```

13.178 "Uighur" language: uighur.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "uighur" and "bicig" languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig.mld file (see section 13.21 on page 479):

```
10000 ⟨*uighur⟩
10001 \ProvidesFile{uighur.mld}[2006/05/31]\mtcselectlanguage{bicig}%
10002 ⟨/uighur⟩
```

13.179 "Uighur2" language: uighur2.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "uighur2" and "bicig2" languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig2.mld file (see section 13.22 on page 480):

```
10003 ⟨*uighur2⟩
10004 \ProvidesFile{uighur2.mld}[2006/05/31]\mtcselectlanguage{bicig2}%
10005 ⟨/uighur2⟩
```

13.180 "Uighur3" language: uighur3.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "uighur3" and "bicig3" languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig3.mld file (see section 13.21 on page 479):

```
10006 ⟨*uighur3⟩
10007 \ProvidesFile{uighur3.mld}[2006/05/31]\mtcselectlanguage{bicig3}%
10008 ⟨/uighur3⟩
```

13.181 "UKenglish" language: UKenglish.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "UKenglish" language is just like "english" ("UK" is for "United Kingdom"), so we just load english.mld (see section 13.45 on page 490):

```
10009 ⟨*UKenglish⟩
10010 \ProvidesFile{UKenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10011 ⟨/UKenglish⟩
```

13.182 "Ukraineb" language: ukraineb.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "ukraineb" language is a synonym for "ukrainian", so we just load ukrainian.mld. See section 13.183 on the following page.

```
⟨*ukraineb⟩
\ProvidesFile{ukraineb.mld}[2007/12/04]\mtcselectlanguage{ukrainian}%
⟨/ukraineb⟩
```

13.183 "Ukrainian" language: ukrainian.mld

\cyr The titles for the "ukrainian" language (*ukrayins'ka mova*) come from the ukraineb.dtx file (by Olga G. Lapko, Andrij M. Shvaika, Vladimir Volovich, and Werner Lemberg) in the babel package [60, 61, 97]. Cyrillic fonts are required. Another language name is ukraineb (see section 13.182 on the page before).

```
⟨*ukrainian⟩
\ProvidesFile{ukrainian.mld}[2006/01/33]%
%% Ukrainian titles from ukraineb.dtx (babel). Shvaika, Andrij & Lapko, Olga
%% Needs cyrillic fonts
\def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
\def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
       \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
\def\mlttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
       \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
\def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYRZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
\def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
       \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
\def\plttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
       \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
\def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
\def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
       \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
\def\slttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
       \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
⟨/ukrainian⟩
```

13.184 "Uppersorbian" language: uppersorbian.mld

The titles for the "uppersorbian" language[49] (*hornjoserbsce, hornjoserbšćiba*) are taken from the usorbian.dtx file (by Eduard Werner) in the babel package [60, 61, 100]. See

[49] Upper sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Upper Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (VI-th century).

also section 13.113 on page 522. A shorter language name is usorbian (see section 13.186 on the next page).

```
10035 ⟨*uppersorbian⟩
10036 \ProvidesFile{uppersorbian.mld}[2006/02/38]%
10037 %% Upper sorbian titles from usorbian.dtx (babel). Needs cyrillic fonts. Werner, Eduard
10038 \def\ptctitle{Wobsah}%
10039 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10040 \def\plttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10041 \def\mtctitle{Wobsah}%
10042 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10043 \def\mlttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10044 \def\stctitle{Wobsah}%
10045 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10046 \def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10047 ⟨/uppersorbian⟩
```

13.185 "USenglish" language: USenglish.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The "USenglish" language ("US" is for "United States (of America))" is just like "english"[50], so we just load english.mld (see section 13.45 on page 490):

```
10048 ⟨*USenglish⟩
10049 \ProvidesFile{USenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10050 ⟨/USenglish⟩
```

13.186 "Usorbian" language: usorbian.mld

\mtcselectlanguage

The "usorbian" language is a synonym for "uppersorbian", so we just have to load uppersorbian.mld. See section 13.184 on the page before.

```
10051 ⟨*usorbian⟩
10052 \ProvidesFile{usorbian.mld}[2007/12/04]\mtcselectlanguage{uppersorbian}%
10053 ⟨/usorbian⟩
```

13.187 "Vietnam" language: vietnam.mld

The titles for the "vietnam" language (*tiếng việt*) are taken from the vietnam package [299] (by Werner Lemberg and Thế Thành Hàn). Vietnamese fonts are required; see [206, 208].

[50] It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules, see http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_English .

The vietnamese language is spoken in Vietnam and in the vietnamese diaspora. See also section 13.188 on the following page.

```
⟨*vietnam⟩
\ProvidesFile{vietnam.mld}[1999/03/16]% Vietnamese titles
\def\ptctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
\def\plftitle{Danh s\'ach h\`inh v\~e}%
\def\plttitle{Danh s\'ach b\h{a}ng}%
\def\mtctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
\def\mlftitle{Danh s\'ach h\`inh v\~e}%
\def\mlttitle{Danh s\'ach b\h{a}ng}%
\def\stctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
\def\slftitle{Danh s\'ach h\`inh v\~e}%
\def\slttitle{Danh s\'ach b\h{a}ng}%
⟨/vietnam⟩
```

13.188 "Vietnamese" language: vietnamese.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The "vietnamese" language is just a synonym for the "vietnam" language. So we just load vietnam.mld. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section 13.187 on the page before.

```
⟨*vietnamese⟩
\ProvidesFile{vietnamese.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{vietnam}%
⟨/vietnamese⟩
```

13.189 "Welsh" language: welsh.mld

The titles for the "welsh" language (*cymraeg*) come from the welsh.dtx file (by Johannes L. Braams) in the babel package [59–61]:

```
⟨*welsh⟩
\ProvidesFile{welsh.mld}[1999/12/06]%
%% Welsh titles from welsh.dtx (babel), by Braams, Johannes~L.
\def\ptctitle{Cynnwys}%
\def\plftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
\def\plttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
\def\mtctitle{Cynnwys}%
\def\mlftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
\def\mlttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
\def\stctitle{Cynnwys}%
\def\slftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
\def\slttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
⟨/welsh⟩
```

13.190 "Xalx" language: xalx.mld

\mnr The titles for the "xalx" language are taken from the MonTEX package [137, 140] (by Oliver Corff and Dorjpalam Dorj). Xalx (Khalkha) is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper.

Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. See also sections 13.102 on page 517 and 13.191 to 13.192 on pages 557–558.

```
⟨*xalx⟩
\ProvidesFile{xalx.mld}[2005/11/16]%
%% Mongol (xalx) titles
\def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
\def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
\def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
\def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
\def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
\def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
\def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
\def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
\def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
⟨/xalx⟩
```

13.191 "Xalx2" language: xalx2.mld

\mnr The titles for the "xalx2" language are taken from the MonTEX package [137, 140] (by Oliver Corff and Dorjpalam Dorj). This is a variant for the "xalx" language (see section 13.190).

```
⟨*xalx2⟩
\ProvidesFile{xalx2.mld}[2006/03/31]%
%% Mongol (xalx2) titles
\def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
\def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
\def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
\def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
\def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
\def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
\def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
\def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
\def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
⟨/xalx2⟩
```

13.192 "Xalx3" language: xalx3.mld

\xalx The titles for the "xalx3" language are taken from the MonTEX package [137, 140] (by Oliver Corff and Dorjpalam Dorj). This is an other variant for the "xalx" language (see section 13.190 on the preceding page).

```
10108 ⟨*xalx3⟩
10109 \ProvidesFile{xalx3.mld}[2006/03/31]%
10110 %% Mongol (xalx3) titles
10111 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10112 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10113 \def\plttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10114 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10115 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10116 \def\mlttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10117 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10118 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10119 \def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10120 ⟨/xalx3⟩
```

Part III

Complements

Contents of the Third Part

Bibliography

This bibliography contains many URLs; you must be aware that some of them might be inaccessible because they are obsolete, or because their site is down or encounters some unexpected problem. Note also that the response of some sites may be slow (several seconds). For instance, the entries [257–259], from the http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/ site, are very difficult to contact.

The URLs beginning with "`https:`" to the TUGboat site may have a restricted access to the TUG members during one year after publication. Being a member of TUG is useful and cheap!

Some URLs may contain an extension not supported by your Web browser; in such cases, you should try to access to the document manually. An example is [29], whose extension is `.ps.gz`.

Some URLs are too long for some tools; when possible, I shortened the URL to display only the contents the directory, as for [209], or by using an URL to the catalogue entry (as for [243] and [272]); when not possible, you should try to access to the document manually.

[1] Paul W. Abrahams, Karl Berry, and Kathryn A. Hargreaves. *TEX for the Impatient*, September 2003. mailto:impatient@tug.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/impatient/book.pdf. 561

[2] Paul W. Abrahams, Karl Berry, and Kathryn A. Hargreaves. *TEX pour l'Impatient*, September 2004. French translation of [1] by Marc Chaudemanche, mailto:marc.chaudemanche@groupe-mma.fr. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/impatient/fr/fbook.pdf.

[3] Stéphane Aicardi. *Codages de caractères ASCII, latin-1, UTF-8, etc*, March 2006. Journés Mathrice, Nantes. Available from: http://www.mathrice.org/rencontres/mars.2006/codages.pdf.

[4] A.J. Alex. *Typesetting Malayalam Using LaTeX 2ε*, November 2007. malayalamtex@gmail.com and mailto:alexaj@myrealbox.com. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/malayalam/doc/mm-usr.pdf. 44, 205, 472, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528

[5] A.J. Alex. *Typesetting Malayalam Using* Ω/ℵ, November 2007. mailto:indicTeX@gmail.com. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/help/Catalogue/entries/malayalam-omega.html. 44, 205, 472, 526

[6] Mark Alford. *How to create Japanese language documents under GNU/Linux using LaTeX* [online], January 2007. Available from: http://www.physics.wustl.edu/~alford/tex/japanese_latex.html. mailto:alford@wuphys.wustl.edu, Department of Physics at Washington University in St. Louis.

[7] Viviane Alleton. *L'écriture chinoise: le défi de la modernité*. In *Bibliothèque Idées*. Albin Michel, March 2008.

[8] American Mathematical Society. *Instructions for Preparation of Papers and Monographs: AMS-LaTeX*. Providence, Rhode Island, 1999. See `instr-l.pdf`. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/amslatex/classes/. 88, 208

[9] Jacques André and Jean-Côme Carpentier. *Lexique anglo-fraçais du* Companion. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 49:19–45, October 2007.

[10] Jacques André and Yannis Haralambous. *Fontes numériques*. *Document numérique*, 9(3-4), 2006. Éditions Lavoisier, Paris.

[11] Patrick Andries. *Unicode 5.0 en pratique*. In *InfoPro*. Dunod, April 2008. http://hapax.qc.ca.

[12] Walter Appel, Céline Chevalier, Emmanuel Cornet, Sébastien Desreux, Jean-Julien Fleck, and Paul Pichaureau. *LaTeX pour l'impatient*. In Céline Chevalier, editor, *Technique & Pratique*. H & K, 68, boulevard de Port-Royal, 75005 Paris, July 2005. mailto:contact@H-K.fr, see http://www.h-k.fr/liens/tp/latex_pour_l_impatient.html.

[13] Jouko Arponen. *Practical LaTeX Guide* [online], August 2004. Available from: http://www.helsinki.fi/~tfo_www/instr/latex-guide.html.

[14] Donald Arseneau. *The notoccite package*, July 2000. mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/notoccite.sty. 52, 88, 232, 251, 274, 301, 304, 307, 408, 442

[15] Donald Arseneau. *The placeins package*, June 2002. mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/placeins/. 29, 88, 217, 219, 234, 251, 417, 424, 441

[16] Donald Arseneau. *The cite package*, November 2003. mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/cite/cite.sty. 627

[17] Donald Arseneau. *The overcite package*, May 2003. mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/cite/overcite.sty. 210

[18] Donald Arseneau. *The wrapfig package*, January 2003. mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/wrapfig/. 134, 227, 240

[19] Donald Arseneau. *The chapterbib package*, February 2004. mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/cite/chapterbib.sty. 60, 212, 229

[20] Donald Arseneau. *The url package*, June 2005. mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/url.sty.

[21] Helmer Aslaksen. *Chinese TEX Using the CJK LATEX Package, Unicode TrueType Fonts and pdfTEX under Windows* [online], February 2007. Available from: http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/cs/cjk.html. mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg.

[22] Helmer Aslaksen. *Reading and Writing Chinese Characters and Pinyin on the Web Using Unicode* [online], February 2007. Available from: http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/read.html. mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg.

[23] Jason Baldridge. *Reconciling Linguistic Diversity: The History and the Future of Language Policy in India* [online], August 1996. Available from: http://www.ling.upenn.edu/~jason2/papers/natlang.htm. University of Toledo Honors Thesis.

[24] Iain Menzies Banks. *Against a Dark Background*. Bantam Books, 1993. 100

[25] Pierre Basso and Stephan Ulrich. *The bibtopic package*, August 2002. mailto:Pierre.Basso@lim.univ-mrs.fr, mailto:stefanulrich@users.sourceforge.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/bibtopic/bibtopic.pdf. 60, 210

[26] Dorjgotov Batmunkh. *Mongolian support from the babel system*, March 2007. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/mongolian/babel/mongolian.pdf. 530

[27] David Bausum. *TEX: Reference and Examples*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com, April 2002. See [28]. 563

[28] David Bausum. *TEX: Reference and Examples* [online], January 2006. Available from: http://www.tug.org/utilities/plain/trm.html. mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com, see [27], Kluwer Academic Publishers. 563

[29] Benjamin Bayart. *Joli manuel pour LATEX 2ε*. Guide local pour l'ESIEE, December 1995. mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/JoliManuelPourLaTeX.ps.gz. 49, 561

[30] Benjamin Bayart, Thierry Bayet, Prakash Countcham, Éric Depardieu, Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert, Mathieu Goutelle, Yvon Henel, Florence Henry, Loïc Joly, Christophe Jorssen, Erwan Le Pennec, Nicolas Markey, Françoise Marre-Fournier, Sébastien Mengin, Josselin Noirel, Bruno Piguet, Éric Streit, Thomas van Oudenhove de Saint Géry, and Damien Wyart. *Foire aux questions du groupe `fr.comp.text.tex` (version 3.0α)* [online], November 2004. Available from: http://faqfctt.fr.eu.org/. mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr.

[31] Claudio Beccari. *Graphics in LATEX*. *The PracTEX Journal*, 1, February 2007. mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it, Politecnico di Torino, Turin, Italia. Available from: http://www.tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/beccari/beccari.pdf.

[32] Claudio Beccari and Apostolos Syropoulos. *New Greek Fonts and the* `greek` *option of the* babel *package*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):419–425, December 1998. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61becc.pdf.

[33] Nelson H. F. Beebe. *Notes on fonts* [online], December 2004. Available from: http://www.math.utah.edu/~beebe/fonts/.

[34] Emmanuel Beffara. *Rubber Manual 1.1* [online], January 2007. Available from: http://iml.univ-mrs.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/index.html. http://iml.univ-mrs.fr/~beffara/contact.html, mailto:beffara@iml.univ-mrs.fr. 61, 236

[35] Rachid Belmouhoub. *Lire et écrire l'arabe*. In Cécile Desprairies, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006.

[36] Alexander Berdnikov and Olga A. Grineva. *Some Problems with Accents in TEX: Letters with Multiple Accents and Accents Varying for Uppercace/Lowercase Letters*. In *Congrès EuroTEX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 44–55, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovc.pdf.

[37] Alexander Berdnikov, Olga G. Lapko, Mikhail Kolodin, Andrew Janishevsky, and Alexey Burykin. *Alphabets Necessary for Various Cyrillic Writing Systems (Towards X2 and T2 Encodings)*. In *Congrès EuroTEX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 33–43, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovb.pdf.

[38] Alexander Berdnikov, Olga G. Lapko, Mikhail Kolodin, Andrew Janishevsky, and Alexey Burykin. *Cyrillic encodings for LATEX 2ε multi-language documents*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):403–416, 1998. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61berd.pdf.

[39] Alexander Berdnikov, Olga G. Lapko, Mikhail Kolodin, Andrew Janishevsky, and Alexey Burykin. *The Encoding Paragigm in LATEX 2ε and the Projected X2 Encoding for Cyrillic Texts*. In *Congrès EuroTEX*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 17–31, March 1998. Available from: ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikova.pdf.

[40] Jens Berger. *The* hypernat *package*, July 2001. http://mirror.ctan.org/help/Catalogue/entries/hypernat.html. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/hypernat.sty.

[41] Tobias Berndt. *LATEX*. Addison-Wesley, München, first edition, December 2007. In german.

[42] Karl Berry. *Filenames for fonts*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):517–520, November 1990. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30berry.pdf. 584

[43] Karl Berry. *Fontname*, September 2005. Available from: http://www.tug.org/fontname/fontname.pdf.

[44] Berhanu Beyene, Manfred Kudlek, Olaf Kummer, and Jochen Metzinger. *Ethiopian Language Support for the* Babel *Package*. Universität Aamburg, December 1998. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/ethiopia/ethiop/doc/ethiodoc.ps. 44, 215, 472, 493, 494

[45] Javier Bezos. *Typesetting Guaraní with TEX*, July 2004. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/guarani/guarani.pdf. 44, 218, 472, 504

[46] Javier Bezos. *The titlesec and titletoc packages*, January 2005. http://www.tex-tipografia.com/contact.html. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/titlesec/titlesec.pdf. 88, 238, 257, 416, 417, 630

[47] Javier Bezos. *Estilo spanish para el sistema babel*, February 2007. mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es. Available from: http://www.tex-tipografia.com/archive/spanish.pdf. 44, 550

[48] Javier Bezos. *Spanish support from the babel system*, February 2007. mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es or mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/spanish.dtx. 548, 549

[49] Giuseppe Bilotta. *The ℵ (Aleph) Project*. *TUGboat*, 25(1):105–107, July 2004. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb25-1/bilotta.pdf. 233

[50] Justin K. Bisanwa and Michel Tétu. *La Francophonie en Amérique: quatre siècles d'échanges Europe-Afrique-Amérique*. CIDEF-AFI, Université Laval, Québec, 2005.

[51] Denis Bitouzé and Jean-Côme Charpentier. *LATEX*. In *Collection Synthex*. Pearson Education France, September 2006.

[52] Patrick Boman and Christian Laucou. *La typographie: cent règles*. Le Polygraphe, May 2005.

[53] Victor Boyko. *The russian.sty file*, January 1995. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/russian.sty. 543

[54] Johannes L. Braams. *Babel, a multilingual style-option system for use with LATEX's standard document styles*. *TUGboat*, 12(2):291–301, June 1991. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32braa.pdf. 472

[55] Johannes L. Braams. *Dutch language support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/dutch.dtx. 473, 489

[56] Johannes L. Braams. *English support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/english.dtx. 490, 491

[57] Johannes L. Braams. *Irish support from the babel system*, March 2005. With help from Marion Gunn and Fraser Grant, mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:fraser@cernvm. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/irish.dtx. 512

[58] Johannes L. Braams. *Norsk support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, Håvard Helstrup (mailto:haavard@cernvm) and Alv Kjetil Holme (mailto:holmea@cernvm); the "nynorsk" variant has been supplied by Per Steinar Iversen (mailto:iversen@vxcern.cern.ch) and Terje Engeset Petterst (mailto:terjeep@vsfys1.fi.uib.no); Rune Kleveland (mailto:runekl@math.uio.no) added the shorthand definitions. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/norsk.dtx. 533, 534

[59] Johannes L. Braams. *Welsh support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/welsh.dtx. 556

[60] Johannes L. Braams. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with LaTeX's standard document classes*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/babel.pdf. 38, 44, 75, 209, 215, 249, 472, 473, 477, 478, 479, 481, 482, 483, 484, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 509, 511, 512, 513, 517, 518, 519, 521, 522, 523, 524, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 536, 537, 538, 539, 541, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 551, 552, 554, 556

[61] Johannes L. Braams. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with LaTeX's standard document classes (user)*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/user.pdf. 38, 44, 75, 209, 215, 249, 472, 473, 477, 478, 479, 481, 482, 483, 484, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 509, 511, 512, 513, 517, 518, 519, 521, 522, 523, 524, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 536, 537, 538, 539, 541, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 551, 552, 554, 556

[62] Johannes L. Braams, Juan M. Aguirregabiria, Julio Sanchez, and Zunbeltz Izaola Azkona. *Basque support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:lg.ehu.es. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/basque.dtx. 479

[63] Johannes L. Braams and Einar Árnason. *Icelandic support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:einar@lif.hi.is. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/icelandic.dtx. 511

[64] Johannes L. Braams and Gonçal Badenes. *Catalan language support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:badenes@imec.be. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/catalan.dtx. 486

[65] Johannes L. Braams and Claudio Beccari. *Latin support from the babel system*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it, with help from Krzysztof Konrad Żelechowski, (mailto:kkz@alfa.mimuw.edu.pl). Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/latin.dtx. 517, 518, 519

[66] Johannes L. Braams, Árpád Bíró, and József Bérces. *Magyar support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, with help from Attila Koppanyi (mailto:attila@cernvm.cern.ch). Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/magyar.dtx. 523, 524

[67] Johannes L. Braams and Georgi N. Boshnakov. *Bulgarian language support from the babel system*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:georgi.boshnakov@umist.ac.uk. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/bulgarian.dtx. 483

[68] Johannes L. Braams and Mustafa Burc. *Turkish support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:rz6001@rziris01.rrz.uni-hamburg.de, with help from Pierre A. MacKay and Turgut Uyar (mailto:uyar@cs.itu.edu.tr). Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/turkish.dtx. 552

[69] Johannes L. Braams, David P. Carlisle, Alan Jeffrey, Leslie Lamport, Frank Mittelbach, Chris A. Rowley, and Rainer Schöpf. *The LaTeX 2ε Sources*, 2003. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/source2e.tex.

[70] Johannes L. Braams, Manuel Carriba, and Javier A. Múgica de Rivera. *Estilo galician para o sistema babel*, January 2007. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net, mailto:jmugica@digi21.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/galician/galician.pdf. 499

[71] Johannes L. Braams, Manuel Carriba, and Javier A. Múgica de Rivera. *Galician support from the babel system*, October 2007. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/galician.dtx. 499

[72] Johannes L. Braams, Jana Chlebîková, and Tobias Schlemmer. *Slovak support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:chlebikj@mff.uniba.cs, mailto:Tobias.Schlemmer@web.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/slovak.dtx. 547

[73] Johannes L. Braams, Maurizio Codogno, and Claudio Beccari. *Italian support from the babel system*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it, mailto:beccari@polito.it. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/italian.dtx. 513

[74] Johannes L. Braams, Victor Eijkhout, and Nico Poppelier. *The development of national LaTeX styles*. *TUGboat*, 10(3):401–406, November 1989. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-3/tb25braams.pdf. 472

[75] Johannes L. Braams and Daniel Flipo. *A Babel language definition file for French*, October 2007. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:Daniel.Flipo@univ-lille1.fr. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/frenchb.dtx. 497, 498

[76] Johannes L. Braams and Fraser Grant. *Scottish support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:fraser@cernvm. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/scottish.dtx. 546

[77] Johannes L. Braams and Sten Hellman. *Swedish support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:hellman@cernvm.cern.ch; enhancements for version 2.0 by Erik Östhols (mailto:erik_osthols@yahoo.com). Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/swedish.dtx. 551

[78] Johannes L. Braams, Umstatter Horst, and Robert Juhasz. *Romanian support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:hhu@cernvm.cern.ch, mailto:robertj@uni-paderborn.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/romanian.dtx. 538

[79] Johannes L. Braams and Regnor Jernsletten. *North Sami support from the babel system*, February 2004. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@sami.uit.no or mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@eunet.no. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/samin.dtx. 545

[80] Johannes L. Braams, Mikko Kanerva, and Keranen Reino. *Finnish support from the babel system*, October 2007. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:kanerva@cernvm, mailto:keranen@cernvm. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/finnish.dtx. 495, 496

[81] Johannes L. Braams and Peter Kleiweg. *Interlingua support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:kleiweg@let.rug.nl. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/interlingua.dtx. 512

[82] Johannes L. Braams, Jörg Knappen, and Terry Mart. *Bahasa Indonesia support from the babel system*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de, mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasa.dtx. 477

[83] Johannes L. Braams, Jörg Knappen, Terry Mart, and Bob Margolis. *Bahasa Malaysia support from the babel system*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de, mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de, mailto:bob.margolis@ntlworld.com. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasam.dtx. 478

[84] Johannes L. Braams, Olga G. Lapko, Vladimir Volovich, and Werner Lemberg. *Russian support from the babel system*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:cyrtug@mir.msk.su, mailto:TeX@vvv.vsu.ru et mailto:wl@gnu.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/russianb.dtx. 484, 541

[85] Johannes L. Braams and Henning Larsen. *Danish language support from the babel system*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:larsen@cernvm.cern.ch. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/danish.dtx. 488

[86] Johannes L. Braams and Boris Lavva. *Hebrew language support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/hebrew.dtx. 509

[87] Johannes L. Braams and Miloš V. Lokajíček. *Czech language support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:lokajick@cernvm. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/czech.dtx. 488

[88] Johannes L. Braams, Dejan Muhamedagić, and Jankovic Slobodan. *Serbocroatian support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:dejan@yunix.com, mailto:slobodan@archimed.filfak.ac.ni.yu. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/serbian.dtx. 546

[89] Johannes L. Braams and Alan Paić. *Croatian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:paica@cernvm.cern.ch. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/croatian.dtx. 487

[90] Johannes L. Braams and Bernd Raichle. *German support from the babel system*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/germanb.dtx. 500

[91] Johannes L. Braams, Bernd Raichle, and Walter Schmidt. *New German support from the babel system*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/ngermanb.dtx. 532

[92] Johannes L. Braams and Jose Pedro Ramalhete. *Portuguese support from the babel system*, March 2008. Arnaldo Viegas de Lima contributed brasilian translations and suggestions for enhancements. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:jramalhe@cernvm, mailto:Jose-Pedro_Ramalhete@macmail, mailto:arnaldo@vnet.ibm.com. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/portuges.dtx. 481, 537

[93] Johannes L. Braams and Christian Rolland. *Breton language support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:Christian.Rolland@univ-brest.fr. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/breton.dtx. 482

[94] Johannes L. Braams, Marti Ruiz-Altaba, and Jörg Knappen. *Esperanto support from the babel system*, October 2007. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:ruizaltb@cernvm.cern.ch, mailto:knappen@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/esperanto.dtx. 492

[95] Johannes L. Braams and Enn Saar. *Estonian support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:saar@aai.ee. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/estonian.dtx. 492

[96] Johannes L. Braams, Elmar Schalück, and Michael Janich. *Polish support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:elmar@uni-paderborn.de, mailto:massa@uni-paderborn.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/polish.dtx. 536

[97] Johannes L. Braams, Andrij Shvaika, Olga Lapko, Vladimir Volovich, and Werner Lemberg. *Ukrainian support from the babel system*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:ashv@icmp.lviv.ua. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/ukraineb.dtx. 554

[98] Johannes L. Braams and Apostolos Syropoulos. *Greek support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr or mailto:apostolo@obelix.ee.duth.gr. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/greek.dtx. 501

[99] Johannes L. Braams and Eduard Werner. *Lower Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/lsorbian.dtx. 522

[100] Johannes L. Braams and Eduard Werner. *Upper Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2008. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/usorbian.dtx. 554

[101] Johannes L. Braams and Adi Zaimi. *Albanian support from the babel system*, October 2007. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:zami1st@yahoo.com. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/albanian.dtx. 473

[102] Johannes L. Braams, Danilo Zavrtanik, and Leon Žlajpah. *Slovene support from the babel system*, March 2005. mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl, mailto:leon.zlajpah@ijs.si. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/slovene.dtx. 548

[103] Felix Braun. *Die Documentklasse jura*, July 1998. mailto:fbraun@atdot.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/jura/jura.pdf. 88, 208, 220, 415

[104] Jim Breen. *Jim Breen's Japanese Page* [online], September 2006. Available from: http://www.csse.monash.edu.au/~jwb/japanese.html. mailto:jwb@csse.monash.edu.au.

[105] Peter Breitenlohner. *The ε-TEX manual (version 2)*. The NTS Team, Max-Planck-Institut für Physik, München, February 1998. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex_man.pdf. 214, 215, 233, 268

[106] Roland Breton. *Atlas des minoriés dans le monde*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, February 2008.

[107] Roland Breton, Krystyna Mazoyer, and Joshua-A. Fishman. *Atlas des langues du monde (Une pluralité fragile)*. In *Mini-Atlas*. Éditions Autrement, September 2003.

[108] Gyöngyi Bujdosó and Ferenc Wettl. *On the localization of TEX in Hungary*. *TUGboat*, 23(1):21–26, March 2002. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/bujdosowettl.pdf. 570

[109] Gyöngyi Bujdosó and Ferenc Wettl. *Adapter TEX à la langue hongroise*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 44:3–15, November 2004. French translation of [108] by Jean-Michel Hufflen. Available from: ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/42-hufflen.pdf.

[110] Patrick Burgel. *Le petit livre des pluriels*. First Editions, August 2006. mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com. Available from: http://www.efirst.com.

[111] Philippe Cadène and Guillaume Balavoine. *Atlas de l'Inde: une fulgurante ascension*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, March 2008.

[112] Samuele Carcagno. *My LATEX Notes, The Messy Notes of a LATEX User*. Available from: http://xoomer.alice.it/sam_psy/soft/my_latex_notes.pdf.

[113] David Carella. *Règles typographiques et normes: Mise en pratique avec LATEX*. Vuibert, Paris, January 2006.

[114] David P. Carlisle. *The xr package*, May 1994. mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk. Available from: http:/mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/xr.pdf. 27, 241, 314

[115] David P. Carlisle. *The afterpage package*, October 1995. mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk. Available from: http:/mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/afterpage.pdf. 27, 208, 615

[116] David P. Carlisle. *The file `ltxdoc.dtx` for use with LATEX 2ε*, August 1999. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/ltxdoc.dtx. 25, 213, 222

[117] David P. Carlisle. *The xr-hyper package*, March 2000. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/xr-hyper.sty. 241

[118] David P. Carlisle. *The ifthen package*, May 2001. mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk. Available from: http:/www.ifi.uio.no/it/latex-links/ifthen.pdf. 219

[119] David P. Carlisle. *The textcase package*, October 2004. mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk. Available from: http:/mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/textcase/textcase.pdf.

[120] David P. Carlisle. *The color package*, November 2005. mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk. Available from: http:/mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/graphics/color.dtx. 115

[121] David P. Carlisle and Sebastian Rahtz. *Back referencing from bibliographical citations*, October 2006. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/backref.pdf.

[122] Raymond Chabbert†. *Lire et écrire l'occitan*. In *LENGA*. Vent Terral, Pôle d'acrivité Val 81, 81340 Valence d'Albigeois, January 2005. mailto:info@ventterral.com. Available from: http://www.ventterral.com. 535

[123] Winston Chang. *LaTeX 2ε Cheat Sheet*, October 2006. Available from: http:/www.stdout.org/~winston/latex/latexsheet.pdf.

[124] Jean-Pascal Chauvet. *About Kanji* [online], June 1999. Available from: http://www2.gol.com/users/jpc/Japan/Kanji/. mailto:jpc@gol.com.

[125] Pehong Chen and Michael A. Harrison. *Index preparation and processing*. *Software – Practice and Experience*, 19(9):897–915, 1988.

[126] Otfried Cheong. *Using TrueType Fonts and Unicode in PdfLaTeX* [online], April 2007. Available from: http://tclab.kaist.ac.kr/ipe/pdftex.html. mailto:otfried@tclab.kaist.ac.kr and http://tclab.kaist.ac.kr/~otfried/.

[127] Jin-Hwam Cho and Haruhiko Okumura. *Typesetting CJK Languages with Omega*. *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, 3130:139–148, 2004. TEX XML, and Digital Typography. 38, 44, 212, 237, 238, 472, 487, 505, 506, 507, 508, 514, 515, 516, 552

[128] Pai H. Chou. *How to make LaTeX (teTeX) handle unicode and CJK in MacOSX* [online], December 2004. Available from: http://www.ece.uci.edu/~chou/unicode-tex.html. mailto:chou@ece.uci.edu. 215

[129] André Chuvin, René Létoile, and Sébastien Peyrouse. *Histoire de l'Asie centrale contemporaine*. Fayard, Paris, January 2008.

[130] Steven Douglas Cochran. *The subfigure package*, March 1995. mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu, mailto:cochran@ieee.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/obsolete/macros/latex/contrib/subfigure/. 33, 88, 140, 228, 237

[131] Steven Douglas Cochran. *The captcont package*, February 2002. mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu, mailto:cochran@ieee.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/captcont/. 54, 76, 88, 210, 254, 277

[132] Steven Douglas Cochran. *The subfig Package*, January 2004. mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu, mailto:cochran@ieee.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/subfig/subfig.pdf. 33, 88, 146, 210, 228, 237, 395

[133] Collective. *Lexique des règles typographiques en usage à l'Imprimerie Nationale*. Imprimerie Nationale, August 2002.

[134] Collective. *OIF*. In *La Francophonie dans le monde 2004–2005*, Paris, March 2005. Organisation Internationale de la Francophonie, Larousse.

[135] Bernard Comrie, editor. *The Worlds's Major Languages*. Oxford University Press, USA, June 1990. 550

[136] Bernard Comrie, Sthephen Matthews, Maria Polinsky, and Collective. *Atlas des langues (L'origine et le développement des langues dans le monde)*. Acropole Belfond, September 2004. Catherine Bricout for the translation.

[137] Oliver Corff. *MonTEX – A Quick Guide* (draft), July 2002. mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/mongolian/montex/doc/mlsquick.pdf. 44, 205, 225, 472, 479, 480, 481, 484, 485, 529, 542, 557, 558

[138] Oliver Corff. *Some Notes on the Pentaglot Dictionary* [online], April 2002. Available from: http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/im/Buch/Pentaglot.html. mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de. 226

[139] Oliver Corff. *Infosystem Mongolei* [online], July 2004. Available from: http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/infomong.html. An Internet-based Journal on Mongolian Affairs. 225

[140] Oliver Corff and Dorjpalam Dorj. *MonTEX – Mongolian for LaTeX 2ε, Implementation Level System Documentation*, July 2002. mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/mongolian/montex/doc/montex.pdf. 44, 205, 225, 472, 479, 480, 481, 484, 485, 529, 542, 557, 558

[141] Olivier Dabène and Aurélie Boissière. *Atlas de l'Amérique latine: violences, démocratie participative et promesse de développement*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, June 2006.

[142] Sergueï Dachian, Arnak Dalalyan, and Vartan Akopian. *ArmTEX: a System for Writing in Armenian with TEX and LaTeX (written in armenian)*, June 1999. mailto:Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr, http://www-scf.usc.edu/~vakopian/programs/progs.html. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/armtex/v2.0/manual.ps. 44, 209, 472, 476, 602

[143] Patrick W. Daly. *Graphics and Colour with LaTeX*. Max Plank Institut für Aeronomie; D-37191 Katlenburg-Lindnau, Federal Republic of Germany, June 1998. Available from: http://tex.loria.fr/graph-pack/grf/grf.pdf.

[144] Patrick W. Daly. *A package to Set Margins to Full Page*, February 1999. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/preprint/fullpage.pdf. 137, 138, 146

[145] Patrick W. Daly. *Natural Sciences Citations and References (Author-Year and Numerical Schemes)*, February 2007. This paper describes the natbib package (version 8.0), mailto:daly@mps.mpg.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/natbib/natbib.pdf. 210, 229, 628

[146] Patrick W. Daly. *Reference sheet for `natbib` package*, February 2007. mailto:daly@mps.mpg.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/natbib/natnotes.pdf. 210, 229, 628

[147] Peter T. Daniels and William Bright, editors. *The World's Writing Systems*. Oxford University Press, USA, February 1996.

[148] Alice Davison. *Syntax and Morphology in Hindi and Urdu: A Lexical Resource* [online], December 1999. Available from: http://www.uiowa.edu/~linguist/faculty/davison/HINDIVERBPROJECT. mailto:alice-davison@uiowa.edu, Department of Linguistics, University of Iowa, 570 English-Philosophy Building, Iowa City, Iowa 52242 USA. 218, 489

[149] Bernard Desgraupes. *METAFONT, Guide pratique*. Vuibert, Paris, March 1999. 213

[150] Bernard Desgraupes. *LaTeX, Apprentissage, guide et référence*. Vuibert, Paris, second edition, March 2003.

[151] Bernard Desgraupes. *Passeport pour Unicode*. Vuibert, Paris, April 2005. 215

[152] Christine Detig and Joachim Schrod. *Donald E. Knuth, Literate Programming*. *TUGboat*, 15(1):25–27, March 1994.

[153] Antoni R. Diller. *LaTeX, Line by Line (Tips and Techniques for Document Processing)*. John Wiley & Sons, Chicester, second edition, January 1993. mailto:A.R.Diller@cs.bham.ac.uk. Available from: http://www.cs.bham.ac.uk/~ard/latex/latex.html.

[154] Gérard Dorel. *Atlas de l'empire américain: États-Unis: géostratégie de l'hyperpuissance*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, September 2006.

[155] Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert. *The shorttoc package*, August 2002. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.pdf. 20, 99, 237, 598

[156] Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert. *Le paquetage minitoc*, July 2008. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc-fr.pdf. 99, 448

[157] Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert. *The minitoc package*, July 2008. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf. 99, 448, 594

[158] Victor Eijkhout. *TeX by Topic: A TeXnician's Reference*. Addison-Wesley, Wokingham (England), 1992. mailto:victor@eijkhout.net. Available from: http://www.cs.utk.edu/~eijkhout/texbytopic-a4.pdf.

[159] Victor Eijkhout. *The comment package*, October 1999. mailto:victor@eijkhout.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/comment/.

[160] Victor Eijkhout and Johannes L. Braams. *Introduction to the Dutch LaTeX document classes*, February 1994. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ntgclass/classdoc.pdf.

[161] Brian Elmegaard and Patrick Egan. *The nomentbl package*, April 2006. mailto:be@mek.dtu.dk. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/nomentbl/nomentbl.pdf. 51, 404

[162] Behdad Esfahbod and Roozbeh Pournader. *FarsiTEX and the Iranian TEX Community*. TUGboat, 22(3):41–44, 2003. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/farsitex.pdf. 44, 216, 472, 494, 495

[163] Mike Fabian. *CJK Support in SuSe Linux*, March 2005. Available from: http://www.suse.de/~mfabian/suse-cjk.pdf.

[164] Robin Fairbairns. *The UK TEX FAQ. Your 423 Questions Answered.* Also visible here: http://www.tex.ac.uk/faq, November 2007. Version 3.17. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/help/uk-tex-faq/newfaq.pdf.

[165] Simon Fear. *Publication quality tables in LATEX (with the booktabs package)*, March 2003. In the absence of the author, contact Danie Els, mailto:dnjels@sun.ac.za. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/booktabs/booktabs.pdf. 21, 210

[166] Jürgen Fenn. *Managing Citations and Your Bibliography with* BibTEX. The PracTEX Journal, 2(4), October 2006. Neu-Isenburg, Germany. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/fenn/fenn.pdf.

[167] Michael J. Ferguson. *Report on multilingual activities*. TUGboat, 11(4):514–516, November 1990. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30ferguson.pdf.

[168] Peter Flom. *LATEX for academics and researchers who (think they) don't need it*. The PracTEX Journal, 1(4), November 2005. mailto:flom@ndri.org and http://cduhr.ndri.org, National Development and Research Institutes, Inc., 11 West 23rd St, 8th floor, New York, NY 10010. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-4/flom/flom.pdf.

[169] Peter Flom, Hans Hagen, Joe Hogg, Nicola L. C. Talbot, Philip Taylor, Christina Thiele, and David Walden. *What is TEX?* The PracTEX Journal, 1(3), July 2005. mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk and mailto:dave@walden-family.com. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/walden-whatis/all.pdf.

[170] Peter L. Flom. *A LATEX Fledgling Struggles to Take Flight*. The PracTEX Journal, 1(2), April 2005. mailto:flom@ndri.org and http://cduhr.ndri.org, National Development and Research Institutes, Inc., 11 West 23rd St, 8th floor, New York, NY 10010. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-2/flom/flom.pdf.

[171] Peter Flynn. *A categorized search of CTAN*. The PracTEX Journal, 1(3), July 2005. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/flynn/flynn.pdf.

[172] Peter Flynn. *Formatting information. A beginner's introduction to typesetting with LATEX*, March 2005. mailto:peter.silmaril.ie. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/beginlatex/beginlatex-3.6.pdf.

[173] Peter Flynn. *Rolling your own Document Class: Using LATEX to keep away from the Dark Side*. The PracTEX Journal, 2(4), October 2006. Silmaril Consultants. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/flynn/flynn.pdf.

[174] Peter Flynn. *The very short guide to typesetting with LaTeX*, April 2007. Available from: http://latex.silmaril.ie/veryshortguide/veryshortguide.pdf.

[175] Louis Frédéric. *Le Japon: dictionnaire et civilisation*. In *Bouquins*. Robert Laffont, September 1999.

[176] Federico Garcia. *Capabilities of PDF interactivity*. *The PracTEX Journal*, 2(4), November 2006. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/garcia1/garcia1.pdf.

[177] Federico Garcia. *Hypertext capabilities with pdfLaTeX*. *TUGboat*, 28(1):129–132, March 2007. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb28-1/tb88garcia.pdf.

[178] Hubert Gässlein, Rolf Niepraschk, and Josef Tkadlec. *The pict2e package*, June 2008. mailto:HubertJG@open.min.de, mailto:Rolf.Niepraschk@ptb.de, mailto:j.tkadlec@email.cz. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/pict2e/pict2e.pdf. 58

[179] Bernard Gaulle†. *L'extension frenchle pour LaTeX (notice d'utilisation)*, February 1997. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/french/frenchle/frenchle.pdf. 499

[180] Bernard Gaulle†. *Notice d'utilisation de l'extension frenchpro pour LaTeX*, June 1997. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/french/frenchpro/french/ALIRE.pdf. 499

[181] Bernard Gaulle†. *Comment peut-on personnaliser l'extension french de LaTeX?* *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 28-29:153–157, March 1998. Available from: ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-gaulle.pdf. 499

[182] Maarten Gelderman. *A short introduction to font characteristics*. *TUGboat*, 20(2):96–104, June 1999. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63geld.pdf.

[183] Chuck Genschte and John Warnock. *PDF Reference*, November 2004. Available from: http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/pdf/PDFReference16.pdf. 234

[184] Jacques Gernet. *Le monde chinois: 1. de l'âge de bronze au Moyen Âge*. In *Pocket Agora*. Pocket, April 2006.

[185] Jacques Gernet. *Le monde chinois: 2. l'époque moderne Xe-XIXe siècle*. In *Pocket Agora*. Pocket, April 2006.

[186] Jacques Gernet. *Le monde chinois: 3. l'époque contemporaine*. In *Pocket Agora*. Pocket, April 2006.

[187] Helen Gilhooly and Rozenn Etienne. *Lire et écrire le japonais*. In Cécile Desprairies, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006.

[188] François Giron. *Rédiger un document avec les programmes TEX et LaTeX 2ε*, October 2006. http://homepage.mac.com/fgiron/fgaccueil/index.html. Available from: http://homepage.mac.com/fgiron/fgaccueil/LaTeX/surlatex.pdf.

[189] Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach, Sebastian Rahtz, Denis B. Roegel, and Herbert Voss. *The LaTeX Graphics Companion*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, July 2007.

[190] Michel Goossens, Sebastian Rahtz, Eitan M. Gurari, Ross Moore, and Robert S. Sutor. *The LaTeX Web Companion: Integrating TeX, HTML, and XML*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, June 1999.

[191] Raymond G. Gordon, Jr. and Barbara F. Grimes, editors. *Ethnologue: Languages of the World*. SIL International, Dallas, Texas, fifteenth edition, January 2005. Online version: http://www.ethnologue.com.

[192] Bruce K. Grant. *A Guide to Korean Chars: Reading and Writing Hangul and Hanja*. Hollym International Corporation, February 2000.

[193] George Grätzer. *First Steps into LaTeX*. Birkhäuser, Boston, August 1999.

[194] George Grätzer. *Math into LaTeX*. Birkhäuser and Springer-Verlag, Boston, third edition, 2000.

[195] George Grätzer. *More Math into LaTeX*. Springer, fourth edition, October 2007.

[196] Norman Gray. *The urlbst package*, March 2007. http://www.astro.gla.ac.uk/users/norman/. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/biblio/bibtex/contrib/urlbst/urlbst.pdf. 215, 218, 240, 254, 618

[197] George D. Greenwade. *The Comprehensive TeX Archive Network (CTAN)*. TUGboat, 14(3):342–351, October 1993. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb14-3/tb40green.pdf.

[198] Enrico Gregorio. *Babel, how to enjoy writing in different languages*. The PracTeX Journal, 1, February 2007. mailto:Enrico.Gregorio@sci.univr.it, Dipartimento di Informatica, Università di Verona, Italia. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/gregorio/gregorio.pdf.

[199] Enrico Gregorio. *Enjoying babel*. TUGboat, 28(2):247–255, July 2007. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb28-2/tb89gregorio.pdf.

[200] Klaus Guntermann and Joachim Schrod. WEB *adapted to C*. TUGboat, 7(3):134–137, October 1986.

[201] Hans Hagen. *Aleph* ℵ, July 2004. Available from: http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/aleph.pdf. 233

[202] Hans Hagen. *Typographic Programming*, 2004. Version préliminaire. Available from: http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/style.pdf.

[203] Reinhard F. Hahn. *Lowlands-L, Anniversary Celebration (One story in hundred of languages and dialects)* [online], 2007. Available from: http://www.lowlands-l.net/anniversary/index.php. mailto:lowlands.list@gmail.com.

[204] Thế Thành Hàn. *The pdfTeX Program*. In EuroTeX'98 Proceedings, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 197–219, March 1998. Available from: ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-han.pdf. 214

[205] Thế Thành Hàn. *Micro-typographic extensions to the TEX typesetting system*. *TUGboat*, 21(4):317–434, October 2000. Doctoral dissertation (Faculty of Informatics, Masarik University, Brno, Czech Republic). Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-4/tb69thanh.pdf.

[206] Thế Thành Hàn. *Making Type 1 fonts for Vietnamese*. *TUGboat*, 24(1):79–84, July 2003. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb24-1/thanh.pdf. 555

[207] Thế Thành Hàn. *Font-specific issues in pdfTEX*. *TUGboat*, 29(1):36–41, February 2008. Available from: https://www.tug.org/members/TUGboat/tb29-1/tb91thanh-fonts.pdf.

[208] Thế Thành Hàn. *Typesetting Vietnamese with VnTEX (and with the TEX Gyre fonts too)*. *TUGboat*, 29(1):95–100, February 2008. Available from: https://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-1/tb69thanh.pdf. 555

[209] Thế Thành Hàn, Sebastian Rahtz, Hans Hagen, Hartmut Henkel, Paweł Jackowski, and Martin Schröder. *The pdfTEX user manual*, January 2007. See `pdftex-a.pdf`. Available from: http://www.tug.org/texlive/Contents/live/texmf/doc/pdftex/manual/. 561

[210] Thorsten Hansen. *The bibunits package*, May 2004. mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/bibunits/bibunits.pdf. 60, 210, 229

[211] Thorsten Hansen. *The multibib package*, January 2004. mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/multibib/multibib.pdf. 60, 229

[212] Patrick Happel. *The lipsum package*, January 2005. mailto:patrick.happel@rub.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/lipsum/lipsum.pdf. 90, 94, 221, 621

[213] Yannis Haralambous. *Arabic, Persian and Ottoman TEX for Mac and PC*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):520–524, November 1990. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30hara.pdf.

[214] Yannis Haralambous. *Fontes et codages*. O'Reilly France, mailto:xavier@editions-oreilly.fr, April 2004. English translation in [216]. Available from: http://www.oreilly.fr/catalogue/284177273X. 505, 507, 508, 577

[215] Yannis Haralambous. *Voyage au centre de TEX: composition, paragraphage, césure*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 44:75–125, November 2004. Available from: ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/44-haralambous.pdf.

[216] Yannis Haralambous. *Fonts & Encodings*. O'Reilly Media, September 2007. English translation of [214]. 505, 507, 508, 577

[217] Yannis Haralambous and John Plaice. *First applications of Ω: Greek, Arabic, Khmer, Poetica, ISO 10646/Unicode, etc*. *TUGboat*, 15(3):344–352, 1994. 232

[218] Yannis Haralambous and John Plaice. *Ω, a TEX extension including Unicode and featuring lex-like filtering processes*. In Wlodek Bzyl and Tomasz Plata-Przechlewski, editors, *Proceedings of the European TEX Conference*, pages 153–166, Gdańsk, Poland, 1994. GUST. 232, 577

[219] Yannis Haralambous and John Plaice. *The Design and Use of a Multiple-Alphabet Font with Omega*. *MAPS*, 27:27–37, 2000. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24_7.pdf.

[220] Yannis Haralambous and John Plaice. *Traitement automatique des langues et compositions sous Omega*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 39-40:139–166, May 2001. Available from: ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/39-yannis.pdf.

[221] Yannis Haralambous, John Plaice, and Éric Picheral. *Ω, une extension de TEX incluant UNICODE et des filtres de type lex*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 20:55–80, June 1995. French translation of [218]. Available from: ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/20-yannis.pdf. 232

[222] Alexander Harin, Vadim V. Zhytnikov, and Vadim Maslov. *The cmcyralt.sty file*, December 1994. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/cmcyralt.sty. 543

[223] Stephen Hartke. *A Survey of Free Math Fonts for TEX and LATEX*. *The PracTEX Journal*, 2(1), February 2006. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-1/hartke/hartke.pdf.

[224] Jim Hefferon. *CTAN for Starters*. *The PracTEX Journal*, 1(1), January 2005. mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-1/hefferon/hefferon.pdf.

[225] Jim Hefferon. *Minutes in Less Than Hours: Using LATEX Resources*. *The PracTEX Journal*, 1(4), October 2005. mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-4/hefferon/hefferon.pdf.

[226] Jim Hefferon. *What I Wish I Had . . . When I Was A Lad — Using LATEX resources*. *The PracTEX Journal*, 2(4), November 2006. mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/hefferon/hefferon.pdf.

[227] Thomas Henlich. *The Marvosym Font Package*, May 2006. mailto:thomas@henloch.de, The font was designed by Martin Vogel, mailto:marvosym.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/fonts/psfonts/marvosym/marvodoc.pdf. 224

[228] Stephan Hennig. *The mcaption package*, September 2005. mailto:stephanhennig@arcor.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/mcaption/mcaption.pdf. 54, 72, 88, 222, 278

[229] Pr. Thomas J. Hinnebusch and Dr. Barbara Blankenship. *UCLA Language Materials Project* [online]. Available from: http://www.lmp.ucla.edu. University of California, Los Angeles; mailto:lmp@international.ucla.edu. 471

[230] Taco Hoekwater. *LuaTEX*. *TUGboat*, 28(3):312–313, September 2007. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb28-3/tb90hoekwater-luatex.pdf. 233

[231] Taco Hoekwater, Hartmut Henkel, and Hans Hagen. *LuaTEX Reference*, July 2007. http://www.luatex.org/. Available from: http://context.aanhet.net/luatex/beta/manual/luatexref-t.pdf. 233

[232] Alan Hoenig. *TEX Unbound*. Oxford University Press, Oxford New York, 1998. LATEX & TEX Strategies for Fonts, Graphics , & More.

[233] Klaus Höppner. *Strategies for including graphics in LATEX documents*. *The PracTEX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/hoeppner/hoeppner.pdf.

[234] Don Hosek. *The morefloats package*, July 1990. mailto:dhosek@ymir.claremont.edu. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/morefloats.sty.

[235] Jean-Michel Hufflen. *Typographie: les conventions, la tradition, les goûts, . . . , et LATEX*. In *Congrès GUTenberg 2000, Toulouse*, volume 35-36 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 169–214, may 2000. Available from: ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/35-hufflen.pdf.

[236] Icelandic Language Institute. *ICELANDIC – At once ancient and modern –*. Ministry of Education, Science and Culture, Sölvhölsgata 4, 150 Reykjavik, 2001. mailto:postur@mrn.stjr.is, Web site: http://www.menntamalaraduneyti.is. Available from: http://www.iceland.is/media/Utgafa/Icelandic.pdf. 511

[237] Roberto Ierusalimschy. *Programming in Lua*. Lua.Org, January 2005.

[238] Roberto Ierusalimschy, Luiz Henrique de Figueiredo, and Waldemar Celes. *Lua 5.1 Reference Manual*. Lua.Org, August 2006.

[239] Hiroya Ikeda. *pLATEX 2ε*. In japanese, mailto:ike@kobitosan.net, September 2001. Available from: http://www.kobitosan.net/ike/latex/handhtml/index.html. 234

[240] Victor Ivrii. *TEX Freak (first part)*. Department of Mathematics, University of Toronto, September 2007. Available from: http://www/math.toronto.edu/Research/preprints/TeX_Talk_2A.pdf.

[241] Victor Ivrii. *TEX Freak (second part)*. Department of Mathematics, University of Toronto, September 2007. Available from: http://www/math.toronto.edu/Research/preprints/TeX_Talk_2B.pdf.

[242] Tetsuo Iwakuma and Tetsuo Furukawa. *A Guide to use Macros and Style Files in LATEX*[51], August 1994. mailto:bear@hashi1.civil.tohoku.ac.jp and mailto:furakawa@hagi.ces.kyutech.ac.jp. Available from: http://www.moivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/styleuse.pdf.

[243] Youssef Jabri. *Typesetting Arabic and Farsi with the Arabi package. The Users Guide*, December 2006. mailto:yjabri@ensa.univ-oujda.ac.ma, École des sciences appliquées, Boîte 696, Oujda, Maroc. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/help/Catalogue/entries/arabi.html. 38, 44, 209, 475, 495, 561, 623

[244] Paweł Jackowski. *TEX beauties and oddities* [online], 2007. Available from: http://www.pawcoo.com/. mailto:pearls@gust.org.pl.

[245] Roland Jacques. *Portuguese Pioneers of Vietnamese Linguistics*. Orchid Press, PO Box 19, Yuttitham Post Office, Bangkok 10907, Thailand, July 2002. Available from: http://orchidpress.net/.

[51] This document is somewhat obsolete.

[246] Christophe Jacquet. *Mémento LaTeX*. In *Mémento*. Eyrolles, Paris, first edition, November 2007.

[247] Alan Jeffrey. *PostScript font support in LaTeX 2ε*. *TUGboat*, 15(3):263–268, September 1994. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb15-3/tb44jeff.pdf.

[248] Alan Jeffrey and LaTeX3 Project Team. *The file* `ltnews.dtx` *for use with LaTeX 2ε*, July 2001. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/ltnews.cls. 25, 213, 222

[249] Zhuhan Jiang. *The vruler package*, October 1996. mailto:zhuhan@neumann.une.edu.au, and look at http://mirror.ctan.org/help/Catalogue/entries/vruler.html. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/vruler.sty.

[250] David M. Jones. *The hangcaption package*, August 1992. mailto:dmjones@theory.lcs.mit.edu. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex209/contrib/misc/hangcaption.sty. 53, 79, 88, 218, 255, 275

[251] Jean-Joseph Julaud. *Le français correct pour les nuls*. In *Pour les Nuls Classic Pratique*. First Editions, August 2001. mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com. Available from: http://www.efirst.com. 273

[252] Jean-Joseph Julaud. *Le petit livre de la conjugaison correcte*. First Editions, April 2002. mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com. Available from: http://www.efirst.com.

[253] Jean-Joseph Julaud. *Le petit livre de la grammaire facile*. First Editions, August 2004. mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com. Available from: http://www.efirst.com.

[254] Akira Kakuto. *W32TeX* [online], March 2007. Available from: http://www.fsci.fuk.kindai.ac.jp/kakuto/win32-ptex/web2c75-e.html. mailto:kakuto@fuk.kindai.ac.jp, School of Humanity-Oriented Science and Engineering, Kinki University, Iizuka 820-8555, Japan. 234

[255] Theppitak Karoonboonyanan. *Standardization and Implementations of Thai Language*. National Electronics and Computer Technology Center, National Science and Technology Development Agency, Ministry of Science and Technology and Environment, THAILAND, 1999. mailto:thep@links.nectec.or.th. 552

[256] Jonathan Kew. *The XeTeX typesetting system* [online], February 2007. Available from: http://www.scripts.sil.org/xetex. 233

[257] Ki-Joo Kim. *A BibTeX Guide via Examples*, April 2004. mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com. Available from: http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/bibtex_guide.pdf. 561

[258] Ki-Joo Kim. *How to Create PDF from LaTeX*, April 2004. mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com. Available from: http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/latex2pdf.pdf. 561

[259] Ki-Joo Kim. *LaTeX Fonts*, November 2005. mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com. Available from: http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/latex_fonts.pdf. 561

[260] Ingo Klöckl. *LaTeX – Tipps und Tricks*. Dpunkt. Verlag GmbH, Ringstraße 19, 69115 Heidelberg, mailto:i.kloeckl@2k-software.de, January 2002.

[261] Jörg Knappen. *Schnell ans Ziel mit LaTeX 2ε*. Oldenbourg Wissenschaftsverlag GmbH, Rosenheimer Straße 145, 81671 München, second edition, May 2004. Available from: http://www.oldenbourg-verlag.de.

[262] Donald E. Knuth. *Computer Modern Typefaces*, volume E of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1986. 35, 213

[263] Donald E. Knuth. *The TeXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 16th edition, 1989. Revised to cover TeX3, 1991. 211, 221, 238, 239, 580

[264] Donald E. Knuth. *The METAFONTbook*, volume C of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1993. With the final corrections of 1993. 213

[265] Donald E. Knuth. *Le TeXbook, Composition informatique*. Vuibert, Paris, 2003. French translation of [263], by Jean-Côme Charpentier. 211, 221, 238, 239

[266] Un Koaunghi. *HLaTeX: a LaTeX package for the Korean language support*. In korean, April 2005. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/korean/HLaTeX/hlguide.pdf. 205, 219, 472, 507, 508

[267] Helmut Kopka. *Ergänzungen: Bd 2*. In LaTeX. Pearson Studium, München, third edition, May 2002.

[268] Helmut Kopka. *Erweiterungen: Bd 3*. In LaTeX. Pearson Studium, München, third edition, July 2002.

[269] Helmut Kopka. *Einführung: Bd 1*. In LaTeX. Pearson Studium, München, third edition, March 2005.

[270] Helmut Kopka and Patrick W. Daly. *Guide to LaTeX*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, fourth edition, February 2004. 233

[271] Siep Kroonenberg. *NFSS: using font families in LaTeX 2ε*. MAPS, 11:52–54, 1999. mailto:siepo@cybercomm.nl. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22_13.pdf.

[272] Alexej M. Kryukov and Dmitry Ivanov. *Typesetting multilingual documents with ANTOMEGA*, September 2003. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/help/Catalogue/entries/antomega.html. 44, 208, 472, 502, 503, 519, 536, 540, 541, 548, 549, 561

[273] Markus G. Kuhn. *Effective scientific electronic publishing* [online], June 2006. Available from: http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~mgk25/publ-tips.html. mailto:mgk25@cl.cam.ac.uk, Computer Laboratory, University of Cambridge.

[274] Frank Küster. *alnumsec.sty: Using alphanumeric section numbering with standard sectioning commands*, February 2005. mailto:frank@kuesterei.ch, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/alnumsec/alnumsec.pdf. 54, 76, 88, 208, 254, 276

[275] Thomas Lachand-Robert. *La maîtrise de TEX et LATEX*. Masson, Paris, December 1997.

[276] Klaus Lagally. *ArabTEX—Typetting Arabic with vowels and ligatures*. In *Proceedings of the 7th European TEX Conference*, pages 153–172, Prague, 1992. CsTUG. mailto:lagallyk@acm.org. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20_22.pdf. 38, 44, 209, 472, 474, 475, 508

[277] Klaus Lagally. *ArabTeX Version 3*, October 2003. mailto:lagallyk@acm.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/arabtex/doc/html/arabtex.htm. 38, 44, 209, 472, 474, 475, 508

[278] Leslie Lamport. MakeIndex, *An Index Processor For LATEX*, 1987. Technical report, Electronic document in *MakeIndex* distribution. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/indexing/makeindex/doc/makeindex.pdf.

[279] Leslie Lamport. *LATEX: A Document Preparation System — User's Guide and Reference Manual*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, June 1994. 58, 221

[280] Leslie Lamport, Victor Eijkhout, and Johannes L. Braams. *NTG Document Classes for LATEX version 2e*, June 2004. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ntgclass/ntgclass.pdf.

[281] Leslie Lamport, LATEX3 Project Team, and Johannes L. Braams. *Producing proceedings articles with LATEX 2ε*, November 1995. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/proc.dtx. 25, 213

[282] Leslie Lamport, Frank Mittelbach, and Johannes L. Braams. *Standard Document Classes for LATEX version 2e*, September 2005. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/classes.dtx. 25, 60, 71, 205, 209, 210, 213, 235

[283] Leslie Lamport, Frank Mittelbach, and Rainer Schöpf. *Standard Letter Document Class for LATEX version 2e*, April 1999. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/letter.dtx. 60, 213, 221

[284] Olga G. Lapko. *Full Cyrillic: How Many Languages?* In Mimi Burbank and Christina Thiele, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 164–170, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51olga.pdf.

[285] Olga G. Lapko. *The floatrow package*, July 2005. mailto:Lapko.O@g23.relcom.ru. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/floatrow/floatrow.pdf. 30, 54, 88, 164, 217, 257, 270, 278, 629

[286] Olga G. Lapko and Irina A. Makhovaya. *The Style russianb for Babel: Problems and solutions*. *TUGboat*, 16(4):364–372, 1995. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49olga.pdf. 38, 484, 541

[287] LATEX3 Project Team. *Default docstrip headers*. *TUGboat*, 19(2):137–138, June 1998. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-2/tb59ltdocstrip.pdf. 21

[288] LATEX3 Project Team. *LATEX 2ε Kernel (Output Routine)*, July 2000. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/ltoutput.dtx. 30, 234, 441

[289] LaTeX3 Project Team. *LaTeX 2ε for authors*, July 2001. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/doc/usrguide.pdf. 205

[290] LaTeX3 Project Team. *LaTeX 2ε for Class and Package writers*, December 2003. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/doc/clsguide.pdf. 205

[291] LaTeX3 Project Team. *LaTeX 2ε font selection*, February 2004. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/doc/fntguide.pdf. 205, 229, 297, 377, 381

[292] LaTeX3 Project Team. *LaTeX font encodings*, January 2006. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/doc/encguide.pdf. 215, 229

[293] Olivier Lecarme. *LaTeX en bref*, August 2004. Available from: http://deptinfo.unice.fr/~ol/L3MI/LaTeX/latexenbref.pdf.

[294] Jacques Leclerc. *L'aménagement linguistique dans le monde* [online], March 2008. Available from: http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl. TLFQ (Trésor de la langue française au Québec), Université Laval, Québec. 471, 473, 477, 550

[295] Iksop Lee and S. Robert Ramsey. *The Korean Language*. State University of New York Press, December 2000.

[296] Philipp Lehman. *The Font Installation Guide*, December 2004. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/Type1fonts/fontinstallationguide/.

[297] Werner Lemberg. *The CJK package for LaTeX 2ε — Multilingual support beyond babel*. *TUGboat*, 18(3):214–224, 1997. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/cjkintro600.pdf. 38, 44, 212, 237, 238, 472, 487, 505, 506, 507, 508, 514, 515, 516, 552

[298] Werner Lemberg. *The CJK package* [online], October 2006. Available from: http://cjk.ffii.org/. 38, 44, 212, 237, 238, 472, 487, 505, 506, 507, 508, 514, 515, 516, 552

[299] Werner Lemberg and Thế Thành Hàn. *The vietnam package*, October 2006. mailto:wl@gnu.org, mailto:hanthethanh@gmx.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/vietnamese/vntex/tex/latex/vntex/. 44, 555

[300] Knut Lickert. *LaTeX 2ε for people in associations: minutes.sty*, March 2007. mailto:knut@lickert.net et http://tex.lickert.net/packages/minutes/index.html. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/minutes/minutes.pdf. 224, 297, 407

[301] Ulf A. Lindgren. *FncyChap V1.33*, August 2005. mailto:ulf.a.lindgren@ericsson.com. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/fncychap/fncychap.pdf. 53, 75, 88, 217, 254, 275

[302] Anselm Lingnau. *An Improved Environment for Floats*, November 2001. mailto:anselm@strathspey.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/float/float.pdf. 30, 54, 88, 164, 217, 257, 270, 278, 629

[303] Bernice Sacks Lipkin. *LaTeX for Linux: A Vade Mecum*. Springer, January 2000.

[304] Maurizio Loreti. *The sfheaders package*, September 1997. mailto:loreti@padova.infn.it and http://wwwcdf.pd.infn.it/~loreti/mlo.html, University of Padova – Department of Physics, Via F. Marzolo, 8 – 35131 PADOVA – Italy. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/sfheaders/. 54, 76, 88, 237, 254, 276

[305] Tristan Lorino. *Du respect de certaines règles typographiques*, June 2006. Available from: http://daedale.free.fr/doc/typo.pdf.

[306] Tim P. Love. *Advanced LaTeX*, September 1994. `latex-advanced.pdf`, mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk. Available from: http://www.moivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/.

[307] Tim P. Love. *Producing HTML and PDF files with LaTeX* [online], March 2006. Available from: http://www-h.eng.cam.ac.uk/help/tpl/textprocessing/makingWWWdocs.html. mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk.

[308] Vincent Lozano. *Tout ce que vous avez toujours voulu savoir sur LaTeX sans jamais oser le demander*, September 2006. mailto:lozano@enise.fr. Available from: http://cours.enise.fr/info/latex/guide-local.pdf.

[309] Ken Lunde. *Understanding Japanese Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, September 1993. 205, 212, 583

[310] Ken Lunde. *Online companion of "Understanding Japanese Information Processing"*, 1996. See [309]. Available from: ftp://ftp.ora.com/pub/examples/nutshell/ujip/doc/cjk.inf. 205, 212

[311] Ken Lunde. *CJKV Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, January 1999.

[312] Jean-François Macé. *Le Japon est-il chinois?* *L'Histoire*, Special issue (333):20–25, July-August 2008.

[313] Pascal Marchand and Cyrille Suss. *Atlas géopolitique de la Russie: puissance d'hier, puissance de demain?* In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, October 2007.

[314] Nicolas Markey. *Split your bibliography into categories*, December 2005. mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/splitbib/splitbib.pdf. 60, 237

[315] Nicolas Markey. *Tame the BeaST (The B to X of* BibTeX*)*, June 2005. mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb_en.pdf. 205, 210

[316] Alan Marshall. *La composition typographique*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 8:3–9, March 2007.

[317] Éric Martini. *Petit guide de typographie*. Éditions Glyphe, second edition, February 2008. mailto:eric.martini@editions-glyphe.com. Available from: http://www.editions-glyphe.com.

[318] Sven Mattisson. *SLaTeX: Swedish speaking version of LaTeX* [online], November 1989. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/swedish/slatex/slatex.1. mailto:sven@tde.lu.se, Department of Applied Electronics, University of Lund, Box 118, S-221 00 Lund, Sweden. 44, 237, 551

[319] Rowland McDonnell. *The sectsty package v2.0.2*, April 2002. mailto:rowland.mcdonnell@physics.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/sectsty/. 53, 70, 88, 129, 236, 252, 275

[320] Surapant Meknavin, Theppitak Karoonboonyanan, Chanop Silpa-Anan, and Veerathanabutr Poonlap. *The thailatex package*, March 2006. Find `thai.dtx` in `thailatex-0.4.0.tar.gz`, mailto:surapan@nectec.or.th. Available from: ftp://linux.thai.net/pub/ThaiLinux/software/thailatex/. 238, 552

[321] Frank Mittelbach. *ε-TEX: Guidelines for future TEX*. TUGboat, 11(3):337–345, September 1990. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29mitt.pdf.

[322] Frank Mittelbach. *Comments on "Filenames for Fonts" [42]*. TUGboat, 13(1):51–53, April 1992. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34mittfont.pdf.

[323] Frank Mittelbach. *LaTeX 2ε Encoding Interfaces*, June 1995. Available from: http://www.latex-project.org/papers/encoding-concepts.pdf. 215, 229

[324] Frank Mittelbach. *Producing slides with LaTeX 2ε*, August 1997. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/slides.dtx. 213

[325] Frank Mittelbach. *An environment for multicolumn output*, July 2000. mailto:Frank.Mittelbach@latex-project.org. Available from: http:/mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/multicol.pdf. 91, 115, 229

[326] Frank Mittelbach. *The varioref package*, April 2003. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/varioref.pdf. 140

[327] Frank Mittelbach. *The doc and shortverb packages*, January 2004. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx. 21

[328] Frank Mittelbach. *The dblaccnt package*, April 2005. mailto:frank.mittelbach@latex-project.org, The current maintainer is Werner Lemberg, mailto:wl@gnu.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/vietnamese/vntex/tex/latex/vntex/dblaccnt.sty. 214, 617

[329] Frank Mittelbach, Denys Duchier, Johannes L. Braams, Marcin Woliński, and Mark Wooding. *The docstrip program*, January 2004. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx.

[330] Frank Mittelbach, Michel Goossens, Johannes L. Braams, David P. Carlisle, and Chris A. Rowley. *The LaTeX Companion 2*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, April 2004. 30, 145, 205, 222, 228, 234, 441

[331] Frank Mittelbach, Michel Goossens, Johannes L. Braams, David P. Carlisle, and Chris A. Rowley. *Der LaTeX-Begleiter*. Pearson Studium, second edition, October 2005. German version.

[332] Frank Mittelbach, Michel Goossens, Johannes L. Braams, David P. Carlisle, and Chris A. Rowley. *LaTeX Companion*. Pearson Education France, Paris, second edition, 2005. French translation by Jacques André, Benoît Belet, Jean-Côme Charpentier, Jean-Michel Hufflen, and Yves Soulet. 612

[333] Frank Mittelbach and Chris A. Rowley. *Language Information in Structured Documents: A Model for Mark-up and Rendering*. TUGboat, 18(3):199–205, September 1997. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/tb56lang.pdf.

[334] Frank Mittelbach, Chris A. Rowley, Alan Jeffrey, and David P. Carlisle. *The main structure of documents*, January 2004. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/ltclass.dtx.

[335] Young Joon Moon. *How to make and view a Japanese PDF file*, June 2002. mailto:director@research-j.org. Available from: http://e-japanese-online.com/english/japanese-computing/platex/Free-Japanese-PDF-authoring-EV003.pdf.

[336] Florence Morgiensztern, Josiane Gonthier, Monique Pontault, and Alexandre Wolff. *OIF*. In Christian Valantin, editor, *La Francophonie dans le monde 2006–2007*, Paris, March 2007. Organisation Internationale de la Francophonie, Nathan.

[337] Lapo Filippo Mori. *LaTeXpedia: the future of LaTeX documentation*. The PracTeX Journal, 3(1), February 2007. mailto:mori@northwestern.edu and http://www.lapomori.com/, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Northwestern University, Evanston, Illinois. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/mori2/mori2.pdf.

[338] Lapo Filippo Mori. *Tables in LaTeX 2ε: Packages and Methods*. The PracTeX Journal, 1, February 2007. mailto:mori@northwestern.edu and http://www.lapomori.com/, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Northwestern University, Evanston, Illinois. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/mori/mori.pdf.

[339] Michael A. Morrison. *LaTeX Links* [online], December 1999. Available from: http://www.nhn.ou.edu/~morrison/LaTeX/index.shtml. mailto:morrison@mail.nhn.ou.edu, Department of Physics & Astronomy, University of Oklahoma.

[340] National Geographic Society. *Atlas of China*, November 2007.

[341] National Institute of the Korean. *Writing Korean for Beginners*, March 2006.

[342] Sergei O. Naumov. *LaTeX2e support for LH family of fonts*, April 1995. Available from: http://web.mit.edu/texsrc/source/latex/LH/russian.sty. 544

[343] Frank Neukam, Markus Kohm, Axel Kielhorn, and Jens-Uwe Morawski. *KOMA-Script, a versatile LaTeX 2ε bundle*, December 2007. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguien.pdf. 41, 50, 62, 75, 88, 141, 142, 162, 205, 210, 220, 228, 236, 253, 254, 415, 616

[344] Frank Neukam, Markus Kohm, Axel Kielhorn, and Jens-Uwe Morawski. *KOMA-Script, ein wandelbares LaTeX 2ε-Paket*, December 2007. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguide.pdf. 41, 50, 62, 75, 88, 141, 142, 162, 205, 210, 220, 228, 236, 253, 254, 415, 616

[345] Elke Niedermair and Michael Niedermair. *LaTeX Das Praxisbuch*. Franzis Verlag GmbH, January 2006. See http://www.franzis.de/images/optfiles/p_dateien/1787_latex_praxisbuch_source.zip.

[346] Tim Null. *\begin{here} % getting started: A LaTeX Survivor's Guide*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 1(2), April 2005. mailto:tim@timnull.com. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-2/null-bh02/null-bh02.pdf.

[347] Tim Null. *\begin{here} % getting started: Topic #1: Creating my first LaTeX article, Part 3*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. mailto:tim@timnull.com. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/null-bh03/null-bh03.pdf.

[348] Heiko Oberdiek. *PDF information and navigation elements with hyperref, pdfTeX, and thumbpdf*. In *EuroTeX'99 Proceedings*. TUG, 1999. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/paper.pdf. 88

[349] Heiko Oberdiek. *The ifpdf package*, February 2006. mailto:oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/ifpdf.pdf.

[350] Heiko Oberdiek. *The makerobust package*, March 2006. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/makerobust.pdf. 149

[351] Heiko Oberdiek. *The hypcap package*, April 2007. mailto:oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/hypcap.pdf.

[352] Heiko Oberdiek and Sebastian Rahtz. *ChangeLog for the hyperref bundle*, May 2007. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/ChangeLog.pdf. 88

[353] Heiko Oberdiek and Sebastian Rahtz. *Hypertext marks in LaTeX*, May 2007. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/hyperref.pdf. 88

[354] Heiko Oberdiek and Sebastian Rahtz. *README for the hyperref bundle*, February 2007. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/README.pdf. 88

[355] Tobias Oetiker, Hubert Partl, Helene Hyna, and Elisabeth Schlegl. *Une courte (?) introduction à LaTeX 2ε*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, special issue number 2, February 2003. French translation of [356] by Matthieu Herrb, adaptation and complements by Daniel Flipo. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/lshort/french/flshort-3.20.pdf. 205

[356] Tobias Oetiker, Hubert Partl, Helene Hyna, and Elisabeth Schlegl. *The Not So Short Introduction to LaTeX 2ε*, May 2006. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/lshort/english/lshort.pdf. 205, 213, 221, 586

[357] Mariuz Olko and Marcin Woliński. *Pakiet Polski (wersja 1.3.3)*. In polish and english; see also http://www.tug.org/teTeX/tetex-texmfdist/doc/latex/platex/platex.html, February 2008. mailto:M.Olko@Litterae.com.pl and mailto:wolinski@gust.org.pl. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/polski/polski.dtx. 44, 234, 537

[358] Tanguy Ortolo and Jeanne Legrand. *LaTeX à 200%*. O'Reilly France, September 2007.

[359] Scott Pakin. *How to Package Your LaTeX Package*, November 2004. mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/dtxtut/dtxtut.pdf.

[360] Scott Pakin. *The Comprehensive LaTeX Symbols List*, September 2005. mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/symbols/comprehensive/.

[361] Scott Pakin. *The newcommand.py utility*, January 2005. mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/support/newcommand/newcommand.pdf.

[362] Palash Baran Pal. *Bangtex: a package for typesetting documents in Bangla using the TeX/LaTeX systems* [online], January 2001. Available from: http://www.saha.ac.in/theory/palashbaran.pal/bangtex/bangtex.html. mailto:pbpal@theory.saha.ernet.in. 44, 210, 472, 478

[363] Anshuman Pandey. *Typesetting Bengali in TeX*. TUGboat, 20(2):119–126, 1999. mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63pand.pdf.

[364] Anshuman Pandey, John Smith, Dominik Wujastyk, Zdeněk Wagner, and Kevin Carmody. *Devanāgarī for TeX*, May 2006. mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu, mailto:jds10@cam.ac.uk, mailto:d.wujastyk@ucl.ac.uk, mailto:zdenek.wagner@gmail.com and mailto:i@kevincarmody.org, home page: http://devnag.sarovar.org/. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/devanagari/velthuis/doc/generic/velthuis/manual.pdf. 44, 215, 218, 472, 489, 510

[365] Minje Byeng-sen Park. *Histoire de l'imprimerie coréenne des origines à 1910*. Maison-Neuve & Larose, 15 rue Victor-Cousin, 70005 Paris, September 2003. 505, 507, 508

[366] Oren Patashnik. BibTeX*ing*, February 1988. Documentation for general BibTeX users. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxdoc.pdf. 210

[367] Oren Patashnik. *Designing* BibTeX *Styles*, February 1988. The part of BibTeX's documentation that's not meant for general users. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxhak.pdf. 210

[368] Jonathan Pechta, Federico Zenith, Holger Danielsson, and Jeroen Wijnhout. *CJK Support* [online], March 2006. Available from: http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/cjk.html. Part of [370].

[369] Jonathan Pechta, Federico Zenith, Holger Danielsson, and Jeroen Wijnhout. *Document Encoding* [online], March 2006. Available from: http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/lang.html. Part of [370].

[370] Jonathan Pechta, Federico Zenith, Holger Danielsson, and Jeroen Wijnhout. *The Kile Handbook* [online], March 2006. Available from: http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/. 587, 588

[371] Kasper Peeters. *HyperTeX FAQ* [online], March 2004. Available from: http://arxiv.org/hypertex/. 219, 240

[372] Manuel Pégourié-Gonnard. *L'extension xargs*, March 2008. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/xargs/.

[373] Manuel Pégourié-Gonnard. *The xargs package*, March 2008. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/xargs/.

[374] Philippe Pelletier. *Japon: crise d'une modernité*. In *Asie plurielle*. Belin, January 2003.

[375] Philippe Pelletier. *Le Japon*. In *Idées reçues*. Le Cavalier Bleu, November 2004.

[376] Philippe Pelletier. *Le Japon: géographie, géopolitique et géohistoire*. In *Impulsion*. Sedes, June 2007.

[377] Karel Píška. *Cyrillic Alphabets*. In Mimi Burbank and Christina Thiele, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 1–7, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51pisk.pdf.

[378] John Plaice and Yannis Haralambous. *The latest developments in* Ω. *TUGboat*, 17(2):181–183, June 1996. Available from: http://omega.enstb.org/papers/latest-omega96.pdf. 232

[379] John Plaice and Yannis Haralambous. *Typesetting French, German and English in* Ω. In *Congrès EuroTEX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, St. Malo, March 1998. 232

[380] Yves Plasseraud, Collective, Cécile Marin, Yves Ternon, and Henri Giordan. *Atlas des minoriés en Europe: de l'Atlantique à l'Oural, diversité culturelle*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, May 2005.

[381] Ariane Poissonnier, Gérard Soumia, and Fabrice Le Goff. *Atlas mondial de la francophonie*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, March 2006.

[382] Philippe Pons and Pierre-François Souyri. *Le Japon des Japonais*. In *L'autre guide*. Liana Levi, March 2007.

[383] Veerathanabutr Poonlap. *The Linux Thai HOWTO* [online], August 1998. Available from: http://www.fedu.uec.ac.jp/Zzzthai/Thai-HOWTO. mailto:uecthai@fedu.uec.ac.jp, mailto:poon-v@fedu.uec.ac.jp.

[384] Hilmar Preusse, Christian Faulhammer, and Ulrich Schwartz. *What is a minimal working example?*, May 2006. version 0.4.1e. Available from: http://www.latex-einfuehrung.de/mini-en.pdf. 57, 222

[385] Glanville Price, editor. *Encyclopedia of the Languages of Europe*. Wiley-Blackwell, May 2005.

[386] C. V. Radhakrishnan and E. Krishnan. *LaTeX Tutorial, A Primer*. Indian TEX Users Group, September 2003. Floor III, SJP Buildings, Cotton Hills, Trivandrum 695014, India. Available from: http://www.tug.org.in/tutorials.html.

[387] Sebastian Rahtz. *hyperref package options*, September 2006. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/options.pdf. 88

[388] Sebastian Rahtz. *Section name references in LaTeX*, May 2007. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/nameref.pdf.

[389] Sebastian Rahtz and Leonor Barroca. *A style option for rotated objects in LaTeX*, September 1997. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/rotating/rotating.dtx. 236

[390] Sebastian Rahtz and Heiko Oberdiek. *The hyperref package* [online], August 2003. Available from: http://www.tug.org/applications/hyperref. This page points to the package documentation and its distribution. 21, 62, 72, 88, 219, 224, 240, 241, 250, 274, 420

[391] Sebastian Rahtz and Heiko Oberdiek. *Hypertext marks in LaTeX: a manual for hyperref*, September 2006. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/manual.pdf. 88, 116

[392] Bernd Raichle, Rolf Niepraschk, and Thomas Hafner. *Fragen und Antworten (FAQ) über das Textsatzsystem TeX und DANTE, Deutschsprachige Anwendervereinigung TeX e.V*, September 2003. Version 72. Available from: http://www.dante.de/faq/de-tex-faq/de-tex-faq.pdf.

[393] Claude Raimond. *L'anglais correct pour les nuls*. In *Pour les Nuls Classic Pratique*. First Editions, August 2007. mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com. Available from: http://www.efirst.com.

[394] S. Robert Ramsey. *The Languages of China*. Princeton University Press, October 1989.

[395] Paul Rascoe. *Perry-Castañeda Library Map Collection* [online], November 2007. Available from: http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/. Mail via: http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/email.html. 471

[396] Arthur Reutenauer. *A brief history ofTeX, volume II*. *TUGboat*, 29(1):68–72, February 2008. Available from: https://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-1/tb91reutenauer.pdf.

[397] Adrian Rezuş and Bernd Raichle. *Romanian TeX*, October 1996. mailto:adriaan@cs.kun.nl. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/language/romanian/RomanianTeX/romanian.dtx. 538, 539

[398] François Richaudeau and Olivier Binisti. *Manuel de typographie et de mise en page (Du papier à l'écran)*. Éditions Retz, second edition, October 2005. Available from: http://www.editions-retz.com.

[399] Yuri Robbers, Markus Kohm, and Rasmus Pank Roulund. *Replacing LaTeX 2ε standard classes by KOMA-Script*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 3, August 2006. mailto:yuri.robbers@gmail.com, mailto:rasmus_pank@yahoo.dk and http://www.komascript.de. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/robbers/robbers.pdf. 41, 50, 62, 75, 88, 141, 142, 162, 210, 220, 228, 236, 253, 254, 415, 616

[400] Will Robertson. *Productivity with macros and packages*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 2(3), August 2006. mailto:wspr81@gmail.com, School of Mechanical Engineering, University of Adelaide, SA, Australia, 5005. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/robertson/robertson.pdf.

[401] Christian Rolland. *LaTeX par la pratique*. O'Reilly France, October 1999. mailto:Rolland.Christian@wanafoo.fr.

[402] Chris A. Rowley. *Models and languages for formatted documents*. TUGboat, 20(3):189–195, September 1999. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-3/tb64rowl.pdf.

[403] Young Ryu. *The TX Fonts*, December 2000. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/fonts/txfonts/doc/txfontsdocA4.pdf. 35, 239

[404] Thierry Sanjuan, Élisabeth Allès, Jean-Pierre Cabestan, Yves Citoleux, and Collective. *Dictionnaire de la Chine contemporaine*. In Dictionnaire. Armand Colin, November 2006.

[405] Thierry Sanjuan and Madeleine Benoît-Guyot. *Atlas de la Chine: les mutations accélérées*. In Atlas/Monde. Éditions Autrement, September 2007.

[406] Eddie Saudrais. *Et les fontes,* man *? Gestion des fontes avec LaTeX 2ε*, June 2001. mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr. Available from: http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/latex/fontedoc.zip.

[407] Eddie Saudrais. *Le petit typographe rationnel*, 2005. mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr. Available from: http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/prepa/typo.pdf.

[408] Petra Schlager and Manfred Thibud. *Wissenschaftlicht mit LaTeX arbeiten*. Pearson Education Deutschland GmbH (Verlag Pearson Studium), Martin-Kollar-Str. 10-12, D-81829 München, Germany, second edition, September 2007.

[409] Walter Schmidt. *Using common PostScript fonts with LaTeX. PSNFSS Version 9.2*, September 2004. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/psnfss/psnfss2e.pdf.

[410] Walter Schmidt. *Font selection in LaTeX: The most frequently asked questions*. The PracTeX Journal, 2(1), February 2006. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-1/schmidt/schmidt.pdf.

[411] Walter Schmidt. *Fonts für TeX* [online], June 2007. Available from: http://home.vr-web.de/was/fonts.html.

[412] Thomas A. Schmitz. *Mastering texmf-trees*. The PracTeX Journal, 3(1), February 2007. mailto:thomas.schmitz@uni-bonn.de, http://www.uni-bonn.de/www/Philologie/Personnal/Schmitz.html, Classics Department, Bonn University. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/schmitz/schmitz.pdf.

[413] Joachim Schrod. *International LaTeX is ready to use*. TUGboat, 11(1):87–90, April 1990. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-1/tb27schrod.pdf.

[414] Martin Schröder. *The multitoc package*, June 1999. mailto:martin.schroeder@acm.org. Available from: http:/mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ms/multitoc.dtx. 93, 229

[415] Martin Schröder. *pdfTeX 1.40: What's new*. TUGboat, 29(1):143–145, February 2008. Available from: https://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-1/tb91schroeder.pdf.

[416] Elizabeth Scurfield, Lianyi Song, and Charles Grether. *Lire et écrire le chinois*. In Cécile Desprairies, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006.

[417] Michael Shell and David Hoadley. BibTeX *Tips and FAQ*, January 2007. http://www.michaelshell.org/. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxFAQ.pdf. 210

[418] Bai Shoui†. *An outline history of China*. Foreign Language Press, 24 Baiwanzhuang Road, Beijing 100037, China, revised edition, 2002. mailto:info@flp.com.cn and mailto:sales@flp.com.cn; distribued by China International Book Trading Corporation. 35 Chegongzuang Xilu, Beijing 100044, China, P.O. Box 399, Beijing, China. Available from: http://www.flp.com.cn. 487

[419] Sindhu Singh. *Our Introduction to LaTeX*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/singh/singh.pdf.

[420] Axel Sommerfeldt. *The rotfloat package*, January 2004. mailto:rotfloat@sommerfeldt.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/rotfloat/rotfloat.pdf. 54, 88, 164, 217, 236, 257, 270, 278, 629

[421] Axel Sommerfeldt. *Customizing captions in floating environments*, December 2007. mailto:caption@sommerfee.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption-eng.pdf. 54, 72, 88, 210, 277

[422] Axel Sommerfeldt. *The implementation of the caption package*, December 2007. mailto:caption@sommerfee.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption.pdf. 54, 72, 88, 210, 277

[423] Axel Sommerfeldt. *The (obsolete) caption2 package*, November 2007. mailto:caption@sommerfee.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption2.pdf. 54, 72, 88, 210, 277

[424] Axel Sommerfeldt. *Setzen von Abbildungs- und Tabellenbeschriftungen mit dem caption-Paket*, October 2007. mailto:caption@sommerfee.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption-deu.pdf. 54, 72, 88, 210, 277

[425] Pierre-François Souyri. *Le monde à l'envers: la dynamique de la société médiévale*. In *Histoire du Japon*. Maisonneuve & Larose, December 1999.

[426] D. P. Story. *Using LaTeX to Create Quality PDF Documents for the World Wide Web* [online], November 1999. Available from: http://www.math.uakron.edu/~dpstory/latx2pdf.html. mailto:dpstory@uakron.edu.

[427] Apostolos Syropoulos. *Writing Greek with the `greek` option of the babel package*. http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/usage.tex, October 1997. 501

[428] Apostolos Syropoulos, Antonis Tsolomitis, and Nick Sofroniou. *Digital Typography Using LaTeX*. Springer, October 2002. Available from: http://ocean1.ee.duth.gr/LaTeXBook/.

[429] Nicola L. C. Talbot. *Creating a PDF document using PDFLaTeX*, July 2004. mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/pdfdoc/pdfdoc-a4.pdf.

[430] Nicola L. C. Talbot. *LaTeX for UEA Administrative Work*, September 2004. mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/admin/admin_a4.pdf.

[431] Nicola L. C. Talbot. *Using LaTeX to Write a PhD Thesis*, July 2006. mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/thesis/thesis_a4.pdf.

[432] Nicola L. C. Talbot. *Creating a LaTeX Minimal Example*, June 2007. mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/minexample/minexample.pdf. 57, 222

[433] Nicola L. C. Talbot. *Creating Flow Frames for Posters, Brochures or Magazines using flowfram.sty*, March 2007. mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/flowfram/doc/. 79, 88, 217, 256, 420, 629

[434] Nicola L. C. Talbot. *Creating Flow Frames for Posters, Brochures or Magazines using flowfram.sty v 1.07*, March 2007. mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/flowfram/doc/. 79, 88, 217, 256, 420, 629

[435] Nicola L. C. Talbot. *Writing a Thesis in LaTeX: hints, tips and advice*, November 2007. mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/lms/lms.pdf.

[436] Nicola L. C. Talbot. *LaTeX for Complete Novices*, January 2008. mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.cmp.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/novices/novices_a4.pdf.

[437] Daniel Taupin†. *The varsects package*, November 1998. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/taupin/varsects.sty. 53, 73, 88, 240, 253, 275

[438] Philip Taylor. *Computer Typesetting or Electronic Publishing? New trends in scientific publication*. TUGboat, 17(4):367–381, February 1996. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-4/tb53tayl.pdf.

[439] Harold Thimbleby. *"See also" indexing with Makeindex*. TUGboat, 12(2):290–290, June 1991. Also check [440]. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32thim.pdf. 593

[440] Harold Thimbleby. *Erratum: "See also" indexing with Makeindex*. TUGboat, 13(1):95–95, April 1992. Erratum to [439]. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34thim.pdf. 592

[441] Kresten Krab Thorup, Frank Jensen, and Chris A. Rowley. *The calc package (Infix notation arithmetic in LaTeX)*, August 2005. Available from: http:/mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/calc.dtx. 21, 210

[442] Karsten Tinnefeld. *The quotchap document style*, February 1998. mailto:tinnefeld@irb.cs.uni-dortmund.de. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/quotchap/quotchap.pdf. 53, 75, 88, 235, 254, 276

[443] Mark Trettin. *Une liste des péchés des utilisateurs de LaTeX 2ε (ou Commandes et extensions obsolètes, et quelques autres erreurs)*. mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de, mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de and mailto:Yvon.Henel@wanadoo.fr, June 2004. English translation by Jürgen Fenn, french translation by Yvon Henel. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/l2tabu/french/l2tabufr-heavy.pdf.

[444] Mark Trettin. *An essential guide to LaTeX 2ε usage (Obsolete commands and packages)*. mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de and mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de, June 2006. English translation by Jürgen Fenn. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/l2tabu/english/l2tabuen.pdf.

[445] Groupe de travail TWS-TDS [52]. *TDS: une structure de répertoires pour les fichiers TeX*, June 2004. French translation of [446] by Jean-Côme Charpentier, with a postface by Fabrice Popineau. Available from: ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/44-twg-tds.pdf. 238, 245

[446] TUG Working Group on a TeX Directory Structure (TWG-TDS). *A Directory Structure for TeX Files*, June 2004. mailto:tds@tug.org. Available from: http://www.tug.org/tds/tds.pdf. 238, 245, 593

[447] Hideo Umeki. *The geometry package*, July 2002. mailto:hideo.umeki@toshiba.co.jp. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/geometry/manual.pdf. 115, 218

[448] *The Unicode Standard* [online], February 2006. Available from: http://unicode.org. 215

[449] Christian Valantin, Florence Morgiensztern, and Collective. *OIF*. In *La Francophonie dans le monde 2002–2003*, Paris, July 2003. Organisation Internationale de la Francophonie, Larousse.

[450] Piet van Oostrum. *TeX Implementations*, November 2002. mailto:piet@cs.uu.nl, Department of Computer Science, Padualaan 14, De Uithof, PO Box 80.089, 3508 TB, Utrecht, The Netherlands. Available from: http://www.cs.uu.nl/~piet/teximpl.pdf.

[451] Thomas van Oudenhove de Saint Géry. *Bibliographie avec* BibTeX, 2003. Available from: http://www.enstimac.fr/~vanouden/LaTeX/contrib/Pres_Bibtex.tar.gz.

[52] TWS-TDS = *TUG Working Group on a TeX Directory Structure (TWG-TDS).*

[452] Timothy Van Zandt. *Documentation for `fancybox.sty`: Box tips and tricks for LaTeX*, September 2000. mailto:tvz@Princeton.EDU. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/fancybox/fancybox.pdf.

[453] Suki K. Venkatesan. *Moving from bytes to words to semantics*. *TUGboat*, 26(2):165–169, August 2005. Proceedings of the 2005 Annual Meeting (Wuhan, China). 505

[454] Didier Verna, Bernd Jaehne, and Tony Roberts. *The minitoc-hyper package*, May 1999. **This package is obsolete, use now the minitoc package [157]**, mailto:verna@inf.enst.fr, mailto:Bernd.Jaehne@aeon.de, mailto:aroberts@usq.edu.au. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/. 62, 224, 250

[455] Boris Veytsman. *Notes on principles and TeX implementation*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. mailto:borisv@lk.net, Computational Material Science Center, MS 5A2, George Mason University, Fairfax, VA 22030. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/veytsman-design/veytsman-design.pdf.

[456] Boris Veytsman, Bernd Schandl, Lee Netherton, and C. V. Radhakrishnan. *nomencl A Package to create a Nomenclature*, September 2005. http://sarovar.org/projects/nomencl. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/nomencl/nomencl.pdf. 51, 136, 228, 404

[457] Carl F. Voegelin and Florence M. Voegelin. *Classification and Index of the World Languages*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, December 1977.

[458] Vladimir Volovich, Werner Lemberg, and LaTeX3 Project Team. *Cyrillic language support in LaTeX*, March 1999. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/doc/cyrguide.pdf. 205

[459] Stephan P. von Bechtolsheim. *TeX in practice: Comments on a 4-volumes, 1400-pages series on TeX*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):409–412, September 1990. http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29bechtolsheim.pdf.

[460] Stephan P. von Bechtolsheim. *TeX in Practice*. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Germany / Heidelberg, Germany / London, UK / etc., 1992.

1. Basics.
2. Paragraphs, Maths and Fonts.
3. Tokens, Macros.
4. Output Routines.

(Une approche progressive des secrets de TeX). 280

[461] Herbert Voss. *LaTeX in Naturwissenshaften & Mathematik*. Franzis Verlag GmbH, June 2006.

[462] Douglas Waud and Tim Null. *`\begin{here}`*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 1(1), January 2005. mailto:douglas.waud@umassmed.edu, http://users.umassmed.edu/douglas.waud/, and mailto:tim@timnull.com. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-1/waud/waud.pdf.

[463] Staszek Wawrykiewicz. *PLaTeX i pdfPLaTeX*. In polish, mailto:staw@gust.org.pl, May 2005. Available from: http://www.tug.org/teTeX/tetex-texmfdist/doc/latex/platex/platex.html. 44, 234, 537

[464] Daphne West and Anna Sitnikova-Rioland. *Lire et écrire le russe*. In Cécile Desprairies, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, January 2006.

[465] Graham Williams. *Graham Williams' TEX Catalogue*. *TUGboat*, 21(1):17–90, 2000. Last version at: http://mirror.ctan.org/help/Catalogue/catalogue.html. Available from: http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-1/tb66catal.pdf.

[466] Peter R. Wilson. *The stdclsdv package*, July 2000. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/stdclsdv/stdclsdv.pdf. 235, 237

[467] Peter R. Wilson. *The chngpage package*, August 2003. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/chngpage.sty. 257, 630

[468] Peter R. Wilson. *The needspace package*, January 2003. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/needspace.sty. 58, 229

[469] Peter R. Wilson. *The tocloft package*, September 2003. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/tocloft/tocloft.pdf. 44, 64, 71, 78, 88, 115, 129, 227, 228, 238, 416

[470] Peter R. Wilson. *The abstract package*, April 2004. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/abstract/abstract.pdf. 53, 70, 88, 207, 252, 419

[471] Peter R. Wilson. *The appendix package*, April 2004. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/appendix/appendix.pdf. 64, 88, 208, 251, 415

[472] Peter R. Wilson. *The tocbibind package*, May 2004. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/tocbibind/tocbibind.pdf. 50, 88, 96, 100, 104, 144, 226, 228, 238, 251, 415

[473] Peter R. Wilson. *The tocvsec2 package*, May 2004. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/tocvsec2/tocvsec2.pdf.

[474] Peter R. Wilson. *The ccaption package*, March 2005. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ccaption/ccaption.pdf. 54, 72, 88, 211, 277

[475] Peter R. Wilson. *Critical editions and arabic typesetting: the ledarab and afoot packages*, March 2005. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledarab.pdf.

[476] Peter R. Wilson. *The docmfp package*, March 2005. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/docmfp/docmfp.pdf.

[477] Peter R. Wilson. *ledmac, a presumptuous attempt to port EDMAC, TABMAC and EDSTANZA to LaTeX*, March 2005. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledmac.pdf.

[478] Peter R. Wilson. *Parallel typesetting for critical editions: the ledpar package*, April 2005. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledpar.pdf.

[479] Peter R. Wilson. *The Memoir Class*, September 2005. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memman.pdf. 64, 65, 72, 88, 223, 251, 253, 279, 288, 418

[480] Peter R. Wilson. *The romannum package*, May 2005. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/romannum/romannum.pdf. 54, 76, 88, 235, 254, 276

[481] Peter R. Wilson. *The memoir standard class*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 3, August 2006. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/wilson/wilson.pdf. 64, 65, 72, 88, 223, 251, 253, 279, 288, 418

[482] Peter R. Wilson. *The Memoir Class (Addendum)*, December 2007. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memmanadd.pdf. 64, 65, 72, 88, 223, 251, 253, 279, 288, 418

[483] Peter R. Wilson and Donald Arseneau. *The ifmtarg package*, March 2000. mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net, mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/ifmtarg.sty. 219, 279

[484] Joseph A. Wright. *Quick floats in LaTeX*, June 2007. mailto:joseph.wright@morningstar2.co.uk. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/trivfloat/trivfloat.pdf. 54, 88, 164, 239, 257, 270, 278, 629

[485] C. S. Yogananda and K. K. Subramaniam. *KannadaTeX* [online], April 2004. Available from: http://sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex/. mailto:yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in, mailto:yogacs@users.sarovar.org, mailto:subbukk@users.sarovar.org. 220, 517

[486] Charlie S. Zender. *LaTeX Cheat Sheet*, March 2007. mailto:zender@uci.edu, Department of Earth Science, University of California, Irvine, CA 92697-3100. Available from: http://dust.ess.uci.edu/doc/ltx/ltx.pdf.

[487] Vadim V. Zhytnikov and Vadim Maslov. *The LHCYR collection* [online], December 1998. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/lhcyr/. mailto:vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru, mailto:vadik@cs.umd.edu. 544, 545

Changes history

⋆ **version 00**

- 1990/10/01
  - Original version, by Nigel WARD.
- 1991/11/01
  - Revised to reuse `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection` commands transparently, generate toc-file-name automatically, assorted other cleanup (by Dan JURAFSKY).

⋆ **version 01**

- 1993/06/01
  - New design, to avoid allocating a newwrite, or file descriptor, for each chapter (a deadly sin!) (Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT).
  - Added `\chapterend` to terminate the scope of a minitoc. (*If you forgot putting* `\chapterend` at the end of *each* chapter, an entry for the next chapter will appear in each minitoc.) (Thanks to Yufan HU).
  - Replaced the `minipage` environment by a `verse` environment, to allow a minitoc being split across pages.
  - All the layout of the minitoc is in the command, so if someboby wants to redefine that layout, he has just to rewrite it (and only it).
  - You can inhibit the minitoc for the next chapter by preceding it with `\minitocno`. (`\minitocyes` is useless for the user, because it is implicit *after* the `\chapter*` pseudo-chapters).
  - Problems: you *must* have `\chapterend` to terminate each chapter with a minitoc. How about avoiding this constraint?
  - The depth of the minitoc is user-adjustable with the counter `minitocdepth` (similar to `tocdepth` for the table of contents).
  - At least three passes (3) of LaTeX are necessary to get correct minitocs (the first pass creates the `.mtc`⟨*X*⟩ files, the second uses them (but they may contain wrong page numbers) and recreates them, the third should be ok).
  - Works with `\chapter[xxx]{yyy}` and floating bodies. Works with two columns (but the minitoc is composed in one column; how to make it to spread over the two columns?).
  - Some mods added to work with xr (external references). xr version 5 is much more tolerant.

⋆ version 02

- 1993/07/05
  - Added compatibility with hangcaption (the package hangcaption (if present) must be loaded *before* the minitoc package). *Beware* to options modifying `\@caption`. W0092

※ version 03

- 1993/07/09
  - Version 3 not released (buggy).

⋆ version 04

- 1993/07/09
  - Added `\if@realch` to avoid contents lines from pseudo-chapters to go into the toc.
  - The package mtcoff allows you to use a LaTeX document with minitoc commands and to make them transparent: just replace the minitoc package by mtcoff.

⋆ version 05

- 1993/07/13
  - Added a selection mechanism to not write spurious things in the minitocs.

⋆ version 06

- 1993/07/15
  - Fixed problems about chapters in the toc, removed obsolete `\caption` stuff (filters are much better) added compatibility with toch (toch makes a table of chapters; if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc; in fact, it is the ancestor of the shorttoc [155] package).

⋆ version 07

- 1993/07/22
  - (*major differences*) Completely rewritten, using tricks from xr (the version 5, by David P. Carlisle). The info for minitocs is directly stolen from the `.toc` file. `\chapterend` and `\minitocno` are suppressed, `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc` and `\faketableofcontents` added.

⋆ version 08

- 1993/07/29
  - Spacing adjustements.

⋆ **version 09**

- 1993/08/04
  - Added mods for MS-DOS (search for MS-DOS, uncomment; search for UNIX, comment out). MS-DOS allows only 3 characters for extensions in file names (what a pity!).

⋆ **version 10**

- 1993/08/05
  - Works now with appendices. Detects now the obsolete versions of `latex.tex` (`\@inputcheck` or `\reset@font` not defined).

⋆ **version 11**

- 1993/08/18
  - Added `\mtcSfont`, font for section entries, `\mtcSSfont` for subsection entries, `\mtcSSSfont` for subsubsection entries, `\mtcPfont` for paragraph entries, `\mtcSPfont` for subparagraph entries.

⋆ **version 12**

- 1993/12/16
  - Use `\kern` in place of `\vspace*`, and added penalties (`\nopagebreak`) to avoid a page break just before last `\mtc@rule`.
  - Also added a `samepage` environnement.
  - Removed old commented out lines from previous versions.

⋆ **version 13**

- 1993/12/17
  - Added `\minilof` and `\minilot` stuff. For MS-DOS, uncomment the definition of `\SHORTEXT`.

⋆ **version 14**

- 1994/01/03
  - Corrected space under `minitoc/lof/lot` and added a `\raggedright` setting to avoid "underfull" warnings.
  - Corrected some spacing problems (avoiding ~'s). `\mtifont` is changed from `\normalsize\bf` to `\large\bf`.
  - Some modifications suggested by Donald Arseneau (thanks): `\@newread` becomes `\newread`, not outer version of `\newread`; `\empty` replaced by `\relax` in the spare definition of `\reset@font`.
  - Removed the setting of `\clubpenalty` and `\widowpenalty` to `10 000` (done by `\samepage`), and `\noindent`.
  - Simplified processing of optional argument in `\minitoc`, `\minilof` and `\minilot`.

⋆ version 15

- 1994/01/27
  - Added \parttoc, \partlof and \partlot for books, \secttoc, \sectlof and \sectlot for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.
- 1994/01/27
  - Added \parttoc, \partlof and \partlot for books, \secttoc, \sectlof and \sectlot for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.

⋆ version 16

- 1994/02/02
  - Bug fixes (typos).

⋆ version 17

- 1994/06/23
  - 'n' (null) synonym of 'e' (empty) in the optional argument of \minitoc, \dominitoc, and siblings.
  - Compatibility with "LaTeX 2_ε". Thanks to Denis B. Roegel (who found the problem) and Frank Mittelbach (who gave the hints to solve).

⋆ version 18

- 1994/06/26
  - Make minitoc really compatible with LaTeX 2_ε.
  - Introduce the language files as options. Many thanks to Michel Goossens (via Frank Mittelbach) who was inspired by the code of the babel package (by Johannes L. Braams).

⋆ version 19

- 1994/08/16
  - Added stuff for numbering of chapters (parts, sections) not starting at 1. \firstchapteris etc. commands added.
  - \mtcrule, \nomtcrule etc. commands added.
  - Corrected a bug in \c@mti.
  - Corrected mtcswedish.sty (Jan Michael Rynning).
  - Corrected appendix in articles.

⋆ version 20

- 1994/08/25
  - Corrected spacing before and after minitocs and siblings.
  - Added the \mtcpagenumbers and \nomtcpagenumbers commands (and siblings) to make minitocs with/without page numbers. Default: with page numbers.

- Corrected (difficult bug) appendix in articles.
- Corrected vertical spacing.
- Corrected a problem with chapters numbered with uppercase roman numbers.

⋆ version 21

- 1994/09/07
  - Corrected typos in minitoc and `minitoc.tex`.

⋆ version 22

- 1994/10/10
  - Corrected typos in minitoc.

⋆ version 23

- 1994/11/08
  - Added a missing line in `\sectlof`.
  - Works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (thanks to Denis B. Roegel).
  - Added the notion of "absolute numbering" for the mini-tables.
  - Removed stuff for `\firstchapteris` and co. These commands are obsolete.
  - Removed appendix stuff.

⋆ version 24

- 1994/12/21
  - The `\protect` commands have been removed from the `.toc`, `.lot` and `.lot` files, so some internal macros have been corrected to be compatible with the LaTeX 2_ε release of December 1994. Thanks to Denis B. Roegel who did the work.

⋆ version 25

- 1996/09/13
  - Updated `mtcnorsk.sty` and added `mtcnynorsk.sty` on a suggestion from Dag Langmyhr.

⋆ version 26

- 1996/11/14
  - Language specific files are now named *language*`.mld` (replacing names of the form `mtc`*language*`.sty`) because they are not packages and it makes shorter names.
  - Added breton, estonian, germanb, greek, irish, russianb, scottish, lower and upper sorbian; renamed "esperanto" by "esperant" like in the babel package.

⋆ version 27

- 1996/12/20
  - Corrections for starred sectionning commands.
  - `english.mld` loaded as default language.
  - Added `vietnam.mld` and `arab.mld`.
  - Renamed minitocoff into mtcoff to keep the name short.

⋆ version 28

- 1997/10/29
  - Added the afrikaan(s), brazil, and ethiopia(n) languages.
  - Added autoconfiguration of extensions.
  - Added the `shortext` package option.
  - Added *coffee* stuff.
  - Added `\addstarred` stuff (for starred chapter stuff).
  - Fixed bug in parttocs.
- 1998/06/15
  - A typo corrected by Donald ARSENEAU:
    `{\let@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}`
    should probably be
    `{\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}`
    (a backslash was missing after `\let`). Thanks to him.
  - Added the bahasa language.
- 1998/12/03
  - Added the `tight` and `loose` package options.

⋆ version 29

- 1999/03/16
  - Added the bicig, buryat, mongol and russianc languages.
- 1999/06/28
  - Added the armenian language (from ArmTEX [142]).
- 1999/07/23
  - Added the `dotted`/`undotted` package options (default: `dotted`).
- 1999/07/29
  - Added `lithuanian.mld`.

⋆ version 30

- 1999/12/06
  - Added the basque, ngermanb, serbian, ukraineb, and welsh languages.
  - Corrected a bug in `\sltname` definition (`mlt` should be `slt`).

★ **version 31**

- 2000/04/04
  - Added compatibility with the hyperref package, thanks to Heiko Oberdiek, who has also simplified some code and fixed the infamous `\chapter*` bug.

★ **version 32**

- 2000/08/08
  - Added very (too) numerous new commands for the mini-table features: `\beforeparttoc`, `\beforepartlof`, `\beforepartlot`, `\afterparttoc`, `\afterpartlof`, `\afterpartlot`, `\thispageparttocstyle`, `\thispagepartlofstyle`, and `\thispagepartlotstyle`.
  - Documentation improved by Stefan Ulrich.
  - `\nomtcrule` corrected.

★ **version 33**

- 2000/12/07
  - Added new adjustment commands: `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, and `\mtcaddpart`. These commands add stuff in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files for the `\chapter*` (`\section*` and `\part*`) problem. From a suggestion by Karl F. Everitt.
- 2000/12/08
  - Corrected a feature in `\mtcaddchapter` and co. with a blank optional argument.

★ **version 34**

- 2000/12/13
  - Added in the documentation a section for use with the tocbibind package. I0046
  - Added `.mld` files for alternate names of languages: so, `american.mld` just loads `english.mld`, which contains the real definitions.

★ **version 35**

- 2001/01/09
  - Added macros to test if a file is “empty” (i.e., empty, blank or inexistent) or “non empty” (i.e., useful). I used some code from Stephan P. von Bechtolsheim.
  - Added the `checkfiles`/`nocheckfiles` package options.
  - Replaced `\The@chapter` by `\The@mtc`.
- 2001/02/26
  - Added `bulgarian.mld`, `hebrew.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `latin.mld`, and `samin.mld`.
- 2001/03/09
  - Added `\mtcselectlanguage`.
- 2001/06/01
  - Fixed the `estonian` package option (missing).
- 2001/07/04
  - Added the interlingua language.

⋆ version 36

- 2002/02/11
  - Corrected an interaction with `\tableofcontents` which creates a `\chapter*` or a `\section*`, perturbing `mtc`/`stc` counters (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
- 2002/02/18
  - Corrected a spacing problem with empty titles (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
  - Workaround for the `\parttoc`-`\chapter*` problem.
- 2002/02/19
  - Added `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount`.
- 2002/02/27
  - Fixed test for empty files.
- 2002/03/13
  - Added the `bangla` language.
- 2002/03/15
  - Reduced depth of `\mtc@strutbox`.

※ version 37

- 2003/01/24
  - Version #37 dropped.

⋆ version 38

- 2003/01/24
  - `pt` becomes `\@pt` and `0pt` becomes `\z@`.
  - `\hrule` and `\vrule` replaced by `\rule` (LaTeX).
  - Added `\mtc@zrule` for zero-dims rules.
  - Added the frenchb language (synonym of french).
- 2003/01/30
  - Changed the test for empty titles.
  - Added the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options.
- 2003/01/31
  - The `tight` and `loose` package options are applied to `\parttoc` (Thomas LEONHARDT).
- 2003/02/07
  - Package options `flsection` and `flsectionb` removed and replaced by the `insection` package option (like `flsectionb`).
- 2003/02/11
  - Corrected numbering of SLF, SLT.
- 2003/02/20
  - Added `frenchle` and `frenchpro` language options (synonyms of `french`).

- Corrected secttocs, at least.

- 2003/03/18
  - Corrected some vertical spacings and struts (I added some mods by Frank MITTELBACH, many thanks to him.). A lot of cleaning remains to do, but the release seems to be needed now.

⋆ version 39

- 2003/04/09
  - Modern font commands for compatibility with the memoir class.
  - `\nomtcpagenumbers` and memoir class.
- 2003/06/08
  - Added `\@fileswfalse` and `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` for the notoccite package (requested by Donald ARSENEAU); added the `notoccite` package option (loads the notoccite package).
- 2004/09/08
  - Added language options and `.mld` files for dialects: `canadian` (`english`), `acadian`, `acadien`, `canadien` (`french`), `naustrian`, `ngerman` (`ngermanb`).
  - Added comments in `.mld` files using special fonts.
  - Documentation: added a paragraph about making a TOC for appendices, eventually not listed in the main TOC.
- 2004/09/17
  - Corrections in the documentation; corrections about rules.

⋆ version 40

- 2004/12/09
  - Added the japanese and castillan languages.
  - Removed the test on the presence of the multicol package in `minitoc.tex`, because multicol is a required package.
  - Added a figure in `minitoc.tex` about the need of three compilations.
  - Added some infos in `minitoc.bug`.
  - Added a paragraph about a problem with the appendix package. I0042
- 2004/12/13
  - Updated `minitoc-fr.bib` and `minitoc.bib`.
- 2004/12/14
  - Added the `hints` package option. This option is still experimental; your advice is welcome.
- 2004/12/20
  - Added `minitoc-fr.pdf` (french documentation in PDF format).

⋆ version 41

- 2005/01/05
  - Corrections in documentation.
  - Message added if some sectionning commands are not available.
  - Replaced `\typeout` commands in minitoc by the `\PackageInfo` or `\PackageWarning` commands; with the line number when useful (`\@gobble` if no line number). Hence, the package is less verbose (`\PackageInfo` writes only in the *document*`.log` file, not on the terminal).
- 2005/01/06
  - Added the `\mtcsetfont` (Benjamin BAYART) and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands, with a much simpler syntax.
- 2005/01/10
  - Added bibliography.
- 2005/01/11
  - $\mathcal{AMS}$ classes: amsart and amsproc are incompatible with minitoc, amsbook needs precautions.
- 2005/01/12
  - Added `\mtcsetformat`.
- 2005/01/18
  - Added `\mtcsettitle`.
  - Added a hint for recommending the `insection` package option.
- 2005/01/19
  - Added a hint about the presence of `\dominitoc` and co.
  - Added a hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and co.
  - Improved documentation about hints.
- 2005/01/20
  - Added a hint about using short extensions with more that 99 parts or 99 chapters or 99 sections.
- 2005/01/25
  - `\ptifont`: `\Huge\bfseries` becomes `\LARGE\bfseries`.
- 2005/01/26
  - Added `\mtcsetpagenumbers`.
- 2005/01/28
  - Added many new language files: `serbianc.mld`, `chinese1.mld`, `chinese2.mld`, `hangul1.mld`, `hangul2.mld`, `hangul3.mld`, `hangul4.mld`, `hanja1.mld`, `hanja2.mld`, `japanese2.mld`, `japanese3.mld`, `japanese4.mld`, `japanese5.mld`, `thai.mld`.
- 2005/02/02
  - Added `\mtcsetrules`.
- 2005/02/03

- Added \plfrule, \noplfrule, \mlfrule, \nomlfrule, \slfrule, \noslfrule, \pltrule, \nopltrule, \mltrule, \nomltrule, \sltrule, \nosltrule.

- 2005/02/04
  - Added the mtchideinmaintoc environment.
- 2005/02/08
  - Added latvian.mld, letton.mld, greek-mono.mld, greek-polydemo.mld, greek-polykatha.mld, polish2.mld, russian2m.mld, and russian2o.mld as new language files.
- 2005/02/09
  - Added the mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot environments.
- 2005/02/10
  - Added tests on the mtchideinmain* environments.
- 2005/02/14
  - Added \mtcfixindex.

※ version 42

- 2005/02/14
  - Version 42 not released.
  - Replaced “language” by “langue” in the french documentation.
- 2005/02/15
  - Fixed a minor typo.
- 2005/02/16
  - Upgraded \mtcfixindex.
- 2005/02/21
  - Added \mtcsettitle, forgotten to be inserted in v41.

⋆ version 43

- 2005/02/21
  - Version 43: consolidation of v40, v41 and v42.
- 2005/02/24
  - Fixed a big bug in \mtcsetformat.
  - Fixed a bug in mtcoff.sty about \mtcfixindex.
- 2005/03/02
  - Fixed the \mtcset... macros.
  - Moved history to the end of package code.
  - Added the INSTALL file and a chapter about installation.
- 2005/03/07
  - Fixed a typo (Benjamin Bayart).
  - Completed the hint about consistency of \dominitoc/\minitoc and co.

- 2005/03/08
  - Added a hint about consistency of \minitoc and \tableofcontents.
- 2005/03/09
  - Added comments about fonts.
- 2005/03/10
  - Corrections in documentation.
- 2005/03/11
  - Added \mtcsetfeature.
- 2005/03/14
  - Added bulgarianb.mld (upper bulgarian).
- 2005/03/15
  - Added *[-\baselineskip] after the \\ after the top rule of each part level mini-table.
- 2005/03/16
  - Corrections in the arguments of \mtcsetfeature.
- 2005/03/18
  - Removed \markboth for minitocs (...) and secttocs (...).
- 2005/03/21
  - Added spanish2.mld.
- 2005/03/22
  - Added a hint for the abstract package. I0040
- 2005/04/07
  - Corrected the stc@verse environment.
  - Added finnish2.mld, latin2.mld, and magyar2.mld.
- 2005/04/08
  - Renamed portuges.mld as portugues.mld.
- 2005/04/12
  - Correction in \mtcskip.
  - First version in .dtx format.
- 2005/04/14
  - Removed \ypart, \ychapter, \ysection, and stuff; unused.
- 2005/05/11
  - Corrected a typo in \@dosectlot.
  - Added \mtcfixglossary.
  - Print the documentation with "oneside" to have all marginal notes on left. Added the (extended to 54 floats) code of morefloats (Don Hosek) to allow more marginpars and floats.
  - Added minitoc.ist to format the index correctly.
- 2005/05/26

- Fixed rules in parttocs, partlofs and partlots.

- 2005/05/30
  - Fixed chapter-level entries in parttocs, when page numbers must be removed.
  - Added a hint about the sectsty package (must be loaded *before* minitoc). I0043
- 2005/06/01
  - Added a hint about attempts to insert empty mini-tables.
  - Added a hint about the use of obsolete commands.
  - The mini-lists of figures or tables should not be printed empty even if `tocdepth` < 1.
- 2005/06/02
  - Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables.
  - Added `\mtcsetdepth`.
  - The `hints` option is the default and no more considered as experimental.
- 2005/06/03
  - Added an error message in `\mtcsetdepth` if the counter is not available.
- 2005/06/06
  - Added `portuges.mld`, which loads `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/06/07
  - Added three variants for the malayalam language: `malayalam-keli.mld`, `malayalam-rachana.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana2.mld`.
- 2005/06/14
  - Added method for bilingual documentation.
- 2005/06/15
  - Added `minitoc-fr.ist` to format correctly the index in french.
- 2005/06/16
  - Changed “Liste des Tables” by “Liste des Tableaux” in `french.mld`, and in the french documentation, to stick to the choices of the babel package.
- 2005/06/17
  - The file `minitoc-fr.dtx` is now generated by `minitoc.ins`.
- 2005/06/21
  - Added “OUI”, “NON”, “oui”, “non”, “O”, and “o” as true/false keywords.
  - Compacted the code about detection of short/long extensions.
- 2005/06/22
  - Added “VRAI”, “FAUX”, “vrai”, “faux”, “V”, and “v” as true/false keywords.
- 2005/06/23
  - Correctly set the `\ifFTR` flag to have the names of months in the right language in the bibliography.
- 2005/06/29

  - Set the flag \mtcoffwarn@true in mtcoff if a command \mtcadd... is found.
- 2005/07/01
  - Added castillian.mld.
  - Renamed portugues.mld as portuguese.mld.
- 2005/07/11
  - Added brazilian.mld, british.mld, UKenglish.mld, and USenglish.mld.
- 2005/07/12
  - Suppressed "General:" in the changes history.
- 2005/07/13
  - Replaced some \PackageWarning commands by \PackageInfo.
- 2005/07/18
  - Restoring the correspondence of each language option with a .mld file.
- 2005/07/20
  - Improving the mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot environments.
- 2005/07/21
  - Removing unused some flags \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@ and \if@mtc@setrules@act@.
  - Added the \decrementptc, \decrementmtc, and \decrementstc commands.
- 2005/07/22
  - Corrected a bug in mtcoff.
  - Improved some messages in mtcoff.
  - Added a test on the version of the placeins package.
- 2005/08/23
  - Added a note about \FloatBarrier.
- 2005/08/24
  - Added a note about an alignment problem in the minitocs. Updated minitoc.bug.
  - Made two versions of the mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot environments, depending on the presence of the corresponding depth counter.
  - The memoir class is incompatible if too recent.
- 2005/08/25
  - Added a comment about the position of the \do... preparation commands.
  - Corrections in the mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot environments.
- 2005/08/26
  - Added guarani.mld.
- 2005/08/29
  - Added \incrementptc, \incrementmtc, and \incrementstc.

- Added an optional argument to \adjustptc, \adjustmtc, and \adjuststc.
- Added the k-tight and k-loose package options.

- 2005/09/02
  - Added a patch for the recent version of the memoir class.
- 2005/09/06
  - Added spanish3.mld.
- 2005/09/08
  - Use \mtcselectlanguage in language options and in "secondary" .mld files.
- 2005/09/09
  - Added \mtcloadmlo to be used in some .mld files to load a .mlo file.
- 2005/09/12
  - Added a test to forbid direct calls of \mtcloadmlo by the user.
- 2005/09/13
  - Added farsi1.mld, farsi1.mlo, farsi2.mld, and farsi2.mlo.
  - Added a note about the rubber tool.
- 2005/09/15
  - Added mtcglo.ist to format the glossary.
- 2005/09/16
  - Removed the page numbers in the glossary. Done in the *mk scripts.

⋆ version 44

- 2005/09/26
  - Changes history (glossary) typeset in RaggedRight.
- 2005/09/27
  - Added germanb2.mld, ngermanb2.mld, norsk2.mld, and nynorsk2.mld.
- 2005/09/28
  - New method for history: embedded lists on 3 levels.
  - Removed mtcglo.ist.
- 2005/09/29
  - Cleaned the *mk scripts.
  - Added the listfiles package option.
- 2005/09/30
  - Corrected typos.
  - Added the name of the .maf file in the message of the listfiles package option.
  - Improved the cleaning in the *mk scripts, using a .maf file.
- 2005/10/03
  - Load the patch for the memoir class only if necessary; do not load it if memoir is dated after 2005/09/25.

  - Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectionning commands.
- 2005/10/04
  - Added the `nolistfiles` package option.
  - Added a hint about the caption, caption2, ccaption, and mcaption packages (they must be loaded *before* minitoc).
- 2005/10/05
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Fixed some marginal notes in the commented code.
- 2005/10/06
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
  - Use the xargs Unix command in the `*mk` scripts to remove the auxiliary files.
- 2005/10/07
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
  - Added a short intro to the "Frequently Asked Questions" chapter and to `minitoc.bug`.
- 2005/11/02
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/04
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/07
  - Begin adding the "Jargon" chapter.
- 2005/11/08
  - Added the french LaTeX Companion [332].
- 2005/11/09
  - Continuing the "Jargon" chapter.
  - Adding `minitoc.pre` in `minitoc.l`.
  - Adding a note about the need of running `imk` before `emk` or `fmk`.
- 2005/11/10
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Added a note about a problem with minitoc, hyperref and memoir.
  - Continuing the "Jargon" chapter.
- 2005/11/14
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Continuing the "Jargon" chapter.
  - Improve the notes about the memoir class.
- 2005/11/15
  - Continuing the "Jargon" chapter.
  - Improve the notes about the memoir class.
  - Added `\plfSfont`, `\pltSfont`, `\mlfSfont`, `\mltSfont`, `\slfSfont`, and `\sltSfont` for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.

- 2005/11/16
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed a bug about fonts for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
  - Added `bicig2.mld`, `bithe.mld`, `manju.mld`, `xalx.mld`, and `khalkha.mld`.
- 2005/11/17
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Added testing via internal *quarks* commands in `\mtcsetfont`.
- 2005/11/18
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/21
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/22
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/23
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/24
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/25
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Changed “table” into “tableau” in the french doc, where necessary.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/28
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/29
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Fixed typos in the bibliography.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/30
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Avoid some warnings “Token not allowed” from `pdftex`.
- 2005/12/01
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/12/02
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Reordering a long sequence of citations.

- Added “ `mailto:`” in the mailing URLs.

- 2005/12/05
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Added a hint about the varsects package (must be loaded *before* minitoc). W0038
- 2005/12/06
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Correcting an hyperlink in the bibliography (for the xr package).
  - Attempting to avoid broken URLs, using `quote`, footnotes and `\par`.
- 2005/12/07
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updating the bibliography.
  - Corrections of layout (some headers, a table).
  - In the warning message of the hint about a number of mini-tables greater than 99 (if short extensions), give the effective number.
  - Reduce the width of some info, warning or error messages.
- 2005/12/08
  - Corrections of layout (some headers).
- 2005/12/09
  - Corrections of french quotes.
  - Added some PDF options.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected an URL to the $\mathcal{AMS}$ in the bibliography.
- 2005/12/19
  - Made some messages shorter (mainly by removing stars).
- 2005/12/21
  - Correction of typos.
  - Added some labels.
  - Added a chapter with the (explained) messages. Not yet sorted.
  - The documentation needs 4 LaTeX runs.
- 2005/12/22
  - Made some messages shorter.
  - Corrections in the list of messages.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/12/23
  - Improving the placement of floats on pages of floats: to the top.
- 2006/01/03
  - Corrections in the documentation (thanks to Markus Gleiszner).
  - Added `addsec.tex`
- 2006/01/04

- Corrected the flag `\ifundottedmtc`.
- Correction to make `addsec.tex` work.

- 2006/01/05
  - Added "*" as keyword for the first argument of `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` (asked by Markus GLEISZNER).
  - Removed "`\MessageBreak`" from the index.
- 2006/01/06
  - Continuing the "Jargon" chapter.
  - Corrected the bibliography entry about BangTEX.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Used the afterpage package [115] in the documentation to fix a float positionning problem.
- 2006/01/09
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Fixing a float positionning problem.
- 2006/01/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Continuing the "Jargon" chapter.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added the bahasam language.
  - Added the albanian language.
  - Added the hebrew2 language.
- 2006/01/11
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the documentation for the albanian, bahasa, bahasam, and hebrew2 languages.
  - Updated `french.mld` (removing abusive uppercase letters).
  - Corrected the `italian.mld` file. Added the italian2 language.
  - Added the australian and newzealand languages (english).
  - Renamed the bahasa language as bahasai; bahasa is synonym of bahasai.
  - Added the malay and meyalu languages, synonyms of bahasam.
  - Added the indon and indonesian languages, synonyms of bahasai.
- 2006/01/12
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the acknowledgements.
  - Added references to the new bibliographic entries.
- 2006/01/13
  - Fixed an instability in page breaks in the documentation of `japanese3.mld`.
  - Added comments in some `.mld` files.
  - Added `magyar3.mld`.
  - Updated `lithuanian.mld`.

- 2006/01/16
  - Correction in \mtcaddsection.
- 2006/01/17
  - Correction in \mtcfixindex and \mtcfixglossary.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Limitation of the initial depth of displayed bookmarks.
- 2006/01/18
  - Added some comments in point 34 of the FAQ (and in minitoc.bug) about the initialization of fonts.
  - Added romanian2.mld and romanian3.mld.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/19
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Load some packages before hyperref.
  - Added spanish4.mld.
- 2006/01/23
  - Corrected the table about default titles.
  - Corrected the keywords for \mtcsetfont.
  - Added lowersorbian.mld, uppersorbian.mld, and ukrainian.mld.
- 2006/01/24
  - Updated documentation for lowersorbian.mld, uppersorbian.mld, and ukrainian.mld.
- 2006/01/25
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/26
  - Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in minitoc.bug). I0043
- 2006/01/27
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added a note in documentation of serbian.mld and serbianc.mld.
- 2006/01/30
  - Added ethiopian2.mld (for Omega).
- 2006/01/31
  - Simplifications in the “Messages” chapter.
  - Corrections in the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2006/02/01
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added the “Postface” chapter.
- 2006/02/02

- Corrections in the “Postface” chapter.
- Updated the bibliography.

- 2006/02/06
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added package dblaccnt [328] for the “The pdfTEX Program” entry in the bibliography. Its author’s first name needs a double accent (Thế Thành HÀN); je l’ai aussi utilisé pour composer d’autres mots vietnamiens.
- 2006/02/07
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/09
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/02/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/13
  - Added `malayalam-omega.mld` and `malayalam-omega.mlo`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/14
  - Added `kannada.mld`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/15
  - Corrections in `russianb.mld` and `spanish.mld`.
  - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
  - Place `\mtcfixglossary` before `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2006/02/16
  - Added a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the acknowlegments.
- 2006/02/17
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the jargon.
- 2006/02/20
  - Added `u8hangul.mld`, `u8hangul.mlo`, `u8hanja.mld`, and `u8hanja.mlo`.
- 2006/02/21
  - Renamed languages `u8hangul` and `u8hanja` into `hangul-u8.ml[d|o]` and `hanja-u8.ml[d|o]`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/22

- Added a hint about repeated preparation commands.
- Moved up the declaration of some flags relative to the `hints` option.
- Added `\mtcprepare`.

- 2006/02/23
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/24
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/27
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `minitoc.pre` to class 6.
- 2006/02/28
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Corrected the position of tables in the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected `irish.mld`, `lsorbian.mld` and `usorbian.mld`.
  - Added `polski.mld`.
- 2006/03/01
  - Hints about the jura class and the alphanum package, incompatible with minitoc. W0029 W0025
- 2006/03/02
  - Use bibliographic styles with an `URL` field, built with the help of urlbst [196].
- 2006/03/06
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/08
  - Corrections in `magyar.mld`, `magyar2.mld`, and `magyar3.mld`.
  - Added `russian-cca.mld`, `russian-cca1.mld`, and `russian-lh.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/09
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/10
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added `russian-lhcyralt.mld`, `russian-lhcyrkoi.mld`, and `russian-lhcyrwin.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/13
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/14
  - Added the mtcmess package.
- 2006/03/16
  - The messages are now numbered.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/20

- Corrections in the documentation.

- 2006/03/21
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/22
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/28
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/29
  - Added FAQ 37 about `.mld` files and babel.
  - Added `french1.mld` and `french2.mld`.
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/30
  - Added `english1.mld` and `english2.mld`.

⋆ version 45

- 2006/03/31
  - Suppression of the PostScript versions of the documentation.
  - Added `arab2.mld`, `bicig3.mld`, `buryat2.mld`, `xalx2.mld`, and `xalx3.mld`.
- 2006/04/03
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/04
  - Added `swedish2.mld`.
  - The `insection` package option loads also the flafter package.
- 2006/04/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` as images for the *Lamed* logo (built from `lamed.tex`).
  - Reordering of the chapters in the user's manual (part I).
- 2006/04/06
  - Use sectsty to better format section titles.
- 2006/04/07
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `\ifmtcsecondpart` to check if the document has exactly 2 parts.
- 2006/04/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/11
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/12

- Corrections in the documentation.

- 2006/04/13
  - In the `insection` package option, load the flafter package *before* the placeins package.
  - Added a figure about the float barriers.
- 2006/04/27
  - Added notes in FAQ 20, about the use with the appendix package.
  - Added comments about the `insection` option.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Begin correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2006/05/02
  - Added notes in `minitoc.bug`, point 20, about the use with the appendix package.
  - End correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
  - Analogous corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/03
  - Added notes about the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
  - Added `hide1.tex` and `hide2.tex`.
  - Added a hint about the fncychap package (must be loaded *before* minitoc). W0086
  - Added a hint about the quotchap package (must be loaded *before* minitoc). W0087
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/04
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added a hint about the romannum package (must be loaded *before* minitoc). W0088
  - Added a hint about the sfheaders package (must be loaded *before* minitoc). W0089
  - Added a hint about the alnumsec package (must be loaded *before* minitoc). W0090
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/24
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Renamed `hide.tex` to `hide1.tex`.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/30
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Use `\MakeUpperCase` in `\markboth` for page styles.
- 2006/05/31
  - Update the bibliography.

- Added a hint about the captcont package (must be loaded *before* minitoc).
- Corrections in the documentation.
- Added `uighur.mld`, `uighur2.mld`, and `uighur3.mld` (as synonyms for the bicig variants).

- 2006/06/01
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added description of MonTEX in the jargon.
  - Added a comment about the `imk` script in `INSTALL` and the "Installation" chapter.
  - Added an entry about "package" in the jargon.
  - Added the `mtc-apx.tex` example file.
  - Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- 2006/06/02
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added the `gaps.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/06
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/08
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Spacing correction in `french2.mld`.

⋆ version 46

- 2006/06/09
  - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
- 2006/06/21
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Comment about the thailatex package.
- 2006/06/22
  - Generate some example files with `minitoc.dtx`/`minitoc.ins`.
  - Added chapter "Example files".
- 2006/06/23
  - Renamed chapter "Example files" as "Examples of documents".
  - Use the lipsum package [212] in some of the examples of documents.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/27

- Update the examples of documents.
- Added the `second.tex` example file.

- 2006/06/29
  - Added the `amem.tex`, `mem.tex` and `mem1.tex` example files.
- 2006/06/30
  - Added the `fo1.tex`, `fo2.tex` and `scr.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/03
  - Added the `subf.tex` example file.
  - Corrections about the depth of minilofs, minilots and siblings.
- 2006/07/04
  - Added the `tsfc.tex` and `tbi.tex` example files.
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
- 2006/07/07
  - Corrections of typos.
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Added the `2c.tex` and `mtc-bo.tex` example files.
  - Correction in `french2.mld`.
- 2006/07/10
  - Correction in minilots and minilofs (and siblings) about depth.
  - Added the `hop.tex` and `cri.tex` example files.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/11
  - Added the `livre.tex`, `ch0.tex`, `tlc.tex` and `mu.tex` example files.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/12
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/13
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - The not released versions are flagged by ※ in place of ⋆.
- 2006/07/17
  - The “About this document” section becomes a starred first chapter.
- 2006/07/18
  - Added the `hir.tex` and `hia.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/19
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Corrections in `add.tex` and `addsec.tex` for the index.
  - Added the `xmk` script to typeset the examples into PDF documents.
  - Updated the scripts to treat the examples.
- 2006/07/20
  - Do not forget `\jobname.mtc0` in the list of files.
  - In the scripts, the backup directory (`OLD`) is now `/tmp/‘whoami‘/OLD`.
  - In the scripts, the repartition directories (`CL[0-9]`) are now `/tmp/‘whoami‘/CL[0-9]`.

⋆ version 47

- 2006/07/26
  - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/27
  - Added `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` (from the Arabi system [243]).
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/28
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/31
  - Fixed `\l@xsection`.
  - Fixed some spacings in mini-tables.
- 2006/08/01
  - Added a `\kernafter...` vertical kern between each minitable and its bottom rule.
  - Added point 45 of the FAQ.
- 2006/08/03
  - Minor correction in warning message `F0008`.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Fixed a bug in `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
  - Shortened the result of some example documents by using the report class in place of the book class (hence using one side printing).

⋆ version 48

- 2006/08/04
  - Fixed typos.
- 2006/08/22
  - Update the bibliography.
  - No preamble in `add.bib`.
- 2006/08/23
  - Corrections in the TOC formatting.
  - Increasing `\textwidth`.
  - Correction of the preamble problem in `add.bib` and all generated files.
- 2006/08/24
  - Remove comments about spurious lines in preamble of generated files.
  - Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`.
- 2006/08/25
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added `hindi-modern.mld`.
  - Corrected the `\name` macro (for the documentation).

- 2006/08/28
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Correction (conversion) in `hindi-modern.mld`.
- 2006/08/29
  - Added error `E0036` if `english.mld` is not found to set the default titles. E0036
- 2006/08/31
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Modified the `plainurl.bst` to have family names of authors and editors in small caps and years in old style digits. Titles are in emphasis. The `frplain1.bst` style is also updated.
- 2006/09/01
  - Update the bibliography.
  - The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.
- 2006/09/05
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Renamed `add.bib` to `mtc-add.bib`.
  - Renamed `add.tex` to `mtc-add.tex`.
  - Renamed `addsec.tex` to `mtc-ads.tex`.
  - Renamed `2c.tex` to `mtc-2c.tex`.
  - The `listfiles` package option is now active by default.
- 2006/09/07
  - Renamed `app-mem.tex` to `mtc-amm.tex`.
  - Renamed `apx.tex` to `mtc-apx.tex`.
  - Renamed `bo.tex` to `mtc-bo.tex`.
  - Renamed `ch0.tex` to `mtc-ch0.tex`.
  - Renamed `cri.tex` to `mtc-cri.tex`.
  - Renamed `fo1.tex` to `mtc-fo1.tex`.
  - Renamed `fo2.tex` to `mtc-fo2.tex`.
  - Renamed `gaps.tex` to `mtc-gap.tex`.
  - Renamed `hia.tex` to `mtc-hia.tex`.
  - Renamed `hir.tex` to `mtc-hir.tex`.
  - Renamed `hide1.tex` to `mtc-hi1.tex`.
  - Renamed `hide2.tex` to `mtc-hi2.tex`.
  - Renamed `hop.tex` to `mtc-hop.tex`.
  - Renamed `livre.tex` to `mtc-liv.tex`.
  - Renamed `mem.tex` to `mtc-mem.tex`.
  - Renamed `mem1.tex` to `mtc-mm1.tex`.
  - Renamed `mini-art.tex` to `mtc-art.tex`.
  - Renamed `minitoc-ex.tex` to `mtc-bk.tex`.
  - Renamed `mu.tex` to `mtc-mu.tex`.
  - Renamed `scr.tex` to `mtc-scr.tex`.

- Renamed `second.tex` to `mtc-2nd.tex`.
- Renamed `subf.tex` to `mtc-sbf.tex`.
- Renamed `tbi.tex` to `mtc-tbi.tex`.
- Renamed `tlc.tex` to `mtc-tlc.tex`.
- Renamed `tsfc.tex` to `mtc-tsf.tex`.

- 2006/09/08
  - Updated the bibliography (added the Pentaglot).
  - Corrected the format of two tables about NFSS.
  - Example documents in alphabetical order in their chapter.
- 2006/09/11
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/12
  - Added a figure about systems derived from TEX and LATEX.
- 2006/09/13
  - Added the `mtc-syn.tex` example document file.

⋆ version 49

- 2006/09/14
  - Slightly modified the layout of the list of files (“Installation” chapter).
  - Simplifications in the scripts.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/18
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added point 46 in the FAQ and example file `mtc-tlo.tex`.
- 2006/09/26
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Corrections in the bibliography and the bibliographic styles.
- 2006/09/29
  - Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added “`+`” and “`-`” as synonyms for “`on`” and “`off`”, respectively.
- 2006/10/20
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Fixed typos.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added a table of some encodings.
- 2006/10/31
  - Suppressed the “Summary” entry in the summary, but added it in the Table of Contents.
  - Improving some tables.
  - Added the `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo` files.

- Updated the bibliography.

- 2006/11/03
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Corrections in formatting a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
  - Combine four figures in one (with sub-figures).
  - Added (in the memento) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with minitoc.
  - Added a hint about the hangcaption package (must be loaded *before* minitoc). W0092

- 2006/11/06
  - Completed the list of the standard classes.

- 2006/11/09
  - Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the `.mld` and `.mlo` files.
  - Added notes about the mandatory presence of the `english.mld` file. E0036

- 2006/11/13
  - The validation of the language options writes only informative messages in the *document*`.log` file and, if necessary, gives only one warning message.

⋆ version 50

- 2006/11/17
  - Removed old examples of documents: `mtc-adds.tex`, `mtc-amem.tex`, `mtc-book.tex`, `mtc-gaps.tex`, `mtc-mem1.tex`, `mtc-subf.tex`, and `mtc-tsfc.tex`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added the `tmk` script and a table describing a TDS structure for minitoc.
  - Added an item about the TDS in the jargon.
  - Updated the `INSTALL` file and the “Installation” chapter.

- 2006/11/29
  - Added the warning message `W0094` with the list of the missing minitoc languages files (`.mld` and `.mlo`).
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Updated the `INSTALL` file and the “Installation” chapter.
  - Changed the names of the scratch directories in some scripts.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added the file `minitoc.tds.zip` (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

⋆ version 51

- 2006/12/18
  - Improving the index: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, options, language options.

- 2006/12/20
  - Improving the index: names.
  - Updated some `.mld` files with names of the authors of titles.
- 2007/01/09
  - Miscellaneous corrections.
  - The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.
  - Added a `\ProvidesFile` command to the example files.
  - Indexing the environments (not perfect).
  - Indexing the files.
  - Renamed the file "`catalog`" into "`CATALOG`".
  - Indexing the counters and depth counters.
  - The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS hierarchy.

⋆ version 52

- 2007/01/11
  - Correction of index ordering.
  - Default option in boldface in the index.
  - Adding some informations about authors for language specific titles.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/01/12
  - Added fake sections in the "Examples of documents" chapter.
  - Removed the preparation of the documentation in PostScript format.
- 2007/01/15
  - Added the `cmk` script to convert the documentation from PDF format into PostScript format.
  - Removed `duplex2v.pro`.
- 2007/01/17
  - Indexing the referenced commands.
- 2007/01/18
  - Corrected the name Thế Thành Hàn (first name before last name, the english way).
  - Corrected some other names.
- 2007/01/19
  - Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.
  - Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new cyrillic encodings T2 and X2 in `mongolb.mld`).
  - Added the example file `mtc-3co.tex`.
  - Trying to use a recent version of the cite [16] package (2003/11/04, 4.01) to allow sorting, but still clashes with hyperref.
- 2007/01/26
  - Balancing the columns in the index.
- 2007/01/29

- Correction of the indexing of the environments.

- 2007/01/31
  - Improving the index layout.
  - Updated `galician.mld`.
- 2007/02/05
  - Added `mongolian.mld` which loads `mongolb.mld`.
- 2007/02/09
  - Indexing the names of authors.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/02/12
  - Updated the acknowledgements.

⋆ version 53

- 2007/02/13
  - Added the example file `mtc-fko.tex`.
  - Corrected `\kernafterminitoc` and siblings.
- 2007/02/19
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Bibliographic references for packages and classes in the index.
- 2007/03/02
  - Added a header to the index, to explain notations.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Changed the style of page and line numbers in the index.
  - Updated `kannada.mld`.
  - Dangerous bend symbols are now in the right margin.
- 2007/03/06
  - Improved the presentation of example files.
  - Using the natbib package [145, 146] to sort the sequences of citations.
- 2007/03/09
  - Correction in table 7.5 on page 247.
  - Renamed `minitoc-texmf.zip` into `minitoc-tds.zip`.
- 2007/03/19
  - Use the `sort&compress` option of the natbib package [145, 146] to compress the sequences of citations; the hypernat package must also be loaded (after natbib and hyperref).
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/03/22
  - Added changing the title of the parttoc for appendices in `mtc-apx.tex`.

⋆ version 54

- 2007/03/27
  - Added the "`open`" and "`close`" features.
  - Indexing the features.
  - Added the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file.
- 2007/04/06
  - Added the "`\mtcfixnomenclature`" command.
  - Added the `mtc-nom.tex` example file.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Corrected the last argument of `\mtcsetfeature` and siblings, using `\mtc@toks`.
  - Some mini-tables are set on two columns in the manual.
  - Indexing the messages. Messages noted in the right margin.
  - Corrected a bug in mtcoff.
  - Added `latinc.mld` and `latinc2.mld` for classical latin.
- 2007/04/12
  - Added internal hyperlinks for messages.
  - Load the hypcap package for hyperlinks in the documentation.
- 2007/06/06
  - Added `\mtcoffset` and co. for an horizontal offset of a mini-table.
  - Added `\mtcsetoffset` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table type.
  - Added the `mtc-ofs.tex` example file.
  - Added flagging of macros in example files.
  - The 2007 section in the "Postface" chapter was garbled.
  - More internal links in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added a clickable table of all messages.
  - Improved column breaks in the index.
  - Added a local minitoc in the "Jargon" chapter.
  - Added `lithuanian2.mld`.
  - Added `latvian2.mld` and `letton2.mld`.
  - Grouped `.mld`/`.mlo` pairs in tables 7.1 to 7.2 on pages 243–244.

⋆ version 55

- 2007/06/12
  - Added a hint (warning `W0097`) about the flowfram [433, 434] package (incompatible). W0097
  - Added a *hint* (`I0053`) about the float [302], floatrow [285], trivfloat [484], and rotfloat [420] packages. I0053
- 2007/06/22
  - Regrouping some marginal notes about messages; improving their positions.
  - Improve page breaks in the documentation.

- Updated the bibliography.
- Corrected a bug about minitocs in appendices for the memoir class.

- 2007/06/29
  - Changed the color of hyperlinks.
  - Revised the format of the headers.
  - Corrected some `\mtcset...` commands to use `\edef` to correctly evaluate `\mtc@toks`.

⋆ version 56

- 2007/07/02
  - Added `swahili.mld`.
- 2007/08/03
  - Page headers modified in documentation.
  - Added stuff (files) for figures (maps) for many language areas.
  - Removed the `.eps` files.
  - Added the `bengali` language synonym of `bangla`.
  - Split the list of files into two tables (tables 7.1 to 7.2 on pages 243–244).
- 2007/12/04
  - Many minor typo fixes.
  - Darker colors for hyperlinks.
  - Updated and corrected the bibliography.
  - Corrected a typo in the `ptc@verse` environment (thanks to François Pétiard).
  - Corrections of typos in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments (thanks to Andrew Bowden).
  - Replaced the `.mtc1` extension by `.mtc0` in the auto-configuration test (to avoid erasing the (`\jobname.mtc1` file).
  - Corrected a problem with `\nofiles` (Andreas Deininger).
  - The acknowledgements are moved to the “Complements” part.
  - Added a hint (warning `W0099`) about the titlesec [46] package. W0099
  - Complete indexing of the messages.
  - Updated `lithuanian2.mld`.
  - Using the chngpage package [467] to increase the width of the pages of the bibliography.
  - Renamed `\if@longextensions@` as `\if@mtc@longext@`.
  - Updated `czech.mld`.
  - Removed `\l@xsection`.
  - Graphic files are indexed separately.
  - Updated `galician.mld`.
  - Added a specific directory for image files in the TDS hierarchy.
  - Updated `lsorbian.mld`, `ukraineb.mld`, and `usorbian.mld`.
  - Added `malayalam-b.mld`, `malayalam-keli2.mld`, `malayalam-mr.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana3.mld`.
  - Updated `malayalam-omega.mlo`.

- Suppressed parasite entries from the index.

⋆ version 57

- 2007/12/11
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/12/18
  - Corrections in examples of documents.
  - Added `occitan.mld`.
  - Updated `croatian.mld`, `danish.mld`, `dutch.mld`, `galician.mld`, `germanb2.mld`, `greek.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `interlingua.mld`, `polish.mld`, `scottish.mld`, and `turkish.mld`.
- 2008/01/15
  - Corrected `polski.mld`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added table 6.10 on page 231.
  - Added maps of Manchuria.
- 2008/04/03
  - Better captions for maps. Added maps for Italy, Karnataka, Germany, Mongols and China.
  - Added `occitan2.mld` and `mexican.mld`.
  - Added a map of czech dialects.
  - Added maps of danish dialects.
  - Added a map of the dutch language.
  - Added a map of french dialects.
  - Added a map of galician dialects.
  - Added maps of german dialects.
  - Added maps of hindi dialects.
  - Added maps of portugese dialects.
  - Added a map of the turkish language.
  - Added a map of the vietnamese language.
  - Added a map of the armenian diaspora.
  - Added a map of the sami dialects.
  - Added a map of the nationalities in ex-Yugoslavia.
  - Added a map of countries where spanish is an official language.
  - Added a map of the sorbian area.
  - Added an entry for the Wikipedia in the jargon.
  - Added a map of the minorities in Poland.
  - Added a map of the bengali diaspora.
  - Splitted the TDS hierarchy into three tables 7.3 to 7.5 on pages 244–247.
  - Added maps of the basque dialects.
  - Added maps of the latvian dialects.
  - Added a map for the swahili language.
  - Added the turkish alphabet.

- The page numbers in the index are now hyperlinks (thanks to François PÉTIARD).
- Colors added in figure 1.1 on page 31.
- Added maps of the languages in Europe.
- Added maps of Kosovo.
- Added a map of the languages in Africa.
- Corrected an error of message number.
- Added maps for Russia.
- Added a map of the districts of Slovakia.
- Added maps about Islam.
- Added a figure about hànzì characters.
- Added a figure about chinese characters usage in the world.
- Added a figure about chinese dialects.
- Added maps about writing systems.
- Added a map of the regions where Finnish is spoken.
- Shortened the "Installation" chapter.
- Updated from the babel package version v3.8j of 2008/03/16.
- Files `lamed.pdf` and `lamed.tex` replaced by `lamed3.png`.
- Added maps of the indigenous languages of México.

⋆ version 58

- 2008/06/26
  - Renamed `minitoc-tds.zip` into `minitoc.tds.zip`.
  - Added a simplified linguistic map of Europe.
  - Added a map of polish dialects.
  - Added a figure about the russian alphabet.
  - Added a map about the russian alphabet.
  - Added a figure about the serbian alphabets.
  - Added a map of the provinces of Vietnam.
  - Used `\vrefrange` to compress ranges of internal cross-references.
  - Added a map of albanian dialects.
  - Added a map of Norway.
  - Added flags for many countries. Added a light gray frame around the flags.
  - Added a figure about lusophonia.
  - Added a figure about germanophonia.
  - Added a figure about hispanophonia.
  - Added a figure about italophonia.
  - Added a minitoc in the index to make it easier to consult.
  - Added figures about francophones countries.
  - Added a figure about swahili-speaking countries.
  - Added a figure about arabic-speaking countries.
  - Added a figure about russian-speaking countries.
  - Added a figure about english-speaking countries.

- Added flags \ifinparttoc, \ifinpartlof, \ifinpartlot. \ifinminitoc, \ifinminilof, \ifinminilot, \ifinsecttoc, \ifinsectlof, and \ifinsectlot.
- Added example document mtc-vti.tex, section 4.36 on page 148.
- Added a figure about dutch-speaking countries.
- Renamed fminitoc.dtx and consorts as minitoc-fr.dtx and consorts.

※ **version 59**: corrupted PDF files.

⋆ **version 60**

- 2008/07/16
  - Minor correction in figure.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added missing flag files (thanks to Morten Høgholm).
  - Replaced many .pdf image files (most of them are flag files) by the original .png file because they were corrupted during the conversion by ImageMagick (xpdf didnt see the problem but Acrobat Reader refuses to show the file); many thanks to Heiko Oberdiek and Staszek Wawrykiewicz.
  - Back to standard colors and default hyperref color options.

⋆ **version 61**

- 2015/07/13
  - Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert passed away in 2009. So this package is now looking for a maintainer.
  - Reduce size of documentation, by eliminating flags and other images, from 25+mb to less than 2mb.
  - Remove the CATALOG file, as it was redundant and stale.
  - Use mirror.ctan.org for CTAN references.
  - Done by Nils Ole Tippenhauer (nils_tippenhauer at sutd.edu.sg) and Karl Berry (karl at freefriends.org). They are not prospective future maintainers.
  - No functional changes.

⋆ **version 62**

- 2018/07/12
  - sources moved to githib https://github.com/minitoc/minitoc
  - Correcttion to \@ifundefined usage that generates errors in current latex (and didn't work previously)
  - Repository set up by David carlisle but permanent maintainers still required

Acknowledgments

I ought to thank the following peoples [53], for their help, their questions, their interventions in the news groups [54], and/or for their packages, classes, documents, and tools:

Hassan Abolhassani, Paul W. Abrahams, Nabil Abu El-Ata, Tommaso Addabbo, Juan M. Aguirregabiria, Stéphane Aicardi, Vartan Akopian, A.J. Alex, Élisabeth Allès, Mark Alford, Viviane Alleton, Jacques André, Jérôme Andrieux, Ralf Angeli, Walter Appel, Achod André Aradian, Patrick Andries, Einar Árnason, Tim Arnold, Jouko Arponen, Donald Arseneau, Helmer Aslasken, David Aspinall, Ivar Åssen, Philipp Bachmann, Gonçal Badenes, Guillaume Balavoine, Jason Baldridge, Marin Balgarensky, Leonor Barroca, Giancarlo Bassi, Pierre Basso, Dorjgotov Batmunkh, Jean-Yves Baudais, David Bausum, Benjamin Bayart, Thierry Bayet, Claudio Beccari, Beebe Nelson H. F., Emmanuel Beffara, Benoît Belet, Rachid Belmouhoub, Madeleine Benoît-Guyot, József Bérces, Alexander Berdnikov, Jens Berger, Tobias Berndt, Karl Berry, Berhanu Beyene, Javier Bezos, Giuseppe Bilotta, Olivier Binisti, Árpád Bíró, Justin K. Bisanwa, Denis Bitouzé, Dr. Barbara Blankenship, Laurent Bloch, Aurélie Boissière, Patrick Boman, Onofre Bonvila, Georgi N. Boshnakov, Patrice Bougette, Daniel Bourbonnais, Andrew Bowden, Victor Boyko, Johannes L. Braams, Felix Braun, Jim Breen, Peter Breitenlohner, Roland Breton, Catherine Bricout, William Bright, Gyöngyi Bujdosó, Mimi Burbank, Mustafa Burc, Patrick Burgel, Alexey Burykin, Jean-Pierre Cabestan, Philippe Cadène, Olivier Cardi, Samuele Carcagno, David Carella, David P. Carlisle, Kevin Carmody, Manuel Carriba, Régis Caspar, Waldemar Celes, Raymond Chabbert^{+}, Winston Chang, Jean-Côme Charpentier, Jean-Pascal Chauvet, Pehong Chen, Céline Chevalier, Jana Chlebîková, Otfried Cheong, Jin-Hwan Cho, Pai H. Chou, Pierre Chuvin, Yves Citoleux, Marian Clegg, Steven Douglas Cochran, Maurizio Codogno, Bernard Comrie, David B. Cook, Emmanuel Cornet, Oliver Corff, Prakash Countcham, Olivier Dabène, Sergueï Dachian, Adrian Daerr, Arnak Dalalyan, Patrick W. Daly, Peter T. Daniels, Holger Danielsson, Alice Davison, Luiz Henrique de Figueiro, Arnaldo Viegas de Lima, Sébastien Demoustier, Andreas Deininger, Éric Depardieu, Ben De Rydt, Bernard Desgraupes, Cécile Desprairies, Sébastien Desreux, Christine Detig, Antoni R. Diller, Gérard Dorel, Dorjpalam Dorj, Ivars Driķis, Matthew S. Dryer, Denys Duchier, Lyndon Dudding, Marko Èehaja, Ta Quang Dung, Patrick Egan, Victor Eijkhout, Brian Elmegaard, Danie Els, Behdad Esfahbod, Thomas Esser, Gilhooly Etienne, Karl F. Everitt, Mike Fabian,

[53] And I apologize to all whose I forgot.

[54] Mainly, `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) and `comp.text.tex` (in english), but also `de.comp.text.tex` (in german, but I do not read it well: send me also a mail in french or in english).

Robin Fairbairns, Christian Faulhammer, Simon Fear, Jürgen Fenn, Michael J. Ferguson, Jeff Fessler, Ulrike Fischer, Joshua-A. Fishman, Jean-Julien Fleck, Daniel Flipo, Peter L. Flom, Peter Flynn, Jim Fox, Louis Frédéric, Danny M. Fürniss, Tetsuo Furukawa, Federico Garcia, Diego García Morate, Hubert Gässlein, Bernard Gaulle†, Maarten Gelderman, Chuck Genschte, Jacques Gernet, Mohammad Ghodsi, Helen Gilhooly, Henri Giordan Aleksas Stanislovas Girdenis, François Giron, Markus Gleiszner, Josiane Gonthier, Vitali Gontsharuk, Michel Goossens, Raymond G. Gordon, Jr., Mathieu Goutelle, Bruce K. Grant, Fraser Grant, George Grätzer, Norman Gray, George D. Greenwade, Enrico Gregorio, Loïc Grenon, Charles Grether, Barbara F. Grimes, Olga A. Grineva, Sébastien Grot, Micael Guignard, Marion Gunn, Guntermann Klaus, Eitan M. Gurari, Thomas Hafner, Hans Hagen, Reinhard F. Hahn, Boumediene Hamzi, Thế Thành Hàn, Thorsten Hansen, Patrick Happel, Yannis Haralambous, Kathryn A. Hargreaves, Alexander Harin, Russel L. Harris, Michael A. Harrison, Stephen Hartke, Danny Heap, Jim Hefferon, André Heider, Thorsten Hein, Sten Hellman, Håvard Helstrup, Yvon Henel, Hartmut Henkel, Thomas Henlich, Stephan Hennig, Florence Henry, Stephen Herborn, Jörg Hesoll, Pr. Thomas J. Hinnenbush, David Hoadley, Taco Hoekwater, Alan Hoenig, Joe Hogg, Morten Høgholm, Alv Kjetil Holme, Klaus Höppner, Umstatter Horst, Don Hosek, Yufan Hu, Jean-Michel Hufflen, Dave W. Huseby, Helene Hyna, Roberto Ierusalimschy, Hiroya Ikeda, Dmitry Ivanov, Per Steinar Iversen, Victor Ivrii, Tetsuo Iwakuma, Zunbeltz Izaola Azkona, Youssef Jabri, Paweł Jackowski, Roland Jacques, Christophe Jacquet, Bernd Jaehne, Radwan Jalam, Michael Janich, Frank Jensen, Alan Jeffrey, Regnor Jernsletten, Zhuhan Jiang, Loïc Joly, David M. Jones, Christophe Jorssen, Robert Juhasz, Jean-Joseph Julaud, Stefan Junge, Dan Jurafsky, Akira Kakuto, Mikko Kanerva, Theppitak Karoonboonyanan, David Kastrup, Ronan Keryell, Jonathan Kew, Axel Kielhorn, Ki-Joo Kim, Bil Kleb, Peter Kleiweg, Rune Kleveland, Ingo Klöckl, Jörg Knappen, Donald E. Knuth, Markus Kohm, Helmut Kopka, Attila Koppanyi, Adamantios Korais, Vincent Krakoviack, Kai Kratt, Thankmar Kronzucker, Siep Kroonenberg, Alexej M. Kryukov, Manfred Kudlek, Markus G. Kuhn, Florian Kulzer, Toshiki Kumazawa, Olaf Kummer, Frank Küster, Stéphane Laborde, Thomas Lachand-Robert, Klaus Lagally, Leslie Lamport, Fabio Lanari, Robert Lange, Dag Langmyhr, Olga G. Lapko, Henning Larsen, Jean-Marc Lasgouttes, Andris Lasis, Christian Laucou, Jean-Philippe Lauffenburger, Arnaud Launay, Claire Lauvernet, Boris Lavva, André Lebacq, Olivier Lecarme, Jacques Leclerc, Iksop Lee, Fabrice Le Goff, Jeanne Legrand, Philipp Lehman, Werner Lemberg, Thomas Leonhardt, Erwan Le Pennec, Stéphane Lepolozec, Julien Le Thuaut, René Létoile, Adam Lewenberg, Knut Lickert, Ulf A. Lindgren, Anselm Lingnau, Bernice Sacks Lipkin, Pierre Lobel, Miloš V. Lokajíček, Stoffel Lombard, Maurizio Loreti, Tristan Lorino, Tim Love, Vincent Lozano, Daniel H. Luecking, Ken Lunde, Anders Lyhne, Jean-François Macé, Pierre A. MacKay, Lars Madsen, Richard Mahoney, Irina A. Makhovaya, Pierre Malecki, Pascal Marchand, Bob Margolis, Cécile Marin, Nicolas Markey, Marcus Marr, Françoise Marre-Fournier, Alan Marshall, Terry Mart, Éric Martini, Vadim Maslov, Henri Massias, Stephen Matthews, Andreas Matthias, Sven Mattisson, Krystyna Mazoyer, Rowland McDonnell, Ben McKay, Surapant Meknavin, Sébastien Mengin, Jochen Metzinger, Yanick Michou, Frank Mittelbach, Young Joon Moon, Ross Moore, Jens-Uwe Morawski, Florence Morgiensztern, Lapo Filippo Mori, Michael A. Morrison, Javier A. Múgica de Rivera, Dejan Muhamedagić, Andrei Nacu, National Geographic Society, National Institute of the Korean, Sergei O. Naumov, Lee Netherton, Frank Neukam, Cuong Nguyen, Julien Nicolas, Elke Niedermair, Michael Niedermair, Rolf Niepraschk, Josselin Noirel, Tim Null, Heiko Oberdiek,

Tobias Oetiker, Haruhito Okamura, Mariusz Olko, Tanguy Ortolo, Erik Östhols, Jörg Ott, Alan Paić, Scott Pakin, Palash Baran Pal, Anshuman Pandey, Minje Byeng-sen Park, Hubert Partl, Oren Patashnik, Jonathan Pechta, Kasper Peeters, Manuel Pégourié-Gonnard, Matthias Pelger, Philippe Pelletier, François Pétiard, Terje Engeset Petterst, Sébastien Peyrouse, Paul Pichaureau, Éric Picheral, Bruno Piguet, Karel Píška, John Plaice, Yves Plassereau, Ariane Poissonnier, Maria Polinsky, Philippe Pons, Monique Pontault, Veerathanabutr Poonlap, Fabrice Popineau, Nico Poppelier, Rama Porrat, Camille-Aimé Possamaï, Roozbeh Pournader, Hilmar Preusse, Glanville Price, C. V. Radhakrishnan, Sebastian Rahtz, Bernd Raichle, Claude Raimond, Jose Pedro Ramalhete, S. Robert Ramsey, Paul Rascoe, Keranen Reino, Arthur Reutenauer, Adrian Rezuş, Alexandre de Rhodes†, François Richaudeau, Luis Rivera, Yuri Robbers, A. J. "Tony" Roberts, Will Robertson, Denis B. Roegel, Christian Rolland, Rasmus Pank Roulund, Chris A. Rowley, Marti Ruiz-Altaba, Jan Michael Rynning, Young Ryu, Enn Saar, David Samsoen, Julio Sánchez, Larry Sanger, Morgan Sangeux, Thierry Sanjuan, Eddie Saudrais, Elmar Schalück, Bernd Schandl, Elisabeth Schlegl, Tobias Schlemmer, Walter Schmidt, Thomas A. Schmitz, Uwe Schneider, Rainer Schöpf, Joachim Schrod, Martin Schröder, Ulrich Schwartz, Elizabeth Scurfield, Michael Shell, Jungshik Shin, Bai Shouyi†, Ali Shoukat, Andrij M. Shvaika, Chanop Silpa-Anan, Sindhu Singh, Anna Sitnikova-Rioland, Petra Schlager, Kristian Slimak, Jankovic Slobodan, John Smith, Robin S. Socha, Nick Sofroniou, Axel Sommerfeldt, Lianyi Song, Yves Soulet, Gérard Sournia, Pierre-François Souyri, Arjen Steiner, D. P. Story, Éric Streit, Ralf Stubner, K. K. Subramaniam, Cyrille Suss, Robert S. Sutor, Chris Swoyer, Apostolos Syropoulos, Raffaella Tabacco, Nicola L. C. Talbot, Daniel Taupin†, Philip Taylor, Michel Tétu, Yves Ternon, Manfred Thibud, Christina Thiele, Harold Thimbleby, Kresten Krab Thorup, Aurélien Thureau, Karsten Tinnefeld, Josef Tkadlec, Ton 't Lam, Sigitas Tolušis, Cezare Tomczak, Laurent Tordella, Mark Trettin, Antonis Tsolomitis, Ahto Truu, Stefan Ulrich, Hideo Umeki, Un Koaunghi, Turgut Uyar, Jari Vaario, Christian Valantin, Piet van Oostrum, Thomas van Oudenhove de Saint Géry, Timothy Van Zandt, Vincent Vaquin, Suki K. Venkatesan, Didier Verna, Sylvain Vesco, Boris Veytsman, Alexandre Vial, Carl F. Voegelin, Florence M. Voegelin, Martin Vogel, Vladimir Volovich, Stephan P. von Bechtolsheim, Herbert Voss, Zdeněk Wagner, David Walden, Jimmy Wales, Nigel Ward, John Warnock, Douglas Waud Staszek Wawrykiewicz, Stephan B. Webanck, Eduard Werner, Daphne West, Ferenc Wettl, Graham Williams, Peter R. Wilson, Jeroen Wijnhout, Alexandre Wolf, Marcin Woliński, Élisabeth Wolkowski, Mark Wooding, Joseph A. Wright, Tim Wright, Dominik Wujastyk, Damien Wyart, C. S. Yogananda, Adi Zaimi, Ludwig Lejzer Zamenhof†, Danilo Zavrtanik, Krzysztof Konrad Żelechowski, Charlie S. Zender, Federico Zenith, Vadim V. Zhytnikov, Uwe Ziegenhagen, and Leon Žlajpah.